MYANMAR

NATIONAL

BUILDING

CODE

2016

PART 3 & PART 4

MYANMAR

NATIONAL

BUILDING

CODE

2016

PART 3

STRUCTURAL DESIGN

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 3STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION 3.1 GENERAL

3.1.1 - Definitions and Notation

3.1.1.1Definitions

The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this PART, have the meanings shown herein.

ALLOWABLESTRESSDESIGN: Amethodofproportioningstructuralmembers,suchthatelasticallycomputedstresses producedinthemembersbynominalloadsdonotexceedspecified allowable stresses (also called "working stress design").

BALCONY,EXTERIOR: Anexteriorfloorprojectingfrom andsupportedbyastructurewithoutadditionalindependent supports.

DEADLOADS: Theweightofmaterialsofconstruction incorporatedintothebuilding,includingbutnot limitedto walls,floors,roofs,ceilings,stairways,built-inpartitions,finishes,claddingandothersimilarlyincorporatedarchitectural andstructuralitems,andtheweightoffixedserviceequipment, suchascranes,plumbingstacksandrisers,electricalfeeders, heating,ventilatingandair-conditioningsystemsandfire sprinkler systems.

DECK: Anexteriorfloorsupportedonatleasttwoopposing sidesbyanadjacentstructure,and/orposts,piersorotherindependent supports.

DESIGNSTRENGTH: Theproductofthe nominalstrength and a resistance factor (or strength reduction factor).

DIAPHRAGM: Ahorizontal orslopedsystemactingtotransmitlateralforcestothevertical-resistingelements.Whenthe term"diaphragm"isused,itshallincludehorizontalbracing systems.

> **Diaphragmblocked:**Inlight-frameconstruction,adiaphragm inwhich all sheathing edges not occurring ona framingmemberaresupportedonandfastenedtoblocking.

> **Diaphragm boundary:**In light-frame construction, a location where shear is transferred into or out of the diaphragm sheathing. Transfer is either to a boundary element or to another force-resisting element.

> **Diaphragm chord:**A diaphragm boundary element perpendicular to the applied load that is assumed to take axial stresses due to the diaphragm moment.

> **Diaphragm, flexible:**A diaphragm is flexible for the purpose of distribution of storey shear and torsional moment where so indicated in Section 12.3.1.1 of ASCE 7, as modified in Section 3.4.2.3.1.1 of this PART.

> **Diaphragm,rigid:**A diaphragm is rigid for the purpose of distribution of storey shear and torsional moment when the lateral deformation of the diaphragm is less than or equal to two times the average storey drift.

DURATIONOFLOAD: Theperiodofcontinuousapplicationofagivenload,ortheaggregateof

periodsofintermittent applications of the same load.

ESSENTIALFACILITIES: Buildingsandotherstructures thatareintendedtoremainoperationalintheeventofextreme environmentalloadingfromflood,windorearthquakes.

FABRICPARTITIONS: Apartitionconsistingofafinished surfacemadeoffabric,withoutacontinuousrigidbacking,that isdirectlyattachedtoaframingsysteminwhichthevertical framingmembersarespacedgreaterthan4feet(1219mm)on centre.

FACTOREDLOAD: Theproductofanominalloadandaload factor.

IMPACTLOAD: Theloadresultingfrommovingmachinery, elevators,craneways,vehiclesandothersimilarforcesand kineticloads,pressureandpossiblesurchargefromfixedor moving loads.

LIMITSTATE:A conditionbeyondwhichastructureor memberbecomesunfitforserviceandisjudgedtobenolonger usefulforitsintendedfunction(serviceabilitylimitstate)orto be unsafe (strength limit state).

LIVELOADS:Thoseloadsproducedbytheuseandoccupancyofthebuildingorotherstructurea nddonotincludeconstructionorenvironmentalloadssuchaswindload,rain load, earthquake load, flood load or dead load.

LIVELOADS(ROOF): Thoseloadsproduced(1)during maintenancebyworkers,equipmentandmaterials;and(2) duringthelifeofthestructurebymovableobjectssuchas planters and by people.

LOADANDRESISTANCEFACTORDESIGN(LRFD):A methodofproportioningstructuralmembersandtheirconnectionsusing loadand resistance factorssuch thatno applicable limitstateisreachedwhenthestructureissubjectedtoappropriate load combinations.The term"LRFD"isusedinthe design of steel and timber structures.

LOAD EFFECTS: Forces and deformations produced in structural members by the applied loads.

LOADFACTOR: Afactorthataccountsfordeviationsofthe actualloadfromthenominalload,foruncertaintiesintheanalysisthattransformstheloadintoaloa deffect,andfortheprobability that more than one extremeload willoccur simultaneously.

LOADS: Forcesorotheractionsthatresultfromtheweightof buildingmaterials,occupantsandtheir possessions,environmentaleffects,differentialmovementandrestraineddimensionalchanges. Permanentloadsare those loads in which variationsovertimearerareorofsmallmagnitude,suchas deadloads.Allotherloadsarevariableloads(seealso"Nominal loads").

NOMINALLOADS: Themagnitudesoftheloadsspecifiedin thisPART(dead,live,soil,rain, wind,andearthquake).

OCCUPANCY CATEGORY: Acategoryusedtodetermine structural requirements based

on occupancy.

OTHER STRUCTURES: Structures otherthan buildings

PANEL(PARTOFASTRUCTURE): Thesectionofafloor, wallorroofcomprisedbetweenthesupportingframeoftwo adjacentrowsofcolumnsandgirdersorcolumnbandsoffloor or roof construction.

RESISTANCEFACTOR: Afactorthataccountsfordeviationsoftheactualstrengthfromtheno minalstrengthandthe manner and consequencesof failure(alsocalled"strength reduction factor").

STRENGTH,NOMINAL: Thecapacityofastructureor membertoresisttheeffectsofloads,asdeterminedbycomputationsusingspecifiedmaterialstren gthsanddimensionsand equationsderivedfromacceptedprinciplesofstructural mechanicsorbyfieldtestsorlaboratorytestsofscaledmodels, allowingformodelingeffectsanddifferencesbetweenlaboratory and field conditions.

STRENGTH,REQUIRED: Strengthofamember,crosssectionorconnectionrequiredtoresist factoredloadsorrelated internalmomentsandforcesinsuchcombinationsasstipulated by these provisions.

STRENGTHDESIGN: Amethodofproportioningstructural memberssuchthatthecomputedforcesproducedinthemembersbyfactoredloadsdonotexceedt hememberdesign strength[alsocalled"loadandresistancefactordesign" (LRFD)].Theterm"strengthdesign"isusedinthedesignof concrete and masonry structural elements.

VEHICLEBARRIERSYSTEM: Asystemofbuildingcomponentsnearopensidesofagaragef loororramporbuilding walls that act as restraints for vehicles.

3.1.1.2 Notation

D=Dead load

E=Combinedeffectofhorizontalandvertical earthquake induced forces as defined inSection 12.4.2 of ASCE 7 (Section 3.4.2.4.2)

E_m=Maximum seismic load effect of horizontal and vertical seismic forces as set forth inSection 12.4.3 of ASCE 7 (Section 3.4.2.4.3) (Seismic load effect including overstrength factor)

F=Load due to fluids with well-defined pressures and maximum heights

H=Load due to lateral earth pressures, groundwater pressure or pressure of bulk materials

L=Live load, except roof live load, including any permitted live load reduction

L_r=Roofliveloadincludinganypermittedliveload reduction

R=Rain load

T=Self-strainingforcearisingfromcontractionor expansionresultingfromtemperaturechange, shrinkage,moisturechange,creepincomponent materials, movement due to differential

settlement or combinations thereof

W=Load due to wind pressure

3.1.2 - Design and Construction Documents

3.1.2.1General

Constructiondocumentsshallshowthesize, sectionandrelativelocationsofstructuralmemberswithfloor levels,columncentresandoffsetsdimensioned, as well as structural specifications.

Thedesign loadsandotherinformationpertinenttothestructuraldesign requiredby Sections3.1.2.1.1through3.1.2.1.6as well as structural specifications shallbe indicated on the design documents.

3.1.2.1.1 Floor liveload

The uniformly distributed, concentrated and impact floor live load(if any) used in the design shall be indicated in the design document. Use of floor live load reduction in accordance with Section 3.2.9 is permitted in the design.

3.1.2.1.2Roofliveload

The roofliveloadusedinthe design shall be indicated in the design document. Roof live load reduction in accordance with Section 3.2.3.11.2 is permitted in the design.

3.1.2.1.3 Winddesigndata

The following information related to wind loads shall be stated in the design document, regardless of whether wind loads govern the design of the lateral-force-resisting system of the building:

1. Basic wind speed (3-second gust), miles per hour
2. Wind importance factor, I,and occupancy category
3. Wind exposure parameters and wind coefficients

3.1.2.1.4Earthquakedesigndata

The following information related to seismic loads shall be stated in the design document, regardless of whetherseismicloadsgovernthedesignofthelateralforceresisting system of the building:

1. Seismic importancefactor,I,andoccupancy category
2. Specified spectral response accelerations, $S_S$and S_1 , and long period transition period TL for the location of the structure in question
3. Site class
4. Seismic design category (SDC)
5. Basic seismic-force-resisting system(s)

6. Response modification factor(s), R
7. Analysis procedure used
8. Detailing category or type

3.1.2.1.5 Special loads

Special loads that are applicable to the design of the building, structure or portions thereof shall be indicated in the design document.

3.1.2.1.6 Material properties

The properties of the materials as used in the design calculations shall be mentioned in the design document.

3.1.2.1.7 Soil and foundation data

The relevant soil and foundation data as used in the design calculations shall be mentioned in the design document.

3.1.2.2 Systems and Components Requiring Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance

Design and construction documents or specifications shall be prepared for those systems and components requiring special inspection for seismic resistance (if any).

3.1.2.3 Restrictions on Loading.

It shall be unlawful to place, or cause or permit to be placed, on any floor or roof of a building, structure or portion thereof, a load greater than is permitted by the provisions of this PART, unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction for special situation.

3.1.2.4 Structural Designs.

Structural designs shall be carried out by qualified structural designer(s) and the design calculations, specifications and the detail drawings shall be checked and signed by a recognized licensed structural engineer, as specified by the building authority, before submitting the structural documents to the authority department for obtaining approval and building construction permit.

3.1.3 – General Design Requirements

3.1.3.1.General

Buildings,andpartsthereof,shallbe designedandconstructedinaccordancewithstrengthdesign, load and resistance factor design, allowable stress design, empiricaldesignorconventionalconstructionmethods,aspermitted by the applicable material sections of this PART. Analysis shall be carried out by following the guidelines of Section 3.1.3.4 and, where relevant, by using the methods permitted by this PART.

3.1.3.2 Strength

Buildings, and parts thereof,shallbedesignedandconstructedtosupportsafelythe factoredloadsinloadcombinationsdefinedinthisPARTwithoutexceedingtheappropriatestren gthlimitstatesforthematerials of construction.

Alternatively, buildings,andpartsthereof,shallbedesignedandconstructed to support safely the nominal loads in load combinations definedinthisPARTwithoutexceedingtheappropriatespecified allowable stresses for the materials of construction.

Loadsandforcesforoccupanciesorusesnotcoveredinthis PARTshallbesubjecttotheapprovalofthebuildingofficial.

3.1.3.3 Serviceability

Structural systems and members thereofshallbedesignedtohaveadequatestiffnesstolimit deflectionsandlateraldrift.SeeSection12.12ofASCE7for drift limits applicable to earthquake loading**.**

3.1.3.3.1Deflections

The deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of Sections 3.1.3.3.2 through 3.1.3.3.5 or that permitted by Table 3.1.1

TABLE 3.1.1DEFLECTIONLIMITS [a,b,g,h]

CONSTRUCTION	L	W^e	$D + L^{c,f}$
Roof members:[d] Supporting plaster ceiling Supporting nonplasterceiling Not supporting ceiling	$l/360$ $l/240$ $l/180$	$l/360$ $l/240$ $l/180$	$l/240$ $l/180$
Floor members	$l/360$	—	$l/240$
Exterior walls and interior partitions: With brittle finishes	—	$l/240$	—
Farm buildings	—	—	$l/180$
Greenhouses	—	—	$l/120$

ForSI:1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For structural roofing and siding made of formed metal sheets, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/60. For secondary roof structural members supporting formed metal roofing, the live load deflection shall not exceed

l/150. For secondary wall members supporting formed metal siding, the design wind load deflection shall not exceed l/90. For roofs, this exception only applies when the metal sheets have no roof covering.

b. Interior partitions not exceeding 6 feet in height and flexible, folding and portable partitions are not governed by the provisions of this section. The deflection criterion for interior partitions is based on the horizontal load.

c. For wood structural members having a moisture content of less than 16 percent at time of installation and used under dry conditions, the deflection resulting from L + 0.5D is permitted to be substituted for the deflection resulting from L + D.

d. The above deflections do not ensure against ponding. Roofs that do not have sufficient slope or camber to assure adequate drainage shall be investigated for ponding. See Section 2.4 for rain and ponding requirements and Section 2.4.2 for roof drainage requirements.

e. The wind load is permitted to be taken as 0.7 times the "component and cladding" loads for the purpose of determining deflection limits herein.

f. For steel structural members, the dead load shall be taken as zero.

g. For aluminum structural members or aluminum panels used in skylights and sloped glazing framing, roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, not supporting edge of glass or aluminum sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/120.

h. For cantilever members, l shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.

3.1.3.3.2 Reinforced concrete

The deflection of reinforcedconcrete structural members shall not exceed that permitted by ACI 318-05.

3.1.3.3.3 Steel

The deflection of steel structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AISC 360, AISI-NAS, AISI-General, AISI-Truss, ASCE 3, ASCE 8, SJI JG-1.1, SJI K-1.1 or SJI LH/DLH-1.1, as applicable.

3.1.3.3.4 Masonry

The deflection of masonry structural members shall not exceed that permitted by ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

3.1.3.3.5 Aluminum

ThedeflectionofaluminumstructuralmembersshallnotexceedthatpermittedbyAA ADM1.

3.1.3.3.6 Limits

Deflection of structural members over span, l, shall not exceed that permitted by Table 1.1.

3.1.3.4 Analysis

Loadeffectsonstructuralmembersandtheir

connectionsshallbedeterminedbymethodsofstructuralanalysisthattakeintoaccountequilibriu m,generalstability,geometriccompatibilityandbothshort-andlong-termmaterial properties.

Members that tend to accumulate residual deformations underrepeatedserviceloadsshallhaveincludedintheiranalysistheaddedeccentricities expectedtooccurduring theirservice life.

Anysystemormethodofconstructiontobeusedshallbe basedonarationalanalysisinaccordancewithwell-established principlesofmechanics.Suchanalysisshallresultinasystem thatprovidesacompleteloadpathcapableoftransferringloads from theirpoint oforigintothe load-resistingelements.

Thetotallateralforceshallbedistributedtothevariousverticalelementsofthelateral-force-resistingsysteminproportion to their rigidities, considering the rigidityof the horizontal bracingsystemordiaphragm.Rigidelementsassumednotto beapartofthelateral-force-resistingsystemarepermittedto beincorporatedintobuildingsprovidedtheireffectonthe actionofthesystemis considered and provided forinthe design.Exceptwherediaphragmsareflexible,orarepermitted tobeanalyzedasflexible,provisionsshallbemadeforthe increasedforcesinducedonresistingelementsofthestructural systemresultingfromtorsionduetoeccentricitybetweenthe centreofapplicationofthelateralforcesandthecentreofrigidity of the lateral-force-resisting system.

Structuresshallbedesignedtoresisttheoverturning effectscausedbythelateralforcesspecifiedinthisPART if it is required to consider lateral loads.See Section3.3 forwindloads,Section3.2.2forlateralsoilloads and hydrostatic pressures andSection 3.4 for earthquake loads.

3.1.3.5OccupancyCategory

Buildingsshallbeassignedan occupancy category in accordance withTable 3.1.2.

3.1.3.5.1 Multipleoccupancies

Where a structure is occupied by two or more occupancies not included in the same occupancy category, the structure shall be assigned the classification of the highest occupancy category corresponding to the various occupancies. Where structures have two or more portions that are structurally separated, each portion shall be separately classified. Where a separated portion of a structure provides required access to, required egress from or shares life safety components with another portion having a higher occupancy category, both portions shall be assigned to the higher occupancy category.

3.1.3.6In-Situ Load Tests

Thebuildingofficialisauthorizedto requireanengineeringanalysisor a strength test oraloadtest,orany combination,ofany constructionwheneverthereisreasontoquestionthesafetyof theconstructionfortheintendedoccupancy.

3.1.3.7PreconstructionLoadTests

Materialsandmethodsof construction that are not capable of being designed by approvedengineeringanalysisorthatdonotcomplywiththe

applicablematerialdesignstandardslisted shall be load tested or tested for strength and deformation characteristics.

TABLE 3.1.2

OCCUPANCY CATEGORY OF BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES

OCCUPANCY CATEGORY	NATURE OF OCCUPANCY
I	Buildings and other structures that represent a low hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: • Agricultural facilities • Certain temporary facilities • Minor storage facilities
II	Buildings and other structures except those listed in Occupancy Categories I, III and IV
III	Buildings and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: • Covered structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300. • Buildingsandotherstructureswithelementaryschool,secondaryschoolordaycarefacilitieswithanoccupantload greater than 250. • Buildings and other structures with an occupant load greater than 500 for colleges or adult education facilities. • Healthcarefacilitieswithanoccupantloadof50ormoreresidentpatients,butnothavingsurgeryoremergencytreatmentfacilities. • Jails and detention facilities. • Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000. • Power-generatingstations,watertreatmentforpotablewater,wastewatertreatmentfacilitiesandotherpublicutilityfacilities not included in Occupancy Category IV. • BuildingsandotherstructuresnotincludedinOccupancyCategoryIV containingsufficientquantitiesoftoxicorexplosive substances to be dangerous to the public if released.
IV	Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to: • Hospitals and other health care facilities having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Fire, rescue and police stations and emergency vehicle garages. • Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters. • Designatedemergencypreparedness, communication,and operationcentersand other facilitiesrequiredforemergency response. • Power-generatingstationsandotherpublicutilityfacilitiesrequiredasemergencybackupfacilitiesforOccupancyCategory IV structures. • Structurescontaininghighlytoxicmaterials. • Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars. • Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions. • Water treatment facilities required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression.

3.1.3.8 Anchorage

3.1.3.8.1 General

Anchorage of the roof to walls and columns, and of walls and columns to foundations, shall be provided to resist the uplift and sliding forces that result from the application of the prescribed loads.

3.1.3.8.2 Concrete andmasonry walls

Concrete and masonry walls shall be anchored to floors, roofs and other structural elements that provide lateral support for the wall. Such anchorage shall provide a positive direct connection capable of resisting the horizontal forces specified in this part but not less than a minimum strength design horizontal force of 280 plf(4.10 kN/m) of wall, substituted for "E" in the load combinations of Section 3.2.1.2 or 3.2.1.3. Walls shall be designed to resist bending between anchors where the anchor spacing exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). Required anchors in masonry walls of hollow units or cavity walls shall be embedded in a reinforced grouted structural element of the wall.See Sections 3.3 for wind design requirements and see Section 3.4 for seismic design requirements.

3.1.3.9 Decks

Where supported by attachment to an exterior wall, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads as applicable. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting.

3.1.3.10 Counteracting Structural Actions

Structuralmembers,systems,componentsandcladdingshallbedesignedto resistforcesduetoearthquakeandwind,withconsiderationof overturning,sliding,anduplift.Continuousloadpathsshallbe providedfortransmittingtheseforcestothefoundation.Where slidingisusedtoisolatetheelements,theeffectsoffriction between sliding elements shall be included as a force.

3.1.3.11 Wind and Seismic Detailing

Where required by the authority department, lateral-force-resisting systemsshall meet seismic detailing requirementsandlimitationsprescribedinthisPARTandASCE7,excludingChapter 14andAppendix11A,evenwhenwindcodeprescribedload effects are greater than seismic load effects.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 3   STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION3.2: LOAD COMBINATIONS AND LOADS

3.2.1 – Load Combinations

3.2.1.1General

Buildings and portions thereofshall be designed using the provisions of either Section 3.2.1.2 or 3.2.1.3. Either Section 3.2.1.2 or 3.2.1.3 shall be used exclusively for proportioning elements of a particular construction material throughout the structure. Each load combination shall also be investigated with one or more of the variable loads set to zero.

3.2.1.2Combining Factored Loads Using Strength Design or Load and Resistance Factor Design

3.2.1.2.1 Applicability

The load combinations and load factors given in Section3.2.1.2.2 shall be used only in those cases in which they are specifically authorized by the applicable material design standard. Otherwise, the provisions of the applicable material design standard shall be used.

3.2.1.2.2 Basic load combinations

Structures, components, and foundations shall be designed so that their design strength equals or exceeds the most critical effects of the factored loads in the following combinations:

1.	$1.4 (D + F)$	Eq. (3.2.1)
2.	$1.2(D+F + T) + 1.6(L + H) + 0.5 (L_r \ or \ R)$	Eq. (3.2.2)
3.	$1.2D + 1.6(L_r \ or \ R)+ (L \ or \ 0.8W)$	Eq. (3.2.3)
4.	$1.2D + 1.6W + L + 0.5(L_r \ or \ R)$	Eq. (3.2.4)
5.	$1.2D + 1.0E + L$	Eq. (3.2.5)
6.	$0.9D + 1.6W + 1.6H$	Eq. (3.2.6)
7.	$0.9D + 1.0E + 1.6H$	Eq. (3.2.7)

EXCEPTIONS:

1. The load factor on L in combinations (3), (4), and (5) is equal to 0.5 for all occupancies in which L_0 in Table 3.2.2 is less than or equal to 100 psf, with the exception of garages or areas occupied as places of public assembly.

2. The load factor on H shall be set equal to zero in combinations (6) and (7) if the structural action due to H counteracts that due to W or E. Where lateral earth pressure provides resistance to structural actions from other forces, it shall not be included in H but shall be included in the design resistance.

Each relevant strength limit state shall be investigated. Effects of one or more loads not acting shall be investigated. The most unfavorable effects from both wind and earthquake loads shall be investigated, where appropriate, but they need not be considered to act simultaneously.

As an exception, where other factored load combinations are specifically required by the provisions of this PART, such combinations shall take precedence.

3.2.1.3 Combining Nominal Loads Using Allowable Stress Design or Working Stress Design

3.2.1.3.1 Basic load combinations

Loads listed herein shall be considered to act in the following combinations; whichever produces the most unfavorable effect in the building, foundation, or structural member being considered. Effects of one or more loads not acting shall be considered.

1.	$D + F$	Eq. (3.2.8)
2.	$D + H + F + L + T$	Eq. (3.2.9)
3.	$D + H + F + (L_r \text{ or } R)$	Eq. (3.2.10)
4.	$D + H + F + 0.75(L + T) + 0.75 (L_r \text{ or } R)$	Eq. (3.2.11)
5.	$D + H + F + (W \text{ or } 0.7E)$	Eq. (3.2.12)
6.	$D + H + F + 0.75(W \text{ or } 0.7E) + 0.75L + 0.75 (L_r \text{ or } R)$	Eq. (3.2.13)
7.	$0.6D + W + H$	Eq. (3.2.14)
8.	$0.6D + 0.7E + H$	Eq. (3.2.15)

The most unfavorable effects from both wind and earthquake loads shall be considered, where appropriate, but they need not be assumed to act simultaneously.

3.2.1.3.2 Stress increases

Increases in allowable stress shall not be used with the loads or load combinations given in Section 3.2.1.3.1 unless it can be demonstrated that such an increase is justified by structural behaviour caused by rate or duration of load (see section on timber and bamboo)

3.2.1.4 Load Combinations for Extraordinary Events

Where required by the applicable code, standard, or the authority having jurisdiction, strength and stability shall be checked to ensure that structures are capable of withstanding the effects of extraordinary (i.e., low-probability) events, such as fires, explosions, and vehicular impact.

3.2.1.5 Special Seismic Load Combinations

For both strength and allowable stress design methods where specifically required by relevant material design standards, elements and components shall be designed to resist the forces calculated using Eq. (2.16) when the effects of the seismic ground motion are additive to gravity forces and those calculated using Eq. (2.17) when the effects of the seismic ground motion counteract gravity forces.

1.	$1.2D + f_1 L + E_m$	Eq. (3.2.16)
2.	$0.9D + E_m$	Eq. (3.2.17)

where E_m = the maximum effect of horizontal and vertical forces as set forth in Section 12.4.3 of ASCE 7-05.

The load factor f_1 for L in combination Eq. (3.2.16) is equal to 0.5 for all occupancies when live load is less than or equal to 100 psf (4.79 kN/m2), with the exception of garages or areas of public assembly. Otherwise, f_1 is equal to 1.

SECTION 3.2 LOAD COMBINATIONS AND LOADS (CONTINUED)

3.2.2 Dead Loads, Soil Loads and Hydrostatic Pressure

3.2.2.1 Dead Loads

3.2.2.1.1 Definition

Dead loads consist of the weight of all materials of construction incorporated into the building including, but not limited to, walls, floors, roofs, ceilings, stairways, built-in partitions, finishes, cladding, and other similarly incorporated architectural and structural items, and fixed service equipment including the weight of cranes.

3.2.2.1.2 Weights of materials and constructions

In determining dead loads for purposes of design, the actual weights of materials and constructions shall be used provided that in the absence of definite information, values approved by the authority having jurisdiction shall be used.

3.2.2.1.3 Weight of fixed service equipment

In determining dead loads for purposes of design, the weight of fixed service equipment, such as plumbing stacks and risers, electrical feeders, and heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems shall be included.

3.2.2.2 Soil Loads and Hydrostatic Pressure

3.2.2.2.1 Lateral pressures

In the design of structures below grade, provision shall be made for the lateral pressure of adjacent soil. If soil loads are not given in a soil investigation report approved by the authority having jurisdiction, then the soil loads specified in Table 3.2.1 shall be used as the minimum design lateral loads. Due allowance shall be made for possible surcharge from fixed or moving loads. When a portion or the whole of the adjacent soil is below a free-water surface, computations shall be based upon the weight of the soil diminished by buoyancy, plus full hydrostatic pressure.

The lateral pressure shall be increased if soils with expansion potential are present at the site as determined by a geotechnical investigation.

Basement walls and other walls in which horizontal movement is restricted at the top shall be designed for at-rest pressure. Retaining walls free to move and rotate at the top are permitted to be designed for active pressure. As an exception, basement walls extending not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade and supporting flexible floor system shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure.

3.2.2.2.2 Uplift on floors and foundations

In the design of basement floors and similar approximately horizontal elements below grade, the upward pressure of water, where applicable, shall be taken as the full

hydrostatic pressure applied over the entire area. The hydrostatic load shall be measured from the underside of the construction. Any other upward loads shall be included in the design.

Where expansive soils are present under foundations or slabs-on-ground, the foundations, slabs, and other components shall be designed to tolerate the movement or resist the upward loads caused by the expansive soils, or the expansive soil shall be removed or stabilized around and beneath thestructure.

TABLE 3.2.1

DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD

DESCRIPTION OF BACKFILL MATERIAL[c]	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION	DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD[a] (pound per square foot per foot of depth)	
		Active pressure	At-rest pressure
Well-graded, clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GW	30	60
Poorly graded clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GP	30	60
Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand mixes	GM	40	60
Clayey gravels, poorly graded gravel-and-clay mixes	GC	45	60
Well-graded, clean sands; gravelly sand mixes	SW	30	60
Poorly graded clean sands; sand-gravel mixes	SP	30	60
Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixes	SM	45	60
Sand-silt clay mix with plastic fines	SM-SC	45	100
Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixes	SC	60	100
Inorganic silts and clayey silts	ML	45	100
Mixture of inorganic silt and clay	ML-CL	60	100
Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity	CL	60	100
Organic silts and silt clays, low plasticity	OL	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clayey silts, elastic silts	MH	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clays of high plasticity	CH	Note b	Note b
Organic clays and silty clays	OH	Note b	Note b

For SI: 1 pound per square foot per foot of length = 0.157 kPa/m , 1 foot = 304.8 mm

[a] Design lateral soil loads are given for moist conditions for the specified soils at their optimum densities. Actual field conditions shall govern. Submerged or saturated soil pressures shall include the weight of the buoyant soil plus the hydrostatic loads.

[b] Unsuitable as backfill material.

[c] The definition and classification of soil materials shall be in accordance with ASTM D2487.

SECTION3.2: LOAD COMBINATIONS AND LOADS (CONTINUED)

3.2.3 – Live Loads

3.2.3.1Definitions

The following definitions apply only to the provision of Section 3.2.3.

LIVE LOAD: A load produced by the use and occupancy of the building or other structure that does not include construction or environmental loads, such as wind load, snow load, rain load, earthquake load, flood load, or dead load.

ROOF LIVE LOAD:A load on a roof produced (1) during maintenance by workers, equipment, and materials and (2) during the life of the structure by movable objects, such as planters or other similar small decorative appurtenances that are not occupancy related.

FIXEDLADDER:A ladder that is permanently attached to a structure, building, or equipment.

GRAB BAR SYSTEM:A bar provided to support body weight in locations such as toilets, showers, and tub enclosures.

GUARDRAIL SYSTEM:A system of building components near open sides of an elevated surface for the purpose of minimizing the possibility of a fall from the elevated surface by people, equipment, or material.

HANDRAIL:A rail grasped by hand for guidance and support. A handrail assembly includes the handrail, supporting attachments, and structures.

VEHICLE BARRIER SYSTEM:A system of building components near open sides of a garage floor or ramp, or building walls that act as restraints for vehicles.

3.2.3.2UniformlyDistributedLoads

3.2.3.2.1Requiredliveloads

The live loads used in the design of buildings and   other structures   shall   be   the maximum loads expected by the intended use or occupancy, but shall in no case be less than the minimum uniformly distributed unit loads required by Table 3.2.2.

TABLE 3.2.2

MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS, L_0, AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOAD

OCCUPANCY OR USE	UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (lbs.)
1. Apartments (see residential)	—	—
2. Access floor systems		
Office use	50	2,000
Computer use	100	2,000
3. Armories and drill rooms	150	—
4. Assembly areas and theaters		
Fixed seats (fastened to floor)	60	
Follow spot, projections and control rooms	50	—
Lobbies	100	
Movable seats	100	
Stages and platforms	125	
5. Balconies		
On one- and two-family residences only, and not exceeding 100 sq ft	100 / 60	—
6. Bowling alleys	75	—
7. Catwalks	40	300
8. Dance halls and ballrooms	100	—
9. Decks	Same as occupancy served[g]	—
10. Dining rooms and restaurants	100	—
11. Dwellings (see residential)	—	—
12. Cornices	60	—
13. Corridors, except as otherwise indicated	100	—
14. Elevator machine room grating (on area of 4 in^2)	—	300
15. Finish light floor plate construction (on area of 1 in^2)	—	200
16. Fire escapes	100	
On single-family dwellings only	40	—
17. Garages (passenger vehicles only) Trucks and buses	40 Note a See Section 2.3.4	
18. Grandstands (see stadium and arena bleachers)	—	—
19. Gymnasiums, main floors and balconies	100	—
20. Handrails, guards and grab bars	See Section 2.3.5	
21. Hospitals		
Corridors above first floor	80	1,000
Operating rooms, laboratories	60	1,000
Patient rooms	40	1,000
22. Hotels (see residential)	—	—
23. Libraries		
Corridors above first floor	80	1,000
Reading rooms	60	1,000
Stack rooms	150[b]	1,000
24. Manufacturing		
Heavy	250	3,000
Light	125	2,000
25. Marquees	75	—
26. Office buildings		
Corridors above first floor	80	2,000
File and computer rooms shall be designed for heavier loads based on anticipated occupancy Lobbies and first-floor corridors	—	—
Offices	100 / 50	2,000 / 2,000
27. Penal institutions		
Cell blocks	40	—
Corridors	100	
28. Residential		
One- and two-family dwellings	10	
Uninhabitable attics without storage Uninhabitable attics with limited storage[h,i,j]	20 / 30	—
Habitable attics and sleeping areas All other areas except balconies and decks	40	
Hotels and multiple-family dwellings	40	
Private rooms and corridors serving them	100	
29. Reviewing stands, grandstands and bleachers	Note c	
30. Roofs		
All roof surfaces subject to maintenance workers		300
Awnings and canopies		
Fabric construction supported by a light weight rigid skeleton structure All other construction	5	
Ordinary flat, pitched, and curved roofs	Non reducible	
Primary roof members, exposed to a work floor Single panel point of lower chord of roof trusses or any point along primary structural members supporting roofs:	20	
Over manufacturing, storage		
	20	
All other occupancies		
Roofs used for other special purposes Roofs used for promenade purposes Roofs used for roof gardens or assembly purposes	Note k / 60 / 100	2,000 / 300 / Note k
31. Schools		
Classrooms	40	1,000
Corridors above first floor	80	1,000
First-floor corridors	100	1,000
32. Scuttles, skylight ribs and accessible ceilings	—	200
33. Sidewalks, vehicular driveways and yards, subject to trucking	250d	8,000e
34. Skating rinks	100	—
35. Stadiums and arenas	100c	
Bleachers	60c	—
Fixed seats (fastened to floor)		
36. Stairs and exits		
One- and two-family dwellings	40	Note f
All other	100	
37. Storage warehouses (shall be designed for heavier loads if required for anticipated storage)		
Heavy	250	
Light	125	
38. Stores		
Retail	100	1,000
First floor	75	1,000
Upper floors	125	1,000
Wholesale, all floors		
39. Vehicle barriers	See Section 2.3.5.3	
40. Walkways and elevated platforms (other than exit ways)	60	—
41. Yards and terraces, pedestrians	100	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2,

1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2,

1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN,

1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3

a   Floors in garages or portions of buildings used for the storage of motor vehicles shall be designed for the uniformly distributed live loads of Table 3.2.2 or the following concentrated loads: (1) for garages restricted to vehicles accommodating not more than nine passengers, 3,000 pounds acting on an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches; (2) for mechanical parking structures without slab or deck which are used for storing passenger vehicles only, 2,250 pounds per wheel.

b   The loading applies to stack room floors that support nonmobile, double-faced library bookstacks, subject to the following limitations:

   1. The nominal bookstack unit height shall not exceed 90 inches;

   2. The nominal shelf depth shall not exceed 12 inches for each face; and

   3. Parallel rows of double-faced bookstacks shall be separated by aisles not less than 36 inches wide.

c   Design in accordance with the ICC Standard on Bleachers, Folding and Telescopic Seating and Grandstands.

d   Other uniform loads in accordance with an approved method which contains provisions for truck loadings shall also be considered where appropriate.

e   The concentrated wheel load shall be applied on an area of 20 square inches.

f   Minimum concentrated load on stair treads (on area of 4 square inches) is 300 pounds

g   See Section 3.1.3.9 for decks attached to exterior walls.

h   Attics without storage are those where the maximum clear height betweenthe joist and rafter is less than 42 inches, or where there are not two or moreadjacent trusses with the same web configuration capable of containing arectangle 42 inches high by 2 feet wide, or greater, located within the planeof the truss. For attics without storage, this live load need not be assumed toact concurrently with any other live load requirements.

i   For attics with limited storage and constructed with trusses, this live loadneed only be applied to those portions of the bottom chord where there aretwo or more adjacent trusses with the same web configuration capable ofcontaining a rectangle 42 inches high by 2 feet wide or greater, locatedwithin the plane of the truss. The rectangle shall fit between the top of thebottom chord and the bottom of any other truss member, provided that eachof the following criteria is met:

   i. The attic area is accessible by a pull-down stairway or framed openingand

   ii. The truss shall have a bottom chord pitch less than 2:12.

   iii.Bottom chords of trusses shall be designed for the greater of actual imposeddead load or 10 psf, uniformly distributed over the entire span.

j   Attic spaces served by a fixed stair shall be designed to support the minimumlive load specified for habitable attics and sleeping rooms.

k Roofs used for other special purposes shall be designed for appropriate loadsas approved by the building official.

3.2.3.2.2 Provisionforpartitions

In office buildings or other buildings where partitions will be erected or rearranged, provision for partition weight shall be made, whether or not partitions are shown on the construction documents. Partition load shall not be less than uniformly distributed live load of 15 psf.

EXCEPTION: Apartitionliveloadisnotrequiredwheretheminimum specifiedliveloadexceeds80psf ($3.83 kN/m^2$).

3.2.3.3 ConcentratedLoads

Floors, roofs, and other similar surfaces shall be designed to support safely the uniformly distributed live loads prescribed in Section 3.2.3.2 or the concentrated load, in pounds or kiloNewton (kN), given in Table 3.2.2, whichever produces the greater load effects. Unless otherwise specified, the indicated concentration shall be assumed to be uniformly distributed over an area 2.5 ft (762 mm) square [6.25 ft2 (0.58 m2)] and shall be located so as to produce themaximum load effects in the structural members.

3.2.3.4 Truck and bus garages

Minimum live loads for garages having trucks or buses shall be as specified in Table 3.2.3, but shall not be less than 50 psf ($2.40 kN/m^2$), unless other loads are specifically justified and approved by the building official. Actual loads shall be used where they are greater than the loads specified in the table.

3.2.3.4.1 Truck and bus garage live load application

The concentrated load and uniform load shall be uniformly distributed over a 10-foot (3048 mm) width on a line normal to the centreline of the lane placed within a 12-foot-wide (3658 mm) lane. The loads shall be placed within their individuallanes so as to produce the maximum stress in eachstructural member. Single spans shall be designed for theuniform load in Table 3.2.3 and one simultaneousconcentratedload positioned to produce the maximum effect. Multiplespans shall be designed for the uniform load in Table3.2.3 on the spans and two simultaneous concentratedloads in two spans positioned to produce the maximum negativemoment effect. Multiple span design loads, for othereffects, shall be the same as for single spans.

TABLE 3.2.3

UNIFORM AND CONCENTRATED LOADS

LOADING CLASS[a]	UNIFORM LOAD (pounds/linear foot of lane)	CONCENTRATED LOAD (pounds)[b]	
		For moment design	For shear design
H20-44 and HS20-44	640	18,000	26,000
H15-44 and HS15-44	480	13,500	19,500

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot = 0.01459 kN/m, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN,1 ton = 8.90 kN.

[a] An H loading class designates a two-axle truck with a semitrailer. An HSloading class designates a tractor truck with a semitrailer. The numbers followingthe letter classification indicate the gross weight in tons of the standardtruck and the year the loadings were instituted.

[b] See Section 3.2.3.4.1 for the loading of multiple spans.

3.2.3.5 LoadsonHandrails,Guardrail Systems,GrabBarSystems,Vehicle BarrierSystems,andFixedLadders

3.2.3.5.1Loadsonhandrailsandguardrailsystems

All handrail assemblies and guardrail systems shallbe designed to resist a single concentrated load of 200 lb(0.89 kN) applied in any direction at any point along the top and to transfer this load through the supports to the structure.

Further, all handrail assemblies and guardrail systems shall be designed to resist a load of 50 lb/ft (pound-force per linear foot) (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction at the top and to transfer this load through the supports to the structure. This load need not be assumed toact concurrently with the load specified in the preceding paragraph, and this load need not be considered for the following occupancies:

1. One- and two-family dwellings.

2. Factory, industrial, and storage occupancies, in areas that are not accessible to the public and that serve an occupant load not greater than 50, the minimum load in that are shall be 20 lb/ft (0.29kN/m).

Intermediate rails (all those except the handrail), balusters, and panel fillers shall be designed to withstand a horizontally applied normal load of 50 lb (0.22 kN) on an area not to exceed 1 ft square (305 mm square) including openings and space between rails. Reactions due to this loading are not required to be superimposed with those of either preceding paragraph.

Where handrails and guards are designed using working stress design exclusively for the loads specified in this section, the allowable stress for the members and their attachments are permitted to be increased by one-third.

3.2.3.5.2Loadsongrabbarsystems

Grab bar systems shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 250 lb (1.11 kN) applied in any direction at any point.

3.2.3.5.3Loadsonvehiclebarriersystems

Vehicle barrier systems for passenger cars shall be designed to resist a single load of 6,000 lb (26.70 kN) applied horizontally in any direction to the barrier system, and shall have anchorages or attachments capable of transferring this load to the structure. For design of the system, the load shall be assumed to act at a minimum height of 1 ft 6 in. (460 mm) above the floor or ramp surface on an area not to exceed 1 foot square (305 mmsquare), and is not required to be assumed to act concurrently with any handrail or guardrail loadings specified in Section 3.2.3.4.1. Garages accommodating trucks and

buses shall be designed in accordance with an approved method, which contains provision for traffic railings.

3.2.3.5.4 Loads on fixed ladders

The minimum design live load on fixed ladders with rungs shall be a single concentrated load of 300 lb (1.33 kN), and shall be applied at any point to produce the maximum load effect on the element being considered. The number and position of additional concentrated live load units shall be a minimum of 1 unit of 300 lb (1.33 kN) for every 10 ft (3,048 mm) of ladder height**.**

Where rails of fixed ladders extend above a floor or platform at the top of the ladder, each side rail extension shall be designed to resist a concentrated live load of 100 lb (0.445 kN) in any direction at any height up to the top of the side rail extension. Ship ladders with treads instead of rungs shall have minimum design loads as stairs, defined in Table 3.2.2.

3.2.3.6 Loads Not Specified

For occupancies or uses not designated in Sections 3.2.3.2 or 3.2.3.3, the live load shall be determined in accordance with a method approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.2.3.7 Partial Loading

The full intensity of the appropriately reduced live load applied only to a portion of a structure or member shall be accounted for if it produces a more unfavorable effect than the same intensity applied over the full structure or member. Roof live loads are to be distributed as specified in Table 3.2.2.

3.2.3.8 Impact Loads

The live loads specified in Sections 3.2.3.5.1 and 3.2.3.5.2 shall be assumed to include adequate allowance for ordinary impact conditions. Provision shall be made in the structural design for uses and loads that involve unusual vibration and impact forces.

3.2.3.8.1 Elevators

All elevator loads shall be increased by 100 percent for impact and the structural supports shall be designed within the limits of deflection prescribed by ANSI A17.2 and ANSI/ASME A17.1.

3.2.3.8.2 Machinery

For the purpose of design, the weight of machinery and moving loads shall be increased as follows to allow for impact: (I) elevator machinery, 100 percent; (2) light machinery, shaft- or motor-driven, 20 percent; (3) reciprocating machinery or power-driven units, 50 percent; and (4) hangers for floors or balconies, 33 percent. All percentages shall be increased where specified by the manufacturer.

3.2.3.9 Reduction in Live Loads

Except for roof uniform live loads, all other minimum uniformly distributed live loads, L_0 in Table 3.2.2, may be reduced according to the following provisions.

3.2.3.9.1 General

Subject to the limitations of Sections 3.2.3.9.2 through 3.2.3.9.5, members for which a value of $K_{LL}A_T$ is 400 ft2 (37.16 m2) or more are permitted to be designed for a reduced live load in accordance with the following equation:

$$L = L_0 \left(0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right)$$

Eq. (3.2.18)

In SI:

$$L = L_0 \left(0.25 + \frac{4.57}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right)$$

where

$L=$ reduced design live load per ft2 (m2) of area supported by the member

$L_0=$ unreduced design live load per ft2 (m2) of area supported by the member(see Table 3.2.2)

$K_{LL} =$ live load element factor (see Table 3.2.4)

$A_T=$ tributary area in ft2 (m2)

L shall not be less than 0.50 L_0 for members supporting one floor and L shall not be less than 0.40 L_0 for members supporting two or more floors.

TABLE 3.2.4

LIVE LOAD ELEMENT FACTOR, K_{LL}

Element	K_{LL}
Interior columns	4
Exterior columns without cantilever slabs	4
Edge columns with cantilever slabs	3
Corner columns with cantilever slabs	2
Edge beams without cantilever slabs	2
Interior beams	2

All other members not identified above including:
 	
   Edge beams with cantilever slabs
 	
   Cantilever beams
 	
   Two-way slabs
 	
   Members without provisions for continuous shear transfer normal to their span
	1

3.2.3.9.1.1 Heavy live loads

Live loads that exceed 100 lb/ft2 (4.79 kN/m^2) shall not be reduced.

EXCEPTIONS: (1) Live loads for members supporting two or more floors may be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent, but the live load shall not be less than *L* as calculated in Section 3.2.3.9.1.

(2) For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design engineer that a rational approach has been used and that such reduction are warranted.

3.2.3.9.1.2 Passenger car garages

The live loads shall not be reduced in passenger car garages.

EXCEPTION: Live loads for members supporting two or more floors may be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent, but the live load shall not be less than *L* as calculated in Section 3.2.3.9.1.

3.2.3.9.1.3 Special occupancies

Live loads of 100 lb/ft2 (4.79 kN/m^2) or less shall not be reduced in public assembly occupancies.

3.2.3.9.1.4 Special structural elements

Live load shall not be reduced for one-way slabs except as permitted in Section 3.2.3.9.2. Live loads of 100 psf(4.79 kN/m^2) or less shall not be reduced for roof members except as specified in Section 3.2.3.10.

3.2.3.9.2 Alternative floor live load reduction

As an alternative to Section 3.2.3.9.1, floor live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following provisions. Such reductions shall apply to slab systems, beams, girders, columns, piers, walls and foundation.

1. A reduction shall not be permitted in group A occupancies (i.e., Assembly Group A)

2. A reduction shall not be permitted where the live load exceeds 100 psf(4.79 kN/m^2) except that the design live load for members supporting two or more floors is permitted to be reduced by 20 percent.

3. A reduction shall not be permitted in passenger vehicle parking garages except that the live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent.

4. For live loads, not exceeding 100 psf(4.79 kN/m^2), the design live load for any structural member supporting 150 square feet (13.94 m^2) or more is permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following equation:

$$R = 0.08 (A - 150) \hspace{4cm} \text{Eq. (3.2.19)}$$

In SI: $R = 0.861 (A - 13.94)$

Such reduction shall not exceed the smallest of:

40 percent for horizontal members;

60 percent for vertical members; or

R as determined by the following equation.

$$R = 23.1 \, (1 + D/L_0) \qquad \text{Eq. (3.2.20)}$$

where   A = area of floor supported by the member, ft2 (m2)

D = dead load per ft2 (m^2) of area supported

L_0= unreduced live load per ft2 (m^2) of area supported

R = reduction in percentage

3.2.3.10 Distribution of Floor Live Loads

Where uniform floor live loads are involved in the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the minimum applied loads shall be the full dead loads on all spans in combination with the floor live loads on spans selected to produce the greatest effect at each location under consideration. It shall be permitted to reduce floor live loads in accordance with Section 3.2.3.9.

3.2.3.11 Roof Loads

The structural supports of roofs and marquees shall be designed to resist wind and, where applicable, earthquake load, in addition to the dead load of construction and appropriate live loads as prescribed in this section, or set forth in Table 3.2.2. The live loads acting on a sloping surface shall be assumed to act vertically on the horizontal projection of that surface.

3.2.3.11.1 Distribution of roof loads

Where uniform roof live loads are reduced to less than 20 psf(0.958 kN/m^2) in accordance with Section 3.2.3.11.2.1 and are involved in the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the minimum applied loads shall be the full dead loads on all spans in combination with the roof live loads on adjacent spans or on alternate spans, whichever produces the greatest effect. See Section 3.2.3.11.2 for minimum roof live loads.

3.2.3.11.2 Reduction in roof live loads

The minimum uniformly distributed roof live loads, L_0 in Table 3.2.2, are permitted to be reduced according to the following provisions.

3.2.3.11.2.1 Flat, pitched, and curved roofs

Ordinary flat, pitched, and curved roofs are permitted to be designed for a reduced roof live load, as specified in Eq. (2.21) or other controlling combinations of loads, as discussed in Section 3.2.1, whichever produces the greater load. In structures such as greenhouses, where special scaffolding is used as a work surface for workmen and materials during maintenance and repair operations, a lower roof load than specified in Eq. (2.21) shall not be used unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction. On such structures, the minimum roof live load shall be 12 psf (0.58 kNlm^2).

$$L_r = L_o \, R_1 R_2 \quad \text{where } 12 \leq L_r \leq 20 \qquad \text{Eq. (3.2.21)}$$

In SI:

$$L_r = L_o R_1 R_2 \quad \text{where } 0.58 \leq L_r \leq 0.96$$

where

L_r = reduced roof live load per ft2 (m^2) of horizontal projection in pounds per ft2 (kN/m^2)

The reduction factors R_1 and R_2 shall be determined as follows:

$$R_1 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } A_t \leq 200 \text{ ft}^2 & \text{Eq. (3.2.22}a) \\ 1.2 - 0.001 A_t & \text{for } 200 \text{ ft}^2 < A_t < 600 \text{ ft}^2 & \text{Eq. (3.2.22}b) \\ 0.6 & \text{for } A_t \geq 600 \text{ ft}^2 & \text{Eq. (3.2.22}c) \end{cases}$$

In SI:

$$R_1 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } A_t \leq 18.58 \text{ m}^2 \\ 1.2 - 0.011 A_t & \text{for } 18.58 \text{ m}^2 < A_t < 55.74 \text{ m}^2 \\ 0.6 & \text{for } A_t \geq 55.74 \text{ m}^2 \end{cases}$$

where A_t = tributary area (i.e., span length multiplied by effective width) in ft2 (m^2) supported by any structural member and

$$R_2 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } F \leq 4 & \text{Eq. (3.2.23}a) \\ 1.2 - 0.05 F & \text{for } 4 < F < 12 & \text{Eq. (3.2.23}b) \\ 0.6 & \text{for } F \geq 12 & \text{Eq. (3.2.23}c) \end{cases}$$

where, for a pitched roof, F = number of inches of rise per foot (in SI: $F = 0.12 \times$ slope, with slope expressed as a percentage) and, for an arch or dome, F = rise-to-span ratio multiplied by 32.

3.2.3.11.2.2 Special purpose roofs

Roofs that have an occupancy function, such as roof gardens, assembly purposes, promenade purposes, or other special purposes shall be designed for a minimum live load as required in Table 3.2.2 and are permitted to have their uniformly distributed live load reduced in accordance with the requirements of Section 3.2.3.9.

3.2.3.11.2.3 Landscaped roofs

Where roofs are to be landscaped, the uniform design live load in the landscaped area shall be 20 psf(0.958 kN/m^2). The weight of the landscaping materials shall be considered as dead load and shall be computed on the basis of saturation of the soil.

3.2.3.11.2.4 Awnings and canopies

Awnings and canopies shall be designed for uniform live loads as required in Table 3.2.2 as well as for wind loads as specified in Section 3.

3.2.3.12 Crane Loads

The crane live load shall be the rated capacity of the crane. Design loads for the runway beams, including connections and support brackets, of moving bridge cranes and

monorail cranes shall include the maximum wheel loads of the crane and the vertical impact, lateral, and longitudinal forces induced by the moving crane.

3.2.3.12.1 Maximum Wheel Load

The maximum wheel loads shall be the wheel loads produced by the weight of the bridge, as applicable, plus the sum of the rated capacity and the weight of the trolley with the trolley positioned on its runway at the location where the resulting load effect is maximum.

3.2.3.12.2 Vertical impact force

The maximum wheel loads of the crane shall be increased by the percentages shown below to determine the induced vertical impact or vibration force:

Monorail cranes (powered)	25
Cab-operated or remotely operated bridge cranes (powered)	25
Pendant-operated bridge cranes (powered)	10
Bridge cranes or monorail cranes with hand-geared bridge, trolley, and hoist	0

3.2.3.12.3 Lateral force

The lateral force on crane runway beams with electrically powered trolleys shall be calculated as 20 percent of the sum of the rated capacity of the crane and the weight of the hoist and trolley. The lateral force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction perpendicular to the beam, and shall be distributed according to the lateral stiffness of the runway beam and supporting structure.

3.2.3.12.4 Longitudinal force

The longitudinal force on crane runway beams, except for bridge cranes with hand-geared bridges, shall be calculated as 10 percent of the maximum wheel loads of the crane. The longitudinal force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam in either direction parallel to the beam.

3.2.3.13 Interior Walls and Partitions

Interior walls and partitions that exceed 6 fee (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength to resist the loads to which they are subjected but not less than a horizontal load of 5 psf (0.240 kN/m^2).

EXCEPTION: Fabric partitions complying with Section 3.2.3.13.1 shall not be required to resist the minimum horizontal load of 5 psf(0.240 kN/m^2).

3.2.3.13.1 Fabric partition

Fabric partitions that exceed 6 ft (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength to resist the following load conditions:

1. A horizontal distributed load of 5 psf(0.240 kN/m^2) applied to the partition framing. The total area used to determine the distributed load shall be the area of the fabric face between the framing members to which the fabric is attached. The total distributed load shall be

uniformly applied to such framing members in proportion to the length of each member.

2. A concentrated load of 40 pounds (0.176 kN) applied to an 8-in. diameter (203 mm) area [(50.3 m^2 (32452 mm^2)] of the fabric face at a height of 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.

3.2.4 – Rain Loads

3.2.4.1 Symbols and Notation

R = rain load on the undeflected roof, in lb/ft2 (kN/m^2). When the phrase "undeflected roof is used, deflections from loads (including dead loads) shall not be considered when determining the amount of rain on the roof.

d_s = depth of water on the undeflected roof up to the inlet of the secondary drainage system when the primary drainage system is blocked (i.e., the static head), in inches (mm).

d_h = additional depth of water on the undeflected roof above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow (i.e., the hydraulic head), in inches (mm).

3.2.4.2 Roof Drainage

Roof drainage systems shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of the code having jurisdiction. The flow capacity of secondary (overflow) drains or scuppers shall not be less than that of the primary drains or scuppers.

3.2.4.3 Design Rain Loads

Each portion of a roof shall be designed to sustain the load of all rainwater that will accumulate on it if the primary drainage system for that portion is blocked plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow.

$$R = 5.2 (d_s + d_h) \qquad\qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.2.24)}$$

In SI:

$$R = 0.0098 (d_s + d_h)$$

If the secondary drainage systems contain drain lines, such lines and their pointof discharge shall be separate from the primary drain lines.

3.2.4.4 Ponding Instability

"Ponding" refers to the retention of water due solely to the deflection of relatively flat roofs. Roofs with a slope less than 1/4" per feet [1.19 degrees (0.0208 rad)] shall be investigated by structural analysis to assure that they possess adequate stiffness to preclude progressive deflection (i.e., instability) as rain falls on them. The primary drainage system within an area subjected to ponding shall be considered to be blocked in this analysis.

3.2.4.5 ControlledDrainage

Roofs equipped with hardware to control the rate of drainage shall be equipped with a secondary drainage system at a higher elevation that limits accumulation of water on the roof above that elevation. Such roofs shall be designed to sustain the load of all rainwater that will accumulate on them to the elevation of the secondary drainage system plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow (determined from Section 3.2.4.3).

Suchroofs shall also be checked for ponding instability (determined from Section 3.2.4.4).

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 3STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION 3.3WIND DESIGN CRITERIA

3.3.1General

3.3.1.1Scope

Buildings, including the Main Wind-Force Resisting System (MWFRS) and all components and cladding thereof, shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as specified herein.Decreases in wind loads shall not be made for the effect of shielding by other structures.

3.3.1.2 Allowed Procedures

The design wind loads for buildings, including the MWFRS and component and cladding elements thereof, shall be determined using one of the following procedures:(1) Method 1 – Simplified Procedure as specified in Section 3.3.4 for buildings meeting the requirements specified therein; (2) Method 2 – Analytical Procedure as specified in Section 3.3.5 for buildings meeting the requirements specified therein; (3) Method 3 – Wind Tunnel Procedure as specified in Section 3.3.6.

3.3.1.3 Wind Pressures Acting on Opposite Faces of Each Building Surface

In the calculation of design wind loads for the MWFRS and for components and cladding of buildings, the algebraic sum of the pressures acting on opposite faces of each building surface shall be taken into account.

3.3.1.4 Minimum Design Wind Loading

The design wind load, determined by any one of the proceduresspecified in Section 3.3.1.2, shall be not less than that specified in this section.

3.3.1.4.1 Mainwind-force resistingsystem

The wind load to be used in the design of the MWFRS for an enclosed or partially enclosed building or other structure shall not be less than 10 lb/ft2 (0.48 kN/m2) multiplied by the area of the building or structure projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. The design wind force for open buildings and other structures shall be not less than 10 lb/ft2 (0.48 kN/m2) multiplied by the area A_f.

3.3.1.4.2 Componentsandcladding

Thedesignwindpressure forcomponentsandcladdingofbuildings shallnotbelessthan a netpressure of10lb/ft^2(0.48kN/m^2)actingineitherdirection normaltothesurface.

3.3.2DEFINITIONS

The followingdefinitionsapplyonlytotheprovisionsof Section 3.3.

APPROVED: Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

BASIC WIND SPEED, V: Three-second gust speed at 33 ft (10 m) above the ground inExposureC(see Section 3.3.5.6.3)as determinedinaccordancewithSection 3.3.5.4.

BUILDING, ENCLOSED: Abuildingthatdoesnotcomply withtherequirementsforopenor partiallyenclosedbuildings.

BUILDINGENVELOPE: Cladding, roofing, exteriorwalls, glazing, doorassemblies, window

assemblies, skylightassemblies, andothercomponentsenclosingthebuilding.

BUILDING, FLEXIBLE: Slenderbuildings thathave afundamental naturalfrequencylessthan1Hz.

BUILDING, LOW-RISE: Enclosed or partiallyenclosed buildingsthatcomplywiththefollowingconditions:

1.Mean roof height h less than or equal to 60 ft (18 m).

2.Mean roof height h does not exceed least horizontal dimension.

BUILDING, OPEN:A building having each wallat least 80percent open.This conditionisexpressed foreachwall by theequation$A_0 \geq 0.8 Ag$where

A_0= totalareaofopeningsinawallthatreceivespositive external pressure, in$ft^2(m^2)$

A_x=thegrossareaofthatwallinwhichA0isidentified, in $ft^2(m^2)$

BUILDING, PARTIALLY ENCLOSED:A building that complieswithbothofthefollowingconditions:

1.The total area of openings in a wall that receives positive external pressure exceeds the sum of the areas of openings in the balance of the building envelope (walls and roof) by more than 10 percent.

2.The total area of openings in a wall that receives positive external pressure exceeds4 ft2 (0.37 m^2) or 1 percent of the area of that wall, whichever is smaller, and the percentage of openings in the balance of the building envelope does not exceed 20 percent.

These conditions are expressed by the following equations:

1. $A_0 > 1.10 A_{0i}$;

2. $A_0 > 4$ sqft (0.37 m2) or> 0.01 Ag, whichever is smaller,

and$A_{0i} / Agi \leq 0.20$

where

A_0, Agare as defined for Open Building

A_{0i} = the sum of the areas of openings in the building envelope (walls and roof) not including A_0, in ft^2 (m^2)

Agi = the sum of the gross surface areas of the building envelope (walls and roof) not including Ag , in ft^2 (m^2)

BUILDING, REGULAR-SHAPED: A building having no unusual geometrical irregularity in spatial form.

BUILDING, RIGID: A buildingwhosefundamentalfrequencyisgreater than or equal to1Hz.

BUILDING, SIMPLE DIAPHRAGM: A building in which both windward and leeward wind loads are transmitted through floor and roof diaphragms to the same vertical MWFRS (e.g., no structural separations).

COMPONENTS AND CLADDING: Elements of the building envelope that do not qualify as part of the MWFRS.

DESIGNFORCE, F: Equivalent static force tobeusedin thedetermination

ofwindloadsforopenbuildings.

DESIGN PRESSURE, p: Equivalent staticpressure to be used in the determination of wind loads for buildings.

EAVEHEIGHT, h: Thedistancefromthegroundsurface adjacent to the building to the roof eave line at a particularwall.

If the height of the eave varies along the wall, the average height shall be used.

EFFECTIVE WIND AREA, A: The area used to determine GCp . For component and cladding elements, the effective wind area in Figs. 3.3.10 through 3.3.16 and Fig. 3.3.18 is the span length multiplied by an effective width that need not be less than one-third the span length. For cladding fasteners, the effective wind area shall not be greater than the area that is tributary to an individual fastener.

ESCARPMENT: Also known as scarp, with respect to topographic effects in Section 3.3.5.7, a cliff or steep slope generally separating two levels or gently sloping areas (see Fig. 3.3.4).

FREE ROOF: Roof with a configuration generally conforming to those shown in Figs. 3.3.17Athrough 3.3.17D (monoslope, pitched, or troughed) in an open building with no enclosing walls underneath the roof surface.

GLAZING: Glass or transparent or translucent plastic sheet used in windows, doors, skylights, or curtain walls.

GLAZING, IMPACT RESISTANT: Glazing that has been shown by testing in accordance with ASTM El886 and ASTM El996 or other approved test methods to withstand the impact of wind-borne missileslikely to be generated in wind-borne debris regions during design winds.

HILL: With respect to topographic effects in Section 3.3.5.7, a land surface characterized by strong relief in any horizontal direction (see Fig. 3.3.3).

IMPORTANCE FACTOR, I: A factor that accounts for the degree of hazard to human life and damage to property.

MAIN WIND-FORCE RESISTING SYSTEM (MWFRS): An assemblage of structural elements assigned to provide support and stability for the overall structure. The system generally receives wind loading from more than one surface.

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT, h: The average of the roof eave height and the height to the highest point on the roof surface, except that, for roof angles of less than or equal to**10°,** the mean roof height shall be the roof eave height.

OPENINGS: Apertures or holes in the building envelope that allow air to flow through the building envelope and that are designed as "open" during design winds as defined by these provisions.

RECOGNIZED LITERATURE: Published research findings and technical papers that are approved.

RIDGE: With respect to topographic effects in Section 3.3.5.7 an elongated crest of a hill characterized by strong relief in two directions (see Fig. 3.3.3).

3.3.3 SYMBOLS AND NOTATION

The following symbols and notation apply only to the provisions of Section 3.3.

A=effective wind area, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_f=area of open buildings either normal to the wind direction or projected on a plane normal tothe wind direction, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_g=the gross area of that wall in which $A_0$is identified, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_{gi}=the sum of the gross surface areas of the building envelope (walls and roof) not including A_g, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_0=total area of openings in a wall that receives positive external pressure, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_{0i}=the sum of the areas of openings in the building envelope (walls and roof) not including A_0, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_{0g}=total area of openings in the building envelope, in ft^2 (m^2)

A_s =gross area of the solid freestanding wall or solid sign, in ft^2 (m^2)

a =width of pressure coefficient zone, in ft (m)

B =horizontal dimension of building measured normal to wind direction, in ft (m)

$\bar{b}$ =mean hourly wind speed factor in Eq. (3.14)from Table 3.3.3

$\hat{b}$ =3-s gust speed factor from Table 3.3.3

C_f=force coefficient to be used in determination of wind loads for other structures

C_N=net pressure coefficient to be used in determination of wind loads for open buildings

C_p =external pressure coefficient to be used in determination of wind loads for buildings

c=turbulence intensity factor in Eq. (3.5)from Table 3.3.3

D =diameter of a circular structure or member, in ft (m)

D'=depth of protruding elements such as ribs and spoilers, in ft (m)

F =design wind force for other structures, in lb (N)

G =gust effect factor

G_f=gust effect factor for MWFRSs of flexible buildings

GC_{pn}= combined net pressure coefficient for a parapet

GC_p=product of external pressure coefficient and gust effect factor to be used in determination of wind loads for buildings

GC_{pf}=productoftheequivalentexternalpressure   coefficientandgust-effectfactortobeusedindeterminationof windloadsforMWFRS of low-rise buildings

GC_{pi}=productofinternalpressurecoefficientandgust-effectfactortobeusedindeterminationofwind loadsforbuildings

g_Q=peakfactorforbackgroundresponseinEqs.(3.4)and(3.8)

g_R=peakfactorforresonant responseinEq.(3.8)

g_v=peakfactorforwindresponseinEqs.(3.4)and (3.8)

H=heightofhillorescarpmentinFig. 3.3.3, inft(m)

h=meanroofheightof abuilding, exceptthateaveheightshallbeused forroofangleθoflessthanorequalto 10°, in ft(m)

h_e=roofeaveheightataparticularwall, ortheaverageheightiftheeave varies longthewall

I=importancefactor

I_z =intensityofturbulencefromEq.(3.5)

K_1, K_2, K_3=multipliersinFig.3.3.3toobtainK_{zt}

K_d=winddirectionalityfactorinTable3.3.5

K_h=velocitypressureexposurecoefficientevaluated atheightz=h

K_z=velocitypressureexposurecoefficientevaluated atheightz

K_{zt}=topographicfactorasdefinedinSection3.3.5.7

L=horizontaldimensionofabuildingmeasured parallel thewinddirection, inft (m)

L_h=distanceupwindofcrestofhillorescarpmentinFig.3.3.3 to wherethedifferenceinground elevationishalftheheightofhillorescarpment, in ft(m)

$L_{\bar{z}}$ =integrallengthscaleofturbulence, inft(m)

L_r=horizontaldimensionofreturncornerforasolid freestanding wallorsolidsignfromFig.3.3.19, inft(m)

ℓ =integrallengthscalefactorfromTable3.3.3, ft(m)

N_1=reducedfrequencyfrom Eq.(3.12)

n_l=building naturalfrequency, Hz

p=designpressuretobeusedindeterminationof windloadsforbuildings, inlb/ft^2 (N/m^2)

p_L=windpressureactingonleewardfaceinFig.3.3.8, inlb/ft^2 (N/m^2)

p_{net}=netdesignwindpressurefromEq.(3.2), inlb/ft^2 (N/m^2)

p_{net30}=netdesignwindpressureforExposureB ath=30ftandI= 1.0fromFig.3.3.1, inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

p_p=combinednetpressureonaparapetfrom Eq.(3.20), inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

p_s=netdesignwindpressurefromEq.(3.1), inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

p_{s30}=simplifieddesignwindpressure forExposureBath= 30ftandI=1.0fromFig.3.3.1, inlb/ft^2 (N/m^2)

p_w=windpressureactingonwindwardfacein Fig.3.3.8, inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

Q=backgroundresponsefactorfromEq.(3.6)

q=velocitypressure, inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

q_h =velocitypressureevaluatedatheightz= h, in lb/ft^2(N/m^2)

q_i =velocitypressureforinternalpressure determination, inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

q_p=velocitypressureattopofparapet, inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

q_z=velocitypressureevaluatedatheightzaboveground,inlb/ft^2(N/m^2)

R=resonant response factor from Eq. (3.10)

R_B, R_h, R_L =values from Eq. (3.13)

R_i=reduction factor from Eq. (3.16)

R_n=value from Eq. (3. 11)

s =vertical dimensionof the solid freestanding wall or solid sign from Fig. 3.3.20, in ft (m)

r=rise-to-span ratio for arched roofs

V=basic wind speed obtained from Table 3.3.1, in mi/h(m/s). The basic wind speedcorrespondsto a3-s gust speed at 33 ft (10 m) above ground in exposure Category C

V_i=un-partitionedinternalvolume, ft^3(m^3)

$\overline{V}_{\bar{z}}$ =meanhourlywindspeedatheight $\bar{z}$, ft/s(m/s)

W=widthofbuildinginFigs.3.3.11and3.3.14AandBandwidthofspaninFigs.3.3.12and   3.3.14, inft (m)

X=distancetocentreofpressurefromwindward edgeinFig.3.3.17, inft(m)

x=distanceupwindordownwindofcrestin Fig.3.3.3, inft(m)

z=heightabovegroundlevel, inft(m)

$\bar{z}$ =equivalentheightofstructure, inft(m)

z_g=nominalheightoftheatmosphericboundary   layerusedinthisstandard.Valuesappearin Table3.3.3

z_{min}=exposureconstantfromTable3.3.3

α=3-s gust-speedpowerlawexponentfromTable 3.3.2

$\hat{\alpha}$ =reciprocalofαfromTable3.3.3

$\overline{\alpha}$ =meanhourlywind-speedpowerlawexponent inEq.3.14fromTable3.3.3

B=dampingratio, percentcriticalforbuildings

$\in$ =ratioofsolidareatogrossareaforsolidfree-standingwall, solidsign, opensign, faceofa trussedtower, orlatticestructure

λ=adjustmentfactorforbuildingheightandexposurefromFigs.3.3.1and3.3.2

$\overline{\in}$ =integral length scale power law exponent in Eq.(3.7) fromTable3.3.3

η=valueusedinEq.(3.13)(seeSection3.3.5.8.2)

θ =angleofplaneofroof fromhorizontal, indegrees

v=height-to-widthratioforsolidsign

3.3.4 – Method 1 - Simplified Procedure

3.3.4.1Scope

A building whose design wind loads are determined in accordance with this section shall meet all the conditions of 3.3.4.1.1 or 3.3.4.1.2. If a building qualifies only under 3.3.4.1.2 for design of its components and cladding, then its MWFRS shall be designed by Method 2 or Method 3.

3.3.4.1.1 Main wind-force resisting systems

For the design of MWFRSs the building must meet all of the following conditions:

1. The building is a simple diaphragm building as defined in Section 3.3.2.

2. The building is a low-rise building as defined in Section 3.3.2.

3. The building is enclosed as defined in Section 3.3.2

4. The building is a regular-shaped building or structure as defined in Section 3.3.2.

5. The building is not classified as a flexible building as defined in Section 3.3.2.

6. The building does not have response characteristics making it subject to across wind loading, vortex shedding, instability due to galloping or flutter; and does not have a site location for which channeling effects or buffeting in the wake of upwind obstructions warrant special consideration.

7. The building has an approximately symmetrical cross section in each direction with either a flat roof or a gable or hip roof with $\theta \leq 45°$.

8. The building is exempted from torsional load cases as indicated in Note 5 of Fig. 3.9, or the torsional load cases defined in Note 5 do not control the design of any of the MWFRSs of the building.

3.3.4.1.2 Components and cladding

For the design of components and cladding the building must meet all the following conditions:

1. The mean roof height h must be less than or equal to 60 ft ($h \leq 60$ ft).

2. The building is enclosed as defined in Section 3.3.2

3. The building is a regular-shaped building or structure as defined in Section 3.3.2.

4. The building does not have response characteristics making it subject to across wind loading, vortex shedding, instability due to galloping or flutter; and does not have a site location for which channeling effects or buffeting in the wake of upwind obstructions warrant special consideration.

5. The building has either a flat roof, a gable roof with, or a hip roof with $\theta \leq 45°$, or a hip roof with $\theta \leq 27°$.

3.3.4.2 Design Procedure

1. The basic wind speed V shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.5.4. The wind shall be assumed to come from any horizontal direction.

2. An importance factor I shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.5.5.

3. An exposure category shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.5.6.

4. A height and exposure adjustment coefficient, λ , shall be determined from Fig. 3.3.1.

3.3.4.2.1 Main wind-force resisting system

Simplified design wind pressures, p_s, for the MWFRSs of low-rise simple diaphragm buildings represent the net pressures (sum of internal and external) to be applied to the horizontal and vertical projections of building surfaces as shown in Fig. 3.3.1. For the horizontal pressures (zones A, B, C, D), $p_s$is the combination of the windward and leeward net pressures. p_s, shall be determined by the following equation:

$$p_s = \lambda \, K_{zt} \, I \, p_{s30}$$

<div align="right">Eq. (3.3.1)</div>

where

λ=adjustment factor for building height and exposure from Fig. 3.3.1

Kzt=topographic factor as defined in Section 3.5.7 evaluated at mean roof height, h

I=importance factor as defined in Section 3.2

p_{s30}=simplified design wind pressure for Exposure B, ath = 30 ft, and for I = 1.0, from Fig. 3.3.1

3.3.4.2.1.1 Minimum pressures

The load effects of the design wind pressures from Section 3.3.4.2.1 shall not be less than the minimum load case from Section 3.1.4.1 assuming the pressures, p_s, for zones A, B, C, and D all equal to +10 psf, while assuming zones E, F, G, and H all equal to 0 psf.

3.3.4.2.2 Components and cladding

Net design wind pressures, p_{net}, for the components and cladding of buildings designed using Method 1 represent the net pressures (sum of internal and external) to be applied normal to each building surface as shown in Fig. 3.2.p_{net} shall be determined by the following equation:

$$p_{net} = \lambda \, K_{zt} I \, p_{net30}$$

<div align="right">Eq. (3.2)</div>

where

λ = adjustment factor for building height and exposure from Fig. 3.3.2

K_{zt}= topographic factor as defined in Section 3.3.5.7 evaluated at mean roof height, h

I = importance factor as defined in Section 3.3.2

P_{net30}= *net design wind pressure for exposure B, at h = 30 ft, and for I = 1.0, from Fig. 3.3.2*

3.3.4.2.2.1 Minimum pressures

The positive design wind pressures, p_{net}, from Section 3.3.4.2.2 shall not be less than +10 psf, and the negative design wind pressures, p_{net}, from Section 3.3.4.2.2 shall not be less than - 10 psf.

3.3.4.3 Air Permeable Cladding

Design wind loads determined from Fig. 3.3.2 shall be used for all air permeable cladding unless approved test data or the recognized literature demonstrate lower loads for the type of air permeable cladding being considered.

3.3.5 – Method 2 -Analytical Procedure

3.3.5.1 Scope

A building whose design wind loads are determined in accordance with this section shall meet all of the following conditions:

1. The building is a regular-shaped building as defined in Section 3.3.2.

2. The building does not have response characteristics making it subject to across wind loading, vortex shedding, instability due to galloping or flutter; or does not have a site location for which channeling effects or buffeting in the wake of upwind obstructions warrant special consideration.

3.3.5.2 Limitations

The provisions of Section 3.3.5 take into consideration the load magnification effect caused by gusts in resonance with along wind vibrations of flexible buildings. Buildings not meeting the requirements of Section 3.3.5.1, or having unusual shapes or responsecharacteristics, shall be designed using recognized literature documenting such wind load effects or shall use the wind tunnel procedure specified inSection 3.3.6.

3.3.5.2.1 Shielding

There shall be no reductions in velocity pressure due to apparent shielding afforded by buildings or terrain features.

3.3.5.2.2 Air permeable cladding

Design wind loads determined from Section 3.3.5 shall be used for air permeable cladding unless approved test data or recognized literature demonstratelower loads for the type of air permeable cladding being considered.

3.3.5.3 Design Procedure

1.The basic wind speed V and wind directionality factor Kd shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.4.

2.An importance factor I shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.5.

3. An exposure category or exposure categories and velocity pressure exposure coefficient Kzor Kh , as applicable, shall be determined for each wind direction in accordance with Section 3.3.5.6.

4. A topographic factor Kztshall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.7.

5. A gust effect factor G or Gf , as applicable, shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.8.

6. An enclosure classification shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.9.

7. Internal pressure coefficient GCpi, shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.11.1.

8. External pressure coefficients Cp or GCpf , or forcecoefficients Cf , as applicable, shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.11.2 or 3.3.5.11.3, respectively.

9. Velocity pressure qz or qh , as applicable, shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.3.5.10.

10.Design wind load p or F shall be determined in accordance with Sections 3.3.5.12, 3.3.5.13, 3.3.5.14, and 3.3.5.15, as applicable.

3.3.5.4 Basic Wind Speed

The basic wind speed, *V*,used in the determination of design wind loads on buildings shall be as given in Table 3.1 except as provided in Sections 3.3.5.4.1 and 3.3.5.4.2. The wind shall be assumed to come from any horizontal direction.

3.3.5.4.1 Special wind regions

The basic wind speed shall be increased where records or experience indicate that the wind speeds are higher than those reflected in Table 3.3.1. Mountainous terrain, gorges, and special regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions. The authority having jurisdiction shall, if necessary, adjust the values given in Table 3.3.1 to account for higher local wind speeds. Such adjustment shall be based on meteorological information and an estimate of the basic wind speed obtained in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.3.5.4.2.

3.3.5.4.2 Estimation of basic wind speeds from regional climatic data

Regional climatic data shall only be used in lieu of the basic wind speeds given in Table 3.3.1 when (1) approved extreme-value statistical-analysis procedures have been employed in reducing the data; and (2) the length of record, sampling error, averaging time, anemometer height, data quality, and terrain exposure of the anemometer have been taken into account. Reduction in basic wind speed below that of Table 3.3.1 shall not be permitted.

When the basic wind speed is estimated from regional climatic data, the basic wind speed shall be not less than the wind speed associated with an annual probability of 0.02 (50- year mean recurrence interval), and the estimate shall be adjusted for equivalence to a 3-s gust wind speed at 33 ft (10 m) above ground in exposure Category C. The data analysis shall be performed in accordance with this section.

3.3.5.4.3Winddirectionality factor

The wind directionality factor, Kd, shall be determined from Table 3.3.5. This factor shall only be applied when used in conjunction with load combinations specified in Sections 3.2.1.2 and 3.2.1.3.

3.3.5.5 Importance Factor

An importance factor, I, for the building shall be determined from Table 3.3.2 based on building categories listed in Table 3.1.2.

3.3.5.6 Exposure

For each wind direction considered, the upwind exposure category shall be based on ground surface roughness that is determined from natural topography, vegetation, and constructed facilities.

3.3.5.6.1 Winddirections and sectors

For each selected wind direction at which the wind loads are to be evaluated, the exposure of the building or structure shall be determined for the two upwind sectors extending 45° either side of the selected wind direction. The exposures in these two sectors shall be determined in accordance with Sections 3.3.5.6.2 and 3.3.5.6.3 and the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads shall be used to represent the winds from that direction.

3.3.5.6.2 Surface roughness categories

A ground surface roughness within each 45° sector shall be determined for a distance upwind of the site as defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3 from the categories defined in the following text, for the purpose of assigning an exposure category as defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3.

Surface Roughness B: Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas, or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger.

Surface Roughness C: Open terrain with scattered obstructions having heights generally less than 30 ft (9.1 m).

Surface Roughness D: Flat, unobstructed areas and water surfaces. This category includes smooth mud flats and salt flats.

3.3.5.6.3 Exposure categories

Exposure B: Exposure B shall apply where the ground surface roughness condition, as defined by Surface Roughness B, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 2, 600 ft(792 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater.

EXCEPTION: For buildings whose mean roof height is less than or equal to 30 ft, the upwind distance may be reduced to 1, 500 ft (457 m).

Exposure C: Exposure C shall apply for all cases where Exposures B or D do not apply.

Exposure D: Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness D, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance greater than 5, 000 ft (1, 524 m) or 20 times the building height, whichever is greater. Exposure D shall extend intodownwind areas of Surface Roughness B or C for a distance of 600 ft (200 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater.

For a site located in the transition zone between exposure categories, the category resulting in the largest wind forces shall be used.

EXCEPTION: An intermediate exposure between the preceding categories is permitted in a transition zone provided that it is determined by a rational analysis method defined in the recognized literature.

3.3.5.6.4 Exposure category for main wind-force resisting system

3.3.5.6.4.1 Buildings and other structures

For each wind direction considered, wind loads for the design of the MWFRS determined from Fig. 3.3.5 shall be based on the exposure categories defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3.

3.3.5.6.4.2 Low-rise buildings

Wind loads for the design of the MWFRSs for low-rise buildings shall be determined using a velocity pressure q_h based on the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads for any wind direction at the site where external pressure coefficients GC_{pf} given in Fig. 3.3.9 are used.

3.3.5.6.5 Exposure category for components andcladding

Components and cladding design pressures for all buildings shall be based on the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads for any direction at the site.

3.3.5.6.6 Velocity pressureexposure coefficient

Based on the exposure category determined in Section 3.3.5.6.3, a velocity pressure exposure coefficient K_z or K_h, as applicable, shall be determined from Table 3.3.4. For a site located in a transition zone between exposure categories, that is, near to a change in ground surface roughness, intermediate values of K_z or K_h, between those shown in Table 3.3.4, are permitted, provided that they are determined by a rational analysis method defined in the recognized literature.

3.3.5.7 Topographic Effects

3.3.5.7.1 Wind speed-up over hills, ridges, and escarpments

Wind speed-up effects at isolated hills, ridges, and escarpments constituting abrupt changes in the general topography, located in any exposure category, shall be included in the design

when buildings and other site conditions and locations of structures meet all of the following conditions:

1. The hill, ridge, or escarpment is isolated and unobstructed upwind by other similar topographic features of comparable height for 100 times the height of the topographic feature ($100H$) or 2 mi (3.22 km), whichever is less.This distance shall be measured horizontally from the point at which the height H of the hill, ridge, or escarpment is determined.

2. The hill, ridge, or escarpment protrudes above the height of upwind terrain features within a 2-mi (3.22 km) radius in any quadrant by a factor of two or more.

3. The structure is located as shown in Fig. 3.3.3 in the upper one-half of a hill or ridge or near the crest of an escarpment

4. $H/L_h \geq 0.2$.

5. H is greater than or equal to 15 ft (4.5 m) for Exposures C and D and 60 ft (18 m) for Exposure B.

3.3.5.7.2 Topographicfactor

The wind speed-up effect shall be included in the calculation of design wind loads by using the factor K_{zt}:

$$K_{zt} = \left(1 + K_1 K_2 K_3\right)^2$$

Eq. (3.3.3)

where K_1, K_2, and K_3 are given in Fig. 3.3.3

If site conditions and locations of structures do not meet all the conditions specified in section 3.3.5.7.1 then $K_{zt} = 1.0$.

3.3.5.8 Gust Effect Factor

3.3.5.8.1 Rigid structures

For rigid structures as defined in Section 3.3.2, the gust-effect factor shall be taken as 0.85 or calculated by the equation:

$$G = 0.925 \left(\frac{(1 + 1.7 g_Q I_{\bar{z}} Q)}{1 + 1.7 g_v I_{\bar{z}}} \right)$$

Eq. (3.3.4)

$$I_z = c \left(\frac{33}{\bar{z}} \right)^{1/6}$$

Eq. (3.3.5)

In SI: $\quad I_z = c \left(\frac{10}{\bar{z}} \right)^{1/6}$

where

$I_{\bar{z}} =$ the intensity of turbulence at height $\bar{z}$ where $\bar{z} =$ the equivalent height of thestructure defined as $0.6h$, but not less than z_{min} for all building heights h. z_{min} and c are listed for each exposure in Table 3.2.3 ; g_Q and g_v shall be taken as 3.4. The background response Q is given by

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{1}{1 + 0.63 \left(\frac{B + h}{L_{\bar{z}}} \right)^{0.63}}}$$

Eq.(3.3.6)

where B, h are defined in Section 3.3; and $L_{\bar{z}} =$ the integral length scale of turbulence at the equivalent height given by

$$L_z = l \left(\frac{\bar{z}}{33} \right)^{\bar{\epsilon}}$$

Eq. (3.3.7)

In SI: $\quad L_z = l\left(\dfrac{z}{10}\right)^{\overline{\in}}$

in which ℓ and $\overline{\in}$ are constants listed in Table 3.3.3.

3.3.5.8.2 Flexible or dynamically sensitive structures

For flexible or dynamically sensitive structures as defined in Section 3.3.2, the gust-effect factor shall be calculated by

$$G_f = 0.925\left(\frac{1+1.7I_{\bar{z}}\sqrt{g_Q^2 Q^2 + g_R^2 R^2}}{1+1.7g_v I_{\bar{z}}}\right) \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.8)}$$

g_Q and g_v shall be taken as 3.4 and g_R is given by

$$g_R = \sqrt{2\,\text{In}(3{,}600\,n_1)} + \frac{0.577}{\sqrt{2\,\text{In}(3{,}600\,n_1)}} \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.9)}$$

R, the resonant response factor, is given by

$$R = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\beta} R_n R_h R_B \left(0.53 + 0.47 R_L\right)} \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.10)}$$

$$R_n = \frac{7.47N_1}{\left(1+10.3N_1\right)^{5/3}} \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.11)}$$

$$N_1 = \frac{n_1 L_{\bar{z}}}{\overline{V}_{\bar{z}}} \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.12)}$$

$$R_\ell = \frac{1}{\eta} - \frac{1}{2\eta^2}\left(1-e^{-2\eta}\right) \qquad \text{for } \eta > 0 \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.13a)}$$

$$R_\ell = 1 \text{ for } \eta = 0 \text{ for } \eta > 0 \qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.13b)}$$

where the subscript l in Eq. (3.3.13) shall be taken as h, B, and L, respectively, where h, B, and L are defined in Section 3.3.3.

n_1 = building natural frequency

$R_l = R_h$ setting $\eta = 4.6n_1 h/\overline{V}_{\bar{z}}$

$R_l = R_B$ setting $\eta = 4.6n_1 B/\overline{V}_{\bar{z}}$

$R_l = R_L$ setting $\eta = 15.4n_1 L/\overline{V}_{\bar{z}}$

β = damping ratio, percent of critical

$\overline{V}_{\bar{z}}$ = mean hourly wind speed (ft/s) at height $\bar{z}$ determined from Eq.(3.14)

$$v_z = \overline{b}\left(\frac{z}{33}\right)^{\alpha} V\left(\frac{88}{60}\right) \qquad \text{Eq. (3.14)}$$

In SI: $\quad \bar{v}_z = \bar{b} \left(\dfrac{z}{10} \right)^{\bar{\alpha}} V$

where $\bar{b}$ and $\bar{\alpha}$ are constants listed in Table 3.3.3 and *V* is the basic wind speed in mile/hr.

3.3.5.8.3 Rationalanalysis

In lieu of the procedure defined in Sections 3.5.8.1 and 3.5.8.2, determination of the gust-effect factor by any rational analysis defined in the recognized literature is permitted.

3.3.5.8.4 Limitations

Where combined gust-effect factors and pressure coefficients (GC_p, GC_{pi}, and GC_{pf}) are given in figures and tables, the gust-effect factor shall not be determined separately.

3.3.5.9 Enclosure Classifications

3.3.5.9.1 General

For the purpose of determining internal pressure coefficients, all buildings shall be classified as enclosed, partially enclosed, or open as defined in Section 3.3.2.

3.3.5.9.2 Openings

A determination shall be made of the amount of openings in the building envelope to determine the enclosure classification as defined in Section 3.3.5.9.1.

3.3.5.9.3 Multiple classifications

If a building by definition complies with both the "open" and "partially enclosed" definitions, it shall be classified as an "open" building. A building that does notcomply with either the "open" or "partially enclosed" definitions shall be classified as an "enclosed" building.

3.3.5.10 Velocity Pressure

Velocity pressure, qz, evaluated at height z shall be calculated by the following equation:

$$q_z = 0.00256\, K_z K_{zt} K_d V^2 I \quad (\text{lb/ft}^2) \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.3.15)}$$

$$\left[\text{In SI} : q_z = 0.613\, K_z K_{zt} K_d V^2 I \left(\text{N/m}^2 \right); \ V \text{ in m/s} \right]$$

whereKd is the wind directionality factor defined in Section 3.3.5.4.4, Kz is the velocity pressure exposure coefficient defined in Section 3.3.5.6.6, Kzt is the topographic factor defined in Section 3.3.5.7.2, and qh is the velocity pressure calculated using Eq. (3.15) at mean roof height h.

The numerical coefficient 0.00256 (0.613 in SI) shall be used except where sufficient climatic data are available to justify the selection of a different value of this factor for a design application.

3.3.5.11 Pressure and Force Coefficients

3.3.5.11.1 Internal pressure coefficient

Internal pressure coefficients, GC_{pi}, shall be determined from Fig. 3.3.4 based on building enclosure classifications determined from Section 3.3.5.9.

3.3.5.11.1.1 Reductionfactor for large volume buildings, R_i

For a partially enclosed building containing a single, unpartitioned large volume, the internal pressure coefficient, GC_{pi}, shall be multiplied by the following reduction factor, R_i:

$R_i = 1.0$ or

$$R_i = 0.5 \left(1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{V_i}{22.8A_{og}}}} \right) \le 1.0 \qquad \text{Eq. (3.3.16)}$$

where

A_{0g}= total area of openings in the building envelope (walls and roof, in ft^2)

V_i= unpartitioned internal volume, in ft^3

3.3.5.11.2 External pressure coefficients

3.3.5.11.2.1 Main wind-force resisting systems

External pressure coefficients for MWFRSs C_p are given in Figs. 3.5, 3.6 and 3.7. Combined gust effect factor and external pressure coefficients, GC_{pf}, are given in Fig. 3.9 for low-rise buildings. The pressure coefficient values and gust effect factor in Fig. 3.9 shall not be separated.

3.3.5.11.2.2 Components and cladding

Combined gust effect factor and external pressure coefficients for components and cladding $GC_p$are given in Figs. 3.10 through 3.16. The pressure coefficient values and gust-effect factor shall not be separated.

3.3.5.11.3 Force coefficients

Force coefficients$C_f$are given inFigs. 3.19 through 3.3.22

3.3.5.11.4 Roof overhangs

3.3.5.11.4.1 Main wind-force resisting system

Roof overhangs shall be designed for a positive pressure on the bottom surface of windward roof overhangs corresponding to C_p= 0.8 in combination with the pressures determined from using Figs. 3.3.5 and 3.3.9.

3.3.5.11.4.2 Components and cladding

For all buildings, roof overhangs shall be designed for pressures determined from pressure coefficients given in Figs. 3.3.10 B, C, D.

3.3.5.11.5 Parapets

3.3.5.11.5.1 Main wind-force resisting system

The pressure coefficients for the effect of parapets on the MWFRS loads are given in Section 3.3.5.12.2.4.

3.3.5.11.5.2 Components and cladding

The pressure coefficients for the design of parapet component and cladding elements are taken from the wall and roof pressure coefficients as specified in Section 3.3.5.12.4.4.

3.3.5.12 Design Wind Loads on Enclosed and Partially Enclosed Buildings

3.3.5.12.1 General

3.3.5.12.1.1 Sign convention

Positive pressure acts toward the surface and negative pressure acts away from the surface**.**

3.3.5.12.1.2 Critical load condition

Values of external and internal pressures shall be combined algebraically to determine the most critical load.

3.3.5.12.1.3 Tributary areas greater than 700 ft^2 (65 m^2)

Component and cladding elements with tributary areas greater than 700 ft^2 (65 m^2) shall be permitted to be designed using the provisions for MWFRSs.

3.3.5.12.2 Main wind-force resisting systems

3.3.5.12.2.1 Rigid buildings of all heights

Design wind pressures for the MWFRS of buildings of all heights shall be determined by the following equation:

$$p = qGC_p - q_i(GC_{pi}) \ (\text{Ib/ft}^2) \ (\text{N/m}^2) \hspace{2cm} \text{Eq. (3.3.17)}$$

where

$q=$ q_z for windward walls evaluated at height z above the ground

$q=$ q_h for leeward walls, side walls, and roofs, evaluated at height h

$q_i=$ q_h for windward walls, side walls, leeward walls, and roofs of enclosed buildings and for negative internal pressure evaluation in partially enclosed buildings

$q_i=$ q_z for positive internal pressure evaluation in partially enclosed buildings where height z is defined as the level of the highest opening in the building that could affect the positive internal pressure. For buildings sited in wind-borne debris regions, glazing that is not impact resistant or protected with an impact resistant covering, shall be treated as an opening in accordance with Section 3.3.5.9.3. For positive internal pressure evaluation, q; may conservatively be evaluated at height h ($q_i = q_h$)

$G=$ guest effect factor from Section 3.3.5.8

$C_p=$ external pressure coefficient from Fig. 3.3.5 or 3.3.7

$(GC_{pi})=$ internal pressure coefficient from Fig. 3.3.4

qandqi shall be evaluated using exposure defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3. Pressure shall be applied simultaneously on windward and leeward walls and on roof surfaces as defined in Figs. 3.3.5 and3.3.7

3.3.5.12.2.2 Low-rise buildings

Alternatively, design wind pressures for the MWFRS of low-rise buildings shall be determined by the following equation:

$$p = q_h((GC_{pf}) - (GC_{pi})) \ (\text{Ib/ft}^2) \ (\text{N/m}^2) \quad\quad \text{Eq. (3.3.18)}$$

where

q_h = velocity pressure evaluated at mean roof height h using exposure defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3

(GC_{pf}) = external pressure coefficient from Fig. 3.3.9

(GC_{pi}) = internal pressure coefficient from Fig.3.3.4

3.3.5.12.2.3 Flexible buildings

Design wind pressures for the MWFRS of flexible buildings shall be determined from the following equation:

$$p = qG_fC_p - q_i(GC_{pi}) \ (\text{Ib/ft}^2) \ (\text{N/m}^2) \quad\quad \text{Eq. (3.3.19)}$$

where

q , qi , Cp, and (GCpi) are as defined in Section 3.3.5.12.2.1and

Gf = gust effect factor is defined as in Section 3.3.5.8.2.

3.3.5.12.2.4 Parapets

The design wind pressure for the effect of parapets on MWFRSs of rigid, low-rise, or flexible buildings with flat, gable, or hip roofs shall be determined by the following equation:

$$p_p = q_pGC_{pn} \ (\text{lb/ft}^2) \quad\quad \text{Eq. (3.3.20)}$$

where

p_p= combined net pressure on the parapet due to the combination of the net pressures from the front and back parapet surfaces. Plus (and minus) signs signify net pressure acting toward (and away from) the front (exterior) side of the parapet

q_p= velocity pressure evaluated at the top of the parapet

GC_{pn}= combined net pressure coefficient

= +1.5 for windward parapet

= − 1.0 for leeward parapet

3.3.5.12.3 Design wind load cases

The MWFRS of buildings of all heights, whose wind loads have been determined under the provisions of Sections 3.3.5.12.2.1 and 3.3.5.12.2.3, shall be designed for the wind load

cases as defined in Fig. 3.3.8. The eccentricity *e* for rigid structures shall be measured from the geometric centre of the building face and shall be considered for each principal axis (e_X, e_y). The eccentricity *e* for flexible structures shall be determined from the following equation and shall be considered for each principal axis (e_X, e_y):

where

$$e = \frac{e_Q + 1.7 I_{\bar{z}} \sqrt{(g_Q Q e_Q)^2 + (g_R R e_R)^2}}{1 + 1.7 I_{\bar{z}} \sqrt{(g_Q Q)^2 + (g_R R)^2}}$$
Eq. (3.3.21)

e_Q=   eccentricity *e* as determined for rigid structures in Fig. 3.3.8

e_R=   distance between the elastic shear centre and centre of mass of each floor

$I_{\bar{z}}$, g_Q, Q, g_R, R, shall be as defined in Section 3.3.5.8

The sign of the eccentricity *e* shall be plus or minus, whichever causes the more severe load effect.

EXCEPTION: One-storey buildings with *h* less than or equal to 30 ft, buildings two storeys or less framed with light-frame construction, and buildings two storeys or less designed with flexible diaphragms need only be designed for Load Case 1 and Load Case 3 in Fig. 3.3.8.

3.3.5.12.4 Components and cladding

3.3.5.12.4.1 Low-rise buildings and buildings with $h \leq 60$ ft (18.3 m)

Design wind pressures on component and cladding elements of low-rise buildings and buildings with $h \leq 60$ ft(18.3 m) shall be determined from the following equation:

$$p = q_h((GC_p) - (GC_{pi})) \ (\text{Ib/ft}^2) \ (\text{N/m}^2)$$
Eq. (3.3.22)

where

q_h=   velocity pressure evaluated at mean roof height h using exposure defined inSection 3.3.5.6.3

(GC_p) =   external pressure coefficients given in Figs. 3.3.10 through 3.3.15

(GC_{pi}) =   internal pressure coefficient given in Fig. 3.3.4

3.3.5.12.4.2 Buildings with $h > 60$ ft (18.3 m)

Design wind pressures on components and cladding for all buildings with $h > 60$ ft (18.3 m) shall be determined from the following equation:

$$p = q(GC_p) - q_i(GC_{pi}) \ (\text{Ib/ft}^2) \ (\text{N/m}^2)$$
Eq. (3.3.23)

where

$q = q_z$ for windward walls calculated at height*z*above the ground

$q = q_h$ for leeward walls, side walls, and roofs, evaluated at height *h*

$q_i=q_h$ for windward walls, side walls, leeward walls, and roofs of enclosed buildings and fornegative internal pressure evaluation in partially enclosed buildings

$q_i= q_z$ for positive internal pressure evaluation in partially enclosed buildings where height z is defined as the level of the highest opening in the building that could affect the positive internal pressure. For buildings sited in wind-borne debris regions, glazing that is not impact resistant or protected with an impact-resistant covering, shall be treated as an opening in accordance withSection 3.5.9.3. For positive internal pressure evaluation, q_i may conservatively be evaluated at height h ($q_i=q_h$)

$(GC_p) =$ external pressure coefficient from Fig. 3.16

$(GC_{pi}) =$ internal pressure coefficient given in Fig. 3.4.

q and q_i shall be evaluated using exposure defined in Section 3.5.6.3.

3.3.5.12.4.3 Alternative design wind pressures for components and cladding in buildings with 60 ft (18.3 m) $<h$ $<$90 ft (27.4 m)

Alternative to the requirements of Section 3.3.5.12.4.2, the design of components and cladding for buildings with a mean roof height greater than 60 ft (18.3 m) and less than 90 ft (27.4 m) values from Figs. 3.3.10 through 3.3.16 shall be used only if the height to width ratio is one or less (except as permitted by Note 6 of Fig. 3.3.16) and Eq. (3.22) is used.

3.3.5.12.4.4 Parapets

The design wind pressure on the components and cladding elements of parapets shall be designed by the following equation:

$$p= q_p(GC_p - GC_{pi}) \hspace{3cm} \text{Eq. (3.3.24)}$$

where

$q_p=$ velocity pressure evaluated at the top of the parapet

$GC_p=$ external pressure coefficient from Figs. 3.3.10 through 3.3.17

$GC_{pi}=$ internal pressure coefficient from Fig. 3.3.4, based on the porosity of the parapetenvelope

Two load cases shall be considered. Load Case A shall consist of applying the applicable positive wall pressure from Fig. 3.3.10A or Fig. 3.3.16 to the front surface of the parapet while applying the applicable negative edge or corner zone roof pressure from Figs.3.3.10 through 3.3.16 to the back surface. Load Case B shall consist of applying the applicable positive wall pressure from Fig. 3.3.10A or Fig. 3.3.16 to the back of the parapet surface, and applying the applicable negative wall pressure from Fig. 3.3.10A or Fig. 3.3.16 to the front surface. Edge and corner zones shall be arranged as shown in Figs. 3.3.10 through 3.3.16. GC_p shall be determined for appropriate roof angle and effective wind area from Figs. 3.3.10 through 3.3.16. If internal pressure is present, both load cases should be evaluated under positive and negative internal pressure.

3.3.5.13 Design Wind Loads on Open Buildings with Monoslope, Pitched, or

Troughed Roofs

3.3.5.13.1 General

3.3.5.13.1.1 Sign convention

Plus and minus signs signify pressure acting toward and away from the top surface of the roof, respectively.

3.3.5.13.1.2 Criticalload condition

Net pressure coefficients C_N include contributions from top and bottom surfaces.

All load cases shown for each roof angle shall be investigated.

3.3.5.13.2 Main wind-force resisting systems

The net design pressure for the MWFRSs of monoslope, pitched, or troughed roofs shall be determined by the following equation:

$$p = q_h G C_N \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.25)}$$

where

$q_h=$ velocity pressure evaluated at mean roof height h using the exposure as defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3 that results in the highest wind loads for any wind direction at the site

$G =$ gust effect factor from Section 3.3.5.8

$C_N =$ net pressure coefficient determined from Figs. 3.3.17A through 3.3.17D

For free roofs with an angle of plane of roof from horizontal θ less than or equal to 5° and containing fascia panels, the fascia panel shall be considered an inverted parapet. The contributionof loads on the fascia to the MWFRS loads shall be determined using Section 3.3.5.12.2.4 with q_p equal to q_h.

3.3.5.13.3 Component and cladding elements

The net design wind pressure for component and cladding elements of monoslope, pitched, and troughed roofs shall be determined by thefollowing equation:

$$p = q_h G C_N \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.(3.3.26)}$$

where

$q_h=$ velocity pressure evaluated at mean roof height h using the exposure as defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3 that results in the highest wind loads for any wind direction at the site

$G=$ gust-effect factor from Section 3.3.5.8

$C_N =$ net pressure coefficient determined from Figs. 3.3.18A through 3.3.18C

3.3.5.14 Design Wind Loads on Solid Freestanding Walls and Solid Signs

The design wind force for solid freestanding walls and solid signs shall be determined by the following formula:

$$F = q_h G C_f A_s \text{(lb) (N)} \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.3.27)}$$

where

$q_h =$ the velocity pressure evaluated at height h (defined in Fig. 3.3.20) using exposure defined in Section 3.3.5.6.4.1

$G =$ gust-effect factor from Section 3.3.5.8

$C_f =$ net force coefficient from Fig. 3.3.19

$A_s =$ the gross area of the solid freestanding wall or solid sign, in ft2 (m2)

3.3.5.15 Design Wind Loads on Other Structures

The design wind force for other structures shall be determined by the following equation:

$$F = q_z G C_f A_f \text{(lb) (N)} \qquad \text{Eq. (3.3.28)}$$

where

$q_z =$ velocity pressure evaluated at height z of the centroid of area A_f using exposure defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3

$G =$ gust-effect factor from Section 3.3.5.8

$C_f =$ force coefficients from Figs. 3.3.20 through 3.3.22

$A_f =$ projected area normal to the wind except where C_f is specified for the actual surface area, ft2 (m2)

3.3.5.15.1 Rooftop structures and equipment for buildings with $h \leq 60$ ft (18.3 m)

The force on rooftop structures and equipment with A_f less than ($0.1\ B\ h$) located on buildings with $h \leq 60$ ft (18.3 m) shall be determined from Eq. (3.28), increased by a factor of 1.9. The factor shall be permitted to be reduced linearly from 1.9 to 1.0 as the value of A_f is increased from ($0.1B_h$) to (B_h).

3.3.6 – Method 3 -Wind Tunnel Procedure

3.3.6.1 Scope

Wind tunnel tests shall be used where required by Section 3.3.5.2. Wind tunnel testing shall be permitted in lieu of Methods 1 and 2 for any building.

3.3.6.2 Test Conditions

Wind tunnel tests, or similar tests employing fluids other than air, used for the determination of design wind loads for any building, shall be conducted in accordance with this section. Tests for the determination of mean and fluctuating forces and pressures shall meet all of the following conditions:

1. The natural atmospheric boundary layer has been modeled to account for the variation of wind speed with height.

2. The relevant macro- (integral) length and micro-length scales of the longitudinal component of atmospheric turbulence are modeled to approximately the same scale as that used to model the building.

3. The modeled building and surrounding structures and topography are

geometrically similar to their full-scale counterparts, except that, for low-rise buildings meeting the requirements of Section 3.3.5.1, tests shall be permitted for the modeled building in a single exposure site as defined in Section 3.3.5.6.3.

4. The projected area of the modeled building and surroundings is less than 8 percent of the test section cross-sectional area unless correction is made for blockage.

5. The longitudinal pressure gradient in the wind tunnel test section is accounted for.

6. Reynolds number effects on pressures and forces are minimized.

7. Response characteristics of the wind tunnel instrumentation are consistent with the required measurements.

3.3.6.3 Dynamic Response

Tests for the purpose of determining the dynamic response of a building shall be in accordance with Section 3.3.6.2. The structural model and associated analysis shall account for mass distribution, stiffness, and damping

.

3.3.6.4 Limitations

3.3.6.4.1 Limitations on wind speeds

Variation of basic wind speeds with direction shall not be permitted unless the analysis for wind speeds conforms to the requirements of Section 3.3.5.4.2.

Main Wind Force Resisting Syatem - Method 1		h ≤ 60 ft
Figure 3.3.1	**Design Wind Pressures**	**Walls & Roofs**
Enclosed Buildings		
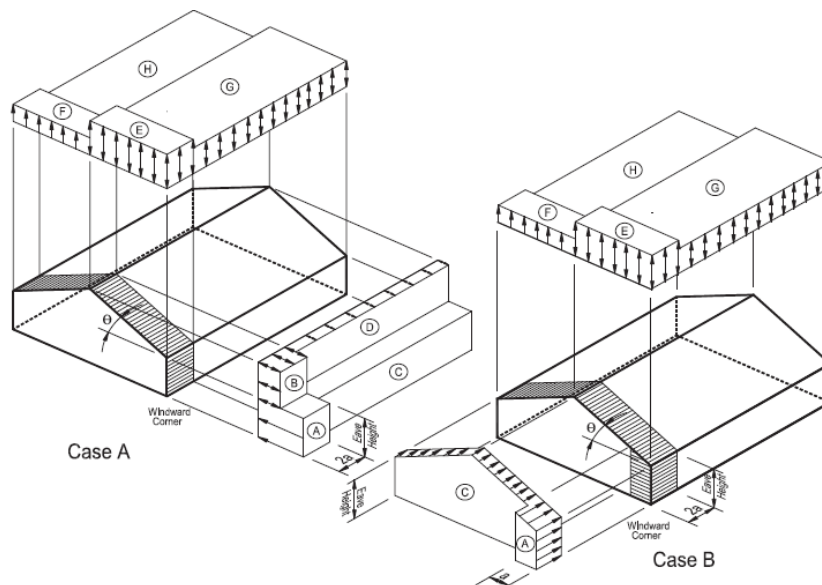
Notes:

1. *Pressures shown are applied to the horizontal and vertical projections, for exposure B, at h=30 ft (9.1 m) , I = 1.0, and K_{zt}= 1.0.Adjust to other condition using Equation 6 – 1.*

2. *The load patterns shown shall be applied to each corner of the building in turn as the reference corner (See Fig.6-10).*

3. *For the design of the longitudinal WFRS use θ= 0°, and locate the zone E/F, G/H boundary at the mid-length of the building.*

4. *Load cases 1 and 2 must be checked for 25° <θ ≤45°.Load case 2 at 25° is provided only for interpolation between 25° to 30°.*

5. *Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the projected surfaces, respectively.*

6. *For roof slopes other than those shown, linear interpolation is permitted.*

7. *The total horizontal load shall not be less than that determined by assuming p_s = 0 in zones B & D.*

8. *The zone pressures represent the following:*

   Horizontal pressure zones - Sum of the windward and leeward net (sun of internal and external) pressures on vertical projection of:

A -	*End zone of wall*	; C -	*Interior zone of wall*
B -	*End zone of roof*	; D -	*Interior zone of roof*

   Vertical pressure zones - Net (sum of internal and external) pressures on horizontal projection of:

E -	*End zone of windward roof*	; G -	*Interior zone of windward roof*
F -	*End zone of leeward roof*	; H -	*Interior zone of leeward roof*

9. *Where zone E or G falls on a roof overhang on the windward side of the building, use $E_{OH}$and $G_{OH}$for the pressure on the horizontalprojection of the overhang. Overhangs on the leeward and side edges shall have the basiczone pressure applied.*

10. *Notation:*

    a = 10 percent of least horizontaldimensionor 0.4h, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4 % of least horizontaldimensionor 3 ft (0.9 m)

    h =mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for roof angles < 10°.

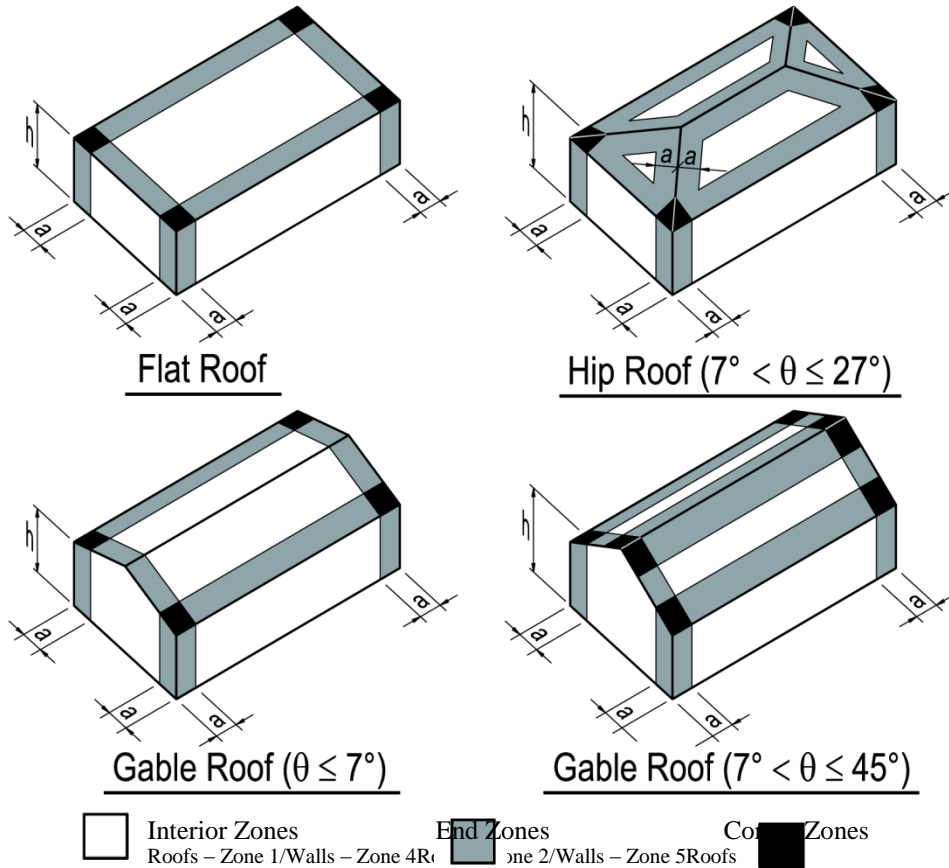   *θ = angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.*

Main Wind Force Resisting Syatem - Method 1										h ≤ 60 ft	
Figure 3.3.1 (cont'd)			**Design Wind Pressures**							**Walls & Roofs**	
Enclosed Buildings											
Simplified Design Wind Pressure, p_{s30} (psf) *(Exposure B at h = 30 ft, K_{21} = 1.0, with 1 = 1.0)*											

Basic Wind Speed (mph)	Roof Angle (degrees)	Load Case	Zones									
			Horizontal Pressures				Vertical Pressures				Overhangs	
			A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	E_{OH}	G_{OH}
85	0 to 5°	1	11.5	-5.9	7.6	-3.5	-13.8	-7.8	-9.6	-6.1	-19.3	-15.1
	10°	1	12.9	-5.4	8.6	-3.1	-13.8	-8.4	-9.6	-6.5	-19.3	-15.1
	15°	1	14.4	-4.8	9.6	-2.7	-13.8	-9.0	-9.6	-6.9	-19.3	-15.1
	20°	1	15.9	-4.2	10.6	-2.3	-13.8	-9.6	-9.6	-7.3	-19.3	-15.1
	25°	1	14.4	2.3	10.4	2.4	-6.4	-8.7	-4.6	-7.0	-11.9	-10.1
		2	—	—	—	—	-2.4	-4.7	-0.7	-3.0	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	12.9	8.8	10.2	7.0	1.0	-7.8	0.3	-6.7	-4.5	-5.2
		2	12.9	8.8	10.2	7.0	5.0	-3.9	4.3	-2.8	-4.5	-5.2
90	0 to 5°	1	12.8	-6.7	8.5	-4.0	-15.4	-8.8	-10.7	-6.8	-21.6	-16.9
	10°	1	14.5	-6.0	9.6	-3.5	-15.4	-9.4	-10.7	-7.2	-21.6	-16.9
	15°	1	16.1	-5.4	10.7	-3.0	-15.4	-10.1	-10.7	-7.7	-21.6	-16.9
	20°	1	17.8	-4.7	11.9	-2.6	-15.4	-10.7	-10.7	-8.1	-21.6	-16.9
	25°	1	16.1	2.6	11.7	2.7	-7.2	-9.8	-5.2	-7.8	-13.3	-11.4
		2	—	—	—	—	-2.7	-5.3	-0.7	-3.4	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	14.4	9.9	11.5	7.9	1.1	-8.8	0.4	-7.5	-5.1	-5.8
		2	14.4	9.9	11.5	7.9	5.6	-4.3	4.8	-3.1	-5.1	-5.8
100	0 to 5°	1	15.9	-8.2	10.5	-4.9	-19.1	-10.8	-13.3	-8.4	-26.7	-20.9
	10°	1	17.9	-7.4	11.9	-4.3	-19.1	-11.6	-13.3	-8.9	-26.7	-20.9
	15°	1	19.9	-6.6	13.3	-3.8	-19.1	-12.4	-13.3	-9.5	-26.7	-20.9
	20°	1	22.0	-5.8	14.6	-3.2	-19.1	-13.3	-13.3	-10.1	-26.7	-20.9
	25°	1	19.9	3.2	14.4	3.3	-8.8	-12.0	-6.4	-9.7	-16.5	-14.0
		2	—	—	—	—	-3.4	-6.6	-0.9	-4.2	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	17.8	12.2	14.2	9.8	1.4	-10.8	0.5	-9.3	-6.3	-7.2
		2	17.8	12.2	14.2	9.8	6.9	-5.3	5.9	-3.8	-6.3	-7.2
105	0 to 5°	1	17.5	-9.0	11.6	-5.4	-13.8	-11.9	-14.7	-9.3	-29.4	-23.0
	10°	1	19.7	-8.2	13.1	-4.7	-13.8	-12.8	-14.7	-9.8	-29.4	-23.0
	15°	1	21.9	-7.3	14.7	-4.2	-13.8	-13.7	-14.7	-10.5	-29.4	-23.0
	20°	1	24.3	-8.4	16.1	-3.5	-13.8	-14.7	-14.7	-11.1	-29.4	-23.0
	25°	1	21.9	3.5	15.9	3.5	-6.4	-13.2	-7.1	-10.7	-18.2	-15.4
		2	—	—	—	—	-2.4	-7.3	-1.0	-4.6	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	19.6	13.5	15.7	10.8	1.0	-11.9	0.6	-10.3	-6.9	-7.9
		2	19.6	13.5	15.7	10.8	5.0	-5.8	6.5	-4.2	-6.9	-7.9
110	0 to 5°	1	19.2	-10.1	12.7	-5.9	-13.8	-13.1	-16.0	-10.1	-32.3	-25.3
	10°	1	21.6	-9.0	14.4	-5.2	-13.8	-14.1	-16.0	-10.8	-32.3	-25.3
	15°	1	24.1	-8.0	16.0	-4.6	-13.8	-15.1	-16.0	-11.5	-32.3	-25.3
	20°	1	26.6	-7.0	17.7	-3.9	-13.8	-16.0	-16.0	-12.2	-32.3	-25.3
	25°	1	24.1	3.9	17.4	4.0	-6.4	-14.6	-7.7	-11.7	-19.9	-17.0
		2	—	—	—	—	-2.4	-7.9	-1.1	-5.1	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	21.6	14.8	17.2	11.8	1.0	-13.1	0.6	-11.3	-7.6	-8.7
		2	21.6	14.8	17.2	11.8	5.0	-6.5	7.2	-4.6	-7.6	-8.7
120	0 to 5°	1	22.8	-11.9	15.1	-6.2	-13.8	-16.8	-19.1	-12.1	-38.4	-30.1
	10°	1	25.8	-10.7	17.1	-5.4	-13.8	-17.9	-19.1	-12.9	-38.4	-30.1
	15°	1	28.7	-9.5	19.1	-4.6	-13.8	-19.1	-19.1	-13.7	-38.4	-30.1
	20°	1	31.6	-8.3	21.1	4.7	-13.8	-17.3	-19.1	-14.5	-38.4	-30.1
	25°	1	28.6	4.6	20.7	2.4	-6.4	-9.4	-9.2	-13.9	-23.7	-20.2
		2	—	—	—	—	-2.4	-15.6	-1.3	-6.0	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	25.7	17.6	20.4	14.0	1.0	-7.7	0.7	-13.4	-9.0	-10.3
		2	25.7	17.6	20.4	14.0	5.0	-3.9	8.6	-5.5	-9.0	-10.3

Unit Conversions — 1 ft = 0.3048 m ; 1 psf = 0.0479 kN/m^2

Main Wind Force Resisting Syatem - Method 1											h ≤ 60 ft	
Figure 3.3.1 (cont'd)			**Design Wind Pressures**								**Walls & Roofs**	
Enclosed Buildings												
Simplified Design Wind Pressure, p_{s30} (psf) *(Exposure B at h = 30 ft, K_{21} = 1.0, with 1 = 1.0)*												

Basic Wind Speed (mph)	Roof Angle (degrees)	Load Case	Horizontal Pressures				Vertical Pressures				Overhangs	
			A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	E_{OH}	G_{OH}
125	0 to 5°	1	24.7	-12.9	16.4	-7.6	-29.7	-16.9	-20.7	-13.1	-41.7	-32.7
	10°	1	28.0	-11.6	18.6	-6.7	-29.7	-18.2	-20.7	-14.0	-41.7	-32.7
	15°	1	31.1	-10.3	20.7	-5.9	-29.7	-19.4	-20.7	-14.9	-41.7	-32.7
	20°	1	34.3	-9.0	22.9	-5.0	-29.7	-20.7	-20.7	-15.7	-41.7	-32.7
	25°	1	31.0	5.0	22.5	5.1	-13.8	-18.8	-10.0	-15.1	-25.7	-21.9
		2	—	—	—	—	-5.2	-10.2	-1.4	-6.5	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	27.9	19.1	22.1	15.2	2.2	-16.9	0.8	-14.5	-9.8	-11.2
		2	27.9	19.1	22.1	15.2	10.7	-8.4	9.3	-6.0	-9.8	-11.2
130	0 to 5°	1	26.8	-13.9	17.8	-8.2	-32.2	-18.3	-22.4	-14.2	-45.1	-35.3
	10°	1	30.2	-12.5	20.1	-7.3	-32.2	-19.7	-22.4	-15.1	-45.1	-35.3
	15°	1	33.7	-11.2	22.4	-6.4	-32.2	-21.0	-22.4	-16.1	-45.1	-35.3
	20°	1	37.1	-9.8	24.7	-5.4	-32.2	-22.4	-22.4	-17.0	-45.1	-35.3
	25°	1	33.6	5.4	24.3	5.5	-14.9	-20.4	-10.8	-16.4	-27.8	-23.7
		2	—	—	—	—	-5.7	-11.1	-1.5	-7.1	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	30.1	20.6	24.0	16.5	2.3	-18.3	0.8	-15.7	-10.6	-12.1
		2	30.1	20.6	24.0	16.5	11.6	-9.0	10.0	-6.4	-10.6	-12.1
140	0 to 5°	1	31.1	-16.1	20.6	-9.6	-37.3	-21.2	-26.0	-16.4	-52.3	-40.9
	10°	1	35.1	-14.5	23.3	-8.5	-37.3	-22.8	-26.0	-17.5	-52.3	-40.9
	15°	1	39.0	-12.9	26.0	-7.4	-37.3	-24.4	-26.0	-18.6	-52.3	-40.9
	20°	1	43.0	-11.4	28.7	-6.3	-37.3	-26.0	-26.0	-19.7	-52.3	-40.9
	25°	1	39.0	6.3	28.2	6.4	-17.3	-23.6	-12.5	-19.0	-32.3	-27.5
		2	—	—	—	—	-6.6	-12.8	-1.8	-8.2	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	35.0	23.9	27.8	19.1	2.7	-21.2	0.9	-18.2	-12.3	-14.0
		2	35.0	23.9	27.8	19.1	13.4	-10.5	11.7	-7.5	-12.3	-14.0
145	0 to 5°	1	33.4	-17.3	22.1	-10.3	-40.0	-22.7	-27.9	-17.6	-56.1	-43.9
	10°	1	37.7	-15.6	25.0	-9.1	-40.0	-24.5	-27.9	-18.8	-56.1	-43.9
	15°	1	41.8	-13.8	27.9	-7.9	-40.0	-26.2	-27.9	-20.0	-56.1	-43.9
	20°	1	46.1	-12.2	30.9	-6.8	-40.0	-27.9	-27.9	-21.1	-56.1	-43.9
	25°	1	41.8	6.8	30.3	6.9	-18.6	-25.3	-13.4	-20.4	-34.6	-29.5
		2	—	—	—	—	-7.1	-13.7	-1.9	-8.8	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	37.5	25.6	29.8	20.5	2.9	-22.7	1.0	-19.5	-13.2	-15.0
		2	35.7	25.6	29.8	20.5	14.4	-11.3	12.6	-8.0	-13.2	-15.0
150	0 to 5°	1	35.7	-18.5	23.7	-11.0	-42.9	-24.4	-29.8	-18.9	-60.0	-47.0
	10°	1	40.2	-16.7	26.8	-9.7	-42.9	-26.2	-29.8	-20.1	-60.0	-47.0
	15°	1	44.8	-14.9	29.8	-8.5	-42.9	-28.0	-29.8	-21.4	-60.0	-47.0
	20°	1	49.4	-13.0	32.9	-7.2	-42.9	-29.8	-29.8	-22.6	-60.0	-47.0
	25°	1	44.8	7.2	32.4	7.4	-19.9	-27.1	-14.4	-21.8	-37.0	-31.6
		2	—	—	—	—	-7.5	-14.7	-2.1	-9.4	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	40.1	27.4	31.9	22.0	3.1	-24.4	1.0	-20.9	-14.1	-16.1
		2	40.1	27.4	31.9	22.0	15.4	-12.0	13.4	-8.6	-14.1	-16.1
170	0 to 5°	1	45.8	-23.8	30.4	-14.1	-55.1	-31.3	-38.3	-24.2	-77.1	-60.4
	10°	1	51.7	-21.4	34.4	-12.5	-55.1	-33.6	-38.3	-25.8	-77.1	-60.4
	15°	1	57.6	-19.1	38.3	-10.9	-55.1	-36.0	-38.3	-27.5	-77.1	-60.4
	20°	1	63.4	-16.7	42.3	-9.3	-55.1	-38.3	-38.3	-29.1	-77.1	-60.4
	25°	1	57.5	9.3	41.6	9.5	-25.6	-34.8	-18.5	-28.0	-47.6	-40.5
		2	—	—	—	—	-9.7	-18.9	-2.6	-12.1	—	—
	30 to 45°	1	51.5	35.2	41.0	28.2	4.0	-31.3	1.3	-26.9	-18.1	-20.7
		2	51.5	35.2	41.0	28.2	19.8	-15.4	17.2	-11.0	-18.1	-20.7

-31.3

Main Wind Force Resisting Syatem - Method 1		h ≤ 60 ft
Figure 3.3.1 (cont'd)	**Design Wind Pressures**	**Walls & Roofs**
	Enclosed Buildings	

Adjustment Factor			
for Building Height and Exposure, λ			
Mean Roof Height (ft)	**Exposure**		
	B	**C**	**D**
15	1.00	1.21	1.47
20	1.00	1.29	1.55
25	1.00	1.35	1.61
30	1.00	1.40	1.66
35	1.05	1.45	1.70
40	1.09	1.49	1.74
45	1.12	1.53	1.78
50	1.16	1.56	1.81
55	1.19	1.59	1.84
60	1.22	1.62	1.87

Components and Cladding - Method 1		h ≤ 60 ft
Figure 3.3.2	Design Wind Pressures	Walls & Roofs
Enclosed Buildings		

Flat Roof

Hip Roof (7° < θ ≤ 27°)

Gable Roof (θ ≤ 7°)

Gable Roof (7° < θ ≤ 45°)

Interior Zones
Roofs – Zone 1/Walls – Zone 4

End Zones
Roofs – Zone 2/Walls – Zone 5

Corner Zones
Roofs

Notes:

2. *Pressures shown are applied normal to the surface, for exposure B, at h=30 ft (9.1 m) , I = 1.0, and K_{zt}= 1.0.Adjust to other condition using Equation 6 – 2.*

2. *Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.*

3. *For hip roofs with θ≤25°, Zone 3 shall be treated as Zone 2.*

4. *For effective wind areas between those given, value may be interpolated, otherwise use the value associated with the lower effective wind area.*

5. *Notation:*
    a = 10 percent of least horizontaldimensionor 0.4h, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4 % of least horizontaldimensionor 3 ft (0.9 m)
    h =mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for roof angles < 10°.
    θ = angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding Method 1													h ≤ 60 ft	
Figure 3.3.2 (cont'd)	Net Design Wind Pressures												Walls & Roofs	
	Enclosed Buildings													

Net Design Wind Pressure, p_{net30} (psf) *(Exposure B at h = 30 ft, with 1 = 1.0, and Kn= 1.0)*

	Zone	Effective wind area (sf)	Basic Wind Speed											
			85		90		100		105		110		120	
Roof 0 to 7 degrees	1	10	5.3	-13.0	5.9	-14.6	7.3	-18.0	8.1	-19.8	8.9	-21.8	10.5	-25.9
	1	20	5.0	-12.7	5.6	-14.2	6.9	-17.5	7.6	-19.3	8.3	-21.2	9.9	-25.2
	1	50	4.5	-12.2	5.1	-13.7	6.3	-16.9	6.9	-18.7	7.6	-20.5	9.0	-24.4
	1	100	4.2	-11.9	4.7	-13.3	5.8	-16.5	6.4	-18.2	7.0	-19.9	8.3	-23.7
	2	10	5.3	-21.8	5.9	-24.4	7.3	-30.2	8.1	-33.3	8.9	-36.5	10.5	-13.5
	2	20	5.0	-39.5	5.6	-21.8	6.9	-27.0	7.6	-29.7	8.3	-32.6	9.9	-38.8
	2	50	4.5	-16.4	5.1	-18.4	6.3	-22.7	6.9	-25.1	7.6	-27.5	9.0	-32.7
	2	100	4.2	-14.1	4.7	-15.8	5.8	-19.5	6.4	-21.5	7.0	-23.6	8.3	-28.1
	3	10	5.3	-32.8	5.9	-36.8	7.3	-45.4	8.1	-50.1	8.9	-55.0	10.5	-65.4
	3	20	5.0	-27.2	5.6	-30.5	6.9	-37.6	7.6	-41.5	8.3	-45.5	9.9	-54..2
	3	50	4.5	-19.7	5.1	-22.0	6.3	-27.3	6.9	-30.1	7.6	-33.1	9.0	-39.3
	3	100	4.2	-14.1	4.7	-15.8	5.8	-19.5	6.4	-21.5	7.0	-23.6	8.3	-28.1
Roof >7 to 27 degrees	1	10	7.5	-11.9	8.4	-13.3	10.4	-16.5	11.4	-18.2	12.5	-19.9	14.9	-23.7
	1	20	6.8	-11.6	7.7	-13.0	9.4	-16.0	10.4	-17.6	11.4	-19.4	13.6	-23.0
	1	50	6.0	-11.1	6.7	-12.5	8.2	-15.4	9.1	-17.0	10.0	-18.6	11.9	-22.2
	1	100	5.3	-10.8	5.9	-12.1	7.3	-14.9	8.1	-16.5	8.9	-18.1	10.5	-21.5
	2	10	7.5	-20.7	8.4	-23.2	10.4	-28.7	11.4	-31.6	12.5	-34.7	14.9	-41.3
	2	20	6.8	-19.0	7.7	-21.4	9.4	-26.4	10.4	-29.1	11.4	-31.9	13.6	-38.0
	2	50	6.0	-16.9	6.7	-18.9	8.2	-23.3	9.1	-25.7	10.0	-28.2	11.9	-33.6
	2	100	5.3	-15.2	5.9	-17.0	7.3	-21.0	8.1	-23.2	8.9	-25.5	10.5	-30.3
	3	10	7.5	-30.6	8.4	-34.3	10.4	-42.4	11.4	-46.7	12.5	-51.3	14.9	-61.0
	3	20	6.8	-28.6	7.7	-32.1	9.4	-39.6	10.4	-43.7	11.4	-47.9	13.6	-57.1
	3	50	6.0	-26.0	6.7	-29.1	8.2	-36.0	9.1	-39.7	10.0	-43.5	11.9	-51.8
	3	100	5.3	-24.0	5.9	-26.9	7.3	-33.2	8.1	-36.6	8.9	-40.2	10.5	-47.9
Roof >27 to 45 degrees	1	10	11.9	-13.0	13.3	-14.6	16.5	-18.0	18.2	-19.8	19.9	-21.8	23.7	-25.9
	1	20	11.6	-12.3	13.0	-13.8	16.0	-17.1	17.6	-18.8	19.4	-20.7	23.0	-24.6
	1	50	11.1	-11.5	12.5	-12.8	15.4	-15.9	17.0	-17.5	18.6	-19.2	22.2	-22.8
	1	100	10.8	-10.8	12.1	-12.1	14.9	-14.9	16.5	-16.5	18.1	-18.1	21.5	-21.5
	2	10	11.9	-15.2	13.3	-17.0	16.5	-21.0	18.2	-23.2	19.9	-25.5	23.7	-30.3
	2	20	11.6	-14.5	13.0	-16.3	16.0	-20.1	17.6	-22.2	19.4	-24.3	23.0	-29.0
	2	50	11.1	-13.7	12.5	-15.3	15.4	-18.9	17.0	-20.8	18.6	-22.9	22.2	-27.2
	2	100	10.8	-13.0	12.1	-14.6	14.9	-18.0	16.5	-19.8	18.1	-21.8	21.5	-25.9
	3	10	11.9	-15.2	13.3	-17.0	16.5	-21.0	18.2	-23.2	19.9	-25.5	23.7	-30.3
	3	20	11.6	-14.5	13.0	-16.3	16.0	-20.1	17.6	-22.2	19.4	-24.3	23.0	-29.0
	3	50	11.1	-13.7	12.5	-15.3	15.4	-18.9	17.0	-20.8	18.6	-22.9	22.2	-27.0
	3	100	10.8	-13.0	12.1	-14.6	14.9	-18.0	16.5	-19.8	18.1	-21.8	21.5	-25.9
Wall	4	10	13.0	-14.1	14.6	-15.8	18.0	-19.5	19.8	-21.5	21.8	-23.6	25.9	-28.1
	4	20	12.4	-13.5	13.9	-15.1	17.2	-18.7	18.9	-20.6	20.8	-22.6	24.7	-26.9
	4	50	11.6	-12.7	13.0	-14.3	16.1	-17.6	17.8	-19.4	19.5	21.3	23.2	-25.4
	4	100	11.1	-12.2	12.4	-13.6	15.3	-16.8	16.9	-18.5	18.5	20.4	22.0	-24.2
	4	500	9.7	-108.0	10.9	-12.1	13.4	-14.9	14.8	-16.5	16.2	-18.1	19.3	-21.5
	5	10	13.0	-174.0	14.6	-19.5	18.0	-24.1	19.8	-26.6	21.8	-29.1	25.9	-34.7
	5	20	12.4	-16.2	13.9	-18.2	17.2	-22.5	18.9	-24.8	20.8	-27.2	24.7	-32.4
	5	50	11.6	-14.7	13.0	-16.5	16.1	-20.3	17.8	-22.4	19.5	-24.6	23.2	-29.3
	5	100	11.1	-13.5	12.4	-15.1	15.3	-18.7	16.9	-20.6	18.5	-22.6	22.0	-26.9
	5	500	9.7	-10.8	10.9	-12.1	13.4	-14.9	14.8	-16.5	16.2	-18.1	19.3	-21.5

Unit Conversion — 1.0 ft = 0.3048 m ; 1.0 psf = 0.479 kN/m²

Components and Cladding - Method 1				h ≤ 60 ft		
Figure 3.3.2 (cont'd)	Net Design Wind Pressures			Walls & Roofs		
	Enclosed Buuildings					

Net Design Wind Pressure, p$_{net30}$ (psf) *(Exposure B at h = 30 ft. with 1 = 1.0 and Kzt= 1.0)*

	Zone	Effective wind area (sf)	Basic Wind Speed V (mph)										
			125		130		140		145		150		170	
Roof 0 to 7 degrees	1	10	11.4	-28.1	12.4	-30.4	14.3	-35.3	15.4	-37.8	16.5	-40.5	21.1	-52.0
	1	20	10.7	-27.4	11.6	-29.6	13.4	-34.4	14.4	-36.9	15.4	-39.4	19.8	-50.7
	1	50	9.8	-26.4	10.6	-28.6	12.3	-33.2	13.1	-35.6	14.1	-38.1	18.1	-48.9
	1	100	9.1	-25.7	9.8	-27.8	11.4	-32.3	12.2	-34.6	13.0	-37.0	16.7	-47.6
	2	10	11.4	-47.2	12.4	-51.0	14.3	-59.2	15.4	-63.5	16.5	-67.9	21.1	-87.2
	2	20	10.7	-42.1	11.6	-45.6	13.4	-52.9	14.4	-56.7	15.4	-60.7	19.8	-78.0
	2	50	9.8	-35.5	10.6	-38.4	12.3	-44.5	13.1	-47.8	14.1	-51.1	18.1	-65.7
	2	100	9.1	-30.5	9.8	-33.0	11.4	-38.2	12.2	-41.0	13.0	-43.9	16.7	-56.4
	3	10	11.4	-71.0	12.4	-76.8	14.3	-89.0	15.4	-95.5	16.5	-102.2	21.1	-131.3
	3	20	10.7	-58.5	11.6	-63.6	13.4	-73.8	14.4	-79.1	15.4	-84.7	19.8	-108.7
	3	50	9.8	-42.7	10.6	-46.2	12.3	-53.5	13.1	-57.4	14.1	-61.5	18.1	-78.9
	3	100	9.1	-30.5	9.8	-33.0	11.4	-38.2	12.2	-41.0	13.0	-43.9	16.7	-56.4
Roof >7 to 27 degrees	1	10	16.2	-25.7	17.5	-27.8	20.3	-32.3	21.8	-34.6	23.3	-37.0	30.0	-47.6
	1	20	14.8	-25.0	16.0	-27.0	18.5	-31.4	19.9	-33.7	21.3	-36.0	27.3	-46.3
	1	50	12.9	-24.1	13.9	-26.0	16.1	-30.2	17.3	-32.4	18.5	-34.6	23.8	-44.5
	1	100	11.4	-23.2	12.4	-25.2	14.3	-29.3	15.4	-31.4	16.5	-33.6	21.1	-43.2
	2	10	16.2	-44.8	17.5	-48.4	20.3	-56.2	21.8	-60.3	23.3	-64.5	30.0	-82.8
	2	20	14.8	-41.2	16.0	-44.6	18.5	-51.7	19.9	-55.4	21.3	-59.3	27.3	-76.2
	2	50	12.9	-36.5	13.9	-39.4	16.1	-45.7	17.3	-49.1	18.5	-52.5	23.8	-67.4
	2	100	11.4	-32.9	12.4	-35.6	14.3	-41.2	15.4	-44.2	16.5	-47.3	21.1	-60.8
	3	10	16.2	-66.2	17.5	-71.6	20.3	-83.1	21.8	-89.1	23.3	-95.4	30.0	-122.5
	3	20	14.8	-61.9	16.0	-67.0	18.5	-77.7	19.9	-83.3	21.3	-89.2	27.3	-114.5
	3	50	12.9	-56.2	13.9	-60.8	16.1	-70.5	17.3	-75.7	18.5	-81.0	23.8	-104.0
	3	100	11.4	-51.9	12.4	-56.2	14.3	-65.1	15.4	-69.9	16.5	-74.8	21.1	-96.0
Roof >27 to 45 degrees	1	10	25.7	-28.1	27.8	-30.4	32.3	-35.3	34.6	-37.8	37.0	-40.5	47.6	-52.0
	1	20	25.0	-26.7	27.0	-28.9	31.4	-33.5	33.7	-35.9	36.0	-38.4	46.3	-49.3
	1	50	24.1	-24.8	26.0	-26.8	30.2	-31.1	32.4	-33.3	34.6	-35.7	44.5	-45.8
	1	100	23.3	-23.3	25.2	-25.2	29.3	-29.3	31.4	-31.4	33.6	-33.6	43.2	-43.2
	2	10	25.7	-32.9	27.8	-35.6	32.3	-41.2	34.6	-44.2	37.0	-47.3	47.6	-60.8
	2	20	25.0	-31.4	27.0	-34.0	31.4	-39.4	33.7	-42.3	36.0	-45.3	46.3	-58.1
	2	50	24.1	-29.5	26.0	-32.0	30.2	-37.1	32.4	-39.8	34.6	-42.5	44.5	-54.6
	2	100	23.2	-28.1	25.2	-30.4	29.3	-35.3	31.4	-37.8	33.6	-40.5	43.2	-52.0
	3	10	25.7	-32.9	27.8	-35.6	32.3	-41.2	34.6	-44.2	37.0	-47.3	47.6	-60.8
	3	20	25.0	-31.4	27.0	-34.0	31.4	-39.4	33.7	-42.3	36.0	-45.3	46.3	-58.1
	3	50	24.1	-29.5	26.0	-32.0	30.2	-37.1	32.4	-39.8	34.6	-42.5	44.5	-54.6
	3	100	23.3	-28.1	25.2	-30.4	29.3	-35.3	31.4	-37.8	33.6	-40.5	43.2	-52.0
Wall	4	10	28.1	-30.5	30.4	-33.0	35.3	-38.2	37.8	-41.0	40.5	-43.9	52.0	-56.4
	4	20	26.8	-29.2	29.0	-31.6	33.7	-36.7	36.1	-39.3	38.7	-42.1	49.6	-54.1
	4	50	25.2	-27.5	27.2	-29.8	31.6	-34.6	33.9	-37.1	36.2	-39.7	46.6	-51.0
	4	100	23.9	-26.3	25.9	-28.4	30.0	-33.0	32.2	-35.4	34.4	-37.8	44.2	-48.6
	4	500	21.0	-23.3	22.7	-25.2	26.3	-29.3	28.2	-31.4	30.2	-33.6	38.8	-43.2
	5	10	28.1	-37.6	30.4	-40.7	35.3	-47.2	37.8	-50.6	40.5	-54.2	52.0	-69.6
	5	20	26.8	-35.1	29.0	-38.0	33.7	-44.0	36.1	-47.2	38.7	-50.5	49.6	-64.9
	5	50	25.2	-31.8	27.2	-34.3	31.6	-39.8	33.9	-42.7	36.2	-45.7	46.6	-58.7
	5	100	23.9	-29.2	25.9	-31.6	30.0	-36.7	32.2	39.3	34.4	-42.1	44.2	-54.1
	5	500	21.0	-23.2	22.7	-25.2	26.3	-29.3	28.2	-31.1	30.2	-33.6	38.8	-43.2

Unit Conversion — 1.0 ft = 0.3048 m ; 1.0 psf = 0.479 kN/m^2

Components and Cladding - Method 1		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.2 (contd.) Net Design Wind Pressures Enclosed Buildings		**Walls & Roofs**

Roof Overhang Net Design wind Pressure, p_{net30} (psf)
(Exposure B at h = 30 ft, with I = 1.0/)

	Zone	Effective Wind Area (sf)	Basic Wind Speed V(mph)							
			90	100	110	120	130	140	150	170
Roo 0 to 7 degrees	2	10	-21.0	-25.9	-31.4	-37.3	-43.8	-50.8	-58.3	-74.9
	2	20	-20.6	-25.5	-30.8	-36.7	-43.0	-49.9	-57.3	-73.6
	2	50	-20.1	-24.9	-30.1	-35.8	-42.0	-48.7	-55.9	-71.8
	2	100	-19.8	-24.4	-29.5	-35.1	-41.2	-47.8	-54.9	-70.5
	3	10	-34.6	-42.7	-51.6	-61.5	-72.1	-83.7	-96.0	-123.4
	3	20	-27.1	-33.5	-40.5	-48.3	-56.6	-65.7	-75.4	-96.8
	3	50	-17.3	-21.4	-25.9	-30.8	-36.1	-41.9	-48.1	-61.8
	3	100	-10.0	-12.2	-14.8	-17.6	-20.6	-23.9	-27.4	-35.2
Roo 0 > 7to 27 degrees	2	10	-27.2	-33.5	-40.6	-48.3	-56.7	-65.7	-75.5	-96.9
	2	20	-27.2	-33.5	-40.6	-48.3	-56.7	-65.7	-75.5	-96.9
	2	50	-27.2	-33.5	-40.6	-48.3	-56.7	-65.7	-75.5	-96.9
	2	100	-27.2	-33.5	-40.6	-48.3	-56.7	-65.7	-75.5	-96.9
	3	10	-45.7	-56.4	-68.3	-81.2	-95.3	-110.6	-126.9	-163.0
	3	20	-41.2	-50.9	-61.1	-73.3	-86.0	-99.8	-114.5	-147.1
	3	50	-35.3	-43.6	-52.8	-62.8	-73.7	-85.5	-98.1	-126.1
	3	100	-30.9	-38.1	-46.1	-54.9	-64.4	-74.7	-85.8	-110.1
Roo 0 >27to 45 degrees	2	10	-24.7	-30.5	-36.9	-43.9	-51.5	-59.8	-68.6	-88.1
	2	20	-24.0	-29.6	-35.8	-42.6	-50.0	-58.0	-66.5	-85.5
	2	50	-23.0	-28.4	-34.4	-40.8	-47.9	-55.6	-63.8	-82.0
	2	100	-22.2	-27.4	-33.2	-39.5	-46.4	-53.8	-61.7	-79.3
	3	10	-24.7	-30.5	-36.9	-43.9	-51.5	-59.8	-68.6	-88.1
	3	20	-24.0	-29.6	-35.8	-42.6	-50.0	-58.0	-66.5	-85.5
	3	50	-23.0	-28.4	-34.4	-40.8	-47.9	-55.6	-63.8	-82.0
	3	100	-22.2	-27.4	-33.2	-39.5	-46.4	-53.8	-61.7	-79.3

Adjustment Factor		
for Building Height and Exposure, λ		
Mean Roof Height (ft)	Exposure		
	B	**C**	**D**
15	1.00	1.21	1.47
20	1.00	1.29	1.55
25	1.00	1.35	1.61
30	1.00	1.40	1.66
35	1.05	1.45	1.70
40	1.09	1.49	1.74
45	1.12	1.53	1.78
50	1.16	1.56	1.81
55	1.19	1.59	1.84
60	1.22	1.62	1.87

Unit Conversion — 1.0 ft = 0.3048 m ; 1.0 psf = 0.479 kN/m^2

Topographic Factor , K_{zt}- Method 2

Figure 3.3.3

Escarpment   2-D ridge or 3-D axisymmetrical hill
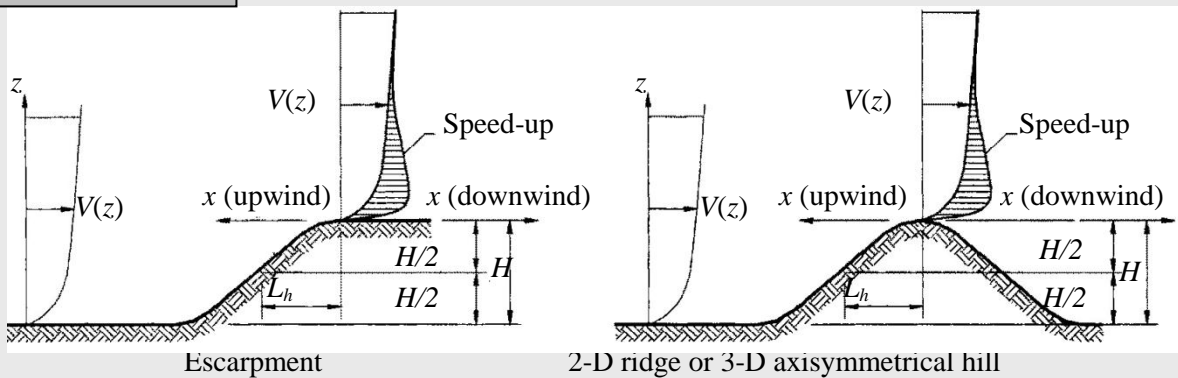
	Topographic multipliers for Exposure C									
	K_1 multiplier				K_2 multiplier			K_3 multiplier		
H/L_h	2-D ridge	2-D escarp.	3-D axisym. hill	x/L_h	2-D escarp.	All other cases	z/L_h	2-D ridge	2-D escarp.	3-D axisym. hill
0.20	0.29	0.17	0.21	0.00	1.00	1.00	0.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
0.25	0.36	0.21	0.26	0.50	0.88	0.67	0.10	0.74	0.78	0.67
0.30	0.43	0.26	0.32	1.00	0.75	0.33	0.20	0.55	0.61	0.45
0.35	0.51	0.30	0.37	1.50	0.63	0.00	0.30	0.41	0.47	0.30
0.40	0.58	0.34	0.42	2.00	0.50	0.00	0.40	0.30	0.37	0.20
0.45	0.65	0.38	0.47	2.50	0.38	0.00	0.50	0.22	0.29	0.14
0.50	0.72	0.43	0.53	3.00	0.25	0.00	0.60	0.17	0.22	0.09
				3.50	0.13	0.00	0.70	0.12	0.17	0.06
				4.00	0.00	0.00	0.80	0.09	0.14	0.04
							0.90	0.07	0.11	0.03
							1.00	0.05	0.08	0.02
							1.50	0.01	0.02	0.00
							2.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Notes:

1. *For values of H/L_h, x/L_h and z/L_h other than those shown, linear interpolation is permitted.*

2. *For $H/L_h > 0.5$, assume $H/L_h = 0.5$ for evaluating K_1 and substitute $2H$ for L_h for evaluating K_2 and K_3.*

3. *Multipliers are based on the assumption that wind approaches the hill or escarpment along the direction of maximum slope.*

4. *Notation:*

   H : *Height of hill or escarpment relative to the upwind terrain, in feet (meters).*

   L_h : *Distance upwind of crest to where the difference in ground elevation is half the height of hill or escarpment, in feet (meters).*

   K_1 : *Factor to account for shape of topographic feature and maximum speed-up effect.*

   K_2 : *Factor to account for reduction in speed-up with distance upwind or downwind of crest.*

   K_3 : *Factor to account for reduction in speed-up with height above local terrain.*

   x : *Distance (upwind or downwind) from the crest to the building site, in feet (meters).*

   z : *Height above local ground level, in feet (meters).*

   μ : *Horizontal attenuation factor.*

Topographic Factor , K_{zt}- Method 2
Figure 3.3.3 (contd.)

$K_{zt}= (1+K_1 K_2 K_3)^2$, K_1determined from table below , $K_2= (1 - \dfrac{|x|}{\mu L_h})$, $K_3= e^{-\gamma z/L_h}$

Parameters for speed-up over hills and escarpments						
Hill shape	$K_1/(H/L_h)$			γ	μ	
	Exposure				Upwind of crest	Downwind of crest
	B	C	D			
2-dimensional ridges (or valleys with negative H in $K_1/(H/L_h)$	1.30	1.45	1.55	3	1.5	1.5
2-dimensional escarpments	0.75	0.85	0.95	2.5	1.5	4
3-dimensional axisym. hill	0.95	1.05	1.15	4	1.5	1.5

Main Wind Force Res. Sys. / Comp and Clad. - Method 2	**All heights**
Figure 3.3.4 Internal Pressure Coefficient, $G C_{pi}$ **Enclosed, Partially Enclosed and Open Buildings**	**Walls & Roofs**

Enclosure classification	GC_{pi}
Open buildings	0.00
Partially enclosed buildings	+ 0.55 − 0.55
Enclosed buildings	+ 0.18 − 0.18

Notes:

1. *Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the internal surfaces, respectively.*
2. *Values of GC_{pi}shall be used with $q_z$or $q_h$as specified in 6.5.12.*
3. *Two cases shall be considered to determine the critical load requirements for the appropriate condition:*
   (i) a positive value of GC_{pi}applied to all internal surfaces
   (ii) a negative value of GC_{pi}applied to all internal surfaces

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Method 2	All Heights
Figure 3.3.5 **External Pressure Coefficients, C_p** **Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings**	**Walls & Roofs**

GABLE, HIP ROOF

MONOSLOPE ROOF   (NOTE 4)
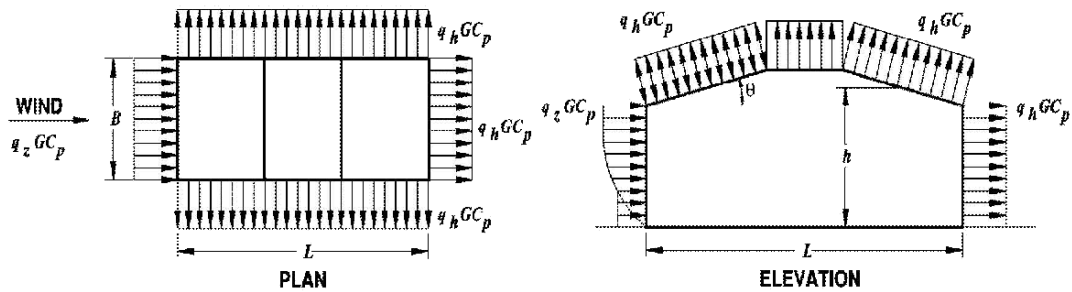
MANSARD ROOF   (NOTE 8)

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Method 2		All Heights
IFigure 3.3.5 (con't)	External Pressure Coefficients, C_p	**Walls & Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		

Wall Pressure Coefficients, C_p			
Surface	L/B	C_p	Use With
Windward Wall	All values	0.8	q_z
Leeward Wall	0-1	-0.5	q_h
	2	-0.3	
	≥4	-0.2	
Side Wall	All values	-0.7	q_h

Roof Pressure Coefficients, C_p, for use with q_h											
Wind Direction		Windward								Leeward	
		Angle, θ (degrees)								Angle, θ (degrees)	
	h/L	10	15	20	25	30	35	45	≥60#	10	15	≥20
Normal to ridge for θ ≥ 10°	≤0.25	-0.7 / -0.18	-0.5 / 0.0*	-0.3 / 0.2	-0.2 / 0.3	-0.2 / 0.3	0.0* / 0.4	0.4	0.01 θ	-0.3	-0.5	-0.6
	0.5	-0.9 / -0.18	-0.7 / -0.18	-0.4 / 0.0*	-0.3 / 0.2	-0.2 / 0.2	-0.2 / 0.3	0.0* / 0.4	0.01 θ	-0.5	-0.5	-0.6
	≥1.0	-1.3** / -0.18	-1.0 / -0.18	-0.7 / -0.18	-0.5 / 0.0*	-0.3 / 0.2	-0.2 / 0.2	0.0* / 0.3	0.01 θ	-0.7	-0.6	-0.6

Normal to ridge for θ < 10 and Parallel to ridge for all θ		Horiz distance from windward edge	C_p	*Value is provided for interpolation purposes.
	≤ 0.5	0 to h/2	-0.9, -0.18	**Value can be reduced linearly with area over which it is applicable as follows
		h/2 to h	-0.9, -0.18	
		h to 2 h	-0.5, -0.18	
		> 2h	-0.3, -0.18	
	≥ 1.0	0 to h/2	-1.3**, -0.18	**Area (sq ft)** / **Reduction Factor**
				≤ 100 (9.3 sq m) / 1.0
		> h/2	-0.7, -0.18	200 (23.2 sq m) / 0.9
				≥ 1000 (92.9 sq m) / 0.8

Notes:

1. *Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.*

2. *Linear interpolation is permitted for values of L/B, h/L and θother than shown. Interpolation shall only be carried out between values of the same sign. Where no value of the same sign is given, assume 0.0 for interpolation purposes.*

3. *Where two values of $C_p$are listed, this indicates that the windward roof slope is subjected to either positive or negative pressures and the roof structure shall be designed for both conditions. Interpolation for intermediate ratios of h/L in this case shall only be carried out between $C_p$values of like sign.*

4. *For monoslope roofs, entire roof surface is either a windward or leeward surface.*

5. *For flexible buildings use appropriate G_f as determined by ASCE Section 6.5.8.*

6. *Refer to ASCE Figure 6-7 for domes and ASCE Figure 6-8 for arched roofs.*

7. *Notation:*

   B   :   Horizontal dimension of building, in feet (meter), measured normal to wind direction.

   L   :   Horizontal dimension of building, in feet (meter), measured parallel to wind direction.

   H   :   Mean roof height in feet (meters): except that eave height shall be used for θ≤10 degrees.

   z   :   Height above ground, in feet (meters).

   G   :   Gust effect factor.

   q_z, q_h: Velocity pressure, in pounds per square foot (N/m²), evaluated at respective height.

   θ   :   Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

8. *For mansard roofs, the top horizontal surface and leeward inclined surface shall be treated as leeward surfaces from the table.*

9. *Except for MWFRS's at the roof consisting of moment resisting frames, the total horizontal shear shall not be less than that determined by neglecting wind forces on roof surfaces.*

 # For roof slopes greater than 80°, use $C_p = 0.8$

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Method 2		All Heights
Figure 3.3.6	**External Pressure Coefficients, C_p**	**Domed Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings and Structures		

External Pressure Coefficients for Domes with a Circular Base.
(Adapted from Eurocode, 1995)

Notes:

1. Two load cases shall be considered:
   Case A. C_p values between A and B and between B and C shall be determined by linear Interpolation along arcs on the dome parallel to the wind direction;
   Case B. C_p shall be the constant value of A for θ ≤ 25 degrees, and shall be determined by linear interpolation from 25 degrees to B and from B to C.
2. Values denote C_p to be used with $q_{(h_D+f)}$ where h_D+ f is the height at the top of the dome.
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. C_p is constant on the dome surface for arcs of circles perpendicular to the wind direction; for example, the arc passing through B-B-B and all arcs parallel to B-B-B.
5. For values of h_D/D between those listed on the graph curves, linear interpolation shall be permitted.
6. θ= 0 degrees on dome springline, θ= 90 degrees at dome center top point. f is measured from spring line to top.
7. The total horizontal shear shall not be less than that determined by neglecting windforces on roof surfaces.
8. For f/D values less than 0.05, use Figure 3.5.

Main Wind Force Res. Sys. / Comp and Clad. – Method 2		All Heights
Figure 3.3.7 External Pressure Coefficients, C_p Figure 3.3.7 rtially Enclosed Buildings and Structures		**Arched Roofs**

Conditions	Rise-to-span ratio, r	C_p		
		Windward quarter	Center half	Leeward quarter
Roof on elevated structure	$0 < r < 0.2$	-0.9	$-0.7 - r$	-0.5
	$0.2 \leq r < 0.3$*	$1.5r - 0.3$	$-0.7 - r$	-0.5
	$0.3 \leq r \leq 0.6$	$2.75r - 0.7$	$-0.7 - r$	-0.5
Roof springing from ground level	$0 < r \leq 0.6$	$1.4r$	$-0.7 - r$	-0.5

*When the rise-to-span ratio is $0.2 \leq r \leq 0.3$, alternate coefficients given by $6r - 2.1$ shall also be used for

*When the rise-to-span ratio is $0.2 \leq r \leq 0.3$, alternate coefficients given by $6r – 2.1$ shall also be used for the windward quarter.

Notes:
1. Values listed are for the determination of average loads on main wind force resisting systems.
2. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
3. For wind directed parallel to the axis of the arch, use pressure coefficients from Fig. 3.5 with winddirected parallel to ridge.
4. For components and cladding: (1) At roof perimeter, use the external pressure coefficients in Fig. 3.10with θbased on spring-line slope and (2) for remaining roof areas, use external pressure coefficients ofthis table multiplied by 0.87.

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Method 2		All Heights
Figure 3.3.8 Figure3. 3.8	**Design Wind Load Cases**	

CASE 1

P_{WY}

P_{LY}

P_{WX}

P_{LX}

CASE 3

$0.75 P_{WY}$

$0.75 P_{WX}$

$0.75 P_{LX}$

$0.75 P_{LY}$

CASE 2

$0.75P_{WY}$

M_T

$0.75P_{WX}$

$0.75P_{LX}$

$0.75P_{LY}$

B_Y

CASE 4

$0.563 P_{WY}$

$0.563 P_{WX}$

$0.563 P_{LX}$

$0.563 P_{LY}$

B_Y

B_X

M_T

$$M_T = 0.75 \, (P_{WX}+P_{LX})B_X e_X$$
$$e_X = \pm 0.15 \, B_X$$

$$M_T = 0.75 \, (P_{WY}+P_{LY})B_Y e_Y$$
$$e_Y = \pm 0.15 \, B_Y$$

$$M_T = 0.563 \, (P_{WX}+P_{LX})B_X e_X + 0.563 \, (P_{WY}+P_{LY})B_Y e_Y$$
$$e_X = \pm 0.15 \, B_X \qquad e_Y = \pm 0.15 \, B_Y$$

Case 1. Full design wind pressure acting on the projected area perpendicular to each principal axis of the structure, considered separately along each principal axis.

Case 2. Three quarters of the design wind pressure acting on the projected area perpendicular to each principal axis of the structure in conjunction with a torsional moment as shown, considered separately for each principal axis.

Case 3. Wind loading as defined in Case 1, but considered to act simultaneously at 75% of the specified value.

Case 4. Wind loading as defined in Case 2, but considered to act simultaneously at 75% of the specified value.

Notes:

Notes:
1. Design wind pressures for windward and leeward faces shall be determined in accordance with theprovisions of 3.5.12.2.1 and 3.5.12.2.3 as applicable for building of all heights.
2. Diagrams show plan views of building.
3. Notation:
   P_{wx}, P_{wy}: Windward face design pressure acting in the x, y principal axis, respectively.
   P_{Lx}, P_{Ly}: Leeward face design pressure acting in the x, y principal axis, respectively.
   e (e_x , e_y) : Eccentricity for the x, y principal axis of the structure, respectively.
   M_T:Torsional moment per unit height acting about a vertical axis of the building.

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Method 2	h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.9 External Pressure Coefficients, GC$_{pf}$ Figure 3.3.9 tially Enclosed Buildings	**Low-rise Walls & Roofs**

Transverse Direction

Longitudinal Direction

Basic Load Cases

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.9 (cont'd) External Pressure Coefficients, GC$_{pf}$ Figure 33.9 Partially Enclosed Buildings		**Low-rise Walls & Roofs**

Roof Angle θ (degrees)	Building Surface									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	1E	2E	3E	4E
0-5	0.40	-0.69	-0.37	-0.29	-0.45	-0.45	0.61	-1.07	-0.53	-0.43
20	0.53	-0.69	-0.48	-0.43	-0.45	-0.45	0.80	-1.07	-0.69	-0.64
30-45	0.56	0.21	-0.43	-0.37	-0.45	-0.45	0.69	0.27	-0.53	-0.48
90	0.56	0.56	-0.37	-0.37	-0.45	-0.45	0.69	0.69	-0.48	-0.48

Notes:

Notes:
1. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
2. For values of θ other than those shown, linear interpolation is permitted.
3. The building must be designed for all wind directions using the 8 loading patterns shown. The load patterns are applied to each building corner in turn as the Reference Corner.
4. Combinations of external and internal pressures (see Figure 3.4) shall be evaluated as required to obtain the most severe loadings.
5. For the torsional load cases shown below, the pressures in zones designated with a "T" (1T, 2T, 3T, 4T) shall be 25% of the full design wind pressures (zones 1, 2, 3, 4).
   Exception: One story buildings with h less than or equal to 30 ft (9. 1 m), buildings two stories or less framed with light frame construction, and buildings two stories or less designed with flexible diaphragms need not be designed for the torsional load cases.
   Torsional loading shall apply to all eight basic load patterns using the figures below applied at each reference corner.
6. Except for moment-resisting frames, the total horizontal shear shall not be less than that determined by neglecting wind forces on roof surfaces.
7. For the design of the MWFRS providing lateral resistance in a direction parallel to a ridge line or for flat roofs, use θ = 0° and locate the zone 2/3 boundary at the mid-length of the building.
8. The roof pressure coefficient GC_{pf}, when negative in Zone 2 or 2E, shall be applied in Zone 2/2E for a distance from the edge of roof equal to 0.5 times the horizontal dimension of the building parallel to the direction of the MWFRS being designed or 2.5 times the eave height, h_e, at the windward wall, whichever is less; the remainder of Zone 2/2E extending to the ridge line shall use the pressure coefficient GC_{pf} for Zone 3/3E.
9. Notation:
   a : 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or 0.4h, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
   h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for θ ≤ 10°
   θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.
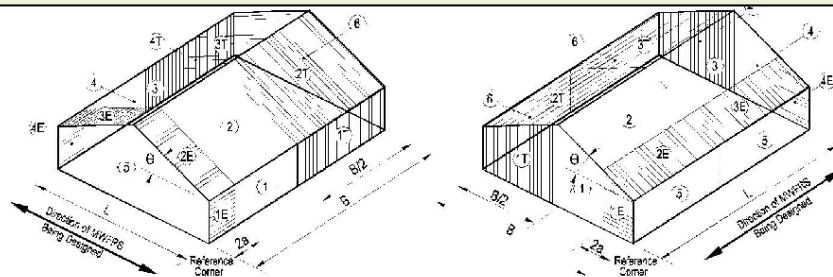
Transverse Direction   Longitudinal Direction

Torsional Load Cases

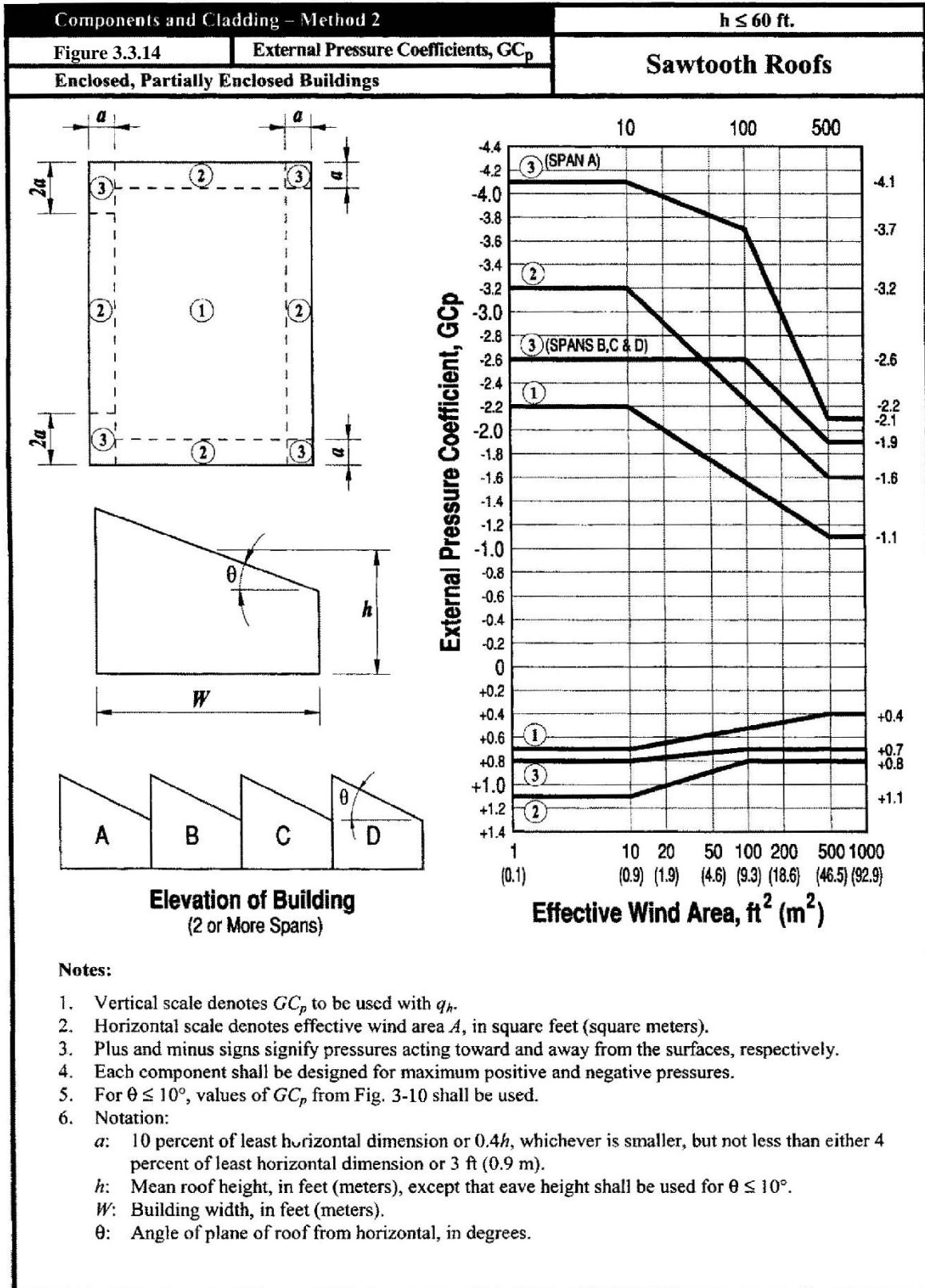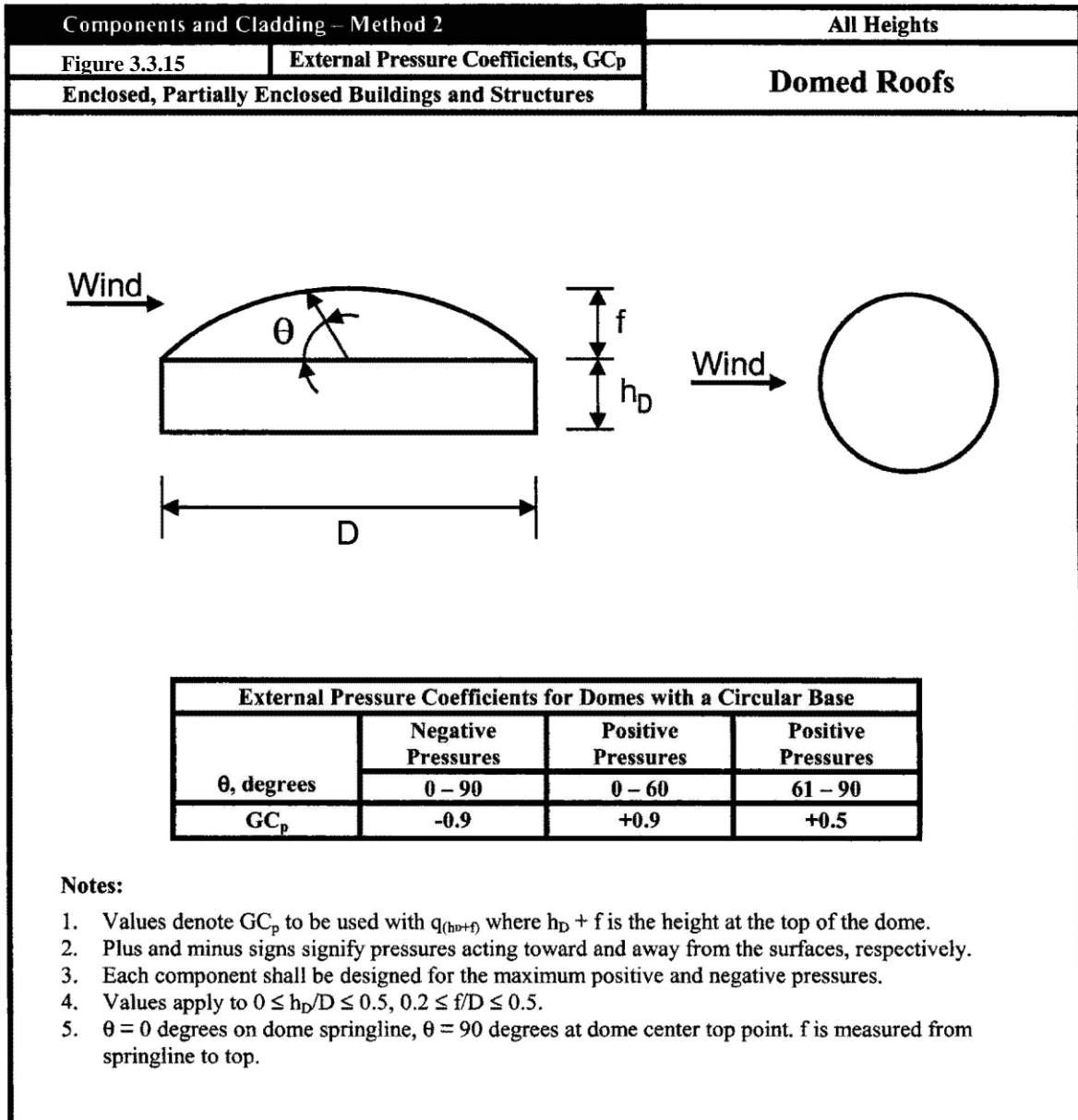| Components and Cladding – Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.10A	External Pressure Coefficients, GC$_p$	**Walls**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		
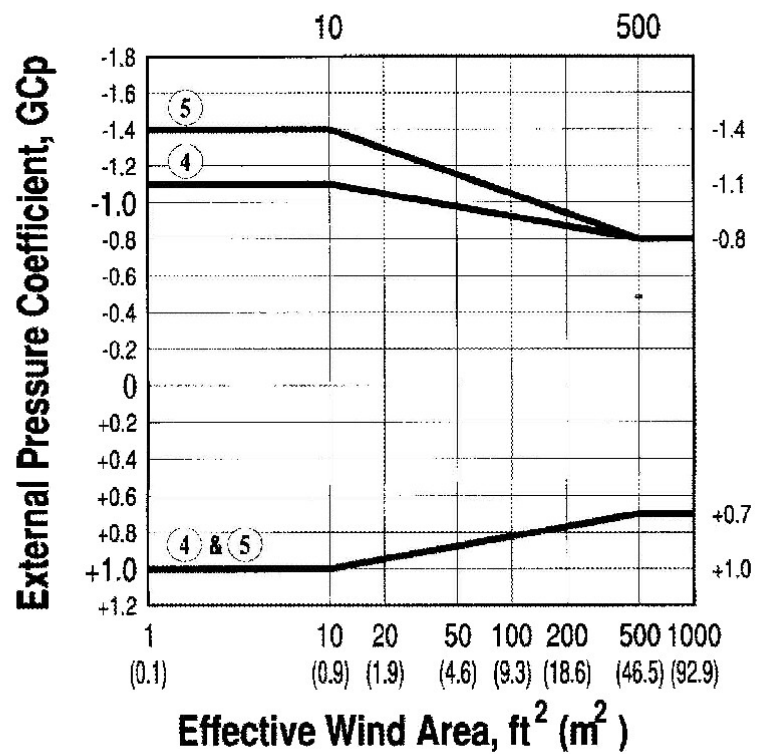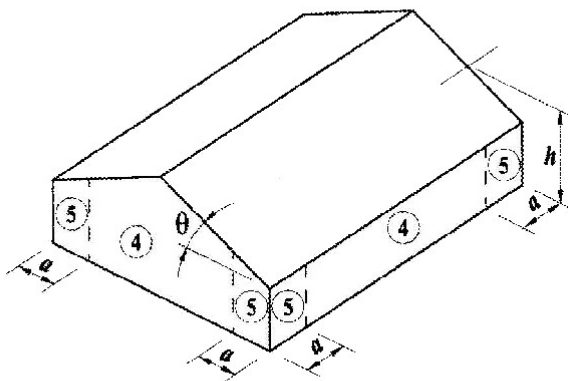
Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. Values of GC$_p$ for walls shall be reduced by 10% when θ ≤ 10°.
6. Notation:

   a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or 0.4h, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).

   h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for θ ≤ 10°.

   θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.10B	**External Pressure Coefficients, GC_p**	**Gable Roofs θ ≤ 7°**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		
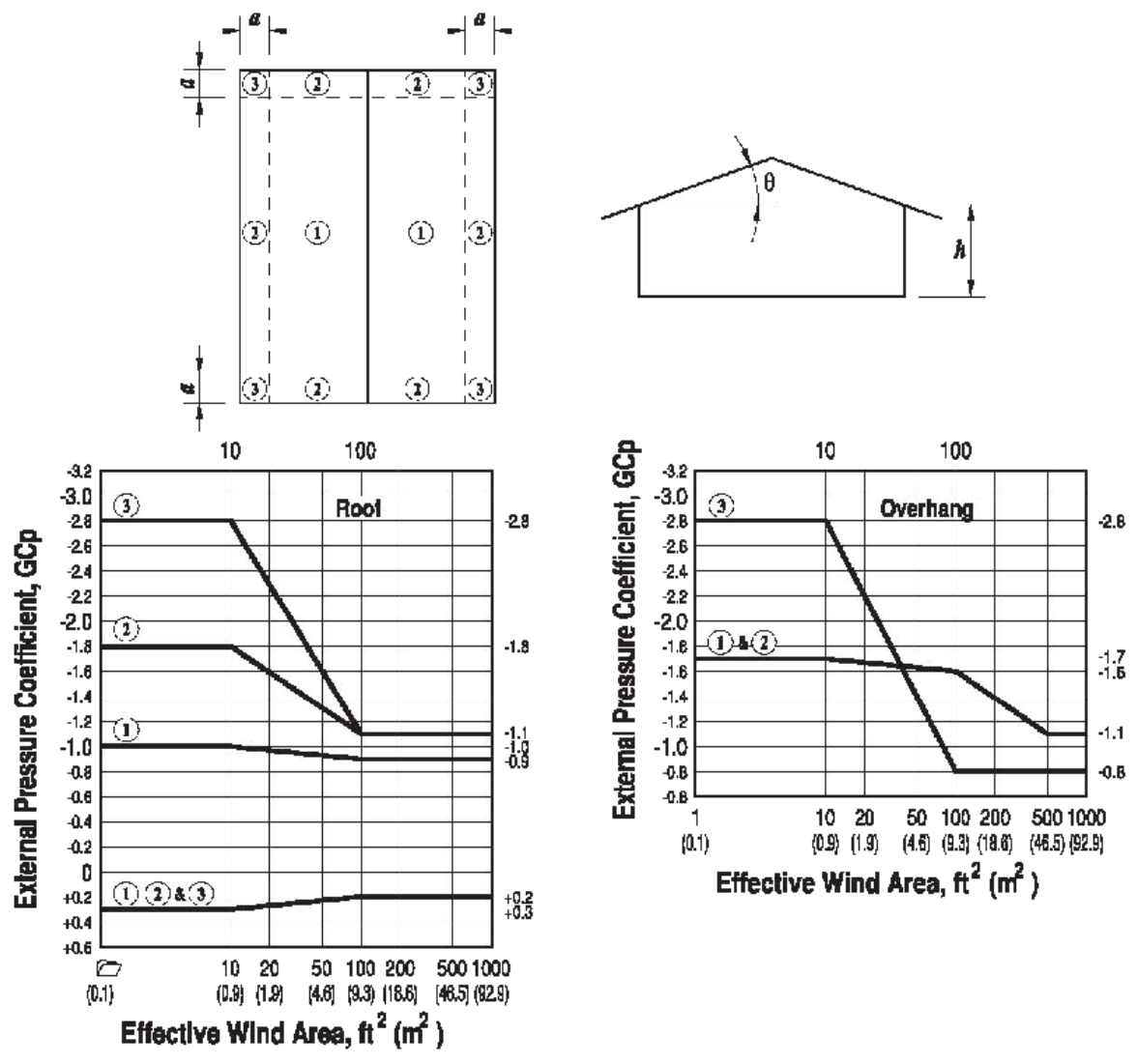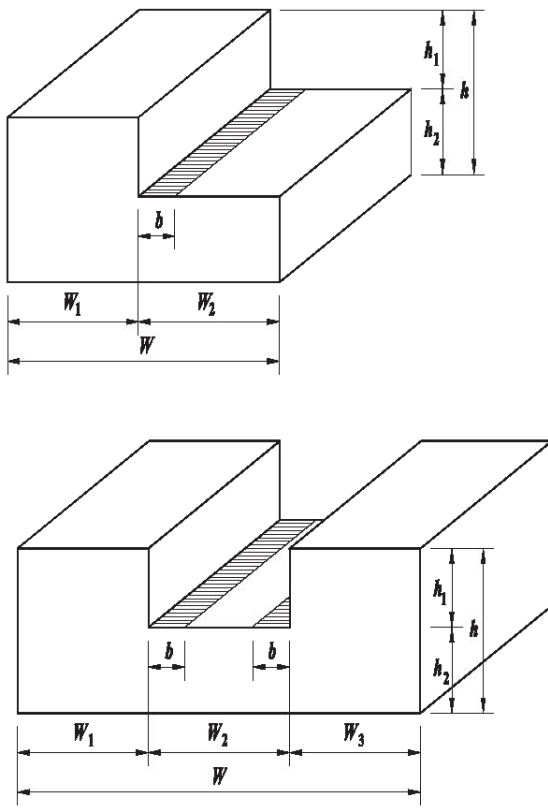
Notes:
1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. If a parapet equal to or higher than 3 ft (0.9m) is provided around the perimeter of the roof with θ ≤ 7°, the negative values of GC_p in Zone 3 shall be equal to those for Zone 2 and positive values of GC_p in Zones 2 and 3 shall be set equal to those for wall Zones 4 and 5 respectively in Figure 3.10A.
6. Values of GC_p for roof overhangs include pressure contributions from both upper and lower surfaces.
7. Notation:
   A: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or 0.4h, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
h : Eave height shall be used for θ ≤ 10°.
$θ$: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding — Method 2		$h \leq 60$ ft.
Figure 3.3-10 C	External Pressure Coefficients, GC_p	**Gable/Hip Roofs $7° < \theta \leq 27°$**
Figure 3.3.10C	ally Enclosed Buildings	

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. Values of GC_p for roof overhangs include pressure contributions from both upper and lower surfaces.
6. For hip roofs with $7° < \theta \leq 27°$, edge/ridge strips and pressure coefficients for ridges of gabled roofs shall apply on each hip.
7. For hip roofs with $\theta \leq 25°$, Zone 3 shall be treated as Zone 2.
8. Notation:
    a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or $0.4h$, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
    h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for $\theta \leq 10°$.
    θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding – Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.10D	**External Pressure Coefficients GC$_p$**	**Gable Roofs 27°< θ ≤ 45°**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. Values of GC_p for roof overhangs include pressure contributions from both upper and lower surfaces.
6. Notation:
   - *a*: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or 0.4h, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
   - *h*: Mean roof height, in feet (meters).
   - θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding - Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure3. 3.11	**External Pressure Coefficients, GC$_p$**	**Stepped Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		

$h_1 \geq 10 \, \text{ft.} \, (3 \, \text{m})$

$b = 1.5 \, h_1$

$b < 100 \, \text{ft.} \, (30.5 \, \text{m})$

$\dfrac{h_i}{h} = 0.3 \, \text{to} \, 0.7$

$\dfrac{W_i}{W} = 0.25 \, \text{to} \, 0.75$

Notes:

1. On the lower level of flat, stepped roofs shown in Fig. 3.11, the zone designations and pressurecoefficients shown in Fig. 3.10B shall apply, except that at the roof-upper wall intersection(s), Zone 3 shall be treated as Zone 2 and Zone 2 shall be treated as Zone 1. Positive values of *GC$_p$*equal to those for walls in Fig. 3.10A shall apply on the cross-hatched areas shown in Fig. 3.11.

2. Notation:

   b: 1.5*h$_1$* in Fig. 3.11, but not greater than 100 ft (30.5 m).

h :Mean roof height, in feet (meters).

h$_i$:*h$_1$* or *h$_2$* in Fig. 3.11; *h* = *h$_1$* + *h$_2$*; *h$_1$*≥10 ft (3.1 m); *h$_i$*/*h* = 0.3 to 0.7.

W: Building width in Fig. 3.11.

W$_i$: *W$_1$* or *W$_2$* or *W$_3$* in Fig. .11. *W* = *W$_1$* + *W$_2$* or *W$_1$* + *W$_2$* + *W$_3$*; *W$_i$*/*W* = 0.25 to 0.75.

θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding – Method 2		$h \leq 60$ ft.
Figure 3.3.12	**External Pressure Coefficients, GC_p**	**Multispan Gable Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		
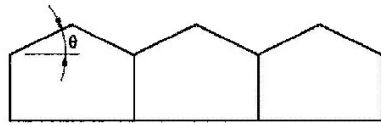
ELEVATION OF BUILDING
(2 or More Spans)
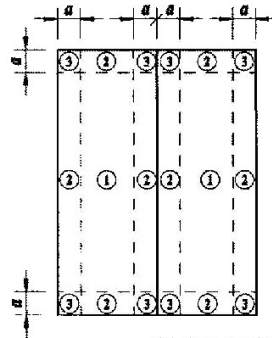
**PLAN AND ELEVATION OF
A SINGLE SPAN MODULE**
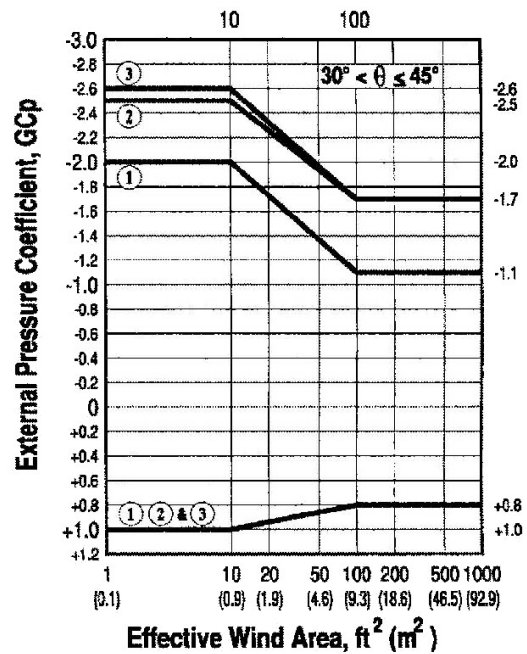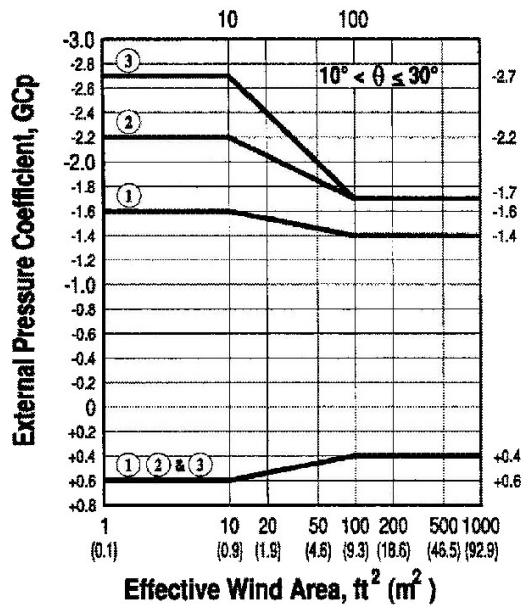
Effective Wind Area, ft^2 (m^2)

Effective Wind Area, ft^2 (m^2)

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area A, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. For $\theta \leq 10°$, values of GC_p from Fig. 3.10 shall be used.
6. Notation:

   a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension of a single-span module or $0.4h$, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4 percent of least horizontal dimension of a single-span module or 3 ft (0.9 m).

   h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for $\theta \leq 10°$.

   W: Building module width, in feet (meters).

   θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding – Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.13A	**External Pressure Coefficients, GC$_p$**	**Monoslope Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		**3°< θ ≤ 10°**

Effective Wind Area, ft^2 (m^2)

External Pressure Coefficient, GC$_p$

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area A, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. For $\theta \le 3°$, values of GC_p from Fig. 3.10B shall be used.
6. Notation:
   - a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or $0.4h$, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4 percent of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
   - h: Eave height shall be used for $\theta \le 10°$.
   - W: Building width, in feet (meters).
   - θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.13B	**External Pressure Coefficients, GC_p**	**Monoslope Roofs**
Figure3. 3.13B ally Enclosed Buildings		**10°< θ ≤ 30°**

Effective Wind Area, ft² (m²)

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area A, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. Notation:
   - a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or $0.4h$, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4 percent of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
   - h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters).
   - W: Building width, in feet (meters).
   - θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding – Method 2		h ≤ 60 ft.
Figure 3.3.14	**External Pressure Coefficients, GC$_p$**	**Sawtooth Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings		

Elevation of Building
(2 or More Spans)

Effective Wind Area, ft^2 (m^2)

External Pressure Coefficient, GC$_p$

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area A, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
5. For $\theta \leq 10°$, values of GC_p from Fig. 3-10 shall be used.
6. Notation:
    a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension or $0.4h$, whichever is smaller, but not less than either 4 percent of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft (0.9 m).
    h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for $\theta \leq 10°$.
    W: Building width, in feet (meters).
    θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Components and Cladding – Method 2		All Heights
Figure 3.3.15	**External Pressure Coefficients, GCp**	**Domed Roofs**
Enclosed, Partially Enclosed Buildings and Structures		

External Pressure Coefficients for Domes with a Circular Base			
	Negative Pressures	**Positive Pressures**	**Positive Pressures**
θ, degrees	**0 – 90**	**0 – 60**	**61 – 90**
GC$_p$	-0.9	+0.9	+0.5

Notes:

1. Values denote GC$_p$ to be used with q$_{(h_D+f)}$ where h$_D$ + f is the height at the top of the dome.
2. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
3. Each component shall be designed for the maximum positive and negative pressures.
4. Values apply to $0 \le h_D/D \le 0.5$, $0.2 \le f/D \le 0.5$.
5. θ = 0 degrees on dome springline, θ = 90 degrees at dome center top point. f is measured from springline to top.

Components and Cladding – Method 2		h > 60 ft.
Figure 3.16	**External Pressure Coefficients, GCp**	**Walls & Roofs**
Figure 3.3.16 rtially Enclosed Buildings		

ROOF PLAN

WALL ELEVATION

External Pressure Coefficient, GC_p

Effective Wind Area, ft^2 (m^2)

Notes:

1. Vertical scale denotes GC_p to be used with appropriate q_z or q_h.
2. Horizontal scale denotes effective wind area A, in square feet (square meters).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the surfaces, respectively.
4. Use q_z with positive values of GC_p and q_h with negative values of GC_p.
5. Each component shall be designed for maximum positive and negative pressures.
6. Coefficients are for roofs with angle $\theta \leq 10°$. For other roof angles and geometry, use GC_p values from Fig. 3.10 and attendant q_h based on exposure defined in 3.5.6.
7. If a parap3-10 ial to or higher than 3 ft (0.9m) is provided aro3.5.6. eter of the roof with $\theta \leq$ 10°, Zone 3 shall be treated as Zone 2.
8. Notation:
   a: 10 percent of least horizontal dimension, but not less than 3 ft (0.9 m).
   h: Mean roof height, in feet (meters), except that eave height shall be used for $\theta \leq 10°$.
   z: height above ground, in feet (meters).
   θ: Angle of plane of roof from horizontal, in degrees.

Main Wind Force Resisting System – Part 1		0.25 ≤ h/L ≤ 1.0	
Figure 3.18A	**Net Pressure Coefficient, C_N**	**Monoslope Free Roofs**	
3.3.17A Open Buildings		**θ ≤ 45°, γ = 0°, 180°**	
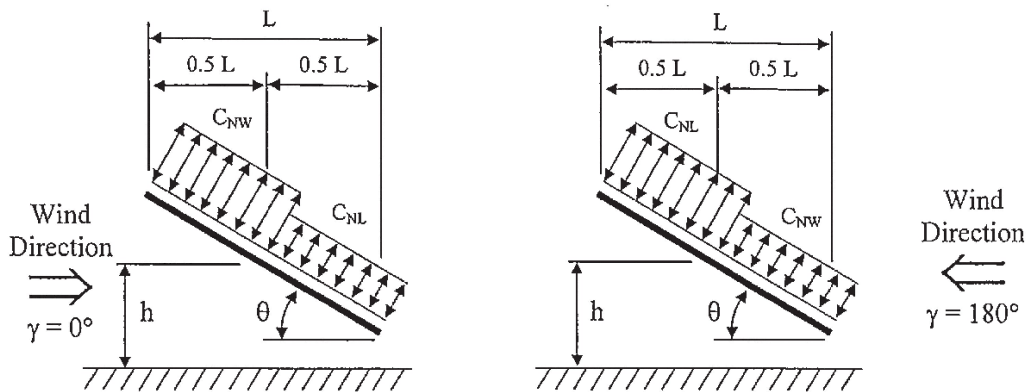
Roof Angle θ	Load Case	Wind Direction, γ = 0°				Wind Direction, γ = 180°			
		Clear Wind Flow		Obstructed Wind Flow		Clear Wind Flow		Obstructed Wind Flow	
		C_{NW}	C_{NL}	C_{NW}	C_{NL}	C_{NW}	C_{NL}	C_{NW}	C_{NL}
0°	A	1.2	0.3	-0.5	-1.2	1.2	0.3	-0.5	-1.2
	B	-1.1	-0.1	-1.1	-0.6	-1.1	-0.1	-1.1	-0.6
7.5°	A	-0.6	-1	-1	-1.5	0.9	1.5	-0.2	-1.2
	B	-1.4	0	-1.7	-0.8	1.6	0.3	0.8	-0.3
15°	A	-0.9	-1.3	-1.1	-1.5	1.3	1.6	0.4	-1.1
	B	-1.9	0	-2.1	-0.6	1.8	0.6	1.2	-0.3
22.5°	A	-1.5	-1.6	-1.5	-1.7	1.7	1.8	0.5	-1
	B	-2.4	-0.3	-2.3	-0.9	2.2	0.7	1.3	0
30°	A	-1.8	-1.8	-1.5	-1.8	2.1	2.1	0.6	-1
	B	-2.5	-0.5	-2.3	-1.1	2.6	1	1.6	0.1
37.5°	A	-1.8	-1.8	-1.5	-1.8	2.1	2.2	0.7	-0.9
	B	-2.4	-0.6	-2.2	-1.1	2.7	1.1	1.9	0.3
45°	A	-1.6	-1.8	-1.3	-1.8	2.2	2.5	0.8	-0.9
	B	-2.3	-0.7	-1.9	-1.2	2.6	1.4	2.1	0.4

Notes:

1. C_{NW} and C_{NL} denote net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces) for windward and leeward half of roof surfaces, respectively.
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. For values of θ between 7.5° and 45°, linear interpolation is permitted. For values of θ less than 7.5°, use load coefficients for 0°.
4. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
5. All load cases shown for each roof angle shall be investigated.
6. Notation:
   - L : horizontal dimension of roof, measured in the along wind direction, ft. (m)
   - h : mean roof height, ft. (m)
   - γ : direction of wind, degrees
   - θ : angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Main Wind Force Resisting System		$0.25 \leq h/L \leq 1.0$
Figure 3.18B	**Net Pressure Coefficient, C_N**	**Pitched Free Roofs**
3.3.17B **Open Buildings**		$\theta \leq 45°, \gamma = 0°, 180°$
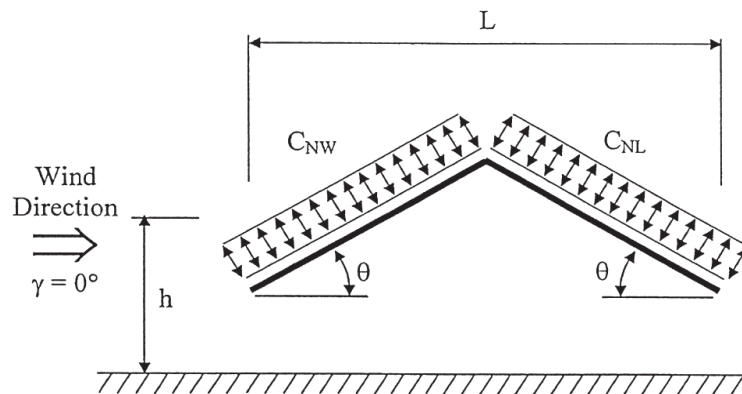
Roof Angle, θ	Load Case	Wind Direction, g = 0°, 180°			
		Clear Wind Flow		Obstructed Wind Flow	
		C_{NW}	C_{NL}	C_{NW}	C_{NL}
7.5°	A	1.1	-0.3	-1.6	-1
	B	0.2	-1.2	-0.9	-1.7
15°	A	1.1	-0.4	-1.2	-1
	B	0.1	-1.1	-0.6	-1.6
22.5°	A	1.1	0.1	-1.2	-1.2
	B	-0.1	-0.8	-0.8	-1.7
30°	A	1.3	0.3	-0.7	-0.7
	B	-0.1	-0.9	-0.2	-1.1
37.5°	A	1.3	0.6	-0.6	-0.6
	B	-0.2	-0.6	-0.3	-0.9
45°	A	1.1	0.9	-0.5	-0.5
	B	-0.3	-0.5	-0.3	-0.7

Notes:
1. C_{NW} and C_{NL} denote net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces) for windward and leeward half of roof surfaces, respectively.
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. For values of θ between 7.5° and 45°, linear interpolation is permitted. For values of θ less than 7.5°, use monoslope roof load coefficients.
4. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
5. All load cases shown for each roof angle shall be investigated.
6. Notation:
    L : horizontal dimension of roof, measured in the along wind direction, ft. (m)
    h : mean roof height, ft. (m)
    γ : direction of wind, degrees
    θ : angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Main Wind Force Resisting System		0.25 ≤ h/L ≤ 1.0
Figure 3.3.17C	**Net Pressure Coefficient, C$_N$**	**Troughed Free Roofs**
	Open Buildings	**θ ≤ 45°, γ = 0°, 180°**

Roof Angle θ	Load Case	Wind Direction, γ = 0°, 180°			
		Clear Wind Flow		Obstructed Wind Flow	
		C$_{NW}$	C$_{NL}$	C$_{NW}$	C$_{NL}$
7.5°	A	-1.1	0.3	-1.6	-0.5
	B	-0.2	1.2	-0.9	-0.8
15°	A	-1.1	0.4	-1.2	-0.5
	B	0.1	1.1	-0.6	-0.8
22.5°	A	-1.1	-0.1	-1.2	-0.6
	B	-0.1	0.8	-0.8	-0.8
30°	A	-1.3	-0.3	-1.4	-0.4
	B	-0.1	0.9	-0.2	-0.5
37.5°	A	-1.3	-0.6	-1.4	-0.3
	B	0.2	0.6	-0.3	-0.4
45°	A	-1.1	-0.9	-1.2	-0.3
	B	0.3	0.5	-0.3	-0.4

Notes:
1. C$_{NW}$ and C$_{NL}$ denote net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces) for windward and leeward half of roof surfaces, respectively.
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. For values of θ between 7.5° and 45°, linear interpolation is permitted. For values of θ less than 7.5°, use monoslope roof load coefficients.
4. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
5. All load cases shown for each roof angle shall be investigated.
6. Notation:
   L : horizontal dimension of roof, measured in the along wind direction, ft. (m)
   h : mean roof height, ft. (m)
   γ : direction of wind, degrees
   θ : angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Main Wind Force Resisting System		$0.25 \leq h/L \leq 1.0$
Fig. 3.3.17D	**Net Pressure Coefficient, C_N**	**Troughed Free Roofs**
	Open Buildings	**$\theta \leq 45°$, $\gamma = 0°$, 180°**

Monoslope

Pitched

Trough

L

h

θ

Distance from Windward Edge

Wind Direction
$\gamma = 90°$

Horizontal Distance from Windward Edge	Roof Angle θ	Load Case	Clear Wind Flow	Obstructed Wind Flow
			C_N	C_N
$\leq h$	All Shapes	A	-0.8	-1.2
	$\theta \leq 45°$	B	0.8	0.5
$> h, \leq 2h$	All Shapes	A	-0.6	-0.9
	$\theta \leq 45°$	B	0.5	0.5
$> 2h$	All Shapes	A	-0.3	-0.6
	$\theta \leq 45°$	B	0.3	0.3

Notes:

1. C_N denotes net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces).
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
4. All load cases shown for each roof angle shall be investigated.
5. For monoslope roofs with theta less than 5 degrees, Cn values shown apply also for cases where gamma= 0 degrees and 0.05 less than or equal to h/L less than or equal to 0.25. See Figure 3.17A for other h/L values.
6. Notation:
   L : horizontal dimension of roof, measured in the along wind direction, ft. (m)
   h : mean roof height, ft. (m).
   γ : direction of wind, degrees
   θ : angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Components and Cladding		0.25 ≤ *h* /*L* ≤ 1.0
Figure 3.3.18A	**Net Pressure Coefficient, *C*_N**	**Monoslope Free Roofs** θ ≤ 1.0
Open Buildings		

Roof Angle θ	Effective Wind Area	C_N											
		Clear Wind Flow						Obstructed Wind Flow					
		Zone 3		Zone 2		Zone 1		Zone 3		Zone 2		Zone 1	
0°	≤ a²	2.4	-3.3	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	1	-3.6	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	> a², ≤ 4.0a²	1.8	-1.7	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	> 4.0a²	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2
7.5°	≤ a²	3.2	-4.2	2.4	-2.1	1.6	-1.4	1.6	-5.1	1.2	-2.6	0.8	-1.7
	> a², ≤ 4.0a²	2.4	-2.1	2.4	-2.1	1.6	-1.4	1.2	-2.6	1.2	-2.6	0.8	-1.7
	> 4.0a²	1.6	-1.4	1.6	-1.4	1.6	-1.4	0.8	-1.7	0.8	-1.7	0.8	-1.7
15°	≤ a²	3.6	-3.8	2.7	-2.9	1.8	-1.9	2.4	-4.2	1.8	-3.2	1.2	-2.1
	> a², ≤ 4.0a²	2.7	-2.9	2.7	-2.9	1.8	-1.9	1.8	-3.2	1.8	-3.2	1.2	-2.1
	> 4.0a²	1.8	-1.9	1.8	-1.9	1.8	-1.9	1.2	-2.1	1.2	-2.1	1.2	-2.1
30°	≤ a²	5.2	-5	3.9	-3.8	2.6	-2.5	3.2	-4.6	2.4	-3.5	1.6	-2.3
	> a², ≤ 4.0a²	3.9	-3.8	3.9	-3.8	2.6	-2.5	2.4	-3.5	2.4	-3.5	1.6	-2.3
	> 4.0a²	2.6	-2.5	2.6	-2.5	2.6	-2.5	1.6	-2.3	1.6	-2.3	1.6	-2.3
45°	≤ a²	5.2	-4.6	3.9	-3.5	2.6	-2.3	4.2	-3.8	3.2	-2.9	2.1	-1.9
	> a², ≤ 4.0a²	3.9	-3.5	3.9	-3.5	2.6	-2.3	3.2	-2.9	3.2	-2.9	2.1	-1.9
	> 4.0a²	2.6	-2.3	2.6	-2.3	2.6	-2.3	2.1	-1.9	2.1	-1.9	2.1	-1.9

Notes:

1. C_N denotes net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces).
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. For values of θ other than those shown, linear interpolation is permitted.
4. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
5. Components and cladding elements shall be designed for positive and negative pressure coefficients shown.
6. Notation:
   a : 10% of least horizontal dimension or 0.4*h*, whichever is smaller but not less than 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft. (0.9 m)
   h : mean roof height, ft. (m)
   L : horizontal dimension of building, measured in along wind direction, ft. (m)
   θ : angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Components and Cladding		$0.25 \leq h/L \leq 1.0$
Fig. 3.3.18B	**Net Pressure Coefficient, C_N**	**Monoslope Free Roofs**
Open Buildings		$\theta \leq 45°$

$\theta < 10°$ $\theta \geq 10°$

Roof Angle θ	Effective Wind Area	C_N											
		Clear Wind Flow						Obstructed Wind Flow					
		Zone 3		Zone 2		Zone 1		Zone 3		Zone 2		Zone 1	
0°	$\leq a^2$	2.4	-3.3	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	1	-3.6	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.8	-1.7	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2
7.5°	$\leq a^2$	2.2	-3.6	1.7	-1.8	1.1	-1.2	1	-5.1	0.8	-2.6	0.5	-1.7
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.7	-1.8	1.7	-1.8	1.1	-1.2	0.8	-2.6	0.8	-2.6	0.5	-1.7
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.1	-1.2	1.1	-1.2	1.1	-1.2	0.5	-1.7	0.5	-1.7	0.5	-1.7
15°	$\leq a^2$	2.2	-2.2	1.7	-1.7	1.1	-1.1	1	-3.2	0.8	-2.4	0.5	-1.6
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.7	-1.7	1.7	-1.7	1.1	-1.1	0.8	-2.4	0.8	-2.4	0.5	-1.6
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.1	-1.1	1.1	-1.1	1.1	-1.1	0.5	-1.6	0.5	-1.6	0.5	-1.6
30°	$\leq a^2$	2.6	-1.8	2	-1.4	1.3	-0.9	1	-2.4	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	2	-1.4	2	-1.4	1.3	-0.9	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.3	-0.9	1.3	-0.9	1.3	-0.9	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2
45°	$\leq a^2$	2.2	-1.6	1.7	-1.2	1.1	-0.8	1	-2.4	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.7	-1.2	1.7	-1.2	1.1	-0.8	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.1	-0.8	1.1	-0.8	1.1	-0.8	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2

Notes:
1. C_N denotes net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces).
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. For values of θ other than those shown, linear interpolation is permitted.
4. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
5. Components and cladding elements shall be designed for positive and negative pressure coefficients shown.
6. Notation:
   a :   10% of least horizontal dimension or 0.4h, whichever is smaller but not less than 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft. (0.9 m).
   h :   mean roof height, ft. (m)
   L :   horizontal dimension of building, measured in along wind direction, ft. (m)
   θ :   angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Components and Cladding			$0.25 \leq h/L \leq 1.0$
Fig. 3.3.18C	**Net Pressure Coefficient, C_N**		**Troughed Free Roofs**
Open Buildings			$\theta \leq 45°$

θ < 10° θ ≥ 10°

Roof Angle θ	Effective Wind Area	C_N											
		Clear Wind Flow						Obstructed Wind Flow					
		Zone 3		Zone 2		Zone 1		Zone 3		Zone 2		Zone 1	
$0°$	$\leq a^2$	2.4	-3.3	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	1	-3.6	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.8	-1.7	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2
$7.5°$	$\leq a^2$	2.4	-3.3	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	1	-4.8	0.8	-2.4	0.5	-1.6
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.8	-1.7	1.8	-1.7	1.2	-1.1	0.8	-2.4	0.8	-2.4	0.5	-1.6
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	1.2	-1.1	0.5	-1.6	0.5	-1.6	0.5	-1.6
$15°$	$\leq a^2$	2.2	-2.2	1.7	-1.7	1.1	-1.1	1	-2.4	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.7	-1.7	1.7	-1.7	1.1	-1.1	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> 4.0a^2$	1.1	-1.1	1.1	-1.1	1.1	-1.1	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2
$30°$	$\leq a^2$	1.8	-2.6	1.4	-2	0.9	-1.3	1	-2.8	0.8	-2.1	0.5	-1.4
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.4	-2	1.4	-2	0.9	-1.3	0.8	-2.1	0.8	-2.1	0.5	-1.4
	$> 4.0a^2$	0.9	-1.3	0.9	-1.3	0.9	-1.3	0.5	-1.4	0.5	-1.4	0.5	-1.4
$45°$	$\leq a^2$	1.6	-2.2	1.2	-1.7	0.8	-1.1	1	-2.4	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> a^2, \leq 4.0a^2$	1.2	-1.7	1.2	-1.7	0.8	-1.1	0.8	-1.8	0.8	-1.8	0.5	-1.2
	$> 4.0a^2$	0.8	-1.1	0.8	-1.1	0.8	-1.1	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2	0.5	-1.2

Notes:
1. C_N denotes net pressures (contributions from top and bottom surfaces).
2. Clear wind flow denotes relatively unobstructed wind flow with blockage less than or equal to 50%. Obstructed wind flow denotes objects below roof inhibiting wind flow (>50% blockage).
3. For values of θ other than those shown, linear interpolation is permitted.
4. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting towards and away from the top roof surface, respectively.
5. Components and cladding elements shall be designed for positive and negative pressure coefficients shown.
6. Notation:
   a : 10% of least horizontal dimension or 0.4h, whichever is smaller but not less than 4% of least horizontal dimension or 3 ft. (0.9 m).
   h : mean roof height, ft. (m)
   L : horizontal dimension of building, measured in along wind direction, ft. (m)
   θ : angle of plane of roof from horizontal, degrees

Other Structures - Method 2		**All Heights**
Figure3. 3.19	**Force Coefficients, C_f**	**Solid Freestanding Walls**
Other Structures		**& Solid Freestanding Signs**

ELEVATION VIEW

CROSS-SECTION VIEW

CASE A

CASE B

CASE C

PLAN VIEWS

C_f, CASE A & CASE B

Clearance Ratio, s/h	Aspect Ratio, B/s											
	≤ 0.05	0.1	0.2	0.5	1	2	4	5	10	20	30	≥ 45
1	1.80	1.70	1.65	1.55	1.45	1.40	1.35	1.35	1.30	1.30	1.30	1.30
0.9	1.85	1.75	1.70	1.60	1.55	1.50	1.45	1.45	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.40
0.7	1.90	1.85	1.75	1.70	1.65	1.60	1.60	1.55	1.55	1.55	1.55	1.55
0.5	1.95	1.85	1.80	1.75	1.75	1.70	1.70	1.70	1.70	1.70	1.70	1.75
0.3	1.95	1.90	1.85	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.85	1.85	1.85
0.2	1.95	1.90	1.85	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.80	1.85	1.90	1.90	1.95
≤ 0.16	1.95	1.90	1.85	1.85	1.80	1.80	1.85	1.85	1.85	1.90	1.90	1.95

C_f, CASE C

Region (horizontal distance from windward edge)	Aspect Ratio, B/s									Region (horizontal distance from windward edge)	Aspect Ratio, B/s	
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		13	≥ 45
0 to s	2.25	2.60	2.90	3.10*	3.30*	3.40*	3.55*	3.65*	3.75*	0 to s	4.00*	4.30*
s to 2s	1.50	1.70	1.90	2.00	2.15	2.25	2.30	2.35	2.45	s to 2s	2.60	2.55
2s to 3s		1.15	1.30	1.45	1.55	1.65	1.70	1.75	1.85	2s to 3s	2.00	1.95
3s to 10s		1.10	1.05	1.05	1.05	1.05	1.00	0.95		3s to 4s	1.50	1.85
										4s to 5s	1.35	1.85
										5s to 10s	0.90	1.10
										>10s	0.55	0.55

*Values shall be multiplied by the following reduction factor when a return corner is present:

L_r/s	Reduction Factor
0.3	0.90
1.0	0.75
≥ 2	0.60

PLAN VIEW OF WALL OR SIGN WITH A RETURN CORNER

Notes:
1. The term "signs" in notes below also applies to "freestanding walls".

2. Signs with openings comprising less than 30% of the gross area are classified as solid signs. Force coefficients for solid signs with openings shall be permitted to be multiplied by the reduction factor $(1 - (1 - \varepsilon)^{1.5})$.

3. To allow for both normal and oblique wind directions, the following cases shall be considered:
    For s/h < 1:
        CASE A: resultant force acts normal to the face of the sign through the geometric center.
        CASE B: resultant force acts normal to the face of the sign at a distance from the geometric center
            toward the windward edge equal to 0.2 times the average width of the sign.
        For B/s ≥ 2, CASE C must also be considered:
        CASE C: resultant forces act normal to the face of the sign through the geometric centers of each region.
    For s/h = 1:
        The same cases as above except that the vertical locations of the resultant forces occur at a distance above
        the geometric center equal to 0.05 times the average height of the sign.

4. For CASE C where s/h > 0.8, force coefficients shall be multiplied by the reduction factor (1.8 - s/h).

5. Linear interpolation is permitted for values of s/h, B/s and L_r/s other than shown.

6. Notation:
   B: horizontal dimension of sign, in feet (meters);
   h: height of the sign, in feet (meters);
   s: vertical dimension of the sign, in feet (meters);
   ε: ratio of solid area to gross area;
   L_r: horizontal dimension of return corner, in feet (meters)

Other Structures – Method 2		All Heights		
Figure 3.3.20	**Force Coefficients, C_f**	**Chimneys, Tanks, Rooftop Equipment, & Similar Structures**		

Cross-Section	Type of Surface	h/D		
		1	7	25
Square (wind normal to face)	All	1.3	1.4	2.0
Square (wind along diagonal)	All	1.0	1.1	1.5
Hexagonal or octagonal	All	1.0	1.2	1.4
Round $(D\sqrt{q_z} > 2.5)$ $(D\sqrt{q_z} > 5.3, D$ in m, q_z in N/m^2)	Moderately smooth	0.5	0.6	0.7
	Rough (D'/D = 0.02)	0.7	0.8	0.9
	Very rough (D'/D = 0.08)	0.8	1.0	0.2
Round $(D\sqrt{q_z} \leq 2.5)$ $(D\sqrt{q_z} \leq 5.3, D$ in m, q_z in N/m^2)	All	0.7	0.8	1.2

Notes:

1. The design wind force shall be calculated based on the area of the structure projected on a plane normal to the wind direction. The force shall be assumed to act parallel to the wind direction.

2. Linear interpolation is permitted for h/D values other than shown.

3. Notation:

   D: diameter of circular cross-section and least horizontal dimension of square, hexagonal or octagonal cross-sections at elevation under consideration, in feet (meters);

   D': depth of protruding elements such as ribs and spoilers, in feet (meters); and

   h: height of structure, in feet (meters); and

   q_z: velocity pressure evaluated at height z above ground, in pounds per square foot (N/m^2).

Other Structures – Method 2		All Heights
Figure 3.3.21	**Force Coefficients, C$_f$**	**Open Signs &**
		Lattice Frameworks

ϵ	Flat-Sided Members	Rounded Members	
		$D\sqrt{q_z} \le 2.5$ $(D\sqrt{q_z} \le 5.3)$	$D\sqrt{q_z} > 2.5$ $(D\sqrt{q_z} > 5.3)$
< 0.1	2.0	1.2	0.8
0.1 to 0.29	1.8	1.3	0.9
0.3 to 0.7	1.6	1.5	1.1

Notes:

1. Signs with openings comprising 30% or more of the gross area are classified as open signs.

2. The calculation of the design wind forces shall be based on the area of all exposed members and elements projected on a plane normal to the wind direction. Forces shall be assumed to act parallel to the wind direction.

3. The area A$_f$ consistent with these force coefficients is the solid area projected normal to the wind direction.

4. Notation:

   ϵ : ratio of solid area to gross area;

   D: diameter of a typical round member, in feet (meters);

   q$_z$: velocity pressure evaluated at height z above ground in pounds per square foot (N/m^2).

Other Structures – Method 2		All Heights
Figure 3.3.22	Force Coefficients, C_f	**Trussed Towers**
Open Structures		

Tower Cross Section	C_f
Square	$4.0 \, \epsilon^2 - 5.9 \, \epsilon + 4.0$
Triangle	$3.4 \, \epsilon^2 - 4.7 \, \epsilon + 3.4$

Notes:

1. For all wind directions considered, the area A_f consistent with the specified force coefficients shall be the solid area of a tower face projected on the plane of that face for the tower segment under consideration.

2. The specified force coefficients are for towers with structural angles or similar flat-sided members.

3. For towers containing rounded members, it is acceptable to multiply the specified force coefficients by the following factor when determining wind forces on such members:

   $0.51 \, \epsilon^2 + 0.57$, but not > 1.0

4. Wind forces shall be applied in the directions resulting in maximum member forces and reactions. For towers with square cross-sections, wind forces shall be multiplied by the following factor when the wind is directed along a tower diagonal:

   $1 + 0.75 \, \epsilon$, but not > 1.2

5. Wind forces on tower appurtenances such as ladders, conduits, lights, elevators, etc., shall be calculated using appropriate force coefficients for these elements.

6. Loads due to ice accretion as described in Section 11 shall be accounted for.

7. Notation:

   ϵ : ratio of solid area to gross area of one tower face for the segment under consideration.

Table 3.3.1, Basic Wind Speed (3 sec Gust Wind Speed in mph)

Sr	City/Town	Basic Wind Speed (mph)
1	Bago	80
2	Bhamo	70
3	Bogalay	100
4	Chauk	70
5	Dawei	90
6	Falam	70
7	Hakha	90
8	Henzada	90
9	Homalin	50
10	Hpa-An	70
11	Kale	70
12	Kawthaung	90
13	Kengtung	70
14	Kyaukpyu	130
15	Lashio	70
16	Loikaw	70
17	Magwe	70
18	Mandalay	80
19	Mawlamyine	90
20	Meiktila	70
21	Monywa	70
22	Muse	70
23	Myeik	90
24	Myitkyina	70
25	Nansam	70
26	Naypyitaw	70
27	Pakokku	70
28	Pathein	100
29	Putao	70
30	Pyay	70
31	Sittwe	130
32	Taungyi	70
33	Thandwe	130
34	Yangon	100
35	Ye	90
36	Yenangyaung	70

Note: For cities note included in the table, wind speed of the nearest city in the list shall be used.

Importance Factor, I (Wind Loads)		
Table 3.3.2		
Category	**Non-Cyclone Prone Regions and CycloneProne Regions with V = 85-100 mph and Alaska**	**Cyclone Prone Regions with V > 100 mph**
I	**0.87**	**0.77**
II	**1**	**1**
III	**1.15**	**1.15**
IV	**1.15**	**1.15**

Note:

1. The building and structure classification categories are listed in Table 1.2.

Terrain Exposure Constants

Table 3.3.3

Exposure	α	z_g (ft)	$\hat{a}$	$\hat{b}$	$\bar{\alpha}$	$\bar{b}$	c	ℓ (ft)	$\bar{\epsilon}$	z_{min} (ft)*
B	7.0	1200	1/7	0.84	1/4.0	0.45	0.30	320	1/3.0	30
C	9.5	900	1/9.5	1.00	1/6.5	0.65	0.20	500	1/5.0	15
D	11.5	700	1/11.5	1.07	1/9.0	0.80	0.15	650	1/8.0	7

*z_{min} = minimum height used to ensure that the equivalent height $\bar{z}$ is greater of $0.6h$ or z_{min}.
For buildings with $h \leq z_{min}$, $\bar{z}$ shall be taken as z_{min}.

In metric

Exposure	α	z_g (m)	$\hat{a}$	$\hat{b}$	$\bar{\alpha}$	$\bar{b}$	c	ℓ (m)	$\bar{\epsilon}$	z_{min} (m)*
B	7.0	365.76	1/7	0.84	1/4.0	0.45	0.30	97.54	1/3.0	9.14
C	9.5	274.32	1/9.5	1.00	1/6.5	0.65	0.20	152.4	1/5.0	4.57
D	11.5	213.36	1/11.5	1.07	1/9.0	0.80	0.15	198.12	1/8.0	2.13

*z_{min} – minimum height used to ensure that the equivalent height $\bar{z}$ is greater of $0.6h$ or z_{min}.
For buildings with $h \leq z_{min}$, $\bar{z}$ shall be taken as z_{min}.

Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficients, K_h and K_z

Table 3.3.4

Height above ground level, z		Exposure (Note 1)			
		B		C	D
ft	(m)	Case 1	Case 2	Cases 1 & 2	Cases 1 & 2
0-15	(0-4.6)	0.70	0.57	0.85	1.03
20	(6.1)	0.70	0.62	0.90	1.08
25	(7.6)	0.70	0.66	0.94	1.12
30	(9.1)	0.70	0.70	0.98	1.16
40	(12.2)	0.76	0.76	1.04	1.22
50	(15.2)	0.81	0.81	1.09	1.27
60	(18)	0.85	0.85	1.13	1.31
70	(21.3)	0.89	0.89	1.17	1.34
80	(24.4)	0.93	0.93	1.21	1.38
90	(27.4)	0.96	0.96	1.24	1.40
100	(30.5)	0.99	0.99	1.26	1.43
120	(36.6)	1.04	1.04	1.31	1.48
140	(42.7)	1.09	1.09	1.36	1.52
160	(48.8)	1.13	1.13	1.39	1.55
180	(54.9)	1.17	1.17	1.43	1.58
200	(61.0)	1.20	1.20	1.46	1.61
250	(76.2)	1.28	1.28	1.53	1.68
300	(91.4)	1.35	1.35	1.59	1.73
350	(106.7)	1.41	1.41	1.64	1.78
400	(121.9)	1.47	1.47	1.69	1.82
450	(137.2)	1.52	1.52	1.73	1.86
500	(152.4)	1.56	1.56	1.77	1.89

Notes:

1. **Case 1**: a. All components and cladding.

   b. Main wind force resisting system in low-rise buildings designed using Figure 3-9.

   Case 2: a. All main wind force resisting systems in buildings except those in low-rise buildings designed using Figure 3-9.

   b. All main wind force resisting systems in other structures.

2. The velocity pressure exposure coefficient K, may be determined from the following formula:

   For 15 ft$\leq$ z$\leq$z$_g$ For z< 15 ft

   $K_z= 2.0 1 (z/z_g)^{2/\alpha}$ $K_z= 2.0 1 (15/z_g)^{2/\alpha}$

   Note: z shall not be taken less than 30 feet for Case 1 in exposure B.

3. α and z_g are tabulated in Table 3.3.

4. Linear interpolation for intermediate values of height z is acceptable.

5. Exposure categories are defined in 3.5.6.

Wind Directionality factor, K_d	
Table 3.3.5	

Structure Type	Directionality Factor K_d*

Buildings
    Main Wind Force Resisting System
    Components and Cladding
	
	0.85
	0.85

Arched Roofs	0.85

Chimneys, Tanks, and Similar Structures
    Square
    Hexagonal
    Round
	
	0.90
	0.95
	0.95

Solid Signs	0.85
Open Signs and Lattice Framework	0.85

Trussed Towers
    Triangular, square, rectangular
    All other cross sections
	
	0.85
	0.95

* Directionality Factor K_d has been calibrated with combinations of loads specified in Section 2. This factor shall only be applied when used in conjunction with load combinations specified in 2.1.2 and 2.1.3.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016
PART 3STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION 3.4: SEISMIC DESIGN CRITERIA AND DESIGNREQUIREMENTS FORBUILDINGS

3.4.1Seismic Design Criteria

3.4.1.1General

3.4.1.1.1Purpose

Thissection presents criteria for the design and construction of buildings subject to earthquake ground motions. The specified earthquake loads are based upon post-elastic energy dissipation in the structure, and because of this fact, the requirements for design, detailing, and construction shall be satisfied even for structures and members for which load combinations that do not contain earthquake loads indicate larger demands than combinations that include earthquake loads.

3.4.1.1.2Scope

Every building structure, and portion thereof, including nonstructural components, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of earthquake motions as prescribed by the seismic requirements of this standard.

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings that are located where the short period, spectral response acceleration parameter, S_S, is less than 0.4 or where the Seismic Design Category determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.6 is A, B, or C.

2. Detached one- and two-family wood-frame dwellings not included in Exception 1 with not more than two storyes.

3. Agricultural storage structures that are intended only for incidental human occupancy.

4. Structures that require special consideration of their response characteristics and environment and for which other regulations provide seismic criteria, such as vehicularbridges, electrical transmission towers, hydraulic structures, buried utility lines and their appurtenances, and nuclear reactors.

3.4.1.1.3 Applicability

Structures and their nonstructural components shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirement of Section 3.4.2.

3.4.1.1.4Alternative materials and methods of construction

Alternative materials and methods of this standard shall not be used unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Substantiating evidence shall be submitted demonstrating that the proposed alternative, for the purpose intended, will be at least equal in strength, durability, and seismic resistance.

3.4.1.2Definitions

The following definitions apply only to the seismic requirements of this standard.

ACTIVE FAULT: A fault determined to be active by the authority having jurisdiction from properly substantiated data (e.g., most recent mapping of active faults by the authority Department).

ADDITION: An increase in building area, aggregate floor area, height, or number of storyesof a structure.

ALTERATION: Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than an addition.

APPENDAGE: An architectural component such as a canopy, marquee, ornamental balcony, or statuary.

APPROVAL: The written acceptance by the authority having jurisdiction of documentation that establishes the qualification of a material, system, component, procedure, or person to fulfill the requirements of this standard for the intended use.

ATTACHMENTS: Means by which components and their supports are secured or connected to the seismic force-resisting system of the structure. Such attachments include anchor bolts, welded connections, and mechanical fasteners.

BASE: The level at which the horizontal seismic ground motions are considered to be imparted to the structure.

BASEMENT: A basement is any storey below the lowest storey above grade.

BASE SHEAR: Total design lateral force or shear at the base.

BOUNDARY ELEMENTS: Diaphragm and shear wall boundary members to which the diaphragm transfers forces. Boundary members include chords and drag struts at diaphragm and shear wall perimeters, interior openings, discontinuities, and reentrant corners.

BOUNDARY MEMBERS: Portions along wall and diaphragm edges strengthened by longitudinal and transverse reinforcement. Boundary members include chords and drag struts at diaphragm and shear wall perimeters, interior openings, discontinuities, and reentrant corners.

BUILDING: Any structure whose intended use includes shelter of human occupants.

CANTILEVERED COLUMN SYSTEM: A seismic force-resisting system in which lateral forces are resisted entirely by columns acting as cantilevers from the base.

CHARACTERISTIC EARTHQUAKE: An earthquake assessed for an active fault having a magnitude equal to the best estimate of the maximum magnitude capable of occurring on the fault, but not less than the largest magnitude that has occurred historically on the fault.

COMPONENT: A part or element of an architectural, electrical, mechanical, or structural system.

Component, Equipment: A mechanical or electrical component or element that is part of a mechanical and/or electrical system within or without a building system.

Component, Flexible: Component, including its attachments, having a fundamental period greater than 0.06s.

Component, Rigid: Component, including its attachments, having a fundamental period less than or equal to 0.06s.

COMPONENT SUPPORT: Those structural members or assemblies of members, including braces, frames, struts, and attachments that transmit all loads and forces between systems, components, or elements and the structures.

CONCRETE, PLAIN: Concrete that is either unreinforced or contains less reinforcement than the minimum amount specified in ACI 318-05 for reinforced concrete.

CONCRETE, REINFORCED: Concrete reinforced with no less reinforcement than the minimum amount required by ACI 318-05prestressed or nonprestressed, and designed on the assumption that the two materials act together in resisting forces.

COUPLING BEAM: A beam that is used to connect adjacent concrete wall elements to make them act together as a unit to resist lateral loads.

DEFORMABILITY: The ratio of the ultimate deformation to the limit deformation.

High-Deformability Element: An element whose deformability is not less than 3.5 where subjected to four fully reversed cycles at the limit deformation.

Limited-Deformability Element: An element that is neither a low-deformability or a high-deformability element.

Low-Deformability Element: An element whose deformability is 1.5 or less.

DEFORMATION:

Limit Deformation: Two times the initial deformation that occurs at a load equal to 40 percent of the maximum strength.

Ultimate Deformation: The deformation at which failure occurs and that shall be deemed to occur if the sustainable load reduces to 80 percent or less of the maximum strength.

DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS: The written, graphic, electronic, and pictorial documents describing the design, locations, and physical characteristics of the project required to verify compliance with this standard.

DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEMS: The seismic force-resisting system and those architectural, electrical, and mechanical system or their components and for which the component importance factor, Ip, is greater than 1.0.

DESIGN EARTHQUAKE: The earthquake effects that are two-thirds of the corresponding Maximum Considered Earthquake (MCE) effects.

DESIGN EARTHQUAKE GROUND MOTION: The earthquake ground motions that are two-thirds of the corresponding MCE ground motions.

DIAPHRAGM: Roof, floor, or other membrane or bracing system acting to transfer the lateral forces to the vertical resisting elements.

DIAPHRAGM BOUNDARY: A location where shear is transferred into or out of the diaphragm element. Transfer is either to a boundary element or to another force-resisting element.

DIAPHRAGM CHORD: A diaphragm boundary element perpendicular to the applied load that is assumed to take axial stresses due to the diaphragm moment.

DRAG STRUT (COLLECTOR, TIE, DIAPHRAGM STRUT): A diaphragm or shear wall boundary element parallel to the applied load that collects and transfers diaphragm shear forces to the vertical force-resisting elements or distributes forces within the diaphragm or shear wall.

ENCLOSURE: An interior space surrounded by walls.

EQUIPMENT SUPPORT: Those structural members or assemblies of members or manufactured elements, including braces, frames, legs, lugs, snuggers, hangers, or saddles that transmit gravity loads and operating loads between the equipment and the structure.

FLEXIBLE EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS: Those connections between equipment components that permit rotational and/or translational movement without degradation of performance. Examples include universal joints, bellows expansion joints, and flexible metal hose.

FRAME:

Braced Frame: An essentially vertical truss, or its equivalent, of the concentric or eccentric type that is provided in a building frame system or dual system to resist seismic forces.

Concentrically Braced Frame (CBF): A braced frame in which the members are subjectedprimarily to axial forces. CBFs are categorized as ordinary concentrically braced frames (OCBF) or special concentrically braced frames (SCBF).

Eccentrically Braced Frame (EBF): A diagonally braced frame in which at least one end of each frames into a beam a short distance from a beam-column or from another diagonal brace.

Moment Frame: A Frame in which members and joints resist lateral forces by flexure as well as along the axis of the members. Moment frames are categorized as intermediate moment frames (IMF), ordinary moment frames (OMF), and special moment frames (SMF).

STRUCTURAL SYSTEM:

Building Frame System: A structural system with an essentially complete space frame providing support for vertical loads. Seismic force resistance is provided by shear walls or braced frames.

Dual System: A structural system with an essentially complete space frame providing support for vertical loads. Seismic force resistance is provided by

moment resisting fames and shear walls or braced frames as prescribed in Section3.4.2.2.5.1.

Shear Wall-Frame Interactive System: A structural system that uses combinations of ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls and ordinary reinforced concrete moment frames designed to resist lateral forces in proportion to their rigidities considering interaction between shear walls and frames on all levels.

Space Frame System: A 3-D structural system composed of interconnected members, other than bearing walls, that is capable of supporting vertical loads and,where designed for such an application, is capable of providing resistance to seismic forces.

GLAZED CURTAIN WALL: A nonbearing wall that extends beyond the edges of building floor slabs, and includes a glazing material installed in the curtain wall framing.

GLAZED STOREFRONT: A nonbearing wall that is installed between floor slabs, typically including entrances, and includes a glazing material installed in the storefront framing.

GRADE PLANE: A reference plane representing the average of finished ground level adjoining the structure at all exterior walls. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the exterior walls, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the buildings and the lot line or, where the lot line is more than 6 ft (1,829 mm) from the structure, between the structure and a point 6 ft (1,829 mm) from the structure.

HAZARDOUS CONTENTS: A material that is highly toxic or potentially explosive and in sufficient quantity to pose a significant life- safety threat to the general public if an uncontrolled release were to occur.

IMPORTANCE FACTOR: A factor assigned to each structure according to its Occupancy Category as prescribed in Section 3.4.1.5.

INSPECTION, SPECIAL: The observation of the work by a special inspector to determine compliance with the approved construction documents and these standards in accordance with the quality assurance plan.

Continuous Special Inspection: The full-time or intermittent observation of the work by a special inspector who is present in the area where work is being performed.

Periodic Special Inspection: The part-time or intermittent observation of the work by a special inspector who is present in the area where work has been or is being preformed.

INSPECTOR, SPECIAL (who shall be identified as the owner's inspector): A person approved by the authority having jurisdiction to perform special inspection.

INVERTED PENDULUM-TYPE STRUCTURES: Structures in which more than 50 percent of the structure's mass is concentrated at the top of a slender, cantilevered structure and in which stability of the mass at the top of the structure relies on rotational restraint to the top of the cantilevered element.

JOINT: The geometric volume common to intersecting members.

LIGHT-FRAMECONSTRUCTION: A method of construction where the structural assemblies (e.g., walls, floors, ceilings and roofs) are primarily formed by a system of

repetitive wood or cold- formed steel framing members of subassemblies of thesemembers (e.g., trusses).

LONGITUDINAL REINFORCEMENT RATIO: Area of longitudinal reinforcement divided by the cross-sectional area of the concrete.

MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION: The most severe earthquake effects considered by this standard as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.

MECHANICALLY ANCHORED TANKS OR VESSELS: Tanks or vessels provided with mechanical anchors to resist overturning moments.

NONBUILDING STRUCTURE:A structure, other than a building.

NONBUILDING STRUCTURE SIMILAR TO A BUILDING: A nonbuilding structure that is designed and constructed in a manner similar to buildings, will respond to strong ground motion in a fashion similar to buildings, and have basic lateral and vertical seismic-force-resisting-system conforming to one of the types indicated in Table3.4.9.

ORTHOGONAL: To be in two horizontal directions, at 90∘ to each other.

OWNER: Any person, agent, firm, or corporation having a legal or equitable interest in the property.

PARTITION:A nonstructural interior wall that spans horizontally or vertically from support to support. The supports may be the basic building frame, subsidiary structural members, or other portions of the partition system.

P-DELTA EFFECT: The secondary effect on shears and moments of structural members due to the action of the vertical loads induced by horizontal displacement of the structure resulting from various loading conditions.

PILE: Deep foundation components including piers, caissons, and piles.

PILE CAP: Foundation elements to which piles are connected including grade beams and mats.

REGISTERED STRUCTURAL DESIGN PROFESSIONAL: An engineer, registered or licensed to practice professional engineering, as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registrations laws of the state in which the project is to be constructed.

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY: A classification assigned to a structure based on its Occupancy Category and the severity of the design earthquake ground motion at the site as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.

SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM: That part of the structural system that has been considered in the design to provide the required resistance to the seismic forces prescribed herein.

SEISMIC FORCES: The assumed forces prescribed herein, related to the response of the structure to earthquake motions, to be used in the design of the structure and its components.

SELF-ANCHORED TANKS OR VESSELS: Tanks or vessels that are stable under design overturning moment without the need for mechanical anchors to resist uplift.

SHEAR PANEL: A floor, roof, or wall component sheathed to act as a shear wall or diaphragm.

SITE CLASS: A classification assigned to a site based on the types of soils present and their engineering properties.

STORAGE RACKS: Include industrial pallet racks, moveable shelf racks, and stacker racks made of cold-formed or hot-rolled structural members. Does not include other types of racks such as drive-in and drive-through racks, cantilever racks, portable racks, or racks made of materials other than steel.

STOREY: The portion of a structure between the tops of two successive finished floor surfaces and, for the topmost storey, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the roof structural element.

STOREY ABOVE GRADE: Any storey having its finished floor surface entirely above grade, except that a storey shall be considered as a storey above grade where the finished floor surface of the storey immediately above is more than 6 ft (1,829 mm) above the grade plane, more than 6 ft (1,829 mm) above the finished ground level for more than 40 percent of the total structure perimeter, or more than 12 ft (3,658 mm) above the finished ground level at any point.

STOREY DRIFT: The horizontal deflection at the top of the storey relative to the bottom of the storey as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.6.

STOREY DRIFT RATIO: The storey drift, as determined in Section3.4.2.8.6 divided by the storey height.

STOREY SHEAR: The summation of design lateral seismic forces at levels above the storey under consideration.

STRENGTH:

> **Design Strength: Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor, ϕ.**

> **Nominal Strength**: Strength of a member or cross-section calculated in accordance with the requirements and assumptions of the strength design methods of this standard (or the reference documents) before application of any strength- reduction factors.

> **Required Strength:** Strength of a member, cross-section, or connection required to resist factored loads or related internal moments and forces in such combinations as stipulated by this standard.

STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS: The visual observations to determine that the seismicforce-resisting system is constructed in general conformance with the constructiondocuments.

STRUCTURE: That which is built or constructed and limited to buildings and nonbuilding structures as defined herein.

SUBDIAPHRAGM: A portion of a diaphragm used to transfer wall anchorage forces to diaphragm cross ties.

SUPPORTS: Those structural members, assemblies of members, or manufactured elements, including braces, frames, legs, lugs, snubbers, hangers, saddles, or struts, which transmit loads between the nonstructural components and the structure.

TESTING AGENCY: A company or corporation that provides testing and/or inspection services.

VENEERS: Facings or ornamentation of brick, concrete, stone, tile, or similar materials attached to a backing.

WALL: A component that has a slope of 60∘ or greater with the horizontal plane used to enclose or divide space.

Bearing Wall: Any wall meeting either of the following classifications:

1. Any metal or wood stud wall that supports more than 100 lb/linearft (1,459 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.

2. Any concrete or masonry wall that supports more than 200 lb/linear ft (2,919 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.

Light-Framed Wall: A wall with wood or steel studs.

Light-Framed Wood Shear Wall: A wall constructed with wood studs and sheathed with material rated for shear resistance.

Nonbearing Wall: Any wall that is not a bearing wall.

Nonstructural Wall: All walls other than bearing walls or shear walls.

Shear Wall (Vertical Diaphragm): A wall, bearing or non- bearing, designed to resist lateral forces acting in the plane of the wall (sometimes referred to as a "vertical diaphragm").

Structural Wall: Walls that meet the definition for bearing walls or shear walls.

WALL SYSTEM, BEARING: A structural system with bearing walls providing support for all or major portions of the vertical loads. Shear walls or braced frames provide seismic force resistance.

WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL: A wood-based panel product that meets the requirements ofDOC PS1 or DOC PS2 and is bonded with a waterproof adhesive. Included under this designation are plywood, oriented strand board, and composite panels.

3.4.1.3Notation

The unit dimensions used with the items covered by the symbols shall be consistent throughout except where specifically noted. Notation presented in this section applies only to the seismic requirements in this standard as indicated.

A_{ch}= cross-sectional area (in^2 or mm^2) ofa structural member measured out-to-out of transverse reinforcement

A_0=area of the load-carrying foundation (ft^{2}or m^2)

A_{sh}= total cross-sectional area of hoop reinforcement (in^{2}or mm^2), including supplementary cross-ties, having a spacing of s_h and crossing a section with a core dimension of h_c

A_{vd}= required area of leg (in^{2}or mm^2) of diagonalreinforcement

A_x= torsional amplification factor (Section 3.4.2.8.4.3)

a_i= the acceleration at level i obtained from a modal analysis

a_p = the amplification factor related to the response of a system or component as affected by thetypeof seismic attachment.

b_p = the width of the rectangular glass panel

C_d= deflection amplification factor as given in Table 3.4.9.

C_s= seismicresponsecoefficientdeterminedin Section3.4.2.8.1.1.(dimensionless)

C_T= building period coefficient in Section 3.4.2.8.2.1

C_{vx}= verticaldistributionfactorasdeterminedinSection 3.4.2.8.3

c = distance from the neutral axis of a flexural member to the fiber of maximum compressive strain (in. or mm)

D=the effect of dead load

D_{clear}= relative horizontal (drift) displacement, measured over the height of the glass panel under consideration, which causes initial glass-to-frame contact.

d_C= The total thickness of cohesive soil layers in the top 100 ft (30 m); see Section 3.4.1.4.2 (ft or m)

d_i= The thickness of any soil or rock layer i (between0 and 100 ft [30 m]); see Section3.4.1.4.2 (ftorm)

d_S = The total thickness of cohesionless soil layers in the top 100 ft (30 m); see Section 3.4.1.4.2 (ft or m)

E = effect of horizontal and verticalearthquake- induced forces (Section3.4.2.4).

F_a = short-period site coefficient (at 0.2 s-period); seeSection 3.4.1.4.3

F_i ,F_n , F_x= portion of the seismic base shear, V , induced at Level i , n,or x , respectively,asdetermined in Section3.4.2.8.3

F_p = the seismic force acting on a component of a structure

F_v = long-period site coefficient (at 1.0 s-period); seeSection 3.4.1.4.3

$f_c{'}$= specified compressive strength of concrete used in design

$f_s{'}$ = ultimatetensilestrength(psi or MPa)ofthe bolt, stud, or insert leg wires. For A307 bolts or A108 studs, it is permitted to be assumed to be60,000 psi (415 MPa).

f_y = specified yield strength of reinforcement (psi orMPa)

f_{yh}= specified yield strength of the special lateral reinforcement (psi or kPa)

$G = \gamma \, v_s^2 \, / g$

= the average shear modulus for the soils beneath the foundation at large strain levels (psf or Pa)

$G_0 = \gamma \, v^2_{so}/g$

= the average shear modulus for the soils beneath the foundation at small strainlevels (psf or Pa)

g = acceleration due to gravity

H = thickness of soil

h = height of a shear wall measured as the maximum clear height from top of foundation to bottom of diaphragm framing above, or the maximum clear height from top of diaphragm to bottomof diaphragm framing above

h = average roof height of structure with respect to the base

h_c = core dimension of a component measured to the outside of the special lateral reinforcement (in. or mm)

hi , hn , $h\,x$ = the height above the base to Level i , n, or x , respectively

h_p = the height of the rectangular glass panel

h_{sx} = the storey height below Level x = $(h_x - h_{x-1})$

I = the importance factor in Section 3.4.1.5.1

I_p = the component importance factor

i = the building level referred to by the subscript i ;i=1

K_p = the stiffness of the component or attachment

KL/r = the lateral slenderness ratio ofacompression member measured in terms of its effective length, KL, and the least radius of gyration of the member cross section, r

k = distribution exponent given in Section 3.4.2.8.3

L = overall length of the building (ft or m) at the base in the direction being analyzed

M_t = torsional moment resulting from eccentricity between the locations of centre of mass and the centre of rigidity (Section 3.4.2.8.4.1)

M_{ta} = accidental torsional moment as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.4.2

m = a subscript denoting the mode of vibration under consideration; that is, m = 1 for the fundamental mode

N = standard penetration resistance, ASTM 1586

N = number of storeys (Section 3.4.2.8.2.1)

$\overline{N}$ = average field standard penetration resistance for the top 100 ft (30 m); see Section 3.4.1.4.8

$\overline{N_{ch}}$ = average standard penetration resistance for cohesionless soil layers for the top 100 ft (30 m); see Section 3.4.1.4.8

N_i = standard penetration resistance of any soil or rocklayer i[between 0 and 100 ft(30 m)]; see Section3.4.1.4.2

n = designation for the level that is uppermost in the main portion of the building

P_x = total unfactored vertical design load at and aboveLevel x , for use in Section 3.4.2.8.7

PI = plasticity index, ASTMD4318

Q_E = effect of horizontal seismic (earthquake-induced) forces

R = response modification coefficient as given in Tables 3.4.9.

R_p = component response modification factor

S_S = specified MCE, 5 percent damped, spectral response acceleration parameter at short periods as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.1

S_1 = specified MCE, 5 percent damped, spectral response acceleration parameter at a period of 1 s as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.1

S_{aM} = the site-specific MCE spectral response acceleration at any period

S_{DS} = design, 5 percent damped, spectral response acceleration parameter at short periods as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.4

S_{D1} = design, 5 percent damped, spectral response acceleration parameter at a period of 1 s as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.4

S_{MS} = the MCE, 5 percent damped, spectral response acceleration at short periods adjusted for site class effects as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.3

S_{M1} = the MCE, 5 percent damped, spectral response acceleration at a period of 1s adjusted for site class effects as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.3

s_u = undrained shear strength; see Section 3.4.1.4.2

$\bar{s}_u$ = average undrained shear strength in top 100 ft (30 m); see Sections 3.4.1.4.8, ASTM D2166 or ASTM D2850

s_{ui} = undrained shear strength of any cohesive soil layer i (between 0 and 100 ft [30 m]); see Section 3.4.1.4.8

s_h = spacing of special lateral reinforcement (in. or mm)

T = the fundamental period of the building

T_a = approximate fundamental period of the building as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.2

T_L = long-period transition period as defined in Section 3.4.1.4.5 (Table 3.4.1)

T_p = fundamental period of the component and its attachment

$T_0 = 0.2 S_{D1} / S_{DS}$

$T_S = S_{D1} / S_{DS}$

V = total design lateral force or shear at the base

V_t = design value of the seismic base shear as determined in Section 3.4.2.9.4

V_x = seismic design shear in storey x as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.4 or 3.4.2.9.4

v_s = shear wave velocity at small shear strains (equal to 10^{-3} percent strain or less); see Section 3.4.1.4.2 (ft/s or m/s)

$\bar{v}_s$ = average shear wave velocity at small shear strains in top 100 ft (30 m); see Sections 3.4.1.4.8

v_{si} = the shear wave velocity of any soil or rock layer i (between 0 and 100 ft [30 m]); see Section 3.4.1.4.2

W = effective seismic weight of the building as defined in Section 3.4.2.7.2

W_c = gravity load of a component of the building

W_p = component operating weight (lb or N)

w = moisture content (in percent), ASTM D2216

w_i , w_n , w_x = portion of Wthat is located at or assigned toLevel *i* , *n*, or *x* , respectively

x = level under consideration, 1 designates the first level above the base

z = height in structure of point of attachment of component with respect to the base

β = ratio of shear demand to shear capacity for the story between Level x and x − 1

β_0 = foundation damping factor

γ = average unit weight of soil (lb/ft^3 or N/m^3)

Δ = design storey drift as determined in Section3.4.2.8.6

$\Delta_{fallout}$ = the relative seismic displacement (drift) at which glass fallout from the curtain wall, storefront, or partition occurs

Δ_a = allowable storey drift as specified inSection 3.4.2.12.1

δ_{max} = maximum displacement at Level x , considering torsion, Section 3.4.2.8.4.3

δ_{avg} = theaverageofthedisplacements attheextreme points of the structure at Level x , Section3.4.2.8.4.3

δ_x = deflection of Level x at the centre of the mass at and above Level x ,Eq. (3.4.22).

δ_{xe} = deflection of Level x at the centre of the mass at and above Levelx determined by an elastic analysis, Section 3.4.2.8.6.

θ =stability coefficient for P -delta effects as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.7

ρ =a redundancy factor based on the extent of structural redundancy present in a building as defined in Section 3.4.2.3.4.

λ = time effect factor

Ω_0 = overstrength factor as defined in Tables3.4.9.

3.4.1.4Seismic Ground Motion Values

3.4.1.4.1 Specified Acceleration Parameters.

The parameters S_S and S_1 shall be determined from the 0.2s and 1.0 s spectral response accelerations in Table 3.4.1. Where S_1 is less than or equal to 0.04 and S_S is less than or equal to 0.15, the structure is permitted to be assigned to Seismic Design Category A and is only required to comply with Section 3.4.1.7.

3.4.1.4.2 Site Class.

Based on the site soil properties, the site shall be classified as Site Class A, B, C, D, E, or F in accordance with Table 3.4.2. Where the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the site class, Site Class D shall be used unless the authority having jurisdiction or geotechnical data determines Site Class E or F soils are present at the site.

TABLE 3.4.1

0.2s (S$_s$) AND 1.0s (S$_1$) SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS

Sr. No.	City / Town	S$_s$	S$_1$	Remarks
1.	Bagan	1.55	0.62	
2.	Bago (Pegu)	1.07	0.43	
3.	Bhamo	0.66	0.26	
3.4.	Coco Islands (Great Coco Island)	1.18	0.47	
5.	Dawei (Tavoy)	0.25	0.10	
6.	Hakha	1.87	0.75	
7.	Hpa-An (Pa-An)	0.74	0.30	
8.	Kengtung	1.32	0.52	
9.	Kyaukpyu (Kyaukphyu)	0.84	0.33	
10.	Labutta	0.64	0.26	
11.	Lashio	0.48	0.19	
12.	Loikaw	1.41	0.56	
13.	Magwe	1.45	0.58	
13.4.	Mandalay	2.01	0.80	
15.	Mawlamyine (Mawlamyaing)	0.74	0.30	
16.	Meiktila	2.07	0.83	
17.	Monywa	1.72	0.69	
18.	Myitkyina	1.7	0.68	
19.	Naypyitaw	1.32	0.53	
20.	Pakokku	1.54	0.61	
21.	Pathein (Bassein)	0.87	0.35	
22.	Putao	2.05	0.82	
23.	Pyay (prome)	0.80	0.32	
23.4.	Pyinmana	1.32	0.53	
25.	Sagaing	2.12	0.85	
26.	Shwebo	2.25	0.90	
27.	Sittwe (Akyab)	1.26	0.50	
28.	Taungoo	1.20	0.48	
29.	Taunggyi	1.69	0.68	
30.	Thandwe (Sandoway)	0.88	0.35	
31.	Yangon (Rangoon)	0.77	0.31	

Note: *Long-period transition period T_L is to be taken as 6 sec.*
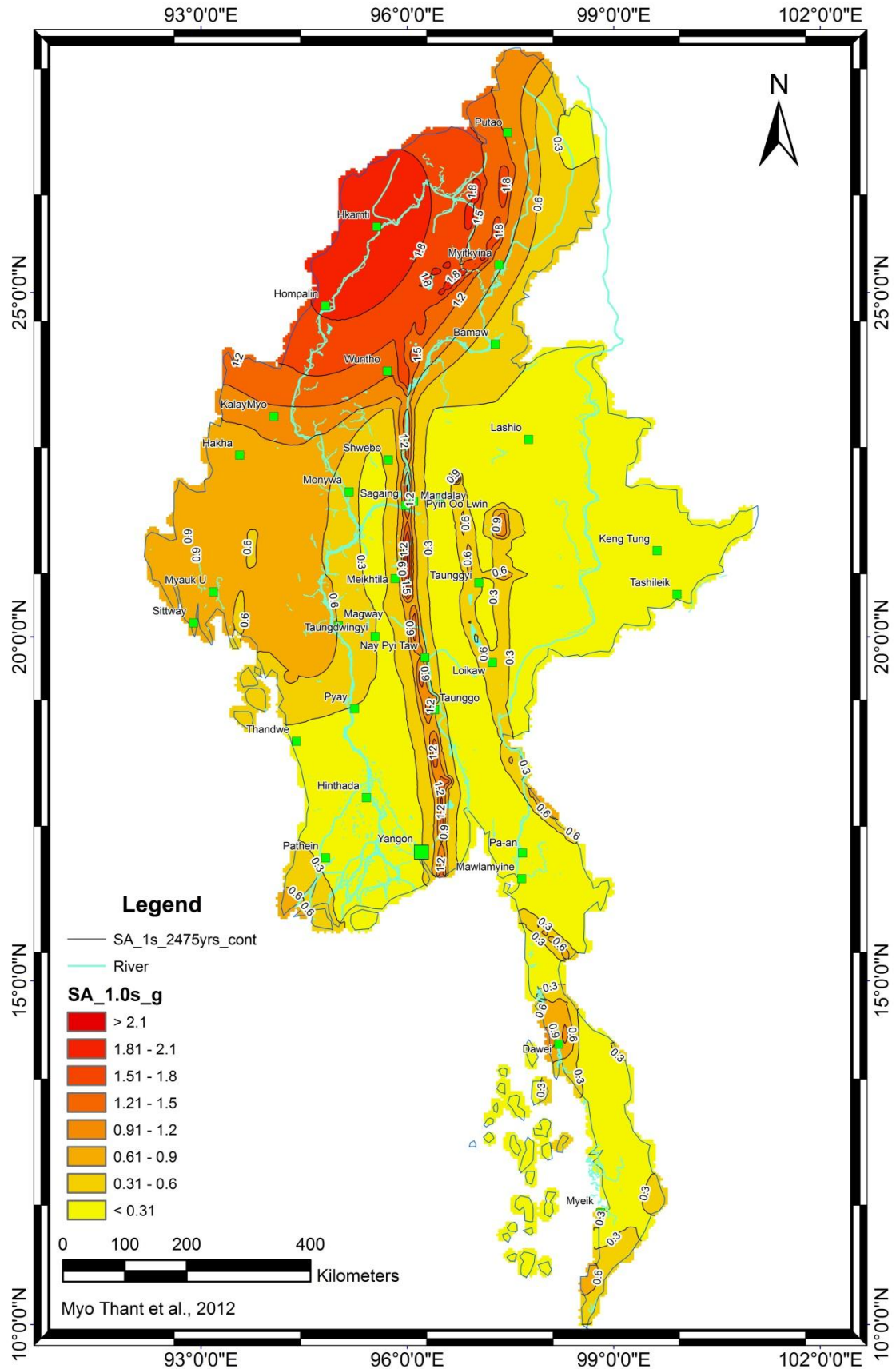
Figure 3.4.1.1: Maximum Considered Earthquake Ground Motion for 1 Sec Spectral Response Acceleration at 2% Probability in 50 Years with 5% Critical Damping, Site Class B
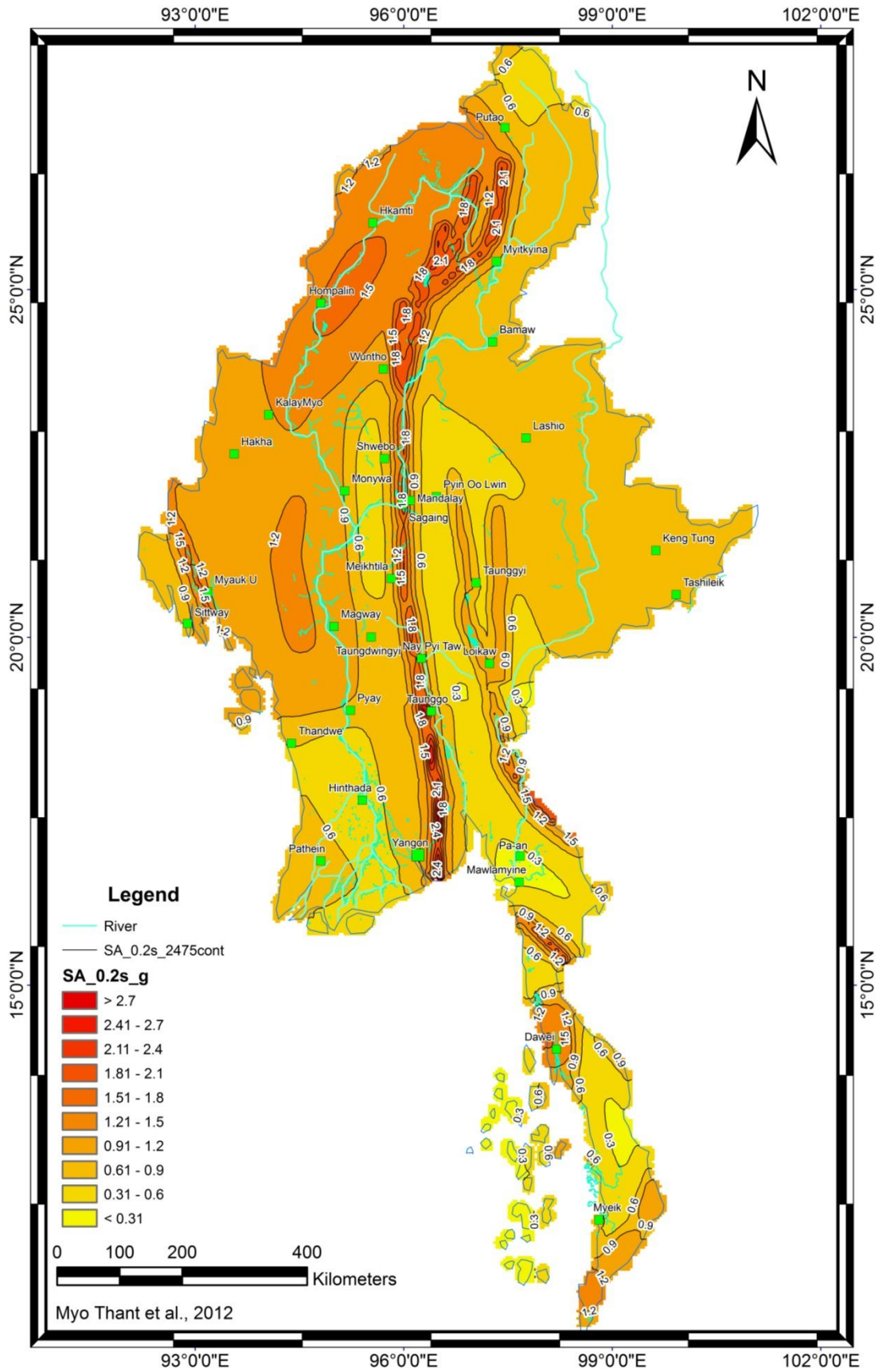
Figure 3.4.1.3: Maximum Considered Earthquake Ground Motion for 0.2 Sec Spectral Response Acceleration at 2% Probability in 50 Years with 5% Critical Damping, Site Class B
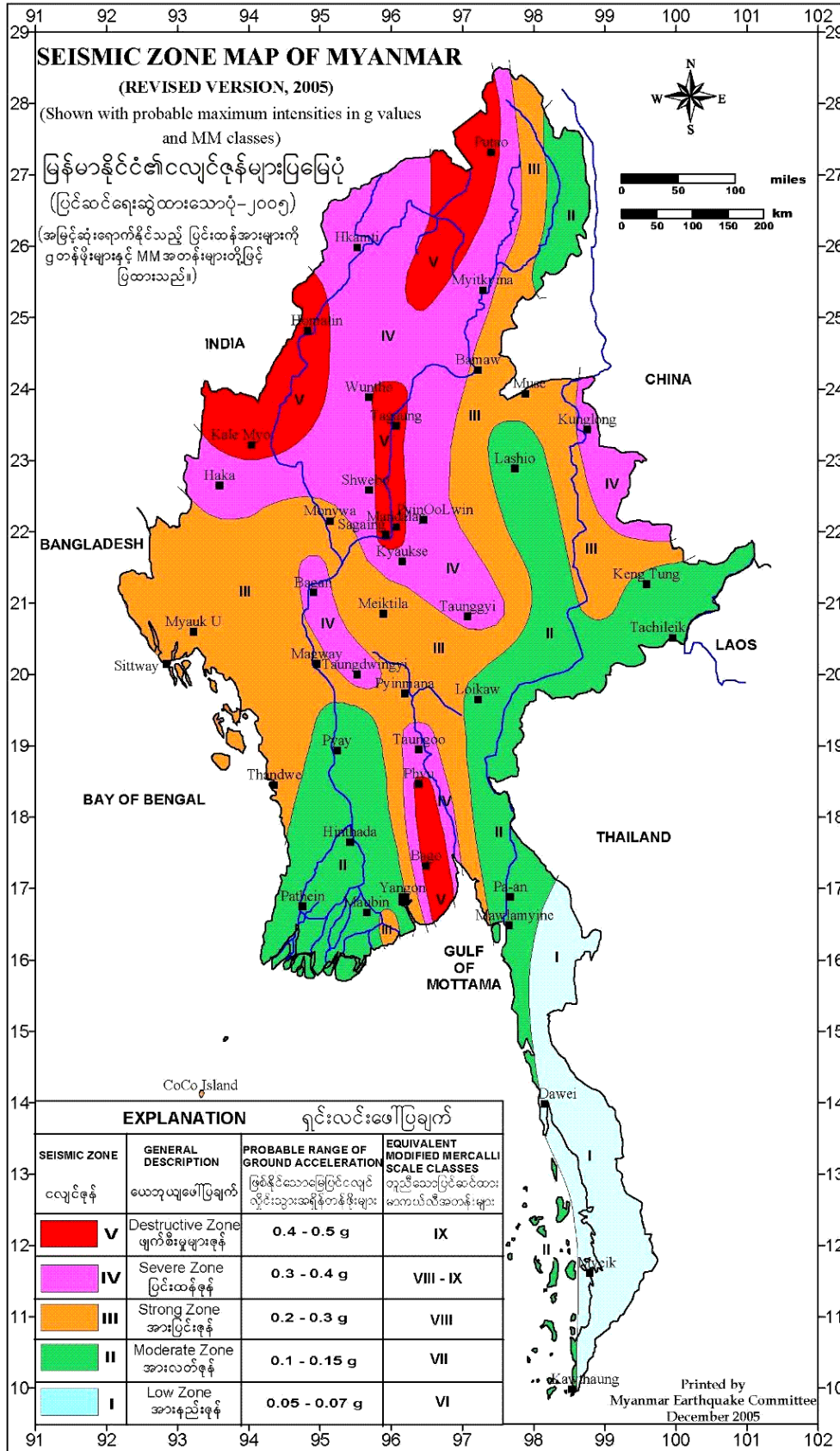
Figure 3.4.1.5: Seismic Zoning Map of Myanmar for Alternative Seismic Design Procedure according to Chapter 16 of UBC97 Code

TABLE 3.4.2SITE CLASS DEFINITIONS

SITE CLASS	SOIL PROFILE NAME	AVERAGE PROPERTIES IN TOP 100 feet, SEE SECTION 3.4.1.3.4.2		
		Soilshear wavevelocity,v_s,(ft/s)	Standardpenetrationresistance,N	Soilundrainedshearstrength,s_u,(psf)
A	Hard rock	v_s>5,000	N/A	N/A
B	Rock	2,500<v_s≤5,000	N/A	N/A
C	Very dense soil and soft rock	1,200<v≤2,500	N>50	s≥2,000
D	Stiff soil profile	600≤v≤1,200	15≤N≤50	1,000≤s_u≤2,000
E	Soft soil profile	v_s<600	N<15	s_u<1,000
E	—	Any profile with more than 10 feet of soil having the following characteristics: 1. Plasticity indexPI >20, 2. Moisture content$w$≥40%, and 3. Undrained shear strengths_u<500 psf		
F	—	Any profile containing soils having one or more of the following characteristics: 1. Soils vulnerable to potential failure or collapse under seismic loading such as liquefiable soils, quick and highly sensitive clays, collapsible weakly cemented soils. 2. Peats and/or highly organic clays (H>10 feet of peat and/or highly organic clay where H= thickness of soil) 3. Very high plasticity clays (H>25 feet with plasticity indexPI >75) 3.4.Very thick soft/medium stiff clays (H>120 feet)		

For SI: 1 foot = 303.4.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa. N/A = Not applicable

3.4.1.4.3 Site Coefficients and Adjusted Maximum Considered Earthquake (MCE) Spectral Response Acceleration Parameters.

The MCE spectral response acceleration for short periods (S_{MS}) and at 1 s (S_{M1}), adjusted for Site Class effects, shall be determined by Eqs.(3.4.1) and (3.4.2), respectively.

$$S_{MS}= F_a S_s \qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.1]}$$

$$S_{M1}= F_v\, S_1 \qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.2]}$$

where

S_S= the MCE spectral response acceleration at short periods as determined from Table3.4.1

S_1= the MCE spectral response acceleration at a period of 1 s as determined from Table 3.4.1

where site coefficients Faand Fv are defined in Tables 3.4.3 and 3.4.4, respectively. Where the simplified design procedure of Section 3.4.2.14 is used, the value of Fa shall bedetermined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.14.8.1, and the values for F_v ,S_{MS} , and S_{M1}neednot be determined.

TABLE 3.4.3 SITE COEFFICIENT,F_a

SiteClass	MappedMaximumConsideredEarthquakeSpectral ResponseAccelerationParameteratShortPeriod				
	$SS \leq 0.25$	$SS=0.5$	$SS=0.75$	$SS=1.0$	$SS \geq 1.25$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
C	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.0	1.0
D	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.1	1.0
E	2.5	1.7	1.2	0.9	0.9
F	SeeSection11.3.4.7				

NOTE: Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of S_s.

TABLE 3.4.4 SITE COEFFICIENT, F_v

SiteClass	MappedMaximumConsideredEarthquakeSpectral ResponseAccelerationParameterat1-sPeriod				
	$S_1 \leq 0.1$	$S_1=0.2$	$S_1=0.3$	$S_1=0.4$	$S_1 \geq 0.5$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
C	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.3
D	2.4	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.5
E	3.5	3.2	2.8	2.4	2.4
F	SeeSection11.3.4.7				

NOTE :*Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of S_1.*

3.4.1.4.4 Design Spectral Acceleration Parameters.

Design earthquake spectral response acceleration parameter at short period, S_{DS}, and at 1 s period, S_{D1} , shall be determined from Eqs.(3.4.3) and (3.4.4), respectively. Where the alternative simplified design procedure of Section 3.4.2.14 is used, the value of S_{DS} shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.13.4.8.1, and the value for S_{D1}need not be determined.

$$S_{DS}= 2/3 \ S_{MS} \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.3]}$$

$$S_{D1} = 2/3 \ S_{M1} \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.4]}$$

3.4.1.4.5 Design Response Spectrum

Where a design response spectrum is required by this standard and site-specific ground motion procedures are not used, the design response spectrum curve shall be developed as indicated in Fig. 3.4.1 and as follows:

1. For periods less than T0, the design spectral response acceleration, Sa, shall be taken as given by Eq. (3.4.5):

$$S_a= S_{DS} (0.4 + 0.6 \ T/ \ T_0) \qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.5]}$$

2. For periods greater than or equal to T_0 and less than or equal to T_S , the

design spectral response acceleration, S_a, shall be taken equal to S_{DS} .
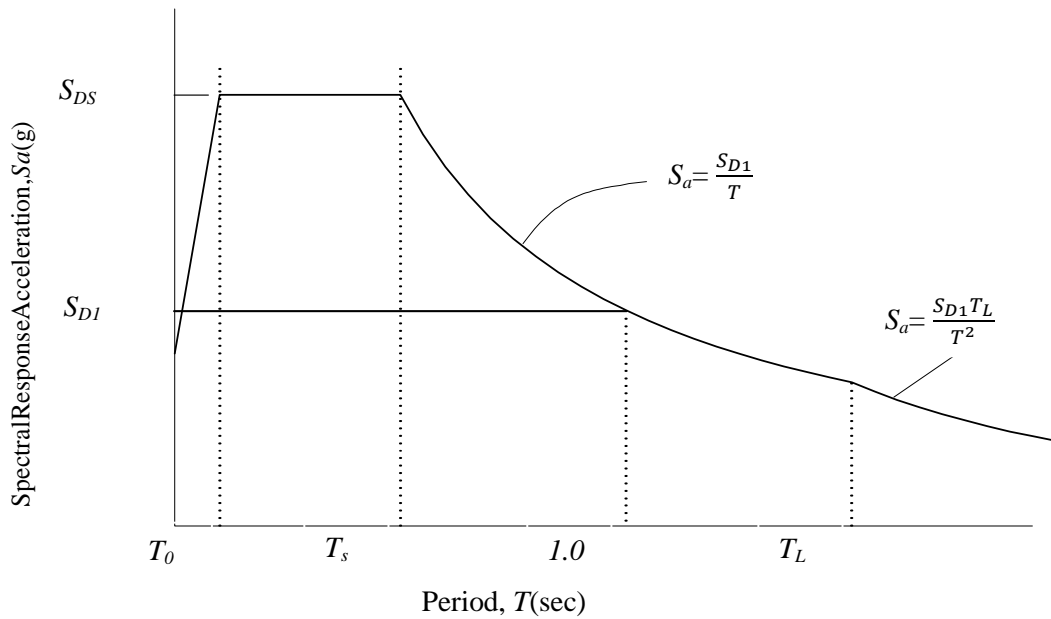
Figure 3.4.1 Design response spectrum

3. For periods greater than T_S, and less than or equal to T_L, the design spectral response acceleration, S_a , shall be taken as given by Eq. (3.4.6):

$$S_a = S_{D1}/T \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.6]}$$

4. For periods greater than T_L , S_a shall be taken as given by Eq. (3.4.7):

$$S_a = S_{D1}T_L/T^2 \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.[3.4.7]}$$

where

S_{DS} = the design spectral response acceleration parameter at short periods

S_{D1} = the design spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-s period

T = the fundamental period of the structure, s

$T_0 = 0.2\ S_{D1}/\ S_{DS}$

$T_S = S_{D1}/\ S_{DS}$ and

T_L = long-period transition period as specified in Table 3.4.1

3.4.1.4.6 MCE Response Spectrum

Where a MCE response spectrum is required, it shall be determined by multiplying the design response spectrum by 1.5.

3.4.1.4.7 Zoning Map and Peak Ground Acceleration

Where a MCE response spectrum is required, it shall be determined by multiplying the design response spectrum by 1.5.

As an alternative seismic design deterministic Seismic Zoning Map of Myanmar shall be used and the procedure for calculating base shear shall follow according to Chapter 16 of UBC97 Code.

3.4.1.4.7 Site-Specific Ground Motion Procedures

The site-specific ground motion procedures set forth in Chapter 21 of ASCE (see section 3.4.4)are permitted to be used to determine ground motions for any structure.

3.4.1.4.8 Site classification for seismic design

Site classification for Site Class C, D or E shall be determined from Table 3.4.5.

The notation presented below apply to the upper 100 feet (30 480 mm) of the siteprofile. Profiles containing distinctly different soil and/or rock layers shall be subdivided into those layers designated by a number that ranges from 1 to n at the bottom where there is a total of *n* distinct layers in the upper 100 feet (30 480 mm). The symbol *i* then refers to any one of the layers between *1* and *n.*

where

v_{si}=the shear wave velocityin feet per second (m/s).

d_i= the thickness of any layer between 0 and 100 feet (30 480 mm).

where

$$\bar{v}_s = \frac{\Sigma_{i=1}^{n} d_i}{\Sigma_{i=1}^{n} \frac{d_i}{v_{si}}}$$
Eq.(3.4.8)

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} d_i = 100 \text{ feet (30 480 mm)}$$

$N_i$is the Standard Penetration Resistance (ASTM D 1586) not to exceed 100 blows/foot (305 mm) as directly measured in the field without corrections. When refusal is met for a rock layer, $N_i$shall be taken as 100 blows/foot (305 mm).

$$\bar{N} = \frac{\Sigma_{i=1}^{n} d_i}{\Sigma_{i=1}^{n} \frac{d_i}{N_i}}$$
Eq.(3.4.9)

where$N_i$and $d_i$in Equation (4-9) are for cohesionless soil, cohesive soil and rock layers.

$$\bar{N}_{ch} = \frac{d_s}{\Sigma_{i=1}^{m} \frac{d_i}{N_i}}$$
Eq.(3.4.10)

where

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m} d_i = d_s$$

Use d_i and N_i for cohesionless soil layers only in Equation (3.4.10)

d_s=total thickness of cohesionless soil layers in the top 100 feet (30 480 mm).

m=number of cohesionless soil layers in the top 100 feet (30 480 mm).

s_{ui}= the undrained shear strength in psf(kPa), not to exceed 5,000 psf (240 kPa),ASTM D2166 or D2850.

$$\bar{S}_u = \frac{d_c}{\sum_{i=1}^{k} \frac{d_i}{s_{ui}}}$$

Eq.(3.4.11)

where

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} d_i = d_c$$

d_c=the total thicknessof cohesive soil layers in the top100 feet (30 480 mm).

k=the number of cohesive soil layers in the top 100 feet(30 480 mm).

PI=the plasticity index, ASTM D 4318

w=the moisture content in percent, ASTM D 2216

Where a site does not qualify under the criteria for Site Class F and there is a total thickness of soft clay greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) where a soft clay layer is defined by: s_u< 500 psf (24 kPa), w $\geq$ 40 percent, and PI > 20, it shall be classified as Site ClassE.

The shear wave velocity for rock, Site Class B, shall be either measured on site or estimated by a geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist/seismologist for competent rock with moderate fracturing and weathering. Softer and more highly fractured and weathered rock shall either be measured on site for shear wave velocity or classified as Site Class C.

The hard rock category, Site Class A, shall be supported by shear wave velocity measurements either on site or on profiles of the same rock type in the same formation with an equal or greater degree of weathering and fracturing. Wherehard rock conditions are known to be continuous to a depth of 100 feet (30480 mm), surficial shear wave velocity measurements are permitted to be extrapolated to assess $\overline{v_s}$.

The rock categories, Site Classes A and B, shall not be used if there is more than 10 feet (3048 mm) of soil between the rock surface and the bottom of the spread footing or mat foundation.

TABLE 3.4.5
SITE CLASSIFICATION

SITE CLASS	$\overline{v}_s$	$\overline{N}$ or $\overline{N}_{ch}$	$\overline{S}_u$
E	< 600 ft/s	<15	<1,000 psf
D	600 to 1,200 ft/s	15 to 50	1,000 to 2,000 psf
C	1,200 to 2,500 ft/s	>50	>2,000

For SI:1 foot per second = 304.8 mm per second, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m2.

a.If the $\overline{s}_u$ method is used and the $\overline{N}_{ch}$ and $\overline{s}_u$ criteria differ, select the category with the softer soils (for example, use Site Class E instead of D).

3.4.1.4.8.1 Steps for classifying a site

1. Check for the four categories of Site Class F requiring site-specific evaluation. If the site corresponds to any of these categories, classify the site as Site Class F and conduct a site-specific evaluation.

2. Check for the existence of a total thickness of soft clay > 10 feet (3048 mm) where a soft clay layer is defined by: su< 500 psf (24kPa), w ≥ 40 percent and PI > 20. If these criteria are satisfied, classify the site as Site Class E.

3. Categorize the site using one of the following three methods with $\overline{v}_s$, $\overline{N}$, and $\overline{s}_u$ and computed in all cases as specified:

(i)$\overline{v}_s$ for the top 100 feet (30480 mm) ($\overline{v}_s$ method)

(ii)$\overline{N}_{ch}$ for the top 100 feet (30480 mm) ($\overline{N}$ method)

(iii)$\overline{N}$ for cohesionless soil layers (PI < 20) in the top 100 feet (30480 mm) and average, $\overline{s}_u$ for cohesive soil layers (PI > 20) in the top 100 feet (30480 mm)($\overline{s}_u$ method)

3.4.1.5 Importance Factor and Occupancy Category

3.4.1.5.1 Importance factor

An importance factor, I , shall be assigned to each structure in accordance with Table 3.4.6 based on the Occupancy Category from Table 1.2.

TABLE 3.4.6 IMPORTANCE FACTORS

OccupancyCategory	I
IorII	1.0
III	1.25
IV	1.5

3.4.1.5.2 Protected access for occupancy category IV

Where operational access to an Occupancy Category IV structure is required throughanadjacent structure, the adjacent structure shall conform to the requirements for Occupancy Category IV structures. Where operational access is less than 10 ft from an interior lot line or another structure on the same lot, protection from potential falling debris from adjacent structures shall be provided by the owner of the Occupancy Category IV structure.

3.4.1.6Seismic Design Category

Structures shall be assigned a Seismic Design Category in accordance with Section 3.4.1.6.1.

3.4.1.6.1 Assignment of Seismic Design Category

Occupancy Category I, II, or III structures located where the spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-s period, S_1, is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category E. Occupancy Category IV structures located where the spectral response acceleration parameter at 1- s period, S_1, is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category F. All other structures shall be assigned to a Seismic Design Category based on their Occupancy Category and the design spectral response acceleration parameters, S_{DS} and S_{D1} , determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.4. Each building shall be assigned to the more severe Seismic Design Category in accordance with Table 3.4.7 or 3.4.8, irrespective of the fundamental period of vibration of the structure, T .

TABLE 3.4.7 SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY BASEDON SHORT PERIOD RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETER

ValueofS_{DS}	OccupancyCategory		
	IorII	III	IV
$S_{DS}<0.167$	A	A	A
$0.167 \le S_{DS}<0.33$	B	B	C
$0.33 \le S_{DS}<0.50$	C	C	D
$0.50 \le S_{DS}$	D	D	D

TABLE 3.4.8 SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY BASED ON 1-S PERIOD RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETER

Value of S_{D1}	Occupancy Category		
	I or II	III	IV
$S_{D1} < 0.067$	A	A	A
$0.067 \leq S_{D1} < 0.133$	B	B	C
$0.133 \leq S_{D1} < 0.20$	C	C	D
$0.20 \leq S_{D1}$	D	D	D

3.4.1.6.2 Alternative Seismic Design Category determination

Where S_1 is less than 0.75, the Seismic Design Category is permitted to be determined from Table 3.4.7 alone where all of the following apply:

1. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the approximate fundamental period of the structure, T_a , determined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.8.2.1 is less than $0.8T_s$, where T_s is determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.5.

2. In each of two orthogonal directions, the fundamental period of the structure used to calculate the storey drift is less than T_s.

3. Eq. (3.4.21) is used to determine the seismic response coefficient Cs .

3.4.   The diaphragms are rigid as defined in Section 3.4.2.3.1.3 or for diaphragms that are flexible, the distance between vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system does not exceed 40 ft.

3.4.1.6.3 Simplified design procedure

Where the alternative simplified design procedure of Section 3.4.2.14 is used, the Seismic Design Category is permitted to be determined from Table 3.4.7 alone, using the value of S_{DS} determined in Section 3.4.2.14.8.1.

3.4.1.7 Design Requirements for Seismic Design Category A

3.4.1.7.1 Applicability of seismic requirements for Seismic Design Category A structures.

Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A need only comply with the requirements of Section 3.4.1.7. The effects on the structure and its components due to the forces prescribed in this section shall be taken as E and combined with the effects of other loads in accordance with the load combinations of Section 2.1.2 or 2.1.3.

3.4.1.7.2 Lateral forces.

Each structure shall be analyzed for the effects of static lateral forces applied independently in each of two orthogonal directions. In each direction, the static lateral forces at all levels shall be applied simultaneously. For purposes of analysis, the force at each level shall be determined using Eq. (3.4.12) as follows:

$$F_x = 0.01w_x \quad \text{Eq. (3.4.12)}$$

where

F_x= the design lateral force applied at storey x , and

w_x= the portion of the total dead load of the structure, *D*, locatedor assigned to Level *x*

3.4.1.7.3 Load path connections

All parts of the structure between separation joints shall be interconnected to form a continuous path to the lateral force-resisting system, and the connections shall be capable of transmitting the lateral forces induced by the parts being connected. Any smaller portion of the structure shall be tied to the remainder of the structure with elements having design strength of not less than 5 percent of the portion's weight. This connection force does not apply to the overall design of the lateral force-resisting system. Connection design forces need not exceed the maximum forces that the structural system can deliver to the connection.

3.4.1.7.4 Connection to supports

 A positive connection for resisting a horizontal force acting parallel to the member shall be provided for each beam, girder, or truss either directly to its supporting elements, or to slabs designed to act as diaphragms. Where the connection is through a diaphragm, then the member's supporting element must also be connected to the diaphragm. The connection shall have a minimum design strength of 5 percent of the dead plus live load reaction.

3.4.1.7.5 Anchorage of concrete or masonry walls

Concrete and masonry walls shall be anchored to the roof and all floors and members that provide lateral support for the wall or that are supported by the wall.The anchorage shall provide a direct connection between the walls and the roof or floor construction. The connections shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces specified in Section 3.4.1.7.2, but not less than a minimum strength level horizontal force of 280 lb/ linear ft (3.4.09 kN/m) of wall substituted for E in the load combinations of Section 2.1.2or 2.1.3.

3.4.1.8 Geologic Hazards and Geotechnical Investigation

3.4.1.8.1 Site limitation for Seismic Design Categories E and F

A structure assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F shall notbe located where there is a known potential for an active fault to cause rupture of the ground surface at the structure.

3.4.1.8.2 Geotechnical investigation report for Seismic Design Categories C through F

A geotechnical investigation report shall be provided for a structure assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E, or F in accordance with this section. An investigation shall be conducted and a report shall be submitted that shall include an evaluation of the following potential geologic and seismic hazards:

  a. Slope instability;

  b. Liquefaction;

  c. Differential settlement;

  d. Surface displacement due to faulting or lateral spreading.

The report shall contain recommendations for appropriate foundation designs or other measures to mitigate the effects of the previously mentioned hazards. Where deemed appropriate by the authority having jurisdiction, a site-specific geotechnical report is not

required where prior evaluations of nearby sites with similar soil conditions provide sufficient direction relative to the proposed construction.

3.4.1.8.3 Additional geotechnical investigation report requirements for Seismic Design Categories D through F

The geotechnical investigation report for a structure assigned to Seismic DesignCategory D, E, or Fshall include:

  1. The determination of lateral pressures on basement and retaining walls due to earthquake motions;

  2. The potential for liquefaction and soil strength loss evaluated for site peak ground accelerations, magnitudes, and source characteristics consistent with the design earthquake ground motions. Peak ground acceleration is permitted to be determined based on a site-specific study taking into account soil amplification effects or, in the absence of such a study, peak ground accelerations shall be assumed equal to $S_S /2.5$;

  3. Assessment of potential consequences of liquefaction and soil strength loss, including estimation of differential settlement, lateralmovement,lateral loads onfoundations, reduction in foundation soil-bearing capacity, increases in lateral pressures on retaining walls, and flotation of buried structures;

  4. Discussion of mitigation measures such as, but not limited to, ground stabilization, selection of appropriate foundation type and depths, selection of appropriate structural systems to accommodate anticipated displacements and forces, or any combination of these measures and how they shall be considered in the design of the structure.

3.4.2Seismic Design Requirements for BuildingStructures

3.4.2.1Structural Design Basis

3.4.2.1.1 Basic requirements

The seismic analysis and design procedures to be used in the design of building structures and their components shall be as prescribed in this section. The building structure shall include complete lateral and vertical force-resisting systems capable of providing adequate strength, stiffness, and energy dissipation capacity to withstand the design ground motions within the prescribed limits of deformation and strength demand. The design ground motions shall be assumed to occur along any horizontal direction of a building structure. The adequacy of the structural systems shall be demonstrated through the construction of a mathematical model and evaluation of this model for the effects of design ground motions. The design seismic forces, and their distribution over the height of the building structure, shall be established in accordance with one of the applicable procedures indicated in Section 3.4.2.6 and the corresponding internal forces and deformations in the members of the structure shall be determined. An approved alternative procedure shall not be used to establish the seismic forces and their distribution unless the corresponding internal forces and deformations in the members are determined using a model consistent with the procedure adopted.

EXCEPTION:As an alternative, the simplified design procedures of Section 3.4.2.14 is permitted to be used in lieu of the requirements of Sections 3.4.2.1 through 3.4.2.12, subject to all of the limitations contained in Section 3.4.2.14

3.4.2.1.2Member design, connection design, and deformation limit

Individual members, including those not part of the seismic force–resisting system, shall be provided with adequate strength to resist the shears, axial forces, and moments determined in accordance with this standard, and connections shall develop the strength of the connected members or the forces indicated in Section 3.4.2.1.1. The deformation of the structure shall not exceed the prescribed limits where the structure is subjected to the design seismic forces.

3.4.2.1.3 Continuous load path and interconnection

A continuous load path, or load paths, with adequate strength and stiffness shall be provided to transfer all forces from the point of application to the final point of resistance. All parts of the structure between separation joints shall be interconnected to form a continuous path to the seismic force–resisting system, and the connections shall be capable of transmitting the seismic force (F_p) induced by the parts being connected. Any smaller portion of the structure shall be tied to the remainder of the structure with elements having a design strength capable of transmitting a seismic force of 0.133times the short period design spectralresponse acceleration parameter, S_{DS} , times the weight of the smaller portion or 5 percent of the portion's weight, whichever is greater. This connection force does not apply to the overall design of the seismic force–resisting system. Connection design forces need not exceed the maximum forces that the structural system can deliver to the connection.

3.4.2.1.4 Connection to supports

A positive connection for resisting a horizontal force acting parallel to the member shall

be provided for each beam, girder, or truss either directly to its supporting elements, or to slabs designed to act as diaphragms. Where the connection is through a diaphragm, then the member's supporting element must also be connected to the diaphragm. The connection shall have a minimum design strength of 5 percent of the dead plus live load reaction.

3.4.2.1.5 Foundation design

The foundation shall be designed to resist the forces developed and accommodate the movements imparted to the structure by the design ground motions. The dynamic nature of the forces, the expected ground motion, the design basis for strength and energy dissipation capacity of the structure, and the dynamic properties of the soil shall be included in the determination of the foundation design criteria. The design and construction of foundations shall comply with Section 3.4.2.13

3.4.2.1.6 Material design and detailing requirements

Structural elements including foundation elements shall conform to the material design and detailing requirements set forth in later sections on material design standards.

3.4.2.2 Structural System Selection

3.4.2.2.1 Selection and limitations

The basic lateral and vertical seismic force–resisting system shall conform to one of the types indicated in Table 3.4.9 or a combination of systems as permitted in Sections 3.4.2.2.2, 3.4.2.2.3, and 3.4.2.2.4. Each type is subdivided by the types of vertical elements used to resist lateral seismic forces. The structural system used shall be in accordance with the Seismic Design Category and height limitations indicated in Table 3.4.9. The appropriate response modification coefficient, R, system overstrength factor, Ω_0, and the deflection amplification factor, C_d, indicated in Table 3.4.9 shall be used in determining the base shear, element design forces, and design storey drift.

Seismic force–resisting systems that are not contained in Table 3.4.9 are permitted if analytical and test data are submitted that establish the dynamic characteristics and demonstrate the lateral force resistance and energy dissipation capacity to be equivalent to the structural systems listed in Table 3.4.9 for equivalent response modification coefficient, R, system overstrength coefficient, Ω_0, and deflection amplification factor, C_d, values.

The selected seismic force-resisting system shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the specific requirements for the system per the applicable reference document and the additional requirements set forth in later sections on material design standards.

3.4.2.2.2 Combinations of framing systems in different directions

Different seismic force–resisting systems are permitted to be used to resist seismic forces along each of the two orthogonal axes of the structure. Where different systems are used, the respective R, C_d, and Ω_0 coefficients shall apply to each system, including the limitations on system use contained in Table 3.4.9.

3.4.2.2.3 Combinations of framing systems in the same direction

Where different seismic force–resisting systems are used in combination to resist seismic forces in the same direction of structural response, other than those

combinations considered as dual systems, the more stringent system limitation contained in Table 3.4.9 shall apply and the design shall comply with the requirements of this section.

TABLE 3.4.9 DESIGN COEFFICIENTS AND FACTORS FOR SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS

Seismic Force-Resisting System	ASCE 7 Section where Detailing Requirements areSpecified	Response Modification Coefficient, Ra	System Overstrength Factor, Ω0 g	Deflection Amplification Factor, Cdb	Structural System Limitations and Building Height (ft) Limitc Seismic Design Category				
					B	C	Dd	Ed	Fe
A.BEARING WALL SYSTEMS									
1.Special reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.6	5	2½	5	NL	NL	160	160	100
2.Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.4	4	2½	4	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
3.Detailed plain concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.2	2	2½	2	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
3.4.Ordinary plain concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.1	1½	2½	1½	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
5.Intermediate precast shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.5	4	2½	4	NL	NL	40k	40k	40k
6. Ordinary precast shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.3	3	2½	3	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
7.Special reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4 and 13.4.3.4.3	5	2½	3½	NL	NL	160	160	100
8.Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4 and 13.4.3.4.3	3½	2½	2¼	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
9.Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	2	2½	1¾	NL	160	NP	NP	NP
10.Detailed plain masonry shear walls	13.4.4	2	2½	1¾	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
11.Ordinary plain masonry shear walls	13.4.4	1½	2½	1¼	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
12.Prestressed masonry shear walls	13.4.4	1½	2½	1¾	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
13.Light-framed walls sheathed with wood structural panels rated for shear resistance or steel sheets	13.4.1 and 13.4.1.3.4.2, and 13.4.5	6½	3	4	NL	NL	65	65	65
14.Light-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials	13.4.1 and 13.4.1.3.4.2, and 13.4.5	2	2½	2	NL	NL	35	NP	NP
15.Light-framed wall systems using flat strap bracing	13.4.1 and 13.4.1.3.4.2, and 13.4.5	4	2	3½	NL	NL	65	65	65
B.BUILDING FRAME SYSTEMS									
1.Steel eccentrically braced frames, moment resisting connections at columns away from links	13.4.1	8	2	4	NL	NL	160	160	100
2.Steel eccentrically braced frames, non-moment-resisting, connections at columns away from links	13.4.1	7	2	4	NL	NL	160	160	100
3.Special steel concentrically braced frames	13.4.1	6	2	5	NL	NL	160	160	100
3.4.Ordinary steel concentrically braced frames	13.4.1	3¼	2	2½	NL	NL	35j	35j	NPj
5.Special reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.6	6	2½	5	NL	NL	160	160	100
6.Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.4	5	2½	4½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP

TABLE 3.4.9 DESIGN COEFFICIENTS AND FACTORS FOR SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS (CONTINUED)

Seismic Force-Resisting System	ASCE 7 Section where Detailing Requirements areSpecified	Response Modification Coefficient, R^a	System Overstrength Factor, Ω_0^g	Deflection Amplification Factor, C_d^b	Structural System Limitations and Building Height (ft) Limit [f] Seismic Design Category				
					B	C	D^d	E^d	F^e
7.Detailed plain concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.2	2	2½	2	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
8.Ordinary plain concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.1	1½	2½	1½	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
9.Intermediate precast shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.5	5	2½	4½	NL	NL	40^k	40^k	40^k
10.Ordinary precast shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.3	4	2½	4	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
11.Composite steel and concrete eccentrically braced frames	13.4.3	8	2	4	NL	NL	160	160	100
12.Composite steel and concrete concentrically braced frames	13.4.3	5	2	4½	NL	NL	160	160	100
13.Ordinary composite steel and concrete braced frames	13.4.3	3	2	3	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
13.4.Composite steel plate shear walls	13.4.3	6½	2½	5½	NL	NL	160	160	100
15.Special composite reinforced concrete shear walls with steel elements	13.4.3	6	2½	5	NL	NL	160	160	100
16.Ordinary composite reinforced concrete shear walls with steel elements	13.4.3	5	2½	4½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
17.Special reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	5½	2½	4	NL	NL	160	160	100
18.Intermidiate reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	4	2½	4	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
19. Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	2	2½	2	NL	160	NP	NP	NP
20. Detailed plain masonry shear walls	14	2	2½	2	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
21. Ordinary plain masonry shear walls	14	1½	2½	1¼	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
22.Prestressed masonry shear walls	13.4.4	1½	2½	1¾	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
23.Light-framed walls sheathed with wood structural panels rated for shear resistance or steel sheets	13.4.1, 13.4.1.3.4.2, and 13.4.5	7	2½	4½	NL	NL	65	65	65
23.4.Light-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials	13.4.1, 13.4.1.3.4.2, and 13.4.5	2½	2½	2½	NL	NL	35	NP	NP
25.Buckling-restrained braced frames, non-moment-resisting beam-column connections	13.4.1	7	2	5½	NL	NL	160	160	100
26.Buckling-restrained braced frames, moment-resisting beam-column connections	13.4.1	8	2½	5	NL	NL	160	160	100
27.Special steel plate shear	13.4.1	7	2	6	NL	NL	160	160	100
C.MOMENT-RESISTING FRAME SYSTEMS									
1.Special steel moment frames	13.4.1 and	8	3	5½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
2.Special steel truss moment frames	13.4.1	7	3	5½	NL	NL	160	100	NP

TABLE 3.4.9 DESIGN COEFFICIENTS AND FACTORS FOR SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS (CONTINUED)

Seismic Force-Resisting System	ASCE 7 Section where Detailing Requirements areSpecified	Response Modification Coefficient, R^a	System Overstrength Factor, Ω_0^g	Deflection Amplification Factor, C_d^b	Structural System Limitations and Building Seismic Design Category				
					B	C	D^d	E^d	F^e
3.Intermediate steel moment frames	12.2.5.6, 12.2.5.7, 12.2.5.8, 12.2.5.9.	3.4.5	3	4	NL	NL	$35^{h,i}$	NP^h	NP^i
3.4.Ordinary steel moment frames	12.2.5.6, 12.2.5.7, 12.2.5.8, and	3.5	3	3	NL	NL	NP^h	NP^h	NP^i
5.Special reinforced concrete moment frames	12.2.5.5 and 13.4.2	8	3	5½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
6.Intermediate reinforced concrete moment frames	13.4.2	5	3	4½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
7.Ordinary reinforced concrete moment frames	13.4.2	3	3	2½	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
8.Special composite steel and concrete moment frames	12.2.5.5 and 13.4.3	8	3	5½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
9.Intermediate composite moment frames	13.4.3	5	3	4½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
10.Composite partially restrained moment frames	13.4.3	6	3	5½	160	160	100	NP	NP
11.Ordinary composite moment frames	13.4.3	3	3	5½	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
D.DUAL SYSTEMS WITH SPECIAL MOMENT FRAMES CAPABLE OF RESISTING AT LEAST 25% OF PRESCRIBED SEISMIC FORCES	12.2.5.1								
1.Steel eccentrically braced	13.4.1	8	2½	4	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
2.Special steel concentrically braced frames	13.4.1	7	2½	5½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
3.Special reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2	7	2½	5½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
3.4.Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2	6	2½	5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
5.Composite steel and concrete eccentrically braced	13.4.3	8	2½	4	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
6.Composite steel and concrete concentrically braced f	13.4.3	6	2½	5	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
7.Composite steel plate shear walls	13.4.3	7½	2½	6	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
8.Special composite reinforced concrete shear walls with steel elements	13.4.3	7	2½	6	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
9.Ordinary composite reinforced concrete shear walls with steel elements	13.4.3	6	2½	5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
10.Special reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	5½	3	5	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
11.Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	4	3	3½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
12.Buckling-restrained braced frame	13.4.1	8	2½	5	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL

TABLE 3.4.9 DESIGN COEFFICIENTS AND FACTORS FOR SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS (CONTINUED)

Seismic Force-Resisting System	ASCE 7 Section where Detailing Requirements areSpecified	Response Modification Coefficient, R^a	System Overstrength Factor, Ω_0^g	Deflection Amplification Factor, C_d^b	Structural System Limitations and Building Height (ft) Limit[c]				
					Seismic Design Category				
					B	C	D^d	E^d	F^e
13.Special steel plate shear walls	13.4.1	8	2½	6½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
E.DUAL SYSTEMS WITH INTERMEDIATE MOMENT FRAMES CAPABLE OF RESISTING AT LEAST 25% OF PRESCRIBED SEISMIC FORCES	12.2.5.1								
1.Special steel concentrically braced frames[f]	13.4.1	6	2½	5	NL	NL	35	NP	NP[h, k]
2.Special reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2	6½	2½	5	NL	NL	160	100	100
3.Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	3	3	2½	NL	160	NP	NP	NP
3.4.Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	3½	3	3	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
5.Composite steel and concrete concentrically braced	13.4.3	5½	2½	4½	NL	NL	160	100	NP
6.Ordinary composite braced frames	13.4.3	3½	2½	3	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
7.Ordinary composite reinforced concrete shear walls with steel elements	13.4.3	5	3	4½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
8.Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2	5½	2½	4½	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
F.SHEAR WALL-FRAME INTERACTIVE SYSTEM WITH ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE MOMENT FRAMES AND ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE SHEAR	12.2.5.10 and 13.4.2	4½	2½	4	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
G.CANTILEVERED COLUMN SYSTEMS DETAILED TO CONFORM TO THE REQUIREMENTS FOR	12.2.5.2								
1.Special steel moment frames	12.2.5.5 and 13.4.1	2½	1¼	2½	35	35	35	35	35
2.Intermediate steel moment frames	13.4.1	1½	1¼	1½	35	35	35h	NPh, i	NPh, i
3.Ordinary steel moment	13.4.1	1¼	1¼	1¼	35	35	NP	NPh,	NPh,
3.4.Special reinforced concrete moment frames	12.2.5.5 and 13.4.2	2½	1¼	2½	35	35	35	35	35
5.Intermediate concrete moment frames	13.4.2	1½	1¼	1½	35	35	NP	NP	NP
6.Ordinary concrete moment frames	13.4.2	1	1¼	1	35	NP	NP	NP	NP
7.Timber frames	13.4.5	1½	1½	1½	35	35	35	NP	NP
H.STEEL SYSTEMS NOT SPECIFICALLY DETAILED FOR SEISMIC RESISTANCE, EXCLUDING CANTILEVER COLUMN SYSTEMS	13.4.1	3	3	3	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP

a. Response modification coefficient, R, for use throughout the standard. Note R reduces forces to a strength level, not an allowable stress level.

b.Reflection amplification factor,*Cd* , for use in Sections 3.4.2.8.6 and 3.4.2.8.7

c. NL = Not Limited and NP = Not Permitted. For metric units use 30.5 m for 100 ft and use 48.8 m for 160 ft. Heights are measured from the base of the structure as defined in Section 3.4.1.2.

d. See Section 3.4.2.2.5.4 for a description of building systems limited to buildings with a height of 240 ft (73.2 m) or less.

e.See Section 3.4.2.2.5.4 for building systems limited to buildings with a height of 160 ft (48.8m) or less.

f. Ordinary moment frame is permitted to be used in lieu of intermediate moment frame for Seismic Design Categories B or C.

g. The tabulated value of the overstrength factor, $\emptyset$, is permitted to be reduced by subtracting one-half for structures with flexible diaphragms, but shall not be taken as less than 2.0 for any structure.

h. See Sections 3.4.2.2.5.6 and 3.4.2.2.5.7 for limitations for steel OMFs and IMFs in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E.

i. See Sections 3.4.2.2.5.8 and 3.4.2.2.5.9 for limitations for steel OMFs and IMFs in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category F.

j.Steel ordinary concentrically braced frames are permitted in single-storey buildings up to a height of 60 ft (18.3 m) where the dead load of the roof does not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kN/m2) and in penthouse structures.

*k*Increase in height to 45 ft (13.7 m) is permitted for single storey storage warehouse facilities.

3.4.2.2.3.1 R, C_d, and $\Omega_0$values for vertical combinations.

The value of the response modification coefficient, R, used for design at any storey shall not exceed the lowest value of R that is used in the same direction at any storey above that storey. Likewise, the deflection amplification factor, C_d , and the system overstrength factor, Ω_0 , used for the design at any storey shall not be less than the largest value of this factor that is used in the same direction at any storey above that storey.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Rooftop structures not exceeding two storeys in height and 10 percent of the total structure weight.

2. Other supported structural systems with a weight equal to or less than 10 percent of the weight of the structure.

3. Detachedone- and two-family dwellings of light-frame construction.

A two-stage equivalent lateral force procedure is permitted to be used for structures having a flexible upper portion above a rigid lower

portion, provided that the design of the structure complies with the following:

a. The stiffness of the lower portion must be at least 10 times the stiffness of the upper portion.

b. The period of the entire structure shall not be greater than 1.1 times the period of the upper portion considered as a separate structure fixed at the base.

c. The flexible upper portion shall be designed as a separate structure using the appropriate values of R and ρ.

d. The rigid lower portion shall be designed as a separate structure using the appropriate values of R and ρ. The reactions from the upper portion shall be those determined from the analysis of the upper portion amplified by the ratio of the R/ρ of the upper portion over R/ρ of the lower portion. This ratio shall not be less than 1.0.

3.4.2.2.3.2 R, C_d, and Ω_0 values for horizontal combinations

Where a combination of different structural systems is utilized to resist lateral forces in the same direction, the value of R used for design in that direction shall not be greater than the least value of R for any of the systems utilized in that direction. Resisting elements are permitted to be designed using the least value of R for the different structural systems found in each independent line of resistance if the following three conditions are met: (1) Occupancy Category I or II building, (2) two storeys or less in height, and (3) use of light-frame construction or flexible diaphragms. The value of R used for design of diaphragms in such structures shall not be greater than the least value for any of the systems utilized in the same direction.

The deflection amplification factor, C_d, and the system over strength factor,Ω_0, in the direction under consideration at any storey shall not be less than the largest value of this factor for the R factor used in the same direction being considered.

3.4.2.2.4 Combination framing detailing requirements

Structural components common to different framing systems used to resist seismic motions in any direction shall be designed using the detailing requirements of Section 3.4.2 required by the highest response modification coefficient, R, of the connected framing systems.

3.4.2.2.5 System specific requirements

The structural framing system shall also comply with the following system specific requirements of this section.

3.4.2.2.5.1 Dual system

For a dual system, the moment frames shall be capable of resisting at least 25percent of the design seismic forces. The total seismic force resistance is to be provided by the combination of the moment frames and

the shear walls or braced frames in proportion to their rigidities.

3.4.2.2.5.2 Cantilever column systems

Cantilever column systems are permitted as indicated in Table 3.4.9 and as follows. The axial load on individual cantilever column elements calculated in accordance with the load combinations of Section 2.1.2 shall not exceed 15 percent of the design strength of the column to resist axial loads alone, or for allowable stress design, the axial load stress on individual cantilever column elements, calculated in accordance with the load combinations of Section 2.1.3 shall not exceed 15 percent of the permissible axial stress.

Foundation and other elements used to provide overturning resistance at the base of cantilever column elements shall have the strength to resist the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2.

3.4.2.2.5.3 Inverted pendulum-type structures

Regardless of the structural system selected, inverted pendulums as defined in Section 3.4.1.2, shall comply with this section. Supporting columns or piers of inverted pendulum-type structures shall be designed for the bending moment calculated at the base determined using the procedures given in Section 3.4.2.8 and varying uniformly to a moment at the top equal to one-half the calculated bending moment at the base.

3.4.2.2.5.4 Increased building height limit for steel braced frames and special reinforced concrete shear walls

The height limits in Table 3.4.9 are permitted to be increased from160 ft (50 m) to 240 ft (75 m) for structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D or E and from 100 ft (30 m) to 160 ft (50 m) for structures assigned to SeismicDesign Category F that have steel braced frames or special reinforced concrete cast-in-place shear walls and that meet both of the following requirements:

1.The structure shall not have an extreme torsional irregularity asdefined in Table 3.4.9 (horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b).

2. The braced frames or shear walls in any one plane shall resist no more than 60 percent of the total seismic forces in each direction, neglecting accidental torsional effects.

3.4.2.2.5.5 Special moment frames in structures assignedto Seismic Design Categories D through F

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D, E, or F, a special moment frame that is used but not required by Table 3.4.9 shall not be discontinued and supported by a more rigid system with a lower response modification coefficient,R, unless the requirements of Sections 3.4.2.3.3.2 and 3.4.2.3.3.4 are met. Where a special moment frame is required by Table 3.4.9, the frame shall be continuous to the foundation.

3.4.2.2.5.6 Single-storey steelordinaryandintermediate moment framesin structures assignedtoSeismic Design CategoryD or E

Single-storey steelordinary moment frames and intermediate moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic DesignCategory Dor E are permitted up to a height of 65 ft (20 m) where the dead load supported by and tributary to the roof does not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2). In addition, the dead loads tributary to the moment frame, of the exterior wall more than35 ft above the base shall not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2).

3.4.2.2.5.7 Other steel ordinary and intermediate moment frames in structures assignedto Seismic Design Category D or E

Steel ordinary moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic DesignCategory Dor E not meeting the limitations set forth in Section3.4.2.2.5.6 are permitted within light-frame construction up to a height of 35 ft (10.6 m) where neither the roof nor the floor dead load supported by and tributary to the moment frames exceeds 35 psf (1.68 kN/m2). In addition, the dead load of the exterior walls tributary to the moment frame shall not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kN/m2). Steel intermediate moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E not meeting the limitations set forth in Section 3.4.2.2.5.6 permitted as follows:

1.   In Seismic Design Category D, intermediate moment frames are permitted to a height of 35 ft (10.6 m).

2.   In Seismic Design Category E, intermediate moment frames are permitted to a height of 35 ft (10.6 m) provided neither the roof nor the floor dead load supported by and tributary to the moment frames exceeds 35 psf (1.68 kN/m^2). In addition, the dead load of the exterior walls tributary to the moment frame shall not exceed 20 psf(0.96 kN/m^2).
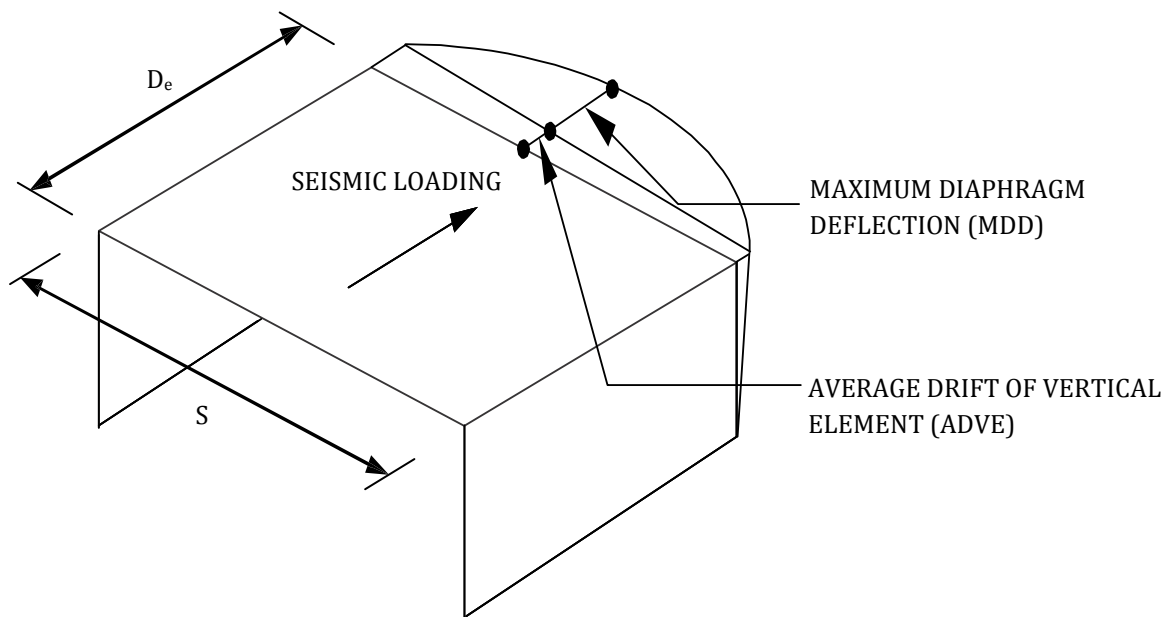
Figure 3.4.2Flexible diaphragm

3.4.2.2.5.8 Single-storey steel ordinary and intermediate moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category F

Single-storey steel ordinary moment frames and intermediate moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category F are permittedupto a height of 65 ft (20m) where the dead load supported by and tributary to the roof does not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2). In addition, the dead loads of the exterior walls tributary to the moment frame shall not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2).

3.4.2.2.5.9 Other steel intermediate moment frame limitations in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category F

In addition to the limitations for steel intermediate moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E as set forth in Section 3.4.2.2.5.7, steel intermediate moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category F are permitted in light-frame construction.

3.4.2.2.5.10 Shear wall-frame interactive systems

The shear strength of the shear walls of the shear wall-frame interactive system shall be at least 75 percent of the design storey shear at each storey. The frames of the shear wall-frame interactive system shall be capable of resisting at least 25 percent of the design storey shear in every storey.

3.4.2.3Diaphragm Flexibility, Configuration Irregularities, and Redundancy

3.4.2.3.1 Diaphragm flexibility

The structural analysis shall consider the relative stiffnesses of diaphragms and the vertical elements of the seismic force–resisting system. Unless a diaphragm can be idealized as either flexible or rigid in accordance with Sections 3.4.2.3.1.1, 3.4.2.3.1.2, or 3.4.2.3.1.3, the structural analysis shall explicitly include consideration of the stiffness of the diaphragm (i.e., semirigid modeling assumption).

3.4.2.3.1.1 Flexiblediaphragmcondition

Diaphragmsconstructed of untopped steel decking or wood structural panels are permitted to be idealized as flexible in structures in which the vertical elements are steel or composite steel and concrete braced frames, or concrete, masonry, steel, or composite shear walls. Diaphragmsof wood structural panels or untopped steel decks in one- and two-family residential buildings of light-frame construction shall also be permitted to be idealized as flexible.

3.4.2.3.1.2Alternatives to ASCE 7

The following provisions shall be permitted as alternatives to the relevantprovisions of ASCE 7. Diaphragms constructed of wood structural panels or untopped steel decking shall also be permitted to be idealized as flexible, provided all of the following conditions are met:

> 1. Toppings of concrete or similar materials are not placed over wood structural panel diaphragms except for nonstructural toppings no greater than 1½ inches (38 mm) thick.

> 2.Each line o f vertical elements of the lateral-force-resisting system complies with the allowable storey drift of Table 3.4.8.

3. Vertical elements of the lateral-force-resisting system are light-framed walls sheathed with wood structural panels rated for shear resistance or steel sheets.

4. Portions of wood structural panel diaphragms that cantilever beyond the vertical elements of the lateral-force-resisting system are designed in accordance with Section 2305.2.5 of the International Building Code.

3.4.2.3.1.3 Rigid diaphragm condition

Diaphragms of concrete slabs or concrete-filled metal deck with span-to-depth ratios of 3 or less in structures that have no horizontal irregularities are permitted to be idealized as rigid.

3.4.2.3.1.4 Calculated flexible diaphragm condition

Diaphragms not satisfying the conditions of Sections 3.4.2.3.1.1 or 3.4.2.3.1.2 are permitted to be idealized as flexible where the computed maximum in-plane deflection of the diaphragm under lateral load is more than two times the average storey drift of adjoining vertical elements of the seismic force–resisting system of the associated storey under equivalent tributary lateral load as shown in Fig. 3.4.2. The loadings used for this calculation shall be those prescribed by Section 3.4.2.8.

3.4.2.3.2 Irregular and regular classification

Structures shall be classified as regular or irregular based upon the criteria in this section. Such classification shall be based on horizontal and vertical configurations**.**

3.4.2.3.2.1 Horizontal irregularity

Structures having one or more of the irregularity types listed in Table 3.4.10 shall be designated as having horizontal structural irregularity.

Such structures assigned to the seismic design categories listed in Table 3.4.10 shall comply with the requirements in the sections referenced in that table.

3.4.2.3.2.2 Vertical irregularity

Structures having one or more of the irregularity types listed in Table 3.4.11 shall be designated as having vertical irregularity.Such structures assigned to the Seismic Design Categories listed in Table 3.4.11 shall comply with the requirements in the sections referenced in that table.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Vertical structural irregularities of Types 1a, 1b, or 2 in Table 3.4.11 do not apply where no storey drift ratio under design lateral seismic force is greater than 130 percent of the storey drift ratio of the next storey above. Torsional effects need not be considered in the calculation of storey drifts. The storey drift ratio relationship for the top two storeys of the structure are not required to be evaluated.

2. Irregularities of Types 1a, 1b, and 2 in Table 3.4.11 are not required to be considered for one-storey buildings in any Seismic Design Category or for two-storey buildings assigned to Seismic Design Categories B, C, or D.

3.4.2.3.3 Limitations and additional requirements for systems with structural irregularities

3.4.2.3.3.1 Prohibited horizontal and vertical irregularities for Seismic Design Categories D through F

Structures assigned to Seismic DesignCategory E or F having horizontal irregularity Type 1b of Table 3.4.10 or vertical irregularities Type 1b, 5a, or 5b of Table 3.4.11 shall not be permitted. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D having vertical irregularity Type 5b of Table 3.4.11 shall not be permitted.

TABLE 3.4.10 HORIZONTAL STRUCTURAL IRREGULARITIES

	Irregularity Type and Description	Reference Section	Seismic Design Category Application
1a.	Torsional Irregularity is defined to exist where the maximum storey drift, computed including accidental torsion, at one end of the structure transverse to an axis is more than 1.2 times the average of the storey drifts at the two ends of the structure. Torsional irregularity requirements in the reference sections apply only tostructures in which the diaphragms are rigid or semirigid.	3.4.2.3.3.4 3.4.2.8.3.4.3 3.4.2.7.3 3.4.2.12.1 Table 3.4.13 3.4.3.2.2	D, E, and F C, D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F C, D, E, and F D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F
1b.	Extreme Torsional Irregularity is defined to exist where the maximum storey drift, computed including accidental torsion, at one end of the structure transverse to an axis is more than 1.4 times the average of the storey drifts at the two ends of the structure. Extreme torsional irregularity requirements in the reference sections apply only to structures in which the diaphragms are rigid or semirigid.	3.4.2.3.3.1 3.4.2.3.3.4 3.4.2.7.3 3.4.2.8.3.4.3 3.4.2.12.1 Table 3.4.13 3.4.3.2.2	Eand F D B, C, and D C and D C and D D B, C, and D
2.	Reentrant Corner Irregularity is defined to exist where both plan projections of the structure beyond a reentrant corner are greater than 15% of the plan dimension of the structure in the given direction.	3.4.2.3.3.4 Table 3.4.13	D, E, and F D, E, and F
3.	Diaphragm Discontinuity Irregularity is defined to exist where there are diaphragms with abrupt discontinuities or variations in stiffness, including those having cutout or open areas greater than 50% of the gross enclosed diaphragm area, or changes in effective diaphragm stiffness of more than 50% from one storey to the next.	3.4.2.3.3.4 Table 3.4.13	D, E, andF D, E, and F
3.4.	Out-of-Plane Offsets Irregularity is defined to exist where there are discontinuities in a lateral force-resistance path, such as out-of-plane offsets of the vertical elements.	3.4.2.3.3.4 3.4.2.3.3.3 3.4.2.7.3 Table 3.4.13 3.4.3.2.2	D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F
5.	Nonparallel Systems-Irregularity is defined to exist where the vertical lateral force-resisting elements are not parallel to or symmetric about the major orthogonal axes of the seismic force–resisting system.	3.4.2.5.3 3.4.2.7.3 Table 3.4.13 3.4.3.2.2	C, D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F D, E, and F B, C, D, E, and F

3.4.2.3.3.2 Extreme weak storeys

Structures with a vertical irregularity Type 5b as defined in Table 3.4.11, shall not be over two storeys or 30 ft (9 m) in height.

EXCEPTION:The limit does not apply where the "weak" storey is capable of resisting a total seismic force equal to Ω_0 times the design force prescribed in Section 3.4.2.8

3.4.2.3.3.3 Elements supporting discontinuous walls or frames

Columns, beams, trusses, or slabs supporting discontinuous walls or frames of structures having horizontal irregularity Type 4 of Table 3.4.10 or vertical irregularity Type 4 of Table 3.4.11 shall have the design strength to resist the maximum axial force that can develop in accordance with the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2. The connections of such discontinuous elements to the supporting members shall be adequate to transmit the forces for which the discontinuous elements were required to be designed.

3.4.2.3.3.4 Increase in forces due to irregularities for Seismic Design Categories D through F

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F and having a horizontal structural irregularity of Type 1a, 1b, 2, 3, or 4 in Table 3.4.10 or a vertical structural irregularity of Type 4 in Table 3.4.11, the design forces determined from Section 3.4.2.8.1 shall be increased25 percent for connections of diaphragms to vertical elements and to collectors and for connections of collectors to the vertical elements. Collectors and their connections also shall be designed for these increased forces unless they are designed for the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2, in accordance with Section 3.4.2.10.2.1.

3.4.2.3.4 Redundancy

A redundancy factor, ρ, shall be assigned to the seismic force–resisting system in each of two orthogonal directions for all structures in accordance with this section.

TABLE 3.4.11VERTICALSTRUCTURAL IRREGULARITIES

	Irregularity Type and Description	Reference Section	Seismic Design Category Application
1a.	Stiffness-Soft Storey Irregularity is defined to exist where there is a storey in which the lateral stiffness is less than 70% of that in the storey above or less than 80% of the average stiffness of the three	Table 3.4.13	D, E, and F
1b.	Stiffness-Extreme Soft Storey Irregularity is defined to exist where there is a storey in which the lateral stiffness is less than 60% of that in the storey above or less than 70% of the average stiffness of	3.4.2.3.3.1 Table 3.4.13	E and F D, E, and F
2.	Weight (Mass) Irregularity is defined to exist where the effective mass of any storey is more than 150% of the effective mass of an adjacent storey. A roof that is lighter than the floor below need not be considered	Table 3.4.13	D, E, and F

3.	Vertical Geometric Irregularity is defined to exist where the horizontal dimension of the seismic force–resisting system in any storey is more than 130% of that in an adjacent storey.	Table 3.4.13	B ,D, E, and F
4.	In-Plane Discontinuity in Vertical Lateral Force-Resisting Element Irregularity is defined to exist where an in-plane offset of the lateral force-resisting elements is greater than the length of those elements or there exists a reduction in stiffness of the resisting element in the storey below	3.4.2.3.3.3 3.4.2.3.3.4 Table 3.4.13	B, C, D, E, and F D, E, and F D, E, and F
5a.	Discontinuity in Lateral Strength–Weak Storey Irregularity is defined to exist where the storey lateral strength is less than 80% of that in the storey above. The storey lateral strength is the total lateral strength of all seismic-resisting elements sharing the storey shear for the direction under consideration.	3.4.2.3.3.1 Table 3.4.13	E and F D, E, and F
5b.	Discontinuity in Lateral Strength–Extreme Weak Storey Irregularity is defined to exist where the storey lateral strength is less than 65% of that in the storey above. The storey strength is the total strength of all seismic-resisting elements sharing the storey shear for the direction under consideration.	3.4.2.3.3.1 3.4.2.3.3.2 Table 4.13	D, E, and F B and C D, E, and F

3.4.2.3.4.1 Conditions where value of ρ is 1.0

The value of ρ is permitted to equal 1.0 for the following:

1. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C.

2. Drift calculation and P-delta effects.

3. Design of nonstructural components.

4. Designof nonbuilding structures that are not similar to buildings.

5. Design of collector elements, splices, and their connections for which the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2 are used.

6. Design of members or connections where the load combinations with overstrength of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2 are required for design.

7. Diaphragm loads determined using Eq. (3.4.37).

8. Structures with damping systems

3.4.2.3.4.2 Redundancy factor, ρ , for Seismic Design Categories D through F

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, ρ shall equal 1.3 unless one of the following two conditions is met, whereby ρ is permitted to be taken as 1.0:

a. Each storey resisting more than 35 percent of the base shear in the direction of interest shall comply with Table 3.4.12.

b. Structures that are regular in plan at all levels provided that the seismic force–resisting systems consist of at least two bays of seismic force–resisting perimeter framing on each side of the structure in each orthogonal direction at each storey resisting more than 35 percent of the base shear. The number of bays for a shear wall shall be calculated as the

length of shear wall divided by the storey height or two times the length of shear wall divided by the storey height for light-framed construction.

3.4.2.4 Seismic Load Effects and Combinations

3.4.2.4.1 Applicability

All members of the structure, including those not part of the seismic force–resisting system, shall be designed using the seismic load effects of Section 3.4.2.4 unless otherwise exempted by this standard. Seismic load effects are the axial, shear, and flexural member forces resulting from application of horizontal and vertical seismic forces as set forth in Section 3.4.2.4.2. Where specifically required, seismic load effects shall be modified to account for system overstrength, as set forth in Section 3.4.2.4.3.

TABLE 3.4.12 REQUIREMENTS FOR EACH STOREY RESISTING MORE THAN 35% OF THE BASE SHEAR

Lateral Force-Resisting Element	Requirement
Braced Frames	Removal of an individual brace, or connection thereto, would not result in more than a 33% reduction in storey strength, nor does the resulting system have an extreme torsional irregularity (horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b).
Moment Frames	Loss of moment resistance at the beam-to-column connections at both ends of a single beam would not result in more than a 33% reduction in storey strength, nor does the resulting system have an extreme torsional irregularity (horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b).
ShearWallsorWall Pier with a height-to-length ratio of greater than 1.0	Removal of a shear wall or wall pier with a height-to-length ratio greater than 1.0 within any storey, or collector connections thereto, would not result in more than a 33% reduction in storey strength, nor does the resulting system have an extreme torsional irregularity (horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b).
Cantilever Columns	Loss of moment resistance at the base connections of any single cantilever column would not result in more than a 33% reduction in storey strength, nor does the resulting system have an extreme torsional irregularity (horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b).
Other	No requirements

3.4.2.4.2 Seismic load effect

The seismic load effect, E , shall be determined in accordance with the following:

> 1. For use in load combination 5 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combinations 5 and 6 in Section 2.1.3.1, E shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.13) as follows:

$$E = E_h + E_v \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.13)}$$

2. For use in load combination 7 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combination 8 in Section 2.1.3.1, E shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.14) as follows:

$$E = E_h - E_v \qquad \textbf{Eq. (3.4.14)}$$

where

E = seismic load effect

E_h = effect of horizontal seismic forces as defined in Section 3.4.2.4.2.1

E_v = effect of vertical seismic forces as defined in Section 3.4.2.4.2.2

3.4.2.4.2.1 Horizontal seismic load effect

The horizontal seismic load effect, E_h, shall be determined in accordance with Eq.(3.4.15) as follows:

$$E_h = \rho\, Q_E \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.15)}$$

where

Q_E = effects of horizontal seismic forces from V or F_p . Where required in Sections 3.4.2.5.3 and 3.4.2.5.4, such effects shall result from application of horizontal forces simultaneously in two directions at right angles to each other.

ρ = redundancy factor, as defined in Section 3.4.2.3.4

3.4.2.4.2.2 Vertical seismic load effect

The vertical seismic load effect, E_v , shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.16) as follows:

$$E_v = 0.2\, S_{DS}\, D \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.16)}$$

where

S_{DS} = design spectral response acceleration parameter at short periods obtained from Section 3.4.1.4.4

D = effect of dead load

EXCEPTIONS:The vertical seismic load effect, E_v , is permitted to be taken as zero for either of the following conditions:

1. InEqs. (3.4.13), (3.4.14), (3.4.17), and (3.4.18) where S_{DS} is equal to or less than 0.125.

2. In Eq. (3.4.14) where determining demands on the soil-structure interface of foundations.

3.4.2.4.2.3 Seismic load combinations

Where theprescribed seismic load effect, E , defined in Section 3.4.2.4.2 is combined with the effects of other loads as set forth in Section 2, the following seismic load combinations for structures not subject to flood or atmospheric ice loads shall be used in lieu of the seismic load combinations in either Section 2.1.2.2 or 2.1.3.1.

Basic combinations for strength design (see Sections 2.1.2.2 and 1.1.2 for notation)

5. $(1.2 + 0.2\, S_{DS})\, D + \rho\, Q_E + L$

7. (0.9 − 0.2 S_{DS}) D + ρ Q_E + 1.6 H

NOTES:

1. The load factor on L in combination 5 is permitted to equal 0.5 for all occupancies in which L_0 in Table 2.2 is less than or equal to 100 psf (3.4.79 kN/m^2), with the exception of garages or areas occupied as places of public assembly.

2. The load factor on H shall be set equal to zero in combination 7 if the structural action due to H counteracts that due to E . Where lateral earth pressure provides resistance to structural actions from other forces, it shall not be included in H but shall be included in the design resistance.

Basic combinations for allowable stress design (see Sections 2.1.3.1 and 1.1.2 for notation).

5. (1.0 + 0.14 S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.7ρ Q_E

6. (1.0 + 0.105 S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.525ρ Q_E + 0.75L+ 0.75($L_r$or R)

8. (0.6 − 0.14S_{DS}) D + 0.7ρ Q_E + H

3.4.2.4.3 Seismic load effect including overstrength factor

Where specifically required, conditions requiring overstrength factor applications shall be determined in accordance with the following:

1. For use in load combination 5 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combinations 5 and 6 in Section 2.1.3.1, E shall be taken equal to E_m as determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.17) as follows:

$E_m= E_{mh}+ E_v$Eq. (3.4.17)

2. For use in load combination 7 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combination 8 in Section 2.1.3.1, E shall be taken equal to E_m as determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.18) as follows:

$E_m= E_{mh} − E_v$Eq. (3.4.18)

where

E_m= seismic load effect including overstrength factor

E_{mh} = effect of horizontal seismic forces including structural overstrength as defined in Section 3.4.2.4.3.1

E_v= vertical seismic load effect as defined in Section 3.4.2.4.2.2

3.4.2.4.3.1 Horizontal seismic load effect with overstrength factor

The horizontal seismic load effect with overstrength factor,E_{mh} , shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.19) as follows:

$E_{mh}=\Omega_o\ Q_E$Eq. (3.4.19)

where

Q_E= effects of horizontal seismic forces from *V* as specified in Sections 3.4.2.8.1 . Where required in Sections 3.4.2.5.3 and 3.4.2.5.4, such effects shall result from application of horizontal forces simultaneously in two directions at right angles to each other.

Ω_o = overstrength factor

EXCEPTION:The value of E_{mh} need not exceed the maximum force that can develop in the element as determined by a rational, plastic mechanism analysis or nonlinear response analysis utilizing realistic expected values of material strengths.

3.4.2.4.3.2 Load combinations with overstrength factor

Where the seismic load effect with overstrength, E_m, defined in Section 3.4.2.4.3 is combined with the effects of other loads as set forth in Section 2, the following seismic load combination for structures not subject to flood or atmospheric ice loads shall be used in lieu of the seismic load combinations in either Section 2.1.2.2 or 2.1.3.1:

Basic combinations for strength design with overstrengthfactor (see Sections 2.1.2.2 and 1.1.2 for notation)

5. $(1.2 + 0.2S_{DS}) D + \Omega_o Q_E + L$

7. $(0.9 − 0.2S_{DS}) D + \Omega_o Q_E + 1.6 H$

NOTES:

1. The load factor on L in combination 5 is permitted to equal 0.5 for all occupancies in which L_0 in Table 2.2 is less than or equal to 100 psf (3.4.79 kN/m^2), with the exception of garages or areas occupied as places of public assembly.

2. The load factor on H shall be set equal to zero in combination 7 if the structural action due to *H* counteracts that due to *E*. Where lateral earth pressure provides resistance to structural actions from other forces, it shall not be included in H but shall be included in the design resistance.

Basic combinations for allowable stress design with overstrength factor (see Sections 2.1.3.1 and 1.1.2 for notation).

5. $(1.0 + 0.14S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.7\Omega_o Q_E$

6. $(1.0 + 0.105S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.525 \Omega_o Q_E + 0.75L + 0.75(L_r or R)$

8. $(0.6 − 0.14S_{DS}) D + 0.7\Omega_o Q_E + H$

3.4.2.4.3.3 Allowable stress increase for load combinations with overstrength.

Where allowable stress design methodologies are used with the seismic load effect defined in Section 3.4.2.4.3 applied in load combinations 5, 6, or 8 of Section2.1.3.1, allowable stresses are permitted to be determined using an allowable stress increase of 1.2. This increase shall not be combined with increases in allowable stresses or load combination reductions otherwise

permitted by this standard or the material reference document except that combination with the duration of load increases permitted in AF&PANDS is permitted.

3.4.2.4.4 Minimum upward force for horizontal cantilevers for Seismic Design Categories D through F

In structures assigned to SeismicDesign Category D, E, or F, horizontal cantilever structural components shall be designed for a minimum net upward force of 0.2 times the dead load in addition to the applicable load combinations of Section 3.4.2.4.

3.4.2.5Direction of Loading

3.4.2.5.1 Direction of loading criteria

The directions of application of seismic forces used in the design shall be those which will produce the most critical load effects. It is permitted to satisfy this requirement using the procedures of Section3.4.2.5.2 for SeismicDesign Category B, Section3.4.2.5.3 for SeismicDesign Category C, and Section 3.4.2.5.4 for Seismic Design Categories D, E, and F.

3.4.2.5.2 Seismic Design Category B

For structures assigned to SeismicDesign Category B, the design seismic forces are per- mitted to be applied independently in each of two orthogonal directions and orthogonal interaction effects are permitted to be neglected.

3.4.2.5.3 Seismic Design Category C

Loading applied to structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C shall, as a minimum, conform to the requirements of Section 3.4.2.5.2 for Seismic Design Category B and the requirements of this section. Structures that have horizontal structural irregularity Type 5 in Table 3.4.10 shall use one of the following procedures:

a. Orthogonal combination procedure

The structure shall be analyzed using the equivalent lateral force analysis procedure of Section 3.4.2.8, the modal response spectrum analysis procedure of Section 3.4.2.9, or the linear response history procedure of Section 3.4.3.1, as permitted under Section 3.4.2.6, with the loading applied independently in any two orthogonal directions and the most critical load effect due to direction of application of seismic forces on the structure is permitted to be assumed to be satisfied if components and their foundations are designed for the following combination of prescribed loads: 100 percent of the forces for one direction plus 30 percent of the forces for the perpendicular direction; the combination requiring the maximum component strength shall be used.

b. Simultaneous application of orthogonal ground motion

The structure shall be analyzed using the linear response history procedure of Section 3.4.3.1 or the nonlinear response history procedure of Section 3.4.3.2, as permitted by Section 3.4.2.6, with orthogonal pairs of ground motion acceleration histories applied simultaneously.

3.4.2.5.4 Seismic Design Categories D through F

Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F shall, as a minimum, conform to the requirements of Section 3.4.2.5.3. In addition, any column or wall that forms part of two or more intersecting seismic force–resisting systems and is subjected to axial load due to seismic forces acting along either principal plan axis equaling or exceeding 20 percent of the axial design strength of the column or wall

shall be designed for the most critical load effect due to application of seismic forces in any direction. Either of the procedures of Section 3.4.2.5.3 a or b are permitted to be used to satisfy this requirement. Except as required by Section 3.4.2.7.3, 2-D analyses are permitted for structures withflexible diaphragms.

3.4.2.6Analysis Procedure Selection

The structural analysis required by Section 3.4.2 shall consist of one of the types permitted in Table 3.4.13, based on the structure's Seismic Design Category, structural system, dynamic properties, and regularity, or with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, an alternative generally accepted procedure is permitted to be used. The analysis procedure selected shall be completed in accordance with the requirements of the corresponding section referenced in Table 3.4.13.

3.4.2.7 Modeling Criteria

3.4.2.7.1 Foundation modeling

For purposes of determining seismic loads, it is permitted to consider the structure to be fixed at the base.

3.4.2.7.2 Effective seismic weight

The effective seismic weight, W, of a structure shall include the total dead load and other loads listed below:

1. In areas used for storage, a minimum of 25 percent of the floor live load (floor live load in public garages and open parking structures need not be included).

2. Where provision for partitions is required by Section 2.3.2.2 in the floor load design, the actual partition weight or a minimum weight of 10 psf (0.48 kN/m^2) of floor area, whichever is greater.

3. Total operating weight of permanent equipment.

TABLE 3.4.13 PERMITTED ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES

Seismic Design Category	Structural Characteristics	Equivalent Lateral Force Analysis Section 3.4.2.8	Modal Response Spectrum Analysis Section 3.4.2.9	Seismic Reponse History Procedures Section 3.4.3.4.2
B, C	Occupancy Category I or II buildings of light-framed construction not exceeding 3 storeys in height	P	P	P
	Other Occupancy Category I or II buildings not exceeding 2 storeys in height	P	P	P
	All other structures	P	P	P
D, E, F	Occupancy Category I or II buildings of light-framed construction not exceeding 3 storeys in height	P	P	P
	Other Occupancy Category I or II buildings not exceeding 2 storeys in height	P	P	P
	Regular structures with T <3.5Tsand all structures of light frame construction	P	P	P
	Irregular structures with T <3.5Tsand having only horizontal irregularities Type 2, 3, 4, or 5 of Table 12.2-1 or vertical irregularities Type 4, 5a, or 5b of Table 3.4.10	P	P	P
	All other structures	NP	P	P

NOTE: P: Permitted; NP: Not Permitted

3.4.2.7.3 Structural modeling

A mathematical model of the structure shall be constructed for the purpose of determining member forces and structure displacements resulting from applied loads and any imposed displacements or P-Delta effects. The model shall include the stiffness and strength of elements that are significant to the distribution of forces and deformations in the structure and represent the spatial distribution of mass and stiffness throughout the structure.

Structures that have horizontal structural irregularity Type 1a, 1b, 4, or 5 of Table 3.4.10 shall be analyzed using a 3-D representation. Where a 3-D model is used, a minimum of three dynamic degrees of freedom consisting of translation in two orthogonal plan directions and torsional rotation about the vertical axis shall be included at each level of the structure. Where the diaphragms have not been classified as rigid or flexible in accordance with Section 3.4.2.3.1, the model shall include representation of the diaphragm's stiffness characteristics and such additional dynamic degrees of freedom as are required to account for the participation of the diaphragm in the structure's dynamic response. In addition, the model shall comply with the following:

    a. Stiffness properties of concrete and masonry elements shall consider the effects of cracked sections.

    b. For steel moment frame systems, the contribution of panel zone deformations to overall storey drift shall be included.

3.4.2.7.4 Interaction effects

Moment-resisting frames that are enclosed or adjoined by elements that are more rigid and not considered to be part of the seismic force–resisting system shall be designed so that the action or failure of those elements will not impair the vertical load and seismic force–resisting capability of the frame. The design shall provide for

theeffect of these rigid elements on thestructural system at structural deformations corresponding to the design storey drift (Δ) as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.6. In addition, the effects of these elements shall be considered where determining whether a structure has one or more of the irregularities defined in Section 3.4.2.3.2.

3.4.2.8 Equivalent Lateral Force Procedure

3.4.2.8.1 Seismic base shear

The seismic base shear, V, in a given direction shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$V = C_s W \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.20)}$$

where

C_s = the seismic response coefficient determined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.8.1.1

W = the effective seismic weight per Section 3.4.2.7.2.

3.4.2.8.1.1 Calculationofseismicresponsecoefficient

The seismic response coefficient, C_s, shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.21).

$$C_s = \frac{S_{DS}}{\left(\frac{R}{I}\right)} \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.21)}$$

where

S_{DS} = the design spectral response acceleration parameter in the short period range as determined from Section 3.4.1.3.4.3.4.

R = the response modification factor in Table 3.4.9

I = the occupancy importance factor determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.5.1

The value of C_s computed in accordance with Eq. (3.4.21) need not exceed the following:

$$C_s = \frac{S_{D1}}{T\left(\frac{R}{I}\right)} \text{for} T \le T_L \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.22)}$$

$$C_s = \frac{S_{D1}T_L}{T^2\left(\frac{R}{I}\right)} \text{for} T > T_L \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.23)}$$

$C_s$shall not be less than

$$C_s = 0.01 \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.24)}$$

In addition, for structures located where $S_1$is equal to or greater than *0.6g,*

C_s shall not be less than

$$C_s = \frac{0.5S_1}{\left(\frac{R}{I}\right)}$$
Eq. (3.4.25)

TABLE 3.4.14 COEFFICIENT FOR UPPER LIMIT ON CALCULATED PERIOD

Design Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter at 1 s, SD1	Coefficient *Cu*
≥ 0.4	1.4
0.3	1.4
0.2	1.5
0.15	1.6
≤ 0.1	1.7

where I and R are as defined in Section 3.4.2.8.1.1 and

S_{D1} = the design spectral response acceleration parameter at a period of 1.0 s, as determined from Section 3.4.1.4.4

T = the fundamental period of the structure (s) determined in Section 3.4.2.8.2

T_L = long-period transition period (s) determined in Section 3.4.1.4.5

S_1 = the mapped maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration parameter determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.1.

3.4.2.8.1.2 Soil structure interaction reduction

A soil structure interaction reduction is permitted where determined using generally accepted procedures approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.4.2.8.1.3 Maximum S_s value in determination of C_s

For regular structures five storeys or less in height and having a period, T, of 0.5 s or less, C_s is permitted to be calculated using a value of 1.5 for S_S

3.4.2.8.2 Period determination

The fundamental period of the structure, T, in the direction under consideration shall be established using the structural properties and deformational characteristics of the resisting elements in a properly substantiated analysis. The fundamental period, T, shall not exceed the product of the coefficient for upper limit on calculated period (C_u) from Table 3.4.14 and the approximate fundamental period, T_a , determined from Eq. (3.4.26). As an alternative to performing an analysis to determine the fundamental

period, T, it is permitted to use the approximate building period, T_a , calculated in accordance with Section 3.4.2.8.2.1, directly.

3.4.2.8.2.1 Approximate fundamental period

The approximate fundamental period (T_a), in s, shall be determined from the following equation:

$$T_a = C_t\, h_n^x$$
Eq.(3.4.26)

where h_n is the height in ft above the base to the highest level of the structure and

the coefficients C_t and x are determined from Table 3.4.15.qhyhkj[k]

TABLE 3.4.15 VALUES OF APPROXIMATE PERIOD PARAMETERS Ct AND x

Structure Type	C	x
Moment-resisting frame systems in which the frames resist 100% of the required seismic force and are not enclosed or adjoined by components that are more rigid and will prevent the frames from deflecting where		
Steel moment-resisting frames	0.028(0.0724) [a]	0.8
Concrete moment-resisting frames	0.016(0.0466) [a]	0.9
Eccentrically braced steel frames	0.03 (0.0731)[a]	0.75
All other structural systems	0.02 (0.0488)[a]	0.75

[a] Metric equivalents are shown in parentheses.

Alternatively, it is permitted to determine the approximate fundamental period (T_a), in s, from the following equation for structures not exceeding 12 storeys in height in which the seismic force–resisting system consists entirely of concrete or steel moment resisting frames and the storey height is at least 10 ft (3 m):

$$T_a = 0.1\,N \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.27)}$$

where N = number of storeys.

The approximate fundamental period, T_a, in s for masonry or concrete shear wall structures is permitted to be determined from Eq. (3.4.28) as follows:

$$T_a = \frac{0.0019}{\sqrt{C_w}}\,h_n \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.28)}$$

where h_n is as defined in the preceding text and C_w is calculated from Eq. (3.4.29) as follows:

$$C_w = \frac{100}{A_B}\sum_{i=1}^{x}\left(\frac{h_n}{h_i}\right)^2 \frac{A_i}{\left[1+0.83\left(\frac{h_i}{D_i}\right)^2\right]} \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.29)}$$

where A_B = area of base of structure, ft^2

A_i = web area of shear wall "i" in ft^2

D_i = length of shear wall "i" in ft

h_i = height of shear wall "i" in ft

x = number of shear walls in the building effective in resisting lateral forces in the direction under consideration.

3.4.2.8.3 Vertical distribution of seismic forces

The lateral seismic force (Fx) (kip or kN) induced at any level shall be determined from the following equations:

$$F_x = C_{vx} V \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.30)}$$

and

$$C_{vx} = \frac{w_x h_x^k}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i h_i^k} \qquad \text{Eq.(3.4.31)}$$

Where C_{vx}= vertical distribution factor,

V = total design lateral force or shear at the base of the structure (kip or kN)

$w_i$and w_x= the portion of the total effective seismic weight of the structure (W) located or assigned to Level i or x

$h_i$and h_x= the height (ft or m) from the base to Level $i$or x

k = an exponent related to the structure period as follows:

for structures having a period of 0.5 s or less, $k = 1$

for structures having a period of 2.5 s or more, $k = 2$

for structureshavinga period between 0.5 and 2.5s, k shall be 2or shall be determined by linear interpolation between 1 and 2

3.4.2.8.4 Horizontal distribution of forces

The seismic design storey shear in any storey (V_x) (kip or kN) shall be determined from the following equation:

$$V_x = \sum_{i=x}^{n} F_i \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.20)}$$

WhereF_i= the portion of the seismic base shear (V_x) (kip or kN) induced at Level i.

The seismic design storey shear (V_x) (kip or kN) shall be distributed to the various vertical elements of theseismic force– resisting system in the storey underconsiderationbased on the relative lateral stiffness of the vertical resisting elements and the diaphragm**.**

3.4.2.8.4.1 Inherent torsion

For diaphragms that are not flexible, the distribution of lateral forces at each level shall consider the effect of the inherent torsional moment, M_t , resulting from eccentricity between the locations of the centre of mass and the centre of rigidity. For flexible diaphragms, the distribution of forces to the vertical elements shall account for the position and distribution of the masses supported.

3.4.2.8.4.2 Accidental torsion

Where diaphragms are not flexible, the design shall include the inherent torsional moment (M_t) (kip or kN) resulting from the location of the structure masses plus the accidental torsional moments (M_{ta}) (kip or kN) caused by assumed displacement of the centre of mass each way from its actual location by a distance equal to 5 percent of the dimension of the structure perpendicular to the direction of the applied forces.

Where earthquake forces are applied concurrently in two orthogonal directions, the required5 percent displacement of the centre of mass need not be applied in both of the orthogonal directions at the same time, but shall be applied in the direction that produces the greater effect.

3.4.2.8.4.3 Amplification of accidental torsional moment

Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E, or F, where Type 1a or 1b torsional irregularity exists as defined in Table 3.4.10 shall have the effects accounted for by multiplying M_{ta} at eachlevel by a torsional amplification factor (A_x) as illustrated in Fig. 3.4.3 and determined from the following equation:

$$A_{x=}\left(\frac{\delta_{max}}{1.2\delta_{avg}}\right)^2 \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.33)}$$

where

δ_{max} = the maximum displacement at Level x (in. or mm) computed assuming A_x=1

δ_{avg} = the average of the displacements at the extreme points of the structure at Level x computed assuming A_x= 1 (in. or mm)

EXCEPTION:The accidental torsional moment need not be amplified for structures of light-frame construction.

The torsional amplification factor (A_x) is not required to exceed 3.0. The more severe loading for each element shall be considered for design.

3.4.2.8.5 Overturning

The structure shall be designed to resist overturning effects caused by the seismic forces determined in Section 3.4.2.8.3.

3.4.2.8.6 Storey drift determination

The design storey drift (Δ) shall be computed as the difference of the deflections at the centres of mass at the top and bottom of the storey under consideration. See Fig.3.4.4. Where allowable stress design is used,Δshall be computed using the strength level seismic forces specified in Section 3.4.2.8 without reduction for allowable stress design.

$$\delta_{avg}= \frac{\delta_A + \delta_B}{2} \qquad A_x= \left[\frac{\delta_{max}}{1.2\delta_{avg}}\right]^2$$
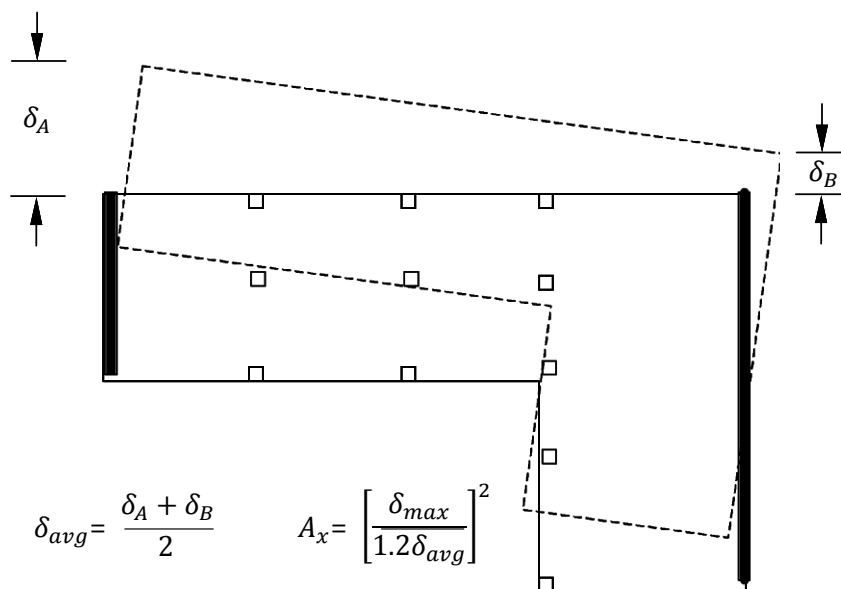
Fig. 3.4.3 Torsional amplification factor, Ax

The deflections of Level x at the centre of the mass (δx) (in. or mm) shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$\delta_x = \frac{C_d \delta_{xe}}{I}$$

Eq. (3.4.34)

where   Cd= the deflection amplification factor in Table 3.4.9

δxe = the deflections determined by an elastic analysis

I = the importance factor determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.5.1

3.4.2.8.6.1 Minimum base shear for computing drift

The elastic analysis of the seismic force–resisting system shall be made using the prescribed seismic design forces of Section 3.4.2.8.

3.4.2.8.6.2 Period for computing drift

For determining compliance with the story drift limits of Section 3.4.2.12.1, it is permitted to determine the elastic drifts, (δxe), using seismic design forces based on the computed fundamental period of the structure without the upper limit (CuTa) specified in Section 3.4.2.8.2.

3.4.2.8.7 P-Delta effects

P-delta effects on storey shears and moments, the resulting member forces and moments, and the storey drifts induced by these effects are not required to be considered where the stability coefficient (θ) as determined by the following equation is equal to or less than 0.10:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta} = \frac{\boldsymbol{P_x \Delta}}{\boldsymbol{V_x h_{sx} C_d}}$$

Eq. (3.4.35)
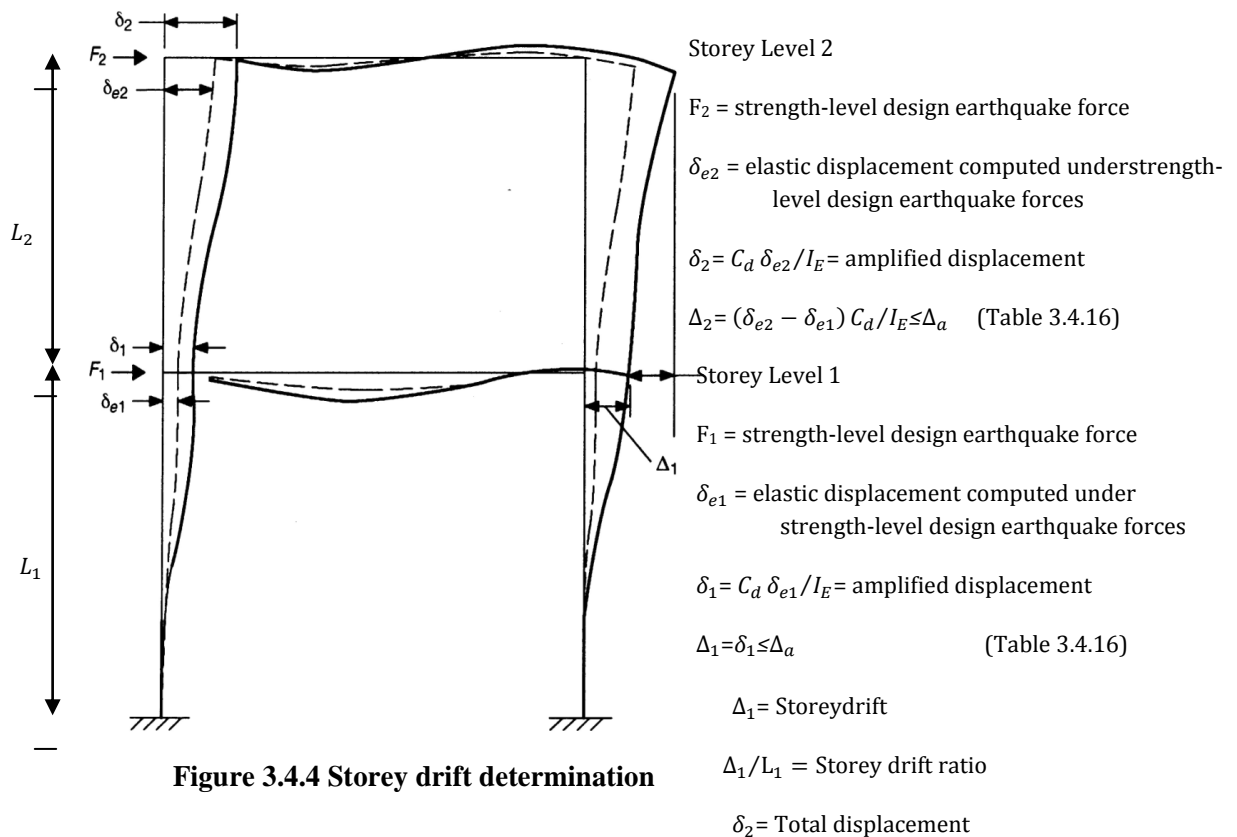
Figure 3.4.4 Storey drift determination

Storey Level 2

F_2 = strength-level design earthquake force

δ_{e2} = elastic displacement computed understrength-level design earthquake forces

$\delta_2 = C_d \, \delta_{e2}/I_E$ = amplified displacement

$\Delta_2 = (\delta_{e2} - \delta_{e1}) \, C_d/I_E \leq \Delta_a$ (Table 3.4.16)

Storey Level 1

F_1 = strength-level design earthquake force

δ_{e1} = elastic displacement computed under strength-level design earthquake forces

$\delta_1 = C_d \, \delta_{e1}/I_E$ = amplified displacement

$\Delta_1 = \delta_1 \leq \Delta_a$ (Table 3.4.16)

Δ_1 = Storey drift

Δ_1/L_1 = Storey drift ratio

δ_2 = Total displacement

where

P_x = the total vertical design load at and above Level x (kip or kN); where computing P_x, no individual load factor need exceed 1.0

Δ = the design storey drift as defined in Section 3.4.2.8.6 occurring simultaneously with Vx(in. or mm)

V_x = the seismic shear force acting between Levels x and $x - 1$ (kip or kN)

h_{sx} = the storey height below Level x (in. or mm)

C_d = the deflection amplification factor in Table 3.4.9.

The stability coefficient (θ) shall not exceed θ_{max} determined as follows:

$$\theta_{max} = \frac{0.5}{\beta C_d} \leq 0.25 \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.36)}$$

where β is the ratio of shear demand to shear capacity for the storey between Levels x and $x-1$. This ratio is permitted to be conservatively taken as 1.0.

Where the stability coefficient (θ) is greater than 0.10 but less than or equal to θ_{max}, the incremental factor related to P-delta effects on displacements and member forces shall be determined by rational analysis. Alternatively, it is permitted to multiply displacements and member forces by $1.0/(1-\theta)$.

Where θ is greater than θmax , the structure is potentially unstable and shall be redesigned.

Where the P-delta effect is included in an automated analysis, Eq. (3.4.36) shall still be satisfied, however, the value of θ computed from Eq. (3.4.35) using the results of the P-delta analysis is permitted to be divided by $(1 + \theta)$ before checking Eq. (3.4.36).

3.4.2.9 Modal Response Spectrum Analysis

3.4.2.9.1 Number of modes

An analysis shall be conducted to determine the natural modes of vibration for the structure. The analysis shall include a sufficient number of modes to obtain a combined modal mass participation of at least 90 percent of the actual mass in each of the orthogonal horizontal directions of response considered by the model.

3.4.2.9.2 Modal response parameters

The value for each force- related design parameter of interest, including storey drifts, support forces, and individual member forces for each mode of response shall be computed using the properties of each mode and the response spectra defined in either Section 3.4.1.4.5 divided by the quantity $\frac{R}{I}$. The value for displacement and drift quantities shall be multiplied by the quantity $\frac{C_d}{I}$.

3.4.2.9.3 Combined response parameters

The value for each parameter of interest calculated for the various modes shall be combined using either the square root of the sum of the squares method (SRSS) or the complete quadratic combination method (CQC), in accordance with ASCE 3.4. The CQC method shall be used for each of the modal values or where closely spaced modes that

have significant cross-correlation of translationaland torsional response.

3.4.2.9.4 Scaling design values of combined response

A base shear (*V*) shall be calculated in each of the two orthogonal horizontal directions using the calculated fundamental period of the structure *T* in each direction and the procedures of Section 3.4.2.8, except where the calculated fundamental period exceeds (C_u) (T_a),then (C_u)(T_a) shall be used in lieu of T in that direction. Where the combined response for the modal base shear (V_t) is less than 85 percent of thecalculated base shear (*V*) using the equivalent lateral force procedure, the forces, but not the drifts, shall be multiplied by $0.85\frac{V}{V_t}$:

> where
>
>> V = the equivalent lateral force procedure base shear, calculated in accordance with this section and Section 3.4.2.8.
>
> Vt= the base shear from the required modal combination

3.4.2.9.5 Horizontal shear distribution

The distribution of horizontal shear shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 3.4.2.8.4.3 except that amplification of torsion per Section 3.4.2.8.4 is not required where accidental torsional effects are included in the dynamic analysis model.

3.4.2.9.6 P-Delta effects

The P-delta effects shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.8.7. The base shear used to determine the storey shears and the storey drifts shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.8.6.

3.4.2.9.7 Soil structure interaction reduction

A soil structure interaction reduction is permitted where determined using generally accepted procedures approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.4.2.10 Diaphragms, Chords, and Collectors

3.4.2.10.1 Diaphragm design

Diaphragms shall be designed for both the shear and bending stresses resulting from design forces. At diaphragm discontinuities, such as openings and reentrant corners, the design shall assure that the dissipation or transfer of edge (chord) forces combined with other forces in the diaphragm is within shear and tension capacity of the diaphragm.

3.4.2.10.1.1 Diaphragm design forces

Floor and roof diaphragms shall be designed to resist design seismic forces from the structural analysis, but shall not be less than that determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.37) as follows:

$$F_{px} =\frac{\sum_{i=x}^{n} F_i}{\sum_{i=x}^{n} w_i}w_{px} \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.37)}$$

> where

F_{px}= the diaphragm design force

F_i= the design force applied to Level*i*

w_i= the weight tributary to Level i

w_{px}= the weight tributary to the diaphragm at Level x

The force determined from Eq. (3.4.37) need not exceed 0.4SDS Iw_{px} , but shall not be less than $0.2S_{DS}Iw_{px}$ .Where the diaphragm is required to transfer design seismic force from the vertical resisting elements above the diaphragm to other vertical resisting elements below the diaphragm due to offsets in the placement of the elements or to changes in relative lateral stiffness in the vertical elements, these forces shall be added to those determined fromEq. (3.4.37). The redundancy factor, ρ , applies to the design of diaphragms in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F. For inertial forces calculated in accordance with Eq. (3.4.37), the redundancy factor shall equal 1.0. For transfer forces, the redundancy factor, ρ, shall be the same as that used for the structure. For structures having horizontal or vertical structural irregularities of the types indicated in Section 3.4.2.3.3.4, the requirements of that section shall also apply.
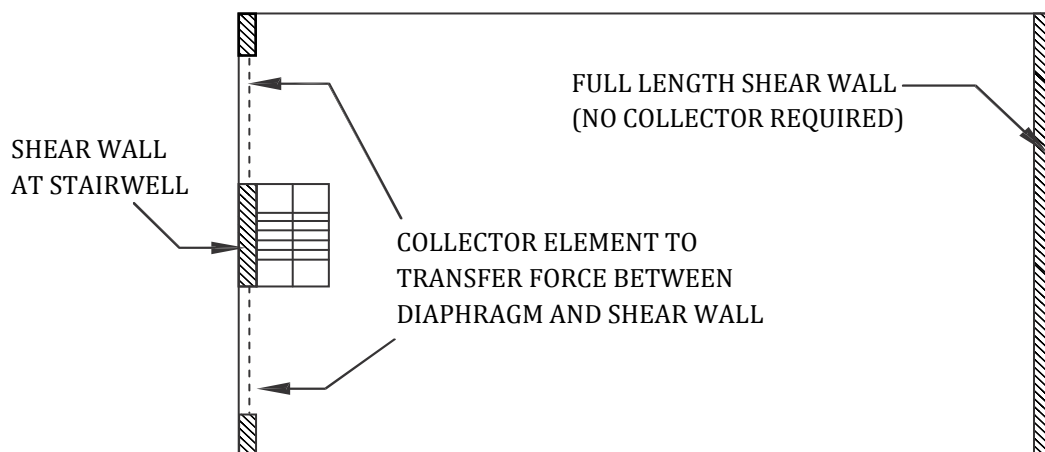
Figure 3.4.5 Collectors

3.4.2.10.2 Collector elements

Collector elements shall be provided that are capable of transferring the seismic forces originating in other portions of the structure to the element providing the resistance to those forces.

3.4.2.10.2.1 Collector elements requiring load combinations with overstrength factor for Seismic Design Categories C through F

In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E, or F, collector elements (see Fig. 3.4.5), splices, and their connections to resisting elements shall resist the load combinations with overstrength of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2.

> EXCEPTION:In structures or portions thereof braced entirely by light-frame shear walls, collector elements, splices, and connections to resisting elements need only be designed to resist forces in accordance with Section 3.4.2.10.1.1.

3.4.2.11Structural Walls and Their Anchorage

3.4.2.11.1 Design for out-of-plane forces

Structural walls and their anchorage shall be designed for a force normal to the surface equal to $0.4S_{DS}I$ times the weight of the structural wall with a minimum force of 10 percent of the weight of the structural wall. Interconnection of structural wall elements and connections to supporting framing systems shall have sufficient ductility, rotational capacity, or sufficient strength to resist shrinkage, thermal changes, and differential foundation settlement when combined with seismic forces.

3.4.2.11.2 Anchorage of concrete or masonry structural walls

The anchorage of concrete or masonry structural walls to supporting construction shall provide a direct connection capable of resisting the greater of the following:

   a.The force set forth in Section 3.4.2.11.1.

   b.A force of 400 S_{DS} Ilb/ linear ft (5.84 $S_{DS}I$kN/m) of wall

   c.280 lb/linear ft (3.4.09 kN/m) of wall

Structural walls shall be designed to resist bending between anchors where the anchor spacing exceeds 4 ft (1,219 mm).

3.4.2.11.2.1 Anchorage of concrete or masonry structural walls to flexible diaphragms

In addition to the requirements set forth in Section 3.4.2.11.2, anchorage of concrete or masonry structural walls to flexible diaphragms in structures assigned to Seismic DesignCategory C, D, E, or Fshall have the strength to develop the out-of-plane force given byEq. (3.4.38):

$$F_p = 0.8S_{DS}IW_p \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.38)}$$

where

F_p= the design force in the individual anchors

S_{DS} = the design spectral response acceleration parameter at short periods per Section 3.4.1.4.4

I = the occupancy importance factor per Section 3.4.1.5.1

W_p= the weight of the wall tributary to the anchor

3.4.2.11.2.2 Additional requirements for diaphragms in structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories C through F

3.4.2.11.2.2.1 Transfer of anchorage forces into diaphragm

Diaphragms shall be provided with continuous ties or struts between diaphragm chords to distribute these anchorage forces into the diaphragms. Diaphragm connections shall be positive, mechanical, or welded. Added chords are permitted to be used to form subdiaphragms to transmit the anchorage forces to the main continuous cross-ties. The maximum length-to-width ratio of the structural subdiaphragm shall be 2.5 to 1. Connections and anchorages capable of resisting the prescribed forces shall be provided between the diaphragm and the attached

components. Connections shall extend into the diaphragm a sufficient distance to develop the force transferred into the diaphragm.

3.4.2.11.2.2.2 Steel elements of structural wall anchorage system

The strength design forces for steel elements of the structural wall anchorage system, with the exception of anchor bolts and reinforcing steel, shall be increased by 1.4 times the forces otherwise required by this section.

3.4.2.11.2.2.3 Wood diaphragms

In wood diaphragms, the continuous ties shall be in addition to the diaphragm sheathing. Anchorage shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal nor shall wood ledgers or framing be used in cross-grain bending orcross-grain tension. The diaphragm sheathing shall not be considered effective as providing the ties or struts required by this section.

3.4.2.11.2.2.4 Metal deck diaphragms

Inmetaldeck diaphragms, the metal deck shall not be used as the continuous ties required by this section in the direction perpendicular to the deck span.

3.4.2.11.2.2.5 Embedded straps

Diaphragm to structural wall anchorage using embedded straps shall be attached to, or hooked around, the reinforcing steel or otherwise terminated so as to effectively transfer forces to the reinforcing steel.

3.4.2.11.2.2.6 Eccentrically loaded anchorage system

Where elements of the wall anchorage system are loaded eccentrically or are not perpendicular to the wall, the system shall be designed to resist all components of the forces induced by the eccentricity.eee

TABLE 3.4.16 ALLOWABLE STOREY DRIFT, Δ_a[a,b]

Structure	Occupancy Category		
	I or II	III	IV
Structures, other than masonry shear wall structures, 4 storeys or less with interior walls, partitions, ceilings and exterior wall systems that have been designed to accommodate the storey drifts.	$0.025h_{sx}$[c]	$0.020hsx$	$0.015hsx$
Masonry cantilever shear wall structures [d]	$0.010h_{sx}$	$0.010h_{sx}$	$0.010h_{sx}$
Other masonry shear wall structures	$0.007h_{sx}$	$0.007h_{sx}$	$0.007h_{sx}$
All other structures	$0.020h_{sx}$	$0.020h_{sx}$	$0.020h_{sx}$

a $h_{sx}$is the storey height below Level x .

b *For seismic force–resisting systems comprised solely of moment frames in Seismic Design Categories D, E, and F, the allowable storey drift shall comply with the requirements of Section 3.4.2.12.1.1.*

c *There shall be no drift limit for single-storey structures with interior walls, partitions, ceilings, and exterior wall systems that have been designed to accommodate the storey drifts. The structure separation requirement of Section 3.4.2.12.3 is not waived.*

d Structures in which the basic structural system consists of masonry shear walls designed as vertical elements cantilevered from their base or foundation support which are so constructed that moment transfer between shear walls (coupling) is negligible.

3.4.2.11.2.2.7 Walls with pilasters

Where pilasters are present in the wall, the anchorage force at the pilasters shall be calculated considering the additional load transferred from the wall panels to the pilasters. However, the minimum anchorage force at a floor or roof shall not be reduced.

3.4.2.12 Drift and Deformation

3.4.2.12.1 Storey drift limit

The design storey drift (Δ) as determined in Sections 3.4.2.8.6, 3.4.2.9.2, or 3.4.3.1 shall not exceed the allowable story drift (Δ_a) as obtained from Table 3.4.16 for any storey. For structures with significant torsional deflections, the maximum drift shall include torsional effects. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E, or F having horizontal irregularity Types 1a or 1b of Table 3.4.10, the design storey drift, Δ , shall be computed as the largest difference of the deflections along any of the edges of the structure at the top and bottom of the storey under consideration.

3.4.2.12.1.1 Moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D through F

For seismic force–resisting systems comprised solely of moment frames in structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D, E, or F, the design storey drift (Δ) shall not exceed Δ_a /ρ for any storey. ρ shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.4.2.3.4.2.

3.4.2.12.2 Diaphragm deflection

The deflection in the plane of the diaphragm, as determined by engineering analysis, shall not exceed the permissible deflection of the attached elements. Permissible deflection shall be that deflection that will permit the attached element to maintain its structural integrity under the individual loading and continue to support the prescribed loads.

3.4.2.12.3 Building separation

All portions of the structure shall be designed and constructed to act as an integral unit in resisting seismic forces unless separated structurally by a distance sufficient to avoid damaging contact under total deflection (δ_x) as determined in Section 3.4.2.8.6.

3.4.2.12.4 Deformation compatibility for Seismic Design Categories D through F

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, every structural component not included in the seismic force–resisting system in the direction under

consideration shall be designed to be adequate for the gravity load effects and the seismic forces resulting from displacement to the design storey drift (Δ) as determined in accordance with Section3.4.2.8.6 (see also Section 3.4.2.12.1).

EXCEPTION:Reinforced concrete frame members not designed as part of the seismic force–resisting system shall comply with Section 21.9 of ACI 318-05.

Where determining the moments and shears induced in components that are not included in the seismic force–resisting system in the direction under consideration, the stiffening effects of adjoining rigid structural and nonstructural elements shall be considered and a rational value of member and restraint stiffness shall be used.

3.4.2.13Foundation Design

3.4.2.13.1 Design basis

The design basis for foundations shall be as set forth in Section 3.4.2.1.5.

3.4.2.13.2 Materials of construction

Materials used for the design and construction of foundations shall comply with the requirements of material sections. Design and detailing of concrete piles shall comply with PART 4 of this Code.

3.4.2.13.3Foundation load-deformation characteristics

Where foundation flexibility is included for the linear analysis procedures in Section 3.4.2,the load-deformation characteristics of the foundation-soil system (foundation stiffness) shall be modeled in accordance with the requirements of this section. The linear load-deformation behaviour of foundations shall be represented by an equivalent linear stiffness using soil properties that are compatible with the soil strain levels associated with the design earthquake motion. The strain-compatible shear modulus, G , and the associated strain-compatible shear wave velocity, v_s, needed for the evaluation of equivalent linear stiffness shall be determined based on soil structureinteraction for seismic design or a site-specific study. A 50 percent increase and decrease in stiffness shall be incorporated in dynamic analyses unless smaller variations can be justified based on field measurements of dynamic soil properties or direct measurements of dynamic foundation stiffness. The largest values of response shall be used in design.

3.4.2.13.4 Reduction of foundation overturning

Overturning effects at the soil-foundation interface are permitted to be reduced by 25 percent for foundations of structures that satisfy both of the following conditions:

a. The structure is designed in accordance with the Equivalent Lateral Force Analysis as set forth in Section 3.4.2.8.

b. The structure is not an inverted pendulum or cantilevered column type structure.

Overturning effects at the soil-foundation interface are permitted to be reduced by 10 percent for foundations of structures designed in accordance with the modal analysis requirements of Section 3.4.2.9.

3.4.2.13.5 Requirements for structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C

In addition to the requirements of Section 3.4.1.8.2, the following foundation design requirements shall apply to structures assigned to Seismic DesignCategory C.

3.4.2.13.5.1 Pole-type structures

Whereconstruction employing posts or poles as columns embedded in earth or embedded in concrete footings in the earth is used to resist lateral loads, the depth of embedment required for posts or poles to resist seismic forces shall be determined by means of the design criteria established in the foundation investigation report.

3.4.2.13.5.2 Foundation ties

Individual pile caps, drilled piers, or caissons shall be interconnected by ties. All ties shall have a design strength in tension or compression at least equal to a force equal to 10 percent of S_{DS}times the larger pile cap or column factored dead plus factored live load unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint will be provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade or confinement by competent rock, hard cohesive soils, very dense granular soils, or other approved means.

3.4.2.13.5.3 Pile anchorage requirements

In addition to the requirements of Section 3.4.2.2.3.1, anchorage of piles shall comply with this section. Where required for resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipe (round HSS sections), concrete-filled steel pipe or H piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section.

EXCEPTION:Anchorage of concrete-filled steel pipe piles is permitted to be accomplished using deformed bars developed into the concrete portion of the pile.

3.4.2.13.6Requirements for structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D

throughF

In addition to the requirements of Sections 3.4.1.8.2, and 3.4.1.8.3, the following foundation design requirements shall apply to structures assigned to SeismicDesign Category D, E, or F.Designandconstruction of concrete foundation components shall conform to the requirements of ACI 318-05, Section 21.8, except as modified by the requirements of this section.

EXCEPTION:Detachedone- and two-family dwellings of light-frame constructionnotexceedingtwostoreysinheightabovegradeneed only comply with the requirements for Sections3.4.1.8.2, 3.4.1.8.3 (Items 2 through 4), 3.4.2.13.2, and 3.4.2.13.5.

3.4.2.13.6.1 Pole-type structures

Where construction employing posts or poles as columns embedded in earth or embedded in concrete footings in the earth is used to resist lateral loads, the depth of embedment required for posts or poles to resist seismic forces shall be determined by means of the design criteria established in the foundation

investigation report.

3.4.2.13.6.2 Foundation ties

Individual pile caps, drilled piers, or caissons shall be interconnected by ties. In addition, individual spread footings founded on Site ClassE or F shall be interconnected by ties. All ties shall have a design strength in tension or compression

at least equal to a force equal to 10 percent of S_{DS}times the larger pile cap or column factored dead plus factored live load unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint will be provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade or confinement by competent rock, hard cohesive soils, very dense granular soils, or other approved means.

3.4.2.13.6.3 General pile design requirement

Piling shall be designed and constructed to withstand deformations from earthquake ground motions and structure response. Deformations shall include both free-field soil strains (without the structure) and deformations induced by lateral pile resistance to structure seismic forces, all as modified by soil-pile interaction.

3.4.2.13.6.4Batter piles

Batter piles and their connections shall be capable of resisting forces and moments from the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2 or 3.4.2.14.3.2.2. Wherevertical and batter piles act jointly to resist foundation forces as a group, these forces shall be distributed to the individual piles in accordance with their relative horizontal and vertical rigidities and the geometric distribution of the piles within the group.

3.4.2.13.6.5 Pile anchorage requirements

In addition to the requirements of Section3.4.2.3.5.3,anchorage of piles shall comply with this section. Designof anchorage of piles into the pile cap shall consider the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pilecap. For piles required to resist uplift forces or provide rotational restraint, anchorage into the pile cap shall be capable of developing the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the lesser of the nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete pile, or the nominal tensile strength of a steel pile, or 1.3 times the pile pullout resistance, or the axial tension force resulting from the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2 or 3.4.2.14.3.2.2. The pile pullout resistance shall be taken as the ultimate frictional or adhesive force that can be developed between the soil and the pile plusthe pile weight.

2. In the case of rotational restraint, the lesser of the axial and shear forces and moments resulting from the load

combinations with overstrengthfactor of Section3.4.2.4.3.2 or 3.4.2.14.3.2.2 or development of the full axial, bending, and shear nominalstrength of the pile.

3.4.2.13.6.6 Splices of pile segments

Splices of pile segments shall develop the nominal strength of the pile section, but the splice need not develop the nominal strength of the pile in tension, shear, and bending where it has been designed to resist axial and shear forces and moments from the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2 or 3.4.2.14.3.2.2.

3.4.2.13.6.7 Pile soil interaction

Pile moments, shears, and lateral deflections used for design shall be established considering the interaction of the shaft and soil. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the pile to the pile diameter or width is less than or equal to 6, the pile is permitted to be assumed to be flexurally rigid with respect to the soil.

3.4.2.13.6.8 Pile group effects

Pile group effects from soil on lateral pile nominal strength shall be included where pile centre-to-centre spacing in the direction of lateral force is less than eight pile diameters or widths. Pile group effects on vertical nominal strength shall be included where pile centre-to-centre spacing is less than three pile diameters or widths.

3.4.2.14 AlternativeSimplifiedStructural Design Criteria For Simple Bearing Wall or Building Frame Systems

3.4.2.14.1 General

3.4.2.14.1.1 Simplified design procedure

The procedures of this section are permitted to be used in lieu of other analytical procedures in Section 3.4.2 for the analysis and design of simple buildings with bearing wall or building frame systems, subject to all of the limitations listed in Section3.4.2.14.1.1. Where these procedures are used, the Seismic Design Category shall be determined from Table 3.4.15 using the value of S_{DS} from Section 3.4.2.14.8.1.
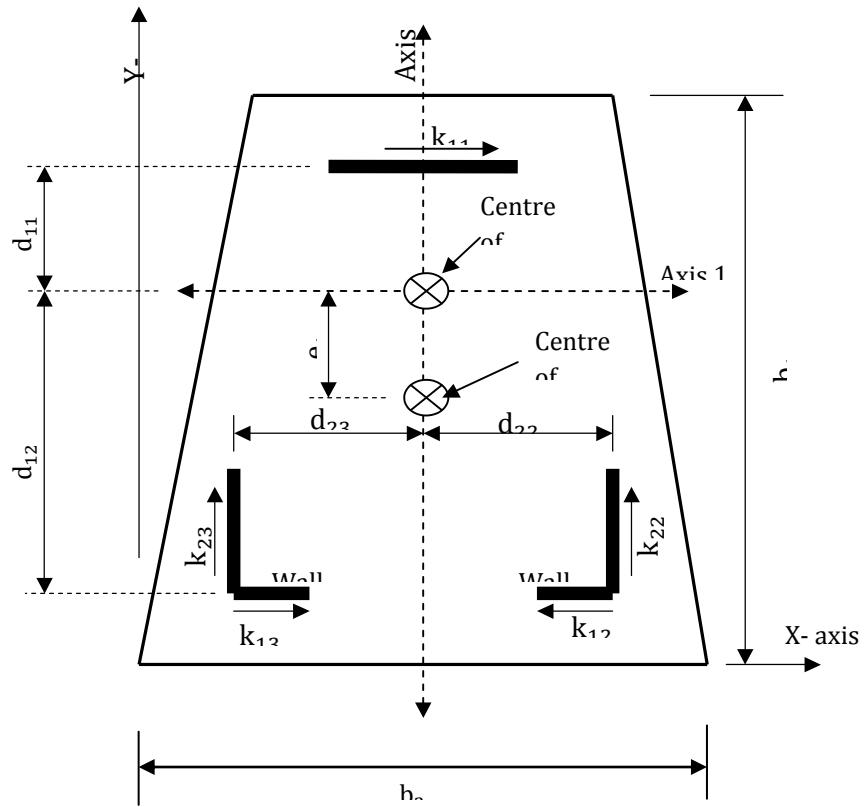
Figure 3.4.6 Notation used in torsion check for nonflexible diaphragms

TABLE 3.4.17 DESIGN COEFFICIENTS AND FACTORS FOR SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS FOR SIMPLIFIED DESIGN PROCEDURE

Seismic Force–Resisting System	ASCE 7 Section where DetailigRequirements are Specified	Response ModificationCoefficient, Ra	Limitations[b]		
			SeismicDesignCategory		
			B	C	D,E
A.BEARING WALL SYSTEMS					
1.Special reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.6	5	P	P	P
2.Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.4	4	P	P	NP
3.Detailed plain concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.2	2	P	NP	NP
4.Ordinary plain concrete shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.1	1½	P	NP	NP
5.Intermediate precast shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.5	4	P	P	40[c]
6.Ordinary precast shear walls	13.4.2 and 13.4.2.3.3	3	P	NP	NP
7.Special reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4 and 13.4.3.4.3	5	P	P	P
8.Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4 and 13.4.3.4.3	3½	P	P	NP
9.Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls	13.4.4	2	P	NP	NP
10.Detailed plain masonry shear walls	13.4.4	2	P	NP	NP
11.Ordinary plain masonry shear walls	13.4.4	1½	P	NP	NP
12.Prestressedmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	1½	P	NP	NP
13.Light-framewallssheathedwithwoodstructuralpanelsrat	13.4.1,13.4.1.3.4.2,and13.4.5	6½	P	P	P
13.4.Light-	13.4.1,13.4.1.3.4.2,and13.4.5	2	P	P	NP[d]
15.Light-framedwallssystemusingflatstrapbracing	13.4.1,13.4.1.3.4.2,and13.4.5	4	P	P	P
B.BUILDINGFRAMESYSTEMS					
1.Steeleccentricallybracedframes,moment-resistingconnectionsat columnsawayfromlinks	13.4.1	8	P	P	P
2.Steeleccentricallybracedframes,non-moment-resisting connectionsatcolumnsawayfromlinks	13.4.1	7	P	P	P
3.Specialsteelconcentricallybracedframes	13.4.	6	P	P	P
3.4.Ordinarysteelconcentricallybracedframes	13.4.	3¼	P	P	P
5.Specialreinforcedconcreteshearwalls	13.4.2and13.4.2.3.6	6	P	P	P
6.Ordinaryreinforcedconcreteshearwalls	13.4.2and13.4.2.3.4	5	P	P	NP
7.Detailedplainconcreteshearwalls	13.4.2and13.4.2.3.2	2	P	NP	NP
8.Ordinaryplainconcreteshearwalls	13.4.2and13.4.2.3.1	1½	P	NP	NP
9.Intermediateprecastshearwalls	13.4.2and13.4.2.3.5	5	P	P	40[c]
10.Ordinaryprecastshearwalls	13.4.2and13.4.2.3.3	4	P	NP	NP
11.Compositesteelandconcreteeccentricallybracedfram	13.4.	8	P	P	P
12.Compositesteelandconcreteconcentricallybracedfra	13.4.	5	P	P	P
13.Ordinarycompositesteelandconcretebracedframes	13.4.	3	P	P	NP
13.4.Compositesteelplateshearwalls	13.4.	6½	P	P	P
15.Specialcompositereinforcedconcreteshearwallswithsteel elements	13.4.3	6	P	P	P
16.Ordinarycompositereinforcedconcreteshearwallswithsteel elements	13.4.3	5	P	P	NP
17.Specialreinforcedmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	5½	P	P	P
18.Intermediatereinforcedmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	4	P	P	NP
19.Ordinaryreinforcedmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	2	P	NP	NP
20.Detailedplainmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	2	P	NP	NP
21.Ordinaryplainmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	1½	P	NP	NP
22.Prestressedmasonryshearwalls	13.4.	1½	P	NP	NP
23.Light-framewallssheathedwithwoodstructuralpanelsrat	13.4.1,13.4.1.3.4.2,and13.4.5	7	P	P	P
23.4.Light-	13.4.1,13.4.1.3.4.2,and13.4.5	2½	P	P	NP[d]
25.Buckling-restrainedbracedframes,non-moment-resisting beam-	13.4.1	7	P	P	P

26.Buckling-restrainedbracedframes,moment-resisting beam-columnconnections	13.4.1	8	P	P	P
27.Specialsteelplateshearwall	13.4.	7	P	P	P

aResponse modification coefficient, R, for use throughout the standard.

bP = permitted; NP = not permitted.

cLight-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials not permitted in Seismic Design Category E.

dLight-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials permitted up to 35 ft in height in Seismic Design Category D and not permitted in Seismic Design Category E.

The simplified design procedure is permitted to be used if the following limitations are met:

1. The structure shall qualify for Occupancy Category I or II in accordance with Table 1.2.

2. The site class shall not be class E or F.

3. The structure shall not exceed three storeys in height above grade.

4. The seismic-force resisting system shall be either a bearing wall system or building frame system, as indicated in Table 3.4.17.

5. The structure shall have at least two lines of lateral resistance in each of two major axis directions.

6. At least one line of resistance shall be provided on each side of the centre of mass in each direction.

7. For structures with flexible diaphragms, overhangs beyond the outside line of shear walls or braced frames shall satisfy the following:

$$a \leq d/5 \qquad\qquad \text{Eq.(3.4.39)}$$

where

a = the distance perpendicular to the forces being considered from the extreme edge of the diaphragm to the line of vertical resistance closest to that edge

d = the depth of the diaphragm parallel to the forces being considered at the line of vertical resistance closest to the edge

8. For buildings with a diaphragm that is not flexible, the distance between the centre of rigidity and the centre of mass parallel to each major axis shall not exceed 15 percent of the greatest width of the diaphragm parallel to that axis. In addition, the following shall be satisfied for each major axis direction:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m} k_{1i}\, d_i^2 + \sum_{j=1}^{n} k_{2j}\, d_j^2 \geq 2.5\left(0.05 + \frac{e_1}{b}\right) b^2 \sum_{i=1}^{m} k_{1i} \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.40)}$$

where (see Fig. 3.4.6):

k_{1i}= the lateral load stiffness of wall "i " or braced frame "i" parallel to major axis1

k_{2j}= the lateral load stiffness of wall " j " or braced frame" j " parallel to major axis2

d_{1i}= thedistancefromthewall"i "or bracedframe "i " to the centre of rigidity, perpendicular to major axis 1

d_{2j}= thedistancefromthewall" j "or braced frame" j " to the centre of rigidity, perpendicular to major axis 2

b_1= the width of the diaphragm perpendicular to major axis 1

m = the number of walls and braced frames resisting lateral force in direction 1

n = the number of walls and braced frames resisting lateral force in direction 2

Eq. (3.4.40) need not be checked where a structure fulfills all the following limitations:

1. The arrangement of walls or braced frames is symmetric about each major axis direction.

2. The distance between the two most separated lines of walls or braced frames is at least 90 percent of the dimension of the structure perpendicular to that axis direction.

3. The stiffness along each of the lines considered for item 2 above is at least 33 percent of the total stiffness in that axis direction.

9. Lines of resistance of the lateral force-resisting system shall be oriented at angles of no more than 15° from alignment with the major orthogonal horizontal axes of the building.

10. The simplified design procedure shall be used for each major orthogonal horizontal axisdirection of the building.

11. System irregularities caused by in-plane or out-of-plane offsets of lateral force-resisting elements shall not be permitted.

EXCEPTION: Out-of-plane and in-plane offsets of shear walls are permitted in two-storey buildings of light-frame construction provided that the framing supporting the upper wall is designed for seismic force effects from overturning of the wall amplified by a factor of 2.5.

12. The lateral-load-resistance of any storey shall not be less than 80 percent of the storey above.

3.4.2.14.1.2 Definitions

The definitions listed in Section 3.4.1.2 shall be used in addition to the following:

PRINCIPAL ORTHOGONAL HORIZONTAL DIRECTIONS: The orthogonal directions that overlay the majority of lateral force resisting elements.

3.4.2.14.1.3 Notation

D = The effect of dead load

E = The effect of horizontal and vertical earthquake- induced forces

F_a = Acceleration-based sitecoefficient,seeSection 3.4.2.14.8.1.

F_i= The portion of the seismic base shear, V , induced at Level i

F_p= The seismic design force applicable to a particular structural component

F_x= See Section 3.4.2.14.8.2

h_i= The height above the base to Level i

h_x= The height above the base to Level x

Level i = The building level referred to by the subscript i ;

i= 1 designates the first level above the base

Level n = The level that is uppermost in the main portion of the building

Level x = See "Level i"

Q_E= The effect of horizontal seismic forces

R = The response modification coefficient as given in Table 3.4.17

S_{DS} = See Section 3.4.2.14.8.1

S_S= See Section 3.4.14.1

V = The total design shear at the base of the structure in the direction of interest, as determined using the procedure of 3.4.2.14.8.1

V_x= The seismic design shear in Storey$x$ .See Section 3.4.2.14.8.3

W = See Section 3.4.2.14.8.1

W_c = Weight of wall

W_p= Weight of structural component

w_i= The portion of the effective seismicweight, W, located at or assigned to Level i

w_x= See Section 3.4.2.14.8.2

3.4.2.14.2 Design basis

The structure shall include complete lateral and vertical-force-resisting systems with adequate strength to resist the design seismic forces, specified in this section, in combination with other loads. Design seismic forces shall be distributed to the various elements of the structure and their connections using a linear elastic analysis in accordance with the procedures of Section 3.4.2.14.8. The members of the seismic

force–resisting system and their connections shall be detailed to conform with the applicable requirements for the selected structural system as indicated in Section 3.4.2.13.4.3.4.1. A continuous load path, or load paths, with adequate strength and stiffness shall be provided to transfer all forces from the point of application to the final point of resistance. The foundation shall be designed to accommodate the forces developed.

3.4.2.14.3 Seismic load effectsand combinations

Allmembersofthestructure,includingthosenotpartoftheseismicforce–resisting system, shall be designed usingthe seismic load effects of Section3.4.2.14.3 unless otherwise exempted bythisstandard. Seismicloadeffectsaretheaxial, shear, and flexuralmember forces resulting from application of horizontalandverticalseismicforcesassetforth inSection 3.4.2.14.3.1. Where specifically required, seismic load effects shall be modified to account for system

overstrength, as set forth in Section 3.4.2.14.3.1.3.

3.4.2.13.4.3.1 Seismic load effect

The seismic load effect, E , shall be determined in accordance with the following:

> 1. For use in load combination 5 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combination 5 and 6 in Section 2.1.3.1, E shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.41) as follows:
>
> $$E = E_h + E_v \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.41)}$$
>
> 2. For use in load combination 7 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combination 8 in Section 2.1.3.1, E shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.42) as follows:
>
> $$E = E_h - E_v \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.42)}$$

where

E = seismic load effect

E_h = effect of horizontal seismic forces as defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.1.1.

E_v = effect of vertical seismic forces as defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.1.2.

3.4.2.14.3.1.1 Horizontal seismic load effect

The horizontal seismic load effect, E_h, shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.43) as follows:

> $$E_h = Q_E \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.43)}$$

where

Q_E = effects of horizontal seismic forces from V or F_p as specified in Sections 3.4.2.14.7.5, and 3.4.2.14.8.1.

> **3.4.2.14.3.1.2 Vertical seismic load effect**
>
> The vertical seismic load effect, E_v, shall bedetermined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.44) as follows:
>
> $$E_v = 0.2S_{DS}D \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.44)}$$
>
> where
>
> S_{DS} = design spectral response acceleration parameter at short periods obtained from Section 3.4.1.4.4
>
> D = effect of dead load
>
> EXCEPTION:The vertical seismic load effect, E_v , is permitted to be taken as zero for either of the following conditions:
>
> > 1. InEqs. (3.4.3), (3.4.4), (3.4.7), and (3.4.46) where S_{DS} is equal to or less than 0.125.
> >
> > 2. In Eq. (3.4.42) where determining demands on the soil-structure interface of foundations.
>
> **3.4.2.14.3.1.3 Seismic load combinations**

Where theprescribed seismic load effect,*E* , definedin Section 3.4.2.14.3.1 is combined with the effects of other loads as set forth in Chapter 2, the following seismic load combinations for structures not subject to flood or atmospheric ice loads shall be used in lieu of the seismic load combinations in Sections 2.1.2.2 or 2.1.3.1.

Basic combinations for strength design (see Sections 2.1.2 and 1.1.2 for notation).

5. $(1.2 + 0.2S_{DS}) D + Q_E + L$

7. $(0.9 - 0.2S_{DS}) D + Q_E + 1.6 H$

NOTES:

1. The load factor on L in combination 5 is permitted to equal 0.5 for all occupancies in which L_o in Table 2.2 is less than or equal to 100 psf (3.4.79 kN/m^2), with the exception of garages or areas occupied as places of public assembly.

2. The load factor on *H* shall be set equal to zero in combination 7

if the structural action due to *H* counteracts that due to *E* . Where lateral earth pressure provides resistance to structural actions from other forces, it shall not be included in *H* but shall be included in the design resistance.

Basic combinations for allowable stress design (see Sections 2.1.3 and 1.1.2 for notation).

5. $(1.0 + 0.14S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.7 Q_E$

6. $(1.0 + 0.105S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.525 Q_E + 0.75L + 0.75(L_r$ or $R)$

8. $(0.6 - 0.14S_{DS}) D + 0.7 Q_E + H$

3.4.2.14.3.2 Seismic load effect including a 2.5 overstrength factor

Where specifically required, conditions requiring overstrength factor applications shall be determined in accordance with the following:

1. For use in load combination 5 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combinations 5 and 6 in Section 2.1.3.1, *E* shall be taken equal to E_m as determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.45) as follows:

$$E_m = E_{mh} + E_v \quad \text{Eq.}(3.4.45)$$

2. For use in load combination 7 in Section 2.1.2.2 or load combination 8 in Section 2.1.3.1, *E* shall be taken equal to E_m as determined in accordance with Eq. 3.4.46 as follows:

$$E_m = E_{mh} - E_v \quad \text{Eq.}(3.4.46)$$

where

E_m = seismic load effect including overstrength factor

E_{mh} = effect of horizontal seismic forces including structural overstrength as defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.2.1

E_v= vertical seismic load effect as defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.1.2

3.4.2.14.3.2.1 Horizontal seismic load effect with a 2.5 overstrength factor

The horizontal seismic load effect with overstrength factor, E_{mh}, shall be determined in accordance with Eq.(3.4.47) as follows:

E_{mh}= 2.5 Q_E Eq. (3.4.47)

where

Q_E = effects of horizontal seismic forces from *V* or $F_p$as specified in Sections 3.4.2.14.8.1and 3.4.2.14.7.5.

EXCEPTION:The value of E_{mh}need not exceed the maximum force that can develop in the element as determined by a rational, plastic mechanism analysis or nonlinear response analysis utilizing realistic expected values of material strengths.

3.4.2.14.3.2.2 Load combinations with overstrength factor

Where the seismic load effect with overstrength, E_m , defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.2 is combined with the effects of other loads as set forth in Section2, the following seismic load combinations for structures not subject to flood or atmospheric ice loads shall be used in lieu of the seismic load combinations in Section 2.1.2.2 or 2.1.3.1:

Basic combinations for strength design with overstrength factor (see Sections 2.1.2.2 and 1.1.2 for notation)

5. $(1.2 + 0.2S_{DS}) D + 2.5 Q_E + L$

7. $(0.9 − 0.2S_{DS}) D + 2.5 Q_E + 1.6 H$

NOTES:

1. The load factor on *L* in combination 5 is permitted to equal 0.5 for all occupancies in which L_0 in Table 2.2 is less than or equal to 100 psf (3.4.79 kN/m^2), with the exception of garages or areas occupied as places of public assembly.

2. The load factor on *H* shall be set equal to zero in combination 7 if the structural action due to *H* counteracts that due to *E* . Where lateral earth pressure provides resistance to structural actions from other forces, it shall not be included in *H* but shall be included in the design resistance.

Basic combinations for allowable stress design with overstrength factor (see Sections 2.1.3.1 and 1.1.2 for notation)

5. $(1.0 + 0.14S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.7 Q_E$

6. $(1.0 + 0.105S_{DS}) D + H + F + 0.525 Q_E + 0.75L + 0.75(L_r \text{ or } R)$

8. $(0.6 − 0.14S_{DS}) D + 0.7 Q_E + H$

3.4.2.14.3.2.3 Allowable stress increase for load combinations with overstrength

Whereallowablestressdesign methodologies are used with the seismic load effect defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.2 applied in load combinations 5, 6, or 8 of Section 2.1.3.1, allowable stresses are permitted to be determined using an allowable stress increase of 1.2. This increase shall not be combined with increases in allowable stresses or load combination reductions otherwise permitted by this standard or the material reference document except that combination with the duration of load increases permitted in AF&PA NDS (American Forest and Paper Association, Natural Design Specification for Wood Construction, AF&PA NDS-05, 2005) is permitted.

3.4.2.14.4 Seismic force–resisting system

3.4.2.14.4.1 Selection and limitations

The basic lateral and vertical seismic force–resisting system shall conform to one of the types indicated in Table 3.4.17 and shall conform to all of the detailing requirements referenced in the table. The appropriate response modification coefficient, R, indicated in Table 3.4.17 shall be used in determining the base shear and element design forces as set forth in the seismic requirements of this standard.

Special framing and detailing requirements are indicated in Section 3.4.2.14.7 and in sections on material design standards.

3.4.2.14.4.2 Combinations of framing systems

3.4.2.14.4.2.1 Horizontal combinations

Different seismic force-resisting systems are permitted to be used in each of the two principal orthogonal building directions. Where a combination of different structural systems is utilized to resist lateral forces in the same direction, the value of *R* used for design in that direction shall not be greater than the least value of R for any of the systems utilized in that direction.

EXCEPTION:For buildings of light-frame construction or have flexible diaphragms and that are two stories or less in height, resisting elements are permitted to be designed using the least value of *R* of the different seismic force–resisting systems found in each independent line of framing. The value of *R* used for design of diaphragms in such structures shall not be greater than the least value for any of the systems utilized in that same direction.

3.4.2.14.4.2.2 Vertical combinations

Different seismic force– resisting systems are permitted to be used in different storeys. The value of R used in a given direction shall not be greater than the least value of any of the systems used in that direction.

3.4.2.14.4.2.3 Combinationframingdetailingrequirements

The detailing requirements of Section 3.4.2.14.7 required by the higher response modification coefficient, R, shall be used for structural components common to systems having different response modification coefficients.

3.4.2.14.5 Diaphragmflexibility

Diaphragmsconstructedof steel decking, (untopped), wood structural panels, or similar panelized construction are permitted to be considered flexible.

3.4.2.14.6 Application of loading

The effects of the combination of loads shall be considered as prescribed in Section 3.4.2.14.3. The design seismic forces are permitted to be applied separately in each orthogonal direction and the combination of effects from the two directions need not be considered. Reversal of load shall be considered.

3.4.2.14.7 Design and detailing requirements

The design and detailing of the components of the seismic force–resisting system shall comply with the requirements of this section. The foundation shall be designed to resist the forces developed and accommodate the movements imparted to the structure by the design ground motions. The dynamic nature of the forces, the expected ground motion, the design basis for strength and energy dissipation capacity of the structure, and the dynamic properties of the soil shall be included in the determination of the foundation design criteria. The design and construction of foundations shall comply with Section 3.4.2.13. Structural elements including foundation elements shall conform to the material design and detailing requirements.

3.4.2.14.7.1 Connections

All parts of the structure between separation joints shall be interconnected, and the connection shall be capable of transmitting the seismic force, F_p, induced by the parts being connected. Any smaller portion of the structure shall be tied to the remainder of the structure with elements having a strength of 0.20 times the short period design spectral response acceleration coefficient, S_{DS}, times the weight of the smaller portion or 5 percent of the portion's weight, whichever is greater.

A positive connection for resisting a horizontal force acting parallel to the member shall be provided for each beam, girder, or truss either directly to its supporting

elements, or to slabs designed to act as diaphragms. Where the connection is through a diaphragm, then the member's supporting element must also be connected to the diaphragm. The connection shall have minimum design strength of 5 percent of the deadplus live load reaction.

3.4.2.14.7.2 Openings or reentrant building corners

Except where as otherwise specifically provided for in this standard, openings in shear walls, diaphragms, or other plate-type elements, shall be provided with

reinforcement at the edges of the openings or reentrant corners designed to transfer the stresses into the structure. The edge reinforcement shall extend into the body of the wall or diaphragm a distance sufficient to develop the force in the reinforcement.

EXCEPTION:Perforated shear walls of wood structural panels are permitted where designed in accordance with AF&PA SDPWS.

3.4.2.14.7.3 Collector elements

Collector elements shall be provided with adequate strength to transfer the seismic forces originating in other portions of the structure to the element providing the resistance to those forces (see Fig. 3.4.4). Collector elements, splices, and their connections to resisting elements shall be designed to resist the forces defined in Section 3.4.2.14.3.2.

EXCEPTION:In structures, or portions thereof, braced entirely by light-frame shear walls, collector elements, splices, and connections to resisting elements are permitted to be designed to resist forces in accordance with Section 3.4.2.14.7.4.

3.4.2.14.7.4 Diaphragms

Floorand roof diaphragms shall be designed to resist the design seismic forces at each level, F_x , calculated in accordance with Section 3.4.2.14.8.2. Where the diaphragm is required to transfer designseismic forces from the vertical- resisting elements above the diaphragm to other vertical-resistingelements below the diaphragm due to changes in relative lateral stiffness in the vertical elements, the transferred portion of the seismic shear force at that level,V_x, shall be addedtothe diaphragm design force. Diaphragms shall provide for both the shear and bending stresses resulting fromthese forces. Diaphragms shall have ties or struts to distribute the wall anchorage forces into the diaphragm. Diaphragm connections shall be positive, mechanical, or welded type connections.

3.4.2.14.7.5 Anchorageofconcreteormasonrystructural walls

Concrete or masonry structural walls shall be anchored to all floors, roofs, and members that provide out-of-plane lateral support for the wall or that are supported by the wall. The anchorage shall provide a positive direct connection between the wall and floor, roof, or supporting member with the strength to resist horizontal forces specified in this section for structures with flexible diaphragms.

Anchorage of structural walls to flexible diaphragms shall have the strength to develop the out-of-plane force given by Eq. (3.4.48):

$F_p= 0.8S_{DS}W_p$ Eq.(3.4.48)

where

F_p = the design force in the individual anchors

S_{DS}= the design spectral response acceleration at short periods per Section 3.4.2.14.8.1

W_p= the weight of the wall tributary to the anchor

EXCEPTION:For Seismic DesignCategory B, the coefficient 0.8 shall be 0.4, with a minimum force of 10 percent of the tributary weight of the wall or 400SDSin pounds per foot, whichever is greater.

3.4.2.14.7.5 Transfer of anchorage forces into diaphragms

Diaphragms shall be provided with continuousties or struts between diaphragm chords to distribute these anchorage forces into the diaphragms. Added chords are permitted to be used to form subdiaphragms to transmit the anchorage forces to the main continuous crossties. The maximumlength-to-width ratio of the structural subdiaphragm shall be 2.5to 1. Connections and anchorages capable of resisting the prescribed forces shall be provided between the diaphragm and the attached components. Connections shall extend into the diaphragm a sufficient distance to develop the force transferred into the diaphragm.

3.4.2.14.7.5.1 Wooddiaphragms

In wooddiaphragms, the continuous ties shallbein addition to the diaphragm sheathing. Anchorage shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal nor shall wood ledgers or framing be used in cross-grain bending or cross-grain tension. The diaphragm sheathing shall not

be considered effective as providing the ties or struts required by this section.

3.4.2.14.7.5.2 Metaldeckdiaphragms

In metaldeck diaphragms, the metal deck shall not be used as the continuous ties required by this section in the direction perpendicular to the deck span.

3.4.2.14.7.5.3 Embedded straps

Diaphragm to wall anchorage using embedded straps shall be attached to or hooked around the reinforcing steel or otherwise terminated so as to effectively transfer forces to the reinforcing steel.

3.4.2.14.7.6 Bearing walls and shear walls

Exteriorand interior bearing walls and shear walls and their anchorage shall be designed for a force equal to 40 percent of the short period design spectral response acceleration S_{DS}times the weight of wall, W_c, normal to the surface, with a minimum force of 10 percent of the weight of the wall. Interconnection of wall elements and connections to supporting framing systems shall have sufficient ductility, rotational capacity, or sufficient strength to resist shrinkage, thermal changes, and differential foundation settlement where combined with seismic forces.

3.4.2.14.8 Simplified lateral force analysis procedure

An equivalent lateral force analysis shall consist of the application of equivalent static lateral forces to a linear mathematical model of the structure. The lateral forces applied in each direction shall sum to a total seismic base shear given by Section 3.4.2.14.8.1 and shall be distributed vertically in accordance with Section 3.4.2.14.8.2. For purposes of

analysis, the structure shall be considered fixed at the base.

3.4.2.14.8.1 Seismic base shear

The seismic base shear, *V*, in a given direction shall be determined in accordance with Eq. (3.4.49):

$$V = \frac{FS_{DS}}{R} W$$
Eq. (3.4.49)

where

$$S_{DS} = \frac{2}{3} F_a S_s$$

where F_a is permitted to be taken as 1.0 for rock sites, 1.4 for soil sites, or determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.3. For the purpose of this section, sites are

permitted to be considered to be rock if there is no more than 10 ft (3 m) of soil between the rock surface and the bottom of spread footing or mat foundation. In calculating SDS ,Ss shall be in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.1, but need not be taken larger than 1.5.

F = 1.0 for one-storey buildings

F = 1.1 for two-storey buildings

F =1.2 for three-storey buildings

R =the response modification factor from Table 3.4.17

W = effective seismic weight of structure that shall include the total dead load and other loads listed in the following text

1. In areas used for storage, a minimum of 25 percent of the floor live load (floor live load in public garages and open parking structures need not be included).

2. Where provision for partitions is required by Section 3.4.2.2 in the floor load design, the actual partition weight, or a minimum weight of 10 psf (0.48 kN/m^2) of floor area, whichever is greater.

3. Total operating weight of permanent equipment.

4. Where the flat roof snow load, P_f , exceeds 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2), 20 percent of the uniform design snow load, regardless of actual roof slope.

3.4.2.14.8.2 Vertical distribution

The forces at each level shall be calculated using the following equation:

$$F_x = \frac{w_x}{W}V$$
Eq. (3.4.50)

where

w_x= the portion of the effective seismic weight of the structure, *W* , at

level x..

3.4.2.14.8.3 Horizontalshear distribution

The seismic design storey shear in any storey, V_x(kip or kN), shall be determined from the following equation:

$$V_x = \sum_{i=x}^{n} F_i \qquad \text{Eq.(3.4.51)}$$

whereF_i= the portion of the seismic base shear, V (kip or kN) induced at Level, i

3.4.2.14.8.3.1 Flexible diaphragm structures

The seismic design storey shear in stories of structures with flexible diaphragms, as defined in Section 3.4.2.14.5, shall be distributed to the vertical elements of the lateral force resisting system using tributary area rules. Two-dimensional analysis is permitted where diaphragms are flexible.

3.4.2.14.8.3.2 Structures with diaphragms that are not flexible

For structures with diaphragms that are not flexible, as defined in Section 3.4.2.14.5, the seismic design storey shear, V_x, (kip or kN) shall be distributed to the various vertical elements of the seismic force–resisting system in the storey under consideration based on the relative lateral stiffnesses of the vertical elements and the diaphragm.

3.4.2.14.8.3.2.1 Torsion

The design of structures with diaphragms that are not flexible shall include the torsional moment, M_t (kip-ft or KN-m) resulting from eccentricity between the locations of centre of mass and the centre of rigidity.

3.4.2.14.8.4 Overturning

The structure shall be designed to resist overturning effects caused by the seismic forces determined in Section 3.4.2.14.8.2. The foundations of structures shall be designed for not less than 75 percent of the foundation overturning design moment, M_f(kip-ft or kN-m) at the foundation-soil interface.

3.4.2.14.8.5 Drift limits and building separation

Structural drift need not be calculated. Where a drift value is needed for use in material standards, to determine structural separations between buildings, for design of cladding, or for other design requirements, it shall be taken as 1 percent of building height unless computed to be less. All portions of the structure shall be designed to act as an integral unit in resisting seismic forces unless separated structurally by a distance sufficient to avoid damaging contact under the total deflection.

SECTION 3.4: SEICMIC DESIGN CRITERIA AND DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDINGS (CONTINUED)

3.4.3 Seismic Response History Procedures

3.4.3.1 Linear Response History Procedure

Where linear response history procedure is performed the requirements of this section shall be satisfied.

3.4.3.1.1 Analysis requirements

A linear response history analysis shall consist of an analysis of a linear mathematical model of the structure to determine its response, through methods of numerical integration, to suites of ground motion acceleration histories compatible with the design response spectrum for the site. The analysis shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of this section.

3.4.3.1.2 Modeling

Mathematical models shall conform to the requirements of Section 3.4.2.7.

3.4.3.1.3 Ground motion

A suite of not less than three appropriate ground motions shall be used in the analysis. Ground motion shall conform to the requirements of this section.

3.4.3.1.3.1 Two-dimensional analysis

Where 2-D analyses are performed, each ground motion shall consist of a horizontal acceleration history, selected from an actual recorded event. Appropriate acceleration histories shall be obtained from records of events having magnitudes, fault distance, and source mechanisms that are consistent with those that control the maximum considered earthquake. Where the required number of appropriate recorded ground motion records are not available, appropriate simulated ground motion records shall be used to make up the total number required. The ground motions shall be scaled such that the average value of the 5 percent damped response spectra for the suite of motions is not less than the design response spectrum for the site for periods ranging from 0.2T to 1.5T where T is the natural period of the structure in the fundamental mode for the direction of response being analyzed.

3.4.3.1.3.2 Three-dimensional analysis

Where 3-D analysis is performed, ground motions shall consist of pairs of appropriate horizontal ground motion acceleration components that shall be selected and scaled from individual recorded events. Appropriate ground motions shall be selected from events having magnitudes, fault distance, and source mechanisms that are consistent with those that control the maximum considered earthquake. Where the required number of recorded ground motion pairs are not available, appropriate simulated ground motion pairs

shall be used to make up the total number required. For each pair of horizontal ground motion components, a square root of the sum of the squares (SRSS)

spectrum shall be constructed by taking the SRSS of the 5 percent-damped responsespectrafor the scaled components (where an identical scale factor is applied to both components of a pair).Eachpair of motions shall be scaled such that for each period between 0.2Tand 1.5T , the average of the SRSS spectra from all horizontal component pairs does not fall below 1.3times the corresponding ordinate of the design response spectrum, determined in accordance with Section3.4.1.4.5 or 3.4.4.2, by more than 10 percent.

3.4.3.1.4 Response parameters

For each ground motion analyzed, the individual response parameters shall be multiplied by the scalar quantity I/R where I is the importance factor determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.5.1 and R is the response modification coefficient selected in accordance with Section 3.4.2.2.1. For each ground motion i , where i is the designation assigned to each ground motion, the maximum value of the base shear, V_i, member forces, Q_{Ei} , and storey drifts,$i$at each storey, scaled as indicated in the preceding text shall be determined. Where the maximum scaled base shear predicted by the analysis, V_i , is less than the value of V determined using the minimum value of $C_s$set forth in Eq. (3.4.24) or when located where $S_l$is equal to or greater than 0.6g, the minimum value of $C_s$set forth in Eq. (3.4.25), the scaled member forces,Q_{Ei} , shall be additionally multiplied by$V$where V is the minimum base shear that has been determined using the minimum value of $C_s$set forth in Eq. (3.4.24), or when located where $S_l$is equal to or greater than 0.6g, the minimum value of $C_s$set forth inEq. (3.4.25).

If at least seven ground motions are analyzed, the design member forces used in the load combinations of Section 3.4.2.4.2.1, and the design story drift used in the evaluation of drift in accordance with Section 3.4.2.12.1 is permitted to be taken respectively as the average of the scaled $Q_{Ei}$and $\Delta_i$values determined from the analyses and scaled as indicated in the preceding text. If fewer than seven ground motions are analyzed, the design member forces and the design story drift shall be taken as the maxi- mum value of the scaled Q_{Ei} and $\Delta_i$values determined from the analyses.

Where this standard requires the consideration of the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2, the value of $\Omega_0\ Q_E$ need not be taken larger than the maximum of the unscaled value, Q_{Ei}, obtained from the analyses.

3.4.3.2Nonlinear Response History Procedure

Where nonlinear response history procedure is performed the requirements of Section 3.4.3.2 shall be satisfied.

3.4.3.2.1 Analysis requirements

A nonlinear response history analysis shall consist of an analysis of a mathematical model of the structure that directly accounts for the nonlinear hysteretic behaviour of the structure's components to determine its response through methods of numerical integration to suites of ground motion acceleration histories compatible with the design response spectrum for thesite. The analysis shall be performed in accordance with this section. See Section 3.4.2.1.1 for limitations on the use of this procedure.

3.4.3.2.2 Modeling

A mathematical model of the structure shall be constructed that represents the

spatial distribution of mass throughout the structure. The hysteretic behaviour of elements shall be modeled consistent with suitable laboratory test data and shall account for all significant yielding, strength degradation, stiffness degradation, and hysteretic pinching indicated by such test data. Strength of elements shall be based on expected values considering material overstrength, strain hardening, and hysteretic strength degradation. Linear properties, consistent with the requirements of Section 3.4.2.7.3, are permitted to be used for those elements demonstrated by the analysis to remain within their linear range of response. The structure shall be assumed to have a fixed-base, or alternatively, it is permitted to use realistic assumptions with regard to the stiffness and load-carrying characteristics of the foundations consistent with site-specific soils data and rational principles of engineering mechanics.

For regular structures with independent orthogonal seismic force−resisting systems, independent 2-D models are permitted to be constructed to represent each system. For structures having plan irregularities Types 1a, 1b, 4, or 5 of Table 3.4.10 or structures without independent orthogonal systems, a 3-D model incorporating a minimum of three dynamic degrees of freedom consisting of translation in two orthogonal plan directions and torsional rotation about the vertical axis at each level of the structure shall be used. Where the diaphragms are not rigid compared to the vertical elements of the seismic force–resisting system, the model should include representation of the diaphragm's flexibility and such additional dynamic degrees of freedom as are required to account for the participation of the diaphragm in the structure's dynamic response.

3.4.3.2.3 Ground motion and other loading

Ground motion shall conform to the requirements of Section 3.4.3.1.3. The structure shall be analyzed for the effects of these ground motions simultaneously with the effects of dead load in combination with not less than 25 percent of the required live loads.

3.4.3.2.4 Response parameters

For each ground motion analyzed, individual response parameters consisting of the maximum value of the individual member forces, Q_{Ei} , member inelastic deformations, ψ_i, and storey drifts, Δ_i, at each storey shall be determined, where i is the designation assigned to each ground motion.

If at least seven ground motions are analyzed, the design values of member forces, Q_E, member inelastic deformations, ψ, and storey drift, Δ_i, are permitted to be taken as the average of the Q_{Ei} , ψ_i , and Δ_i values determined from the analyses. If fewer than seven ground motions are analyzed, the design member forces, Q_E, design member inelastic deformations, ψ, and the design storey drift, Δ_i, shall be taken as the maximum value of the Q_{Ei}, ψ_i and Δ_i values determined from the analyses.

3.4.3.2.4.1 Member strength

The adequacy of members to resist the combination of load effects of Section 3.4.2.4 need not be evaluated.

EXCEPTION:Where this standard requires the consideration of the load combinations with overstrength factor of Section 3.4.2.4.3.2, the maximum value of Q_{Ei}obtained from the suite of analyses shall be taken in place of the quantity Ω_0 Q_E .

3.4.3.2.4.2 Member deformation

The adequacy of individual members and their connections to withstand the estimated design deformation values, ψ_i , as predicted by the analyses shall be evaluated based on laboratory test data for similar components. The effects of gravity and other loads on member deformation capacity shall be considered in these evaluations. Member deformation shall not exceed two-thirds of a value that results in loss of ability to carry gravity loads, or that results in deterioration of member strength to less than the 67 percent of the peak value**.**

3.4.3.2.3.4.3 Storey drift

The design storey drift, Δ_I , obtained from the analyses shall not exceed 125 percent of the drift limit specified in Section 3.4.2.12.1.

3.4.3.2.5 Design review

A design review of the seismic force–resisting system and the structural analysis shall be performed by an independent team of registered design professionals in the appropriate disciplines and others experienced in seismic analysis methods and the theory and application of nonlinear seismic analysis and structural behaviour under extreme cyclic loads. The design review shall include, but need not be limited to, the following:

Review of any site-specific seismic criteria employed in the analysis including the development of site-specific spectra and ground motion time histories.

1. Review of acceptance criteria used to demonstrate the adequacy of structural elements and systems to withstand the calculated force and deformation demands, together with that laboratory and other data used to substantiate these criteria.

2. Review of the preliminary design including the selection of structural system and the configuration of structural elements.

3. Review of the final design of the entire structural system and all supporting analyses.

SECTION 3.4: SEICMIC DESIGN CRITERIA AND DESIGNREQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDINGS (continued)

3.4.4- Site-Specific Ground Motion Procedures for Seismic Design

3.4.4.1 Site Response Analysis

The requirements of Section 3.4.3.4.1 shall be satisfied where site response analysis is performed or required by Section 3.4.1.3.4.7. The analysis shall be documented in a report.

3.4.4.1.1 Base Ground Motions

A maximum considered earthquake (MCE) response spectrum shall be developed for bedrock, using the procedure of Sections 3.4.1.4.6 or 3.4.4.2. Unless a site-specific ground motion hazard analysis described in Section 3.4.4.2 is carried out, the MCE rock response spectrum shall be developed using the procedure of Section 3.4.1.4.6 assuming Site Class B. If bedrock consists of Site Class A, the spectrum shall be adjusted using the site coefficients in Section 3.4.1.4.3 unless other site coefficients can be justified. At least five recorded or simulated horizontal ground motion acceleration time histories shall be selected from events having magnitudes and fault distances that are consistent with those that control the MCE. Each selected time history shall be scaled so that its response spectrum is, on average, approximately at the level of the MCE rock response spectrum over the period range of significance to structural response.

3.4.4.1.2 Site condition modeling

A site response model based on low-strain shear wave velocities, nonlinear or equivalent linear shear stress-strain relationships, and unit weights shall be developed. Low-strain shear wave velocities shall be determined from field measurements at the site or from measurements from similar soils in the site vicinity. Nonlinear or equivalent linear shear stress-strain relationships and unit weights shall be selected on the basis of laboratory tests or published relationships for similar soils. The uncertainties in soil properties shall be estimated. Where very deep soil profiles make the development of a soil model to bedrock impractical, the model is permitted to be terminated where the soil stiffness is at least as great as the values used to define Site Class D . In such cases, the MCE response spectrum and acceleration time histories of the base motion developed in Section 3.4.4.1.1 shall be adjusted upward using site coefficients in Section 3.4.1.4.3 consistent with the classification of the soils at the profile base.

3.4.4.1.3 Site response analysis and computed results

Base ground motion time histories shall be input to the soil profile as outcropping motions. Using appropriate computational techniques that treat nonlinear soil properties in a nonlinear or equivalent-linear manner, the response of the soil profile shall be determined and surface ground motion time histories shall be calculated. Ratios of 5 percent damped response spectra of surface ground motions to input base ground motions shall be calculated. The recommended surface MCE ground motion response spectrum shall not be lower than the MCE response spectrum of the base

motion multiplied by the average surface-to-base response spectral ratios (calculated period by period) obtained from the site response analyses. The recommended surface

ground motions that result from the analysis shall reflect consideration of sensitivity of response to uncertainty in soil properties, depth of soil model, and input motions

3.4.4.2 Ground Motion Hazard Analysis

The requirements of Section 3.4.4.2 shall be satisfied where a ground motion hazard analysis is performed or required by Section 3.4.1.4.7. The ground motion hazard analysis shall account for the regional tectonic setting, geology, and seismicity, the expected recurrence rates and maximum magnitudes of earthquakes on known faults and source zones, the characteristics of ground motion attenuation, near source effects, if any, on ground motions, and the effects of subsurface site conditions on ground motions. The characteristics of subsurface site conditions shall be considered either using attenuation relations that represent regional and local geology or in accordance with Section 3.4.4.1. The analysis shall incorporate current seismic interpretations, including uncertainties for models and parameter values for seismic sources and ground motions. The analysis shall be documented in a report.

3.4.4.2.1 Probabilistic MCE

The probabilistic MCE spectral response accelerations shall be taken as the spectral response accelerations represented by a 5 percent damped acceleration response spectrum having a 2 percent probability of exceedance within a 50-yr. period.

3.4.4.2.2 Deterministic MCE

The deterministic MCE response acceleration at each period shall be calculated as 150 percent of the largest median 5 percent damped spectral response acceleration computed at that period for characteristic earthquakes on all known active faults within the region.Forthe purposes of this standard, the ordinates of the deterministic MCE ground motion response spectrum shall not be taken lower than the corresponding ordinates of the response spectrum determined in accordance with Fig. 3.4.7, where F_a and F_v are determined using Tables 3.4.3 and 3.4.4, respectively, with the value of S_S taken as 1.5 and the value of S_1 taken as 0.6.

3.4.4.2.3 Site-specific MCE

Thesite-specific MCEspectral responseacceleration at any period,S_{aM} , shall be takenas the lesser of the spectral response accelerations from theprobabilistic MCE of Section3.4.4.2.1and thedeterministic MCEof Section 3.4.4.2.2.
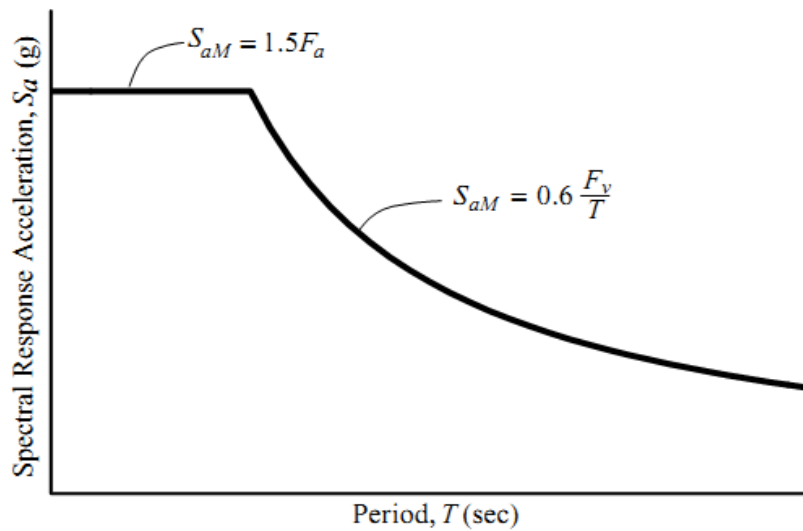
Figure 3.4.7 Deterministic lower limit on MCE response spectrum

3.4.4.3 Design Response Spectrum

The design spectral response acceleration at any period shall be determined from Eq. (3.4.52):

$$S_a = \frac{2}{3} S_{aM} \qquad \text{Eq. (3.4.52)}$$

where S_{aM} is the MCEspectral response acceleration obtained from Section 3.4.4.1 or 3.4.4.2. The design spectral response acceleration at any period shall not be taken less than 80 percent of S_a determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.5. For sites classified as Site Class F requiring site response analysis in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.7, the design spectral response acceleration at any period shall not be taken less than 80 percent of S_a determined for Site Class E in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.5.

3.4.4.4 Design Acceleration Parameters

Where the site-specific procedure is used to determine the design ground motion in accordance with Section 3.4.4.3, the parameter S_{DS} shall be taken as the spectral acceleration, S_a, obtained from the site-specific spectra at a period of 0.2 s, except that it shall not be taken less than 90 percent of the peak spectral acceleration, S_a, at any period larger than 0.2 s. The parameter S_{D1} shall be taken as the greater of the spectral acceleration, S_a, at a period of 1s or two times the spectral acceleration, S_a, at a period of 2 sec. The parameters S_{MS} and S_{M1} shall be taken as 1.5 times S_{DS} and S_{D1}, respectively. The values so obtained shall not be less than 80 percent of the values determined in accordance with Section 3.4.1.4.3 for S_{MS} and S_{M1} and Section 3.4.1.4.4 for S_{DS} and S_{D1}.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 2016

PART 3 STRUCTURAL DESIGN

3.5: CONCRETE
Italics are used for text within Sections 3.5.3 through 3.5.8 of this PART to indicate provisions that differ from ACI 318-05.

3.5.1 General

3.5.1.1 Scope
The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, quality control, design and construction of concrete used in structures.

3.5.1.2 Plain and Reinforced Concrete
Structural concrete shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this SECTION and ACI 318-05 as amended in Section 5.8. Except for the provisions of Sections 5.4 and 5.10, the design and construction of slabs on grade shall not be governed by this SECTION unless they transmit vertical loads or lateral forces from other parts of the structure to the soil.

3.5.1.3 Source and Applicability
The format and subject matter of Sections 5.2 through 5.4 and 5.6 of this section are patterned after, and in general conformity with, the provisions for structural concrete in ACI 318-05. Sections 5.5, 5.7 and 5.8 are reproduced from chapters 5, 7 and 9 of the ACI Code.

3.5.1.4 Design and Construction Documents
The design and construction documents for structural concrete construction shall include:

1. The specified compressive strength of concrete at the stated ages or stages of construction for which each concrete element is designed.
2. The specified strength or grade of reinforcement.
3. The size and location of structural elements, reinforcement, and anchors.
4. Provision for dimensional changes resulting from creep, shrinkage and temperature.
5. Details and location of contraction or isolation joints specified for plain concrete.
6. Anchorage length of reinforcement and location and length of lap splices.
7. Type and location of mechanical and welded splices of reinforcement.
8. The magnitude and location of prestressing forces.
9. Minimumconcrete compressive strength at time of posttensioning.
10. Stressing sequence for posttensioning tendons.
11. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, a statement if slab on grade is designed as a structural diaphragm (see Section 21.10.3.4 of ACI 318).
12. Structural specifications
13. Soil data used in design

3.5.2 Definitions

3.5.2.1 General
The words and terms defined in ACI 318 shall, for the purposes of this SECTION and as used elsewhere in this PART for concrete construction, have the meanings shown in ACI 318-05.

3.5.3 Specifications for Tests and Materials

3.5.3.1 General

Materials used to produce concrete, concrete itself and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in ACI 318.

3.5.3.2 Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete

Glass fiber reinforced concrete (GFRC) and the materials used in such concrete shall be in accordance with the PCI MNL 128 standard.

3.5.4 Durability Requirements

3.5.4.1 Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio

Where maximum water-cementitious materials ratios are specified in ACI 318, they shall be calculated in accordance with ACI 318, Section 4.1.

3.5.4.2 Freezing and Thawing Exposures

Concrete that will be exposed to freezing and thawing, deicing chemicals or other exposure conditions as defined below shall comply with Sections 3.5.4.2.1 through 3.5.4.2.3.

3.5.4.2.1 Air entrainment

Concrete exposed to freezing and thawing or deicing chemicals shall be air entrained in accordance with ACI 318, Section 4.2.1.

3.5.4.2.2 Concrete properties

Concrete that will be subject to the following exposures shall conform to the corresponding maximum water-cementitious materials ratios and minimum specified concretecompressive strength requirements of ACI 318, Section 4.2.2.

1. Concrete intended to have lowpermeability where exposed to water;
2. Concrete exposed to freezing and thawing in a moist condition or deicer chemicals; or
3. Concrete with reinforcement where the concrete is exposed to chlorides from deicing chemicals, salt, salt water, brackish water, seawater or spray from these sources.

3.5.4.3 Sulfate Exposures

Concrete that will be exposed to sulfate-containing solutions or soils shall comply with the maximum water-cementitious materials ratios, minimum specified compressive strength and be made with the appropriate type of cement in accordance with the provisions of ACI 318, Section 4.3.

3.5.4.4 Corrosion Protection of Reinforcement

Reinforcement in concrete shall be protected from corrosion and exposure to chlorides in accordance with ACI 318, Section 4.4.

3.5.5 Concrete Quality, Mixing and Placing

3.5.5.1 General

The required strength and durability of concrete shall be determined by compliance with the proportioning, testing, mixing and placing provisions of Sections 3.5.5.1.1 through 3.5.5.13.

3.5.5.1.1 Concrete shall be proportioned to provide an average compressive strength, f'_{cr}, as prescribed in Section 3.5.5.3.2 and shall satisfy the durability criteria of Section 5.4. Concrete shall be produced to minimize the frequency of strength tests below f'_c, as prescribed in 3.5.5.6.3.3. For concrete designed and constructed in accordance with the code, f'_c shall not be less than 2500 psi. However, for design of earthquake-resistant structures, specified compressive strength of concrete, f'_c, shall not be less than 3000 psi (see also Section 21.1.3 of the ACI Code).

3.5.5.1.2 Requirements for f'_c shall be based on tests of specimens made and tested as prescribed in 3.5.5.6.3.

3.5.5.1.3 Unless otherwise specified, f'_c shall be based on 28-day tests. If other than 28 days, test age for f'_c shall be as indicated in design drawings or specifications.

3.5.5.1.4 Where design criteria in ACI Sections 9.5.2.3, 11.2, and 12.2.4 provide for use of a splitting tensile strength value of concrete, laboratory tests shall be made in accordance with "Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete" (ASTM C 330) to establish a value of fct corresponding to f'_c.

3.5.5.1.5 Splitting tensile strength tests shall not be used as a basis for field acceptance of concrete.

3.5.5.2 Selection of Concrete Proportions

3.5.5.2.1 Proportions of materials for concrete shall be established to provide:

   (a) Workability and consistency to permit concrete to be worked readily into forms and around reinforcement under conditions of placement to be employed, without segregation or excessive bleeding;
   (b) Resistance to special exposures as required by Section 3.5.4.
   (c) Conformance with strength test requirements of Section 3.5.5.6.

3.5.5.2.2 Where different materials are to be used for different portions of proposed work, each combination shall be evaluated.

3.5.5.2.3 Concrete proportions shall be established in accordance with Section 3.5.5.3 or, alternatively Section 3.5.5.4, and shall meet applicable requirements of Section 3.5.4.

3.5.5.3 Proportioning on the Basis of Field Experience or Trial Mixtures, or Both

3.5.5.3.1 Sample standard deviation

3.5.5.3.1.1 Where a concrete production facility has test records, a sample standard deviation, ss, shall be established. Test records from which ss is calculated:

   (a) Shall represent materials, quality control procedures, and conditions similar to those expected and changes in materials and proportions within the test records shall not have been more restricted than those for proposed work;
   (b) Shall represent concrete produced to meet a specified compressive strength or strengths within 1000s psi of f'_c;

(c) Shall consist of at least 30 consecutive tests or two groups of consecutive tests totaling at least 30 tests as defined in Section 3.5.5.6.2.4 except as provided in Section 3.5.5.3.1.2.

3.5.5.3.1.2 Where a concrete production facility does not have test records meeting requirements of Section 3.5.5.3.1.1, but does have a record based on 15 to 29 consecutive tests, a sample standard deviation s_s shall be established as the product of the calculated sample standard deviation and modification factor of Table 3.5.1. To be acceptable, test records shall meet requirements (a) and (b) of Section 3.5.5.3.1.1, and represent only a single record of consecutive tests that span a period of not less than 45 calendar days.

TABLE 3.5.1 MODIFICATION FACTOR FOR SAMPLE STANDARD DEVIATION WHEN LESS THAN 30 TESTS ARE AVAILABLE

No. of tests*	Modification factor for sample standard deviation†
Less than 15	Use Table 3.5.2
15	1.16
20	1.08
25	1.03
30 or more	1.00

**Interpolate for intermediate numbers of tests.

†Modified sample standard deviation, s_s, to be used to determine required average strength, f'_{cr}, from Section 3.5.5.3.2.1.

3.5.5.3.2 Required average strength

3.5.5.3.2.1 Required average compressive strength f'_{cr} used as the basis for selection of concrete proportions shall be determined from Table 3.5.2 using the sample standard deviation, s_s, calculated in accordance with Section 3.5.5.3.1.1 or Section 3.5.5.3.1.2.

TABLE 3.5.2 REQUIRED AVERAGE COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH WHEN DATA ARE AVAILABLE TO ESTABLISH A SAMPLE STANDARD DEVIATION

Specified compressive strength, psi	Required average compressive strength, psi
$f'_c \leq 5000$	Use the larger value computed from Eq. (5-1) and (5-2) $f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1.34 s_s$ (5-1) $f'_{cr} = f'_c + 2.33 s_s 500$ (5-2)
$f'_c > 5000$	Use the larger value computed from Eq. (5-1) and (5-3) $f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1.34 s_s$ (5-1) $f'_{cr} = 0.90 f'_c + 2.33 s_s$ (5-3)

3.5.5.3.2.2 When a concrete production facility does not have field strength test records for calculation of s_s meeting requirements of Section 3.5.5.3.1.1 or

Section 3.5.5.3.1.2, $\mathbf{f'_{cr}}$ shall be determined from Table 3.5.3 and documentation ofaveragestrengthshallbeinaccordancewith requirements of Section 3.5.5.3.3.

TABLE 3.5.3 REQUIRED AVERAGE COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH WHEN DATA ARE NOT AVAILABLE TO ESTABLISH A SAMPLE STANDARD DEVIATION

Specified compressive strength, psi	Required average compressive strength, psi
$f'_c < 3000$	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1000$
$3000 \leq f'_c \leq 5000$	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1200$
$f'_c > 5000$	$f'_{cr} = 1.1 f'_c + 700$

3.5.5.3.3 Documentationofaveragecompressivestrength

Documentationthatproposedconcreteproportions will produce an average compressive strength equal to or greater than required average compressive strength f'_{cr} (see Section 3.5.5.3.2) shallconsistofafieldstrengthtest record, several strength test records, or trial mixtures.

3.5.5.3.3.1 Whentestrecordsareusedtodemonstratethatproposedconcreteproportionsw illproduce $\mathbf{f'_{cr}}$ (see Section 3.5.5.3.2),suchrecordsshallrepresentmaterials andconditionssimilartothoseexpected.Changesin materials, conditions, andproportionswithinthetest recordsshallnothavebeenmorerestrictedthanthose forproposedwork.Forthepurposeofdocumenting averagestrengthpotential,testrecordsconsistingof lessthan30but notlessthan10consecutivetestsare acceptableprovidedtestrecordsencompassaperiod oftimenotlessthan45days. Requiredconcreteproportionsshallbepermittedtobeestablishedbyinterpolationbet weenthestrengthsandproportionsoftwo ormoretestrecords, eachofwhichmeetsother requirementsofthissection.

3.5.5.3.3.2 Whenanacceptablerecordoffieldtest resultsisnotavailable, concreteproportionsestablishedfromtrialmixturesmeetingthe followingrestrictionsshallbepermitted:

(a)Materials shall be those for proposed work;

(b) Trial mixtures having proportions and consistencies required for proposed work shall be madeusing at least three different water-cementitious materials ratios or cementitious materials contents that will produce a range of strengths encompassing $\mathbf{f'_{cr}}$;

(c) Trial mixtures shall be designed to produce a slump within $\pm$ 0.75 in. of maximum permitted, and for air-entrained concrete, within $\pm$ 0.5 percent of maximum allowable air content;

(d) Foreachwater-cementitiousmaterialsratioor cementitiousmaterialscontent,atleastthreetest specimens for each test age shall be made and cured inaccordancewith"MethodofMakingandCuring Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory" (ASTMC 192) or the corresponding British Standard practice (BS 1881-108) for cube specimens. Specimens shall be tested at 28 days or at test age designated for determination of $\mathbf{f'_c}$;

(e) Fromresultsof testsacurveshallbe plottedshowingtherelationshipbetweenwater-cementitious

materials ratio or cementitious materials content and compressive strength at designated test age;

(f) Maximum water-cementitious material ratio or minimum cementitious materials contentforconcretetobeusedinproposedworkshallbethat shown by the curve to produce f'_{cr} required by Section 3.5.5.3.2, unless a lower water-cementitious materials ratio or higher strength is required by Section 3.5.4.

3.5.5.4 Proportioning without Field Experience or Trial Mixtures

3.5.5.4.1 If data required by Section 3.5.5.3 are not available, concreteproportionsshallbebaseduponother experienceorinformation,ifapprovedbytheregistered designprofessional.Therequiredaveragecompressive strength f'_{cr} of concrete produced with materials similartothoseproposedforuseshallbeatleast 1200 psi greater than f'_c . This alternative shall not be used if f'_c is greater than 5000 psi.

3.5.5.4.2 Concreteproportionedbythissectionshall conformtothedurabilityrequirementsofSection 3.5.4 and to compressive strength test criteria of Section 3.5.5.6.

3.5.5.5 Average Compressive Strength Reduction

As data become available during construction, it shall be permitted to reduce the amount by which the required average concrete strength, f'_{cr}, must exceed f'_c, provided:

(a) Thirty or more test results are available and average of test results exceeds that required by Section 3.5.5.3.2.1, usingasamplestandarddeviationcalculatedin accordance with Section 3.5.5.3.1.1; or

(b) Fifteen to 29 test results are available and average of test results exceeds that required by Section 3.5.5.3.2.1 usingasamplestandarddeviationcalculatedin accordance with Section 3.5.5.3.1.2; and

(c) Special exposure requirements of Section 3.5.4 are met.

3.5.5.6 EvaluationandAcceptanceofConcrete

3.5.5.6.1 Concrete shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of Sections 3.5.5.6.2 through 3.5.5.6.5. Qualified field testingtechniciansshallperformtestsonfreshconcreteatthejobsite,preparespecimen srequiredfor curing under field conditions, prepare specimens requiredfortestinginthelaboratory,andrecordthe temperatureofthefreshconcretewhenpreparing specimens for strength tests. Qualified laboratory technicians shall perform all required laboratory tests.

3.5.5.6.2 Frequencyoftesting

3.5.5.6.2.1 Samples for strength tests of each class ofconcreteplacedeachdayshallbetakennotless than once a day, nor less than once for each 150 yd3ofconcrete,norlessthanonceforeach5000ft2of surface area for slabs or walls.

3.5.5.6.2.2 On a given project, if total volume of concrete is such that frequency of

testing required by Section 3.5.5.6.2.1 would provide less than five strength tests for a givenclassofconcrete,testsshallbemadefrom at leastfiverandomlyselectedbatchesorfromeach batch if fewer than five batches are used.

3.5.5.6.2.3 Whentotalquantityofagivenclassof concrete is less than 50 yd3, strength tests are not required when evidence of satisfactory strength is submitted to and approved by the building official.

3.5.5.6.2.4A strength test shall be the average of the strengths of two specimens made from the same sample of concrete and tested at 28 days or at test age designated for determination of $\mathbf{f_c'}$.

3.5.5.6.3 Laboratory-curedspecimens

3.5.5.6.3.1 Samples for strength tests shall be taken in accordance with "Method of SamplingFreshly Mixed Concrete" (ASTM C 172) or the corresponding British Standard practice (BS 1881-125) for cube specimens.

3.5.5.6.3.2 Specimens for strength tests shall be molded and laboratory-cured in accordance with "Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the laboratory" (ASTM C192) (or BS 1881-108 for cube specimens) and tested in accordance with "Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens" (ASTM C39) or the corresponding British Standard practice for cube specimens (BS 1881-116).

3.5.5.6.3.3 Strength level of an individual class of concrete shall be considered satisfactory if both of the following requirements are met:

(a) Every arithmetic average of any three consecutive strength tests equals or exceeds f_c';

(b) No individual strength test (average of two cylinders) falls below $f_c'$by more than 500 psi when $f_c'$is 5000 psi or less; or by more than 0.10f'c when f'c is more than 5000 psi.

3.5.5.6.3.4 If either of the requirements of Section 3.5.5.6.3.3 is not met, steps shall be taken to increase the average of subsequent strength test results. Requirements of Section 3.5.5.6.5 shall be observed if requirement of Section 3.5.5.6.3.3(b) is not met.

3.5.5.6.3.5 For conversion of cube strength to cylinder strengths and vice versa, the following relationships shall be used, where f'c is the cylinder strength.

$$(a) f_c', cube \cong f_c' \div 0.78 \ (f_c' \leq 3500 \ psi)$$
$$(b) f_c', cube \cong f_c' \div 0.80 \ (3500 < f_c' \leq 5000 \ psi)$$
$$(c) \ f_c', cube \cong f_c' \div 0.81 \ (5000 < f_c' \leq 6000 \ psi)$$
$$(d) f_c', cube \cong f_c' \div 0.83 \ (6000 < f_c' \leq 7500 \ psi)$$

3.5.5.6.4 Field-curedspecimens

3.5.5.6.4.1 If required by the building official, results of strength tests of specimens cured under field conditions shall be provided.

3.5.5.6.4.2 Field-cured specimens shall be cured under field conditions in accordance with "Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field" (ASTM C31) or the corresponding British Standard practice (BS 1881-108) for cube specimens.

3.5.5.6.4.3 Field-cured test cylinders shall be molded at the same time and from the same samples as laboratory-cured test specimens.

3.5.5.6.4.4 Procedures for protecting and curing concreteshallbeimprovedwhenstrengthoffield-cured specimensattestagedesignatedfordeterminationof f'_c is less than 85 percent of that of companion laboratory-curedspecimens.The 85 percent limitation shall not apply if field-cured cylinder strengthexceeds f'_c bymore than 500 psi.

3.5.5.6.5 Investigationoflow-strengthtestresults

3.5.5.6.5.1 If any strength test (see Section 3.5.5.6.2.4) of laboratory-cured cylinders falls below f'_c by more than the values given in Section 3.5.5.6.3.3(b) or if tests of field-cured cylinders indicate deficiencies in protection and curing (seeSection 3.5.5.6.4.4), steps shall be taken to assure that load-carrying capacity of the structure is not jeopardized.

3.5.5.6.5.2 If the likelihood of low-strength concrete is confirmed and calculations indicate that load-carryingcapacityissignificantlyreduced,testsofcores drilledfromtheareainquestioninaccordancewith "MethodofObtainingandTestingDrilledCoresand Sawed Beams of Concrete" (ASTM C42) shall be permitted.In such cases, three cores shall be taken for each strength test that falls below the values given in Section 3.5.5.6.3.3(b).

3.5.5.6.5.3 Cores shall be prepared for transport and storage by wiping drilling water from their surfaces and placing the cores in watertight bags or containers immediately after drilling. Cores shall be tested no earlier than 48 hours and not later than 7 days after coring unless approved by the registered design professional.

3.5.5.6.5.4 Concrete in an area represented by core tests shall be considered structurally adequate if the average of three cores is equal to at least 85 percent of f'_c and if no single core is less than 75 percent of f'_c. Additional testing of cores extracted from locations representedbyerraticcorestrengthresultsshallbe permitted.

3.5.5.6.5.5 IfcriteriaofSection3.5.5.6.5.4arenotmetandifthe structuraladequacyremainsindoubt,theresponsible authorityshallbepermittedtoorderastrengthevaluationinaccordancewithChapter2 0 of ACI Codeforthequestionableportionofthestructure,ortakeotherappropriate action.

3.5.5.7PreparationofEquipmentandPlace of Deposit

3.5.5.7.1Preparationbeforeconcreteplacementshall includethefollowing:

(a) All equipment for mixing and transporting concrete shall be clean;

(b) All debris shall be removed from spaces to be occupied by concrete;

(c) Forms shall be properly coated;

(d) Masonry filler units that will be in contact with concrete shall be well drenched;

(e) Reinforcement shall be thoroughly clean of deleterious coatings;

(f) Watershallberemovedfromplaceofdeposit beforeconcreteisplacedunlessa tremieistobe used or unless otherwise permitted by the building official;

(g) All laitance and other unsound material shall be removed before additional concrete is placed against hardened concrete.

3.5.5.8 Mixing

3.5.5.8.1 All concrete shall be mixed until there is a uniform distribution of materials and shall be discharged completely before mixer is recharged.

3.5.5.8.2 Ready-mixed concrete shall be mixed and delivered in accordance with requirements of "Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete" (ASTM C94) or "Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing" (ASTM C685).

3.5.5.8.3 Job-mixedconcreteshallbemixedinaccordancewiththefollowing:

(a) Mixingshallbedoneinabatchmixerof approved type;

(b) Mixer shall be rotated at a speed recommended by the manufacturer;

(c) Mixing shall be continued for at least 1½ minutesafterallmaterialsareinthedrum, unlessa shorter time is shown to be satisfactory by the mixing uniformity tests of"Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete" (ASTM C 94);

(d)Materials handling, batching, and mixing shall conform to applicable provisions of "Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete" (ASTM C94);

(e) A detailed record shall be kept to identify:

(1) number of batches produced;

(2) proportions of materials used;

(3) approximate location of final deposit in structure;

(4) time and date of mixing and placing.

3.5.5.9 Conveying

3.5.5.9.1 Concrete shall be conveyed from mixer to place of final deposit by methods that will prevent separation or loss of materials.

3.5.5.9.2 Conveying equipment shall be capable of providing a supply of concrete at site of placement without separation of ingredients and without interruptions sufficient to permit loss of plasticity between successive increments.

3.5.5.10 Depositing

3.5.5.10.1 Concrete shall be deposited as nearly as practical in its final position to avoid segregation due to rehandling or flowing.

3.5.5.10.2 Concreting shall be carried on at such a rate that concrete is at all times plastic and flows readily into spaces between reinforcement.

3.5.5.10.3 Concrete that has partially hardened or been contaminated by foreign materials shall not be deposited in the structure.

3.5.5.10.4 Retempered concrete or concrete that has been remixed after initial set shall not be used unless approved by the engineer.

3.5.5.10.5 After concreting is started, it shall be carried on as a continuous operation until placing of a panel or section, as defined by its boundaries or predetermined joints, is completed except as permitted or prohibited by Section 3.6.4 of ACI Code.

3.5.5.10.6 Top surfaces of vertically formed lifts shall be generally level.

3.5.5.10.7 When construction joints are required, joints shall be made in accordance with Section 3.6.4 of ACI Code.

3.5.5.10.8 All concrete shall be thoroughly consolidated by suitable means during placement and shall be thoroughly worked around reinforcement and embedded fixtures and into corners of forms.

3.5.5.11 Curing

3.5.5.11.1 Concrete (other than high-early-strength) shall be maintained above 50 F and in a moist condition for at least the first 7 days after placement, except when cured in accordance with Section 3.5.5.11.3.

3.5.5.11.2 High-early-strength concrete shall be maintained above 50 F and in a moist condition for at least the first 3 days, except when cured in accordance with Section 3.5.5.11.3.

3.5.5.11.3 Accelerated curing

3.5.5.11.3.1 Curing by high-pressure steam, steam at atmospheric pressure, heat and moisture, or other accepted processes, shall be permitted to accelerate strength gain and reduce time of curing.

3.5.5.11.3.2 Accelerated curing shall provide a compressive strength of the concrete at the load stage considered at least equal to required design strength at that load stage.

3.5.5.11.3.3 Curing process shall be such as to produce concrete with a durability at least equivalent to the curing method of Section 3.5.5.11.1 or Section 3.5.5.11.2.

3.5.5.11.4 When required by the engineer or architect, supplementary strength tests in accordance with Section 3.5.5.6.4 shall be performed to assure that curing is satisfactory.

3.5.5.12 Cold Weather Requirements

3.5.5.12.1 Adequate equipment shall be provided for heating concrete materials and protecting concrete during freezing or near-freezing weather.

3.5.5.12.2 All concrete materials and all reinforcement, forms, fillers, and ground with which concrete is to come in contact shall be free from frost.

3.5.5.12.3 Frozen materials or materials containing ice shall not be used.

3.5.5.13 Hot Weather Requirements

During hot weather, proper attention shall be given to ingredients, production methods, handling, placing, protection, and curing to prevent excessive concrete temperatures or water evaporation that could impair required strength or serviceability of the member or structure.

3.5.6 Formwork, Embedded Pipes and Construction Joints

3.5.6.1 Formwork

The design, fabrication and erection of forms shall comply with ACI 318, Section 3.6.1.

3.5.6.2 Removal of Forms, Shores and Reshores

The removal of forms and shores, including from slabs and beams (except where cast on the ground), and the installation of reshores shall comply with ACI 318, Section 3.6.2.

3.5.6.3 Conduits and Pipes Embedded in Concrete

Conduits, pipes and sleeves of any material not harmful to concrete and within the limitations of ACI 318, Section 3.6.3, are permitted to be embedded in concrete with approval of the registered design professional.

3.5.6.4 Construction Joints.

Construction joints, including their location, shall comply with the provisions of ACI 318, Section 3.6.4.

3.5.7 Details of Reinforcement

3.5.7.1 Standard Hooks

Thetermstandardhookasusedinthis PART shall mean one of the following:

3.5.7.1.1 180-deg bend plus 4db extension, but not less than 2½ in. at free end of bar.

3.5.7.1.2 90-deg bend plus 12db extension at free end of bar.

3.5.7.1.3 For stirrup and tie hooks

(a) No.5 bar and smaller, 90-deg bend plus 6db extension at free end of bar; or
(b) No.6, No.7, and No.8 bar, 90-deg bend plus 12db extension at free end of bar; or
(c) No. 8 bar and smaller, 135-deg bend plus 6db extension at free end of bar.

3.5.7.1.4 Seismic hooks as defined in Section 21.1 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.2 Minimum Bend Diameters

3.5.7.2.1 Diameter of bend measured on the inside of the bar, other than for stirrups and ties in sizes No.3 through No.5, shall not be less than the values in Table 3.5.4.

3.5.7.2.2 Inside diameter of bend for stirrups and ties shall not be less than 4db for No. 5 bar and smaller. For bars larger than No. 5, diameter of bend shall be in accordance with Table 3.5.4.

3.5.7.2.3 Inside diameter of bend in welded wire reinforcement for stirrups and ties shall not be less than 4db for deformed wire larger than D6 and 2db for all other wires. Bends with inside diameter of less than 8db shall not be less than 4db from nearest welded intersection.

TABLE 3.5.4 MINIMUM DIAMETERS OF BEND

Bar size	Minimum diameter
No.3 through No.8	$6d_b$
No.9, No.10, and No.11	$8d_b$
No.14 and No.18	$10d_b$

3.5.7.3 Bending

3.5.7.3.1 All reinforcement shall be bent cold, unless otherwise permitted by the engineer.

3.5.7.3.2 Reinforcement partially embedded in concrete shall not be field bent, except as shown on the design drawings or permitted by the engineer.

3.5.7.4 Surface Conditions of Reinforcement

3.5.7.4.1 At the time concrete is placed, reinforcement shall be free from mud, oil, or other nonmetallic coatings that decrease bond. Epoxy-coating of steel reinforcement in accordance with standards referenced in Section 3.5.3.7 and Section 3.5.3.8 of ACI Code shall be permitted.

3.5.7.4.2 Except for prestressing steel, steel reinforcementwithrust,millscale,oracombinationofboth shallbeconsideredsatisfactory,providedtheminimumdimensions(includingheight ofdeformations) andweightofahand-wire-brushedtestspecimen complywithapplicableASTMspecificationsreferenced in Section 3.5 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.4.3 Prestressing steel shall be clean and free of oil, dirt, scale, pitting and excessive rust. A light coating of rust shall be permitted.

3.5.7.5 Placing Reinforcement

3.5.7.5.1 Reinforcement, including tendons, and post-tensioning ducts shall be accurately placed and adequately supported before concrete is placed, and shall besecuredagainstdisplacementwithintolerances permitted in Section 7.5.2 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.5.2 Unless otherwise specified by the registered design professional, reinforcement, including tendons, andpost-tensioningductsshallbeplacedwithinthe tolerances in Section 7.5.2.1 and Section 7.5.2.2 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.5.2.1 Tolerance for d and minimum concrete cover in flexural members, walls, and compression members shall be as follows:

	Tolerance on d	Tolerance on minimum concrete cover
d≤ 8 in.	±3/8 in.	-3/8 in.
d> 8 in.	±1/2 in.	-1/2 in.

except that tolerance for the clear distance to formed soffits shall be minus 1/4 in. and tolerance for cover shall not exceed minus 1/3 the minimum concrete cover required in the design drawings and specifications.

3.5.7.5.2.2 Tolerance for longitudinal location of bends and ends of reinforcement shall be $\pm$ **2 in.**, except the tolerance shall be $\pm$ ½ in. at the discontinuous ends of brackets and corbels, and $\pm$ 1 in. at the discontinuous ends of other members. The tolerance for minimum concrete cover ofSection 7.5.2.1 of ACI Code shall also apply at discontinuous ends of members.

3.5.7.5.3 Welded wire reinforcement (with wire size not greater than W5 or D5) used in slabs not exceeding 10 ft in span shall be permitted to be curved from a point near the top of slab over the support to a point near the bottom of slab at mid-span, provided such reinforcement is either continuous over, or securely anchored at support.

3.5.7.5.4 Welding of crossing bars shall not be permitted for assembly of reinforcement unless authorized by the engineer.

3.5.7.6 Spacing Limits for Reinforcement

3.5.7.6.1 The minimum clear spacing between parallel bars in a layer shall be d_b, but not less than 1 *in*. See also Section 3.3.2 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.6.2 Where parallel reinforcement is placed in two or more layers, bars in the upper layers shall be placed directly above bars in the bottom layer with clear distance between layers not less than 1 in.

3.5.7.6.3 In spirally reinforced or tied reinforced compression members, clear distance between longitudinal bars shall be not less than $1.5d_b$ nor less than 1½ in. See also Section 3.3.2 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.6.4 Clear distance limitation between bars shall apply also to the clear distance between a contact lap splice and adjacent splices or bars.

3.5.7.6.5 In walls and slabs other than concrete joist construction, primary flexural reinforcement shall not be spaced farther apart than three times the wall or slab thickness, nor farther apart than 18 in.

3.5.7.6.6 Bundled bars

3.5.7.6.6.1 Groups of parallel reinforcing bars bundled in contact to act as a unit shall be limited to four in any one bundle.

3.5.7.6.6.2 Bundled bars shall be enclosed within stirrups or ties.

3.5.7.6.6.3 Bars larger than No. 11 shall not be bundled in beams.

3.5.7.6.6.4 Individual bars within a bundle terminated within the span of flexural members shall terminate at different points with at least $40d_b$ stagger.

3.5.7.6.6.5 Where spacing limitations and minimum concrete cover are based on bar diameter, d_b, a unit of bundled bars shall be treated as a single bar of a diameter derived from the equivalent total area.

3.5.7.6.7 Tendons and ducts

3.5.7.6.7.1 Centre-to-centre spacing of pretensioning tendons at each end of a member shall be not less than $4d_b$ for strands, or $5d_b$ for wire, except that if specified compressive strength of concrete at time of initial prestress, $\mathbf{f'_{ci}}$ is 4000 psi or more, minimum centre-to-centre spacing of strands shall be 1¾ in. for strands of ½ *in*. nominal diameter or smaller and 2 *in*. for strands of 0.6 *in*. nominal diameter. See also Section 3.3.2. Closer vertical spacing and bundling of tendons shall be permitted in the middle portion of a span.

3.5.7.6.7.2 Bundling of post-tensioning ducts shall be permitted if shown that concrete can be satisfactorily placed and if provision is made to prevent the prestressing steel, when tensioned, from breaking through the duct.

3.5.7.7 Concrete Protection for Reinforcement

3.5.7.7.1 Cast-in-place concrete (nonprestressed)

The following minimum concrete cover shall be provided for reinforcement, but shall not be less than required by Section 7.7.5 and Section 7.7.7 of ACI Code:

Minimum cover, in.

(a) Concrete cast against and
    permanently exposed to earth 3
(b) Concrete exposed to earth or weather:
    No. 6 through No. 18 bars.. 2
    No. 5 bar, W31 or D31 wire,

and smaller 1½
(c)Concrete not exposed to weather or in contact with ground:
  Slabs, walls, joists:
No. 14 and No. 18 bars 1½
No. 11 bar and smaller 3/4
Beams, columns:
Primary reinforcement, ties,
stirrups, spirals 1½
Shells, folded plate members:
No. 6 bar and larger.. 3/4
No. 5 bar, W31 or D31 wire,
and smaller .... ½

3.5.7.7.2 Cast-In-place concrete (prestressed)

The following minimum concrete cover shall be provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement, ducts, and end fitting, but shall not be less than required by Section 7.7.5, Section 7.7.5.1, and Section 7.7.7 of ACI Code.
Minimum cover, in.

(a) Concrete cast against and
  permanently exposed to earth 3
(b) Concrete exposed to earth or weather:
  Wall panels, slabs, joists.. 1
  Other members.. 1½
(c) Concrete not exposed to weather or in contact with ground:
  Slabs, walls, joists ……………………………………… 3/4
  Beams, columns
  Primary reinforcement,……………………………… 1½
  Ties, stirrups, spirals 1
  Shells, folded plate members:
  No. 5 bar, W31 or D31 wire
  and smaller,... 3/8
  Other reinforcement... $d_b$but not less than¾

3.5.7.7.3 Precast concrete (manufactured under plant control conditions)

The following minimum concrete cover shall be provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement, ducts, and end fittings, but shall not be less than required by Section 7.7.5, Section 7.7.5.1, and Section 7.7.7 of ACI Code:
Minimum cover, in.

(a) Concrete exposed to earth or weather:
  Wall panels:
  No.14 and No. 18 bars, prestressing
  tendons larger than 1½ in. diameter.. 1½
  No. 11 bar and smaller, prestressing
  tendons 1½ in. diameter and smaller,
  W31 and D31 wire and smaller.. 3/4
Other members:

No. 14 and No. 18 bars, prestressing
tendons larger than 1½ in. diameter   2
No.6 through No. 11 bars, prestressing
tendons larger than 5/8 in. diameter
through 1½ in. diameter 1½
No. 5 bar and smaller, prestressing
tendons 5/8 in. diameter and smaller,
W31 and D31 wire, and smaller 1¼

(b) Concrete not exposed to weather or in contact with ground:

Slabs, walls, joists:
No. 14 and No. 18 bars, prestressing
tendons larger than 1½ in.
diameter 1¼
Prestressing tendons 1½ in.
diameter and smaller 3/4
No. 11 bar and smaller,
W31 or D31 wire, and smaller 5/8

Beams, columns:

Primaryreinforcement..d_b
but not less than 5/8 and need not exceed 1½
Ties, stirrups, spirals 3/8

Shells, folded plate members:

Prestressing tendons 3/4
No. 6 bar and larger 5/8
No. 5 bar and smaller,
W31 or D31 wire, and smaller 3/8

3.5.7.7.4 Bundledbars

Forbundledbars,minimumconcretecovershallbe
equaltotheequivalentdiameterofthebundle,but need not be greater than 2 *in*.; except for
concrete cast againstandpermanentlyexposedtoearth,where minimum cover shall be 3 *in*.

3.5.7.7.5 Corrosiveenvironments

Incorrosiveenvironmentsorothersevereexposure conditions, amount of concrete protection
shall be suitablyincreased,anddensenessandnon-porosityof protecting concrete shall be
considered, or other protection shall be provided.

3.5.7.7.5.1 For prestressed concrete members exposed to corrosive environments
or other severe exposure conditions, and which are classified as Class T or C
in Section 18.3.3 of ACI Code, minimumcovertotheprestressed
reinforcementshallbeincreased50percent.This requirement shall be permitted
to be waived if the pre-compressed tensile zone is not in tension under
sustained loads.

3.5.7.7.6 Futureextensions

Exposed reinforcement, inserts, and plates intended for bonding with future extensions
shall be protected from corrosion.

3.5.7.7.7Fireprotection

Thickness of cover for fire protection greater than the minimum concrete cover specified in Section 7.7 of ACI Code shall be permitted to be used if required by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.5.7.8 Special Reinforcement Details for Columns

3.5.7.8.1Offsetbars

Offset bent longitudinal bars shall conform to the following:

> **3.5.7.8.1.1**Slope of inclined portion of an offset bar with axis of column shall not exceed 1 in 6.
>
> **3.5.7.8.1.2** Portions of bar above and below an offset shall be parallel to axis of column.
>
> **3.5.7.8.1.3**Horizontal support at offset bends shall be provided by lateral ties, spirals, or parts of the floor construction. Horizontalsupportprovidedshallbe designed to resist 1½ times the horizontal component of the computed force in the inclined portion of an offset bar.Lateral ties or spirals, if used, shall be placed not more than 6 in. from points of bend.
>
> **3.5.7.8.1.4**Offsetbarsshallbebentbeforeplacement in the forms. See Section 5.7.3.
>
> **3.5.7.8.1.5**Where a column face is offset 3 in. or greater, longitudinal bars shall not be offset bent. Separate dowels, lap spliced with the longitudinal bars adjacent to the offset column faces, shall be provided. Lap splices shall conform to Section 12.17 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.8.2Steelcores

Load transfer in structural steel cores of composite compression members shall be provided by the following:

> **3.5.7.8.2.1**Ends of structural steel cores shall be accurately finished to bear at end bearing splices, with positive provision for alignment of one core above the other in concentric contact.
>
> **3.5.7.8.2.2**At end bearing splices, bearing shall be considered effective to transfer not more than 50 per- cent of the total compressive stress in the steel core.
>
> **3.5.7.8.2.3**Transfer of stress between column base and footing shall be designed in accordance with Section 15.8 of ACI Code.
>
> **3.5.7.8.2.4**Base of structural steel section shall be designed to transfer the total load from the entire composite member to the footing; or, the base shall be designed to transfer the load from the steel core only, provided ample concrete section is available for transfer of the portion of the total load carried by the reinforced concrete section to the footing by compression in the concrete and by reinforcement.

3.5.7.9 Connections

> **3.5.7.9.1** At connections of principal framing elements (such as beams and columns), enclosure shall be provided for splices of continuing reinforcement and for anchorage of reinforcement terminating in such connections.
>
> **3.5.7.9.2** Enclosure at connections shall consist of external concrete or internal closed ties, spirals, or stirrups.

3.5.7.10 Lateral Reinforcement for Compression Members

3.5.7.10.1 Lateral reinforcement for compression membersshallconformtotheprovisionsofSection 5.7.10.4and Section 5.7.10.5and,whereshearortorsionreinforcementis required, shall also conform to provisions of Chapter 11 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.10.2 Lateral reinforcement requirements for composite compression members shall conform to Section 10.16 of ACI Code. Lateral reinforcement requirements for tendons shall conform to Section 18.11 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.10.3 It shall be permitted to waive the lateral reinforcementrequirementsofSection 7.10,Section 10.16,andSection 18.11 of ACI Code wheretestsandstructuralanalysisshowadequate strength and feasibility of construction.

3.5.7.10.4Spirals

Spiral reinforcement for compression members shall conform to Section 10.9.3 of ACI Code and to the following:

3.5.7.10.4.1 Spiralsshallconsistofevenlyspaced continuous bar or wire of such size and so assembled to permit handling and placing without distortion from designed dimensions.

3.5.7.10.4.2 Forcast-in-placeconstruction,sizeof spirals shall not be less than 3/8 in. diameter.

3.5.7.10.4.3 Clear spacing between spirals shall not exceed 3 in., nor be less than 1 in. See also Section 3.3.2 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.10.4.4 Anchorage of spiral reinforcement shall be provided by 1½ extra turns of spiral bar or wire at each end of a spiral unit.

3.5.7.10.4.5 Spiral reinforcement shall be spliced, if needed, by any one of the following methods:

> (a)Lapsplicesnotlessthanthelargerof12in. andthelengthindicatedinoneof(1)through(5) below:

>> (1) deformed uncoated bar or wire..........$48d_b$

>> (2) plain uncoated bar or wire.................$72d_b$

>> (3) epoxy-coated deformed bar or wire...$72d_b$

>> (4) plain uncoated bar or wire witha standard stirrup or tie hook in accordance with Section 5.7.1.3 at ends of lapped spiral reinforcement. The hooks shall be embedded within the core confined by the spiral reinforcement..........................$48d_b$

>> (5) epoxy-coated deformed bar or wire with a standard stirrup or tie hook in accordance with Section 5.7.1.3 at ends of lapped spiral reinforcement. The hooks shall be embedded within the core confined by the spiral reinforcement..............................$48d_b$

> (b)Full mechanical or welded splices in accordance with Section 12.14.3 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.10.4.6 Spirals shall extend from top of footing or slab in any storey to level of lowest horizontal reinforcement in members supported above.

3.5.7.10.4.7 Where beams or brackets do not frame into all sides of a column, ties shall extend above termination of spiral to bottom of slab or drop panel.

3.5.7.10.4.8 In columns with capitals, spirals shall extend to a level at which the diameter or width of capital is two times that of the column.

3.5.7.10.4.9 Spirals shall be held firmly in place and true to line.

3.5.7.10.5 Ties

Tie reinforcement for compression members shall conform to the following:

3.5.7.10.5.1 All nonprestressed bars shall be enclosed by lateral ties, at least No. 3 in size for longitudinal bars No.10 or smaller, and at least No. 4 in size for No. 11, No. 14, No. 18, and bundled longitudinal bars. Deformed wire or welded wire reinforcement of equivalent area shall be permitted.

3.5.7.10.5.2 Vertical spacing of ties shall not exceed 16 longitudinal bar diameters, 48 tie bar or wire diameters, or least dimension of the compression member.

3.5.7.10.5.3 Ties shall be arranged such that every corner and alternate longitudinal bar shall have lateral support provided by the corner of a tie with an included angle of not more than 135 degree and no bar shall be farther than 6 in. clear on each side along the tie from such a laterally supported bar. Where longitudinal bars are located around the perimeter of a circle, a complete circular tie shall be permitted.

3.5.7.10.5.4 Ties shall be located vertically not more than one-half a tie spacing above the top of footing or slab in any story, and shall be spaced as provided herein to not more than one-half a tie spacing below the lowest horizontal reinforcement in slab or drop panel above.

3.5.7.10.5.5 Where beams or brackets frame from four directions into a column, termination of ties not more than 3 in. below lowest reinforcement in shallowest of such beams or brackets shall be permitted.

3.5.7.10.5.6 Where anchor bolts are placed in the top of columns or pedestals, the bolts shall be enclosed by lateral reinforcement that also surrounds at least four vertical bars of the column or pedestal. The lateral reinforcement shall be distributed within 5 in. of the top of the column or pedestal, and shall consist of at least two No. 4 or three No. 3 bars.

3.5.7.11 Lateral Reinforcement for Flexural Members

3.5.7.11.1 Compression reinforcement in beams shall be enclosed by ties or stirrups satisfying the size and spacing limitations in Section 5.7.10.5 or by welded wire reinforcement of equivalent area. Such ties or stirrups shall be provided throughout the distance where compression reinforcement is required.

3.5.7.11.2 Lateral reinforcement for flexural framing members subject to stress reversals or to torsion at supports shall consist of closed ties, closed stirrups, or spirals extending around the flexural reinforcement.

3.5.7.11.3 Closed ties or stirrups shall be formed in one piece by overlapping standard stirrup or tie end hooks around a longitudinal bar, or formed in one or two pieces lap spliced with a Class B splice (lap of 1.3ld) or anchored in accordance with Section 12.13 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.12 Shrinkage and Temperature Reinforcement

3.5.7.12.1 Reinforcementforshrinkageandtemperature stresses normal to flexural reinforcement shall be providedinstructuralslabswheretheflexuralreinforcement extends in one direction only.

3.5.7.12.1.1 Shrinkageandtemperaturereinforcementshallbeprovidedinaccordance witheither Section 5.7.12.2 or Section 5.7.12.3.

3.5.7.12.1.2 Where shrinkage and temperature movements are significantly restrained, the requirements of Section 8.2.4 and Section 9.2.3 of ACI Code shall be considered.

3.5.7.12.2 Deformed reinforcement conforming to Section 3.5.3 of ACI Code used for shrinkage and temperature reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with the following:

3.5.7.12.2.1 Area of shrinkage and temperature reinforcement shall provide at least the following ratios of reinforcement area to gross concrete area, but not less than 0.0014:

(a) Slabs where Grade 40 or 50 deformed bars are used.......... 0.0020

(b) Slabs where Grade 60 deformed bars or welded wire reinforcement are used............... 0.0018

(c) Slabs where reinforcement with yield stress exceeding 60,000 psi measured at a yield strain of 0.35 percent is used…$0.0018 \times \dfrac{60{,}000}{f_y}$

3.5.7.12.2.2 Shrinkage and temperature reinforcement shall be spaced not farther apart than five times the slab thickness, nor farther apart than 18 in.

3.5.7.12.2.3 At all sections where required, reinforcement to resist shrinkage and temperature stresses shall developf_y in tension in accordance with Chapter 12 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.12.3 Prestressing steel conforming to Section 3.5.5 of ACI Code used for shrinkage and temperature reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with the following:

3.5.7.12.3.1 Tendonsshallbeproportionedtoprovideaminimumaveragecompressive stressof 100 psiongrossconcreteareausingeffectiveprestress, after losses, in accordance with Section 18.6 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.12.3.2 Spacing of tendons shall not exceed 6 ft.

3.5.7.12.3.3 Whenspacingoftendonsexceeds54 in., additional bonded shrinkage and temperature reinforcementconformingtoSection 5.7.12.2shallbeprovided between the tendons at slab edges extending from the slab edge for a distance equal to the tendon spacing.

3.5.7.13RequirementsforStructuralIntegrity

3.5.7.13.1 In the detailing of reinforcement and connections, members of a structure shall be effectively tied together to improve integrity of the overall structure.

3.5.7.13.2 For cast-in-place construction, the following shall constitute minimum requirements:

3.5.7.13.2.1 In joist construction, at least one bottom bar shall be continuous or shall be spliced with a Class A tension splice or a mechanical or welded splice satisfying Section 12.14.3 of ACI Code and at non-continuous supports shall be terminated with a standard hook.

3.5.7.13.2.2 Beams along the perimeter of the structure shall have continuous reinforcement consisting of:

> (a) at leastone-sixthofthetensionreinforcement required for negative moment at the support, but not less than two bars; and
>
> (b) at least one-quarter of the tension reinforcement requiredforpositivemomentatmidspan,butnot less than two bars.

3.5.7.13.2.3 Where splices are needed to provide the required continuity, the top reinforcement shall be spliced at or near midspan and bottom reinforcement shall be spliced at or near the support. Splices shall be Class A tension splices or mechanical or welded splices satisfying Section 12.14.3. The continuousreinforcementrequiredinSection 5.7.13.2.2 (a)and Section 5.7.13.2.2 (b)shallbe enclosed by the corners of U-stirrups having not less than 135-deg hooks around the continuous top bars, or byone-piececlosedstirrupswithnotlessthan135- degree hooks around one of the continuous top bars. Stirrups need not be extended through any joints.

3.5.7.13.2.4 Inotherthanperimeterbeams,when stirrupsasdefinedinSection 5.7.13.2.3arenotprovided,at least one-quarter of the positive moment reinforcement required at midspan, but not less than two bars, shall be continuous or shall be spliced over or near the support with a Class A tension splice or a mechanical or welded splice satisfying Section 12.14.3 of ACI Code, and at noncontinuous supports shall be terminated with a standard hook.

3.5.7.13.2.5 Fortwo-wayslabconstruction,see Section 13.3.8.5 of ACI Code.

3.5.7.13.3 For precast concrete construction, tension ties shall be provided in the transverse, longitudinal, and vertical directions and around the perimeter of the structure to effectively tie elements together. The provisions of Section 16.5 of ACI Code shall apply.

3.5.7.13.4 For lift-slab construction, see Section13.3.8.6 and Section18.12.6 of ACI Code.

3.5.8 Modifications to ACI 318-05

3.5.8.1 General
The text of ACI 318-05 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 5.8.1.1 through 5.8.1.20.

3.5.8.1.1 ACI 318, Section 1.3
Modify ACI 318, Section 1.3, by amending Section 1.3.3 to read as follows:

1.3.3- When the ambient temperature falls below 40°F or rises above 95°F, a record shall be kept of the protection given to concrete during placement and curing.

3.5.8.1.2 ACI 318, Section 3.5

Modify ACI 318, Section 3.5, by adding to Section 3.5.3.2 the following:

Deformed reinforcement resisting earthquake-induced flexural and axial forces in frame members, structural walls, and coupling beams, shall comply with ASTM A706. ASTM A615 Grades 40 and 60 reinforcement shall be permitted in these members if:

(a) The actual yield strength based on mill tests does not exceed f_y by more than 18,000 psi; and

(b) The ratio of the actual tensile strength to the actual yield strength is not less than 1.25 (see also ACI 318 Section 21.1.5.2).

3.5.8.1.3. ACI 318, Section 8.1

Modify ACI 318, Section 8.1, by renumbering Section 8.1.3 as Section 8.1.4 and adding new Section 8.1.3 to read as follows:

8.1.3 Design of reinforced concrete using the Allowable Stress Design method as given in APPENDIX A- ALTERNATIVE DESIGN METHOD of ACI 318-99 and reprinted as APPENDIX A in this SECTION shall be permitted. Limitations for the use of this method shall be specified by the local authority department.

3.5.8.1.4 ACI 318, Section 9.3

Modify ACI 318, Section 9.3, by changing the $\emptyset$ values in Section 9.3.2.1 to 9.3.2.7 to read as follows:

9.3.2.1-Tension-controlled sections, as

defined in Section 10.3.4 (see also Section *9.3.2.7) of ACI Code 0.80*

9.3.2.2- Compression-controlled sections, as defined in Section 10.3.3 of ACI Code:

(a) Members with spiral reinforcement conforming to Section 10.9.3 of ACI Code 0.67

(b) Other reinforced members...0.62

For sections in which the net tensile strain in the extreme tension steel at normal strength, $\in_t$, is between the limits for compression-controlled and tension-controlled sections, $\emptyset$ shall be permitted to be linearly increased from that for compression-controlled sections to 0.80 as $\in_t$ increases from the compression-controlled strain limit to 0.005.

Alternatively, when Appendix B is used, for members in which f_y does not exceed 60,000 psi, with symmetric reinforcement, and with (d-d')/h not less than 0.70, $\emptyset$ shall be permitted to be increased linearly to 0.80 as $\emptyset P_n$ decreases from 0.10 $f'_c A_g$ to zero. For other reinforced members, $\emptyset$ shall be permitted to be increased linearly to 0.80 as $\emptyset P_n$ decreases from 0.10 $f'_c A_g$ or $\emptyset P_b$, whichever is smaller, to zero.

9.3.2.3-Shear and torsion..0.75

9.3.2.4- Bearing on concrete (except for post-tensioned anchorage zones and strut-and-tie models)...0.60

9.3.2.5- Post-tensioned anchorage zones... 0.80

9.3.2.6- Strut-and –tie models (Appendix A),and struts, ties, nodal zones, and bearing

areas in such models…………………………………………………………………………………..………0.70

9.3.2.7- Flexural sections in pretensioned members where strand embedment is less than the development length as provided in Section 12.9.1.1 of ACI Code:
(a) From the end of the member to the end of the transfer length……………… 0.70
(b) From the end of the transfer length to the end of the development length ∅shall be permitted to be linearly increased ……………………………………from 0.90 to 0.85

Where bonding of a strand does not extend to the end of the member, strand embedment shall be assumed to begin at the end of the debonded length. See also Section 12.9.3 of ACI Code.

3.5.8.1.5 ACI 318, Section 10.5

Modify ACI 318, Section 10.5, by adding new Section 10.5.5 to read as follows:

10.5.5In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, beams in ordinary moment frames forming part of the seismic-force-resisting system shall have at least two main flexural reinforcing bars continuously top and bottom throughout the beam and continuous through or developed within exteriorcolumnsor boundaryelements.

3.5.8.1.6 ACI 318, Section 11.11

Modify ACI 318, Section 11.11, by changing its title to read as shown below and by adding new Section 11.11.3 to read as follows:

11.11– Special provisions for columns.
11.11.3 –In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, columns of ordinary moment frames having a clear height-to-maximum-plan-dimension ratio of five or less shall be designed for shear in accordance with Section 21.12.3.

3.5.8.1.7 ACI 318, Section 21.1

Modify existing definitions and add the following definitions to ACI 318, Section 21.1.

DESIGN DISPLACEMENT. Total lateral displacement expected for the design-basis earthquake, as specified by Section 12.8.6 of ASCE 7.

DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter22 of ACI Code, including Section 22.6.7.

ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL.A precast wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 18.

ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.A cast-in-place wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 18 of ACI Code.

ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL.A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 22 of ACI Code, excluding 22.6.7.

WALL PIER.A wallsegmentwithahorizontal length-to-thickness ratio of at least 2.5, but not exceeding 6, whose clear height is at least two times its horizontal length.

3.5.8.1.8 ACI 318,Section 21.2.1

Modify ACI 318 Sections 21.2.1.2, 21.2.1.3 and 21.2.1.4, to read as follows:

21.2.1.2For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, provisions of Chapters 1 through 18 and 22 of ACI Code shall apply except as modified by the provisions of this SECTION. Where the seismic design loads are computed using provisions for intermediate or special concrete systems, the requirementsofChapter21 of ACI Codefor intermediate or special systems, as applicable, shall be satisfied.

21.2.1.3For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, intermediate or special moment frames, intermediate precast structural walls or ordinary or special reinforced concrete structural walls shall be used to resist seismic forces induced by earthquake motions. Where the design seismic loads are computed using provisions for special concrete systems, the requirements of Chapter 21 of ACI Code for special systems, as applicable, shall be satisfied.

21.2.1.4For structures assigned to SeismicDesign Category D, E or F, special moment frames, special reinforced concrete structural walls, diaphragms and trusses and foundations complying with Sections 21.2 through 21.10 or intermediate precast structural walls complying with Section 21.13 shall be used to resist forces induced by earthquake motions. Members not proportioned to resist earthquake forces shall comply with Section 21.11.

3.5.8.1.9 ACI 318, Section 21.2.5

Modify ACI 318, Section 21.2.5, by renumbering as Section *21.2.5.1 and adding new Section 21.2.5.2 to read as follows:*

21.2.5Reinforcementinmembersresisting earthquake-induced forces.

21.2.5.1Except as permitted in Section 21.2.5.2, reinforcement resisting earthquake-induced flexural and axial forces in frame members and in structural wall boundary elements shall comply with ASTM A 706. ASTM 615, Grades 40 and 60 reinforcement, shall be permitted in these members if (a) the actual yield strength based on mill tests does not exceed the specified yield,f_y, strength by more than 18,000 psi (124 MPa) [retests shall not exceed this value by more than an additional 3,000 psi (21 MPa)], and (b) the ratio of the actual tensile strength to the actual yield strength is not less than 1.25. For computing shear strength, the value off$_{yt}$for transverse reinforcement, including spiral reinforcement, shall not exceed 60,000 psi (414 MPa).

21.2.5.2Prestressing steel shall be permitted in flexural members of frames, provided the average prestress, f_{pc}, calculated for an area equal to the member's shortest cross-sectional dimension multiplied by the perpendicular dimension shall be the lesser of 700 psi(4.83 MPa) or f_c /6 at locations of nonlinear action where prestressing steel is used in members of frames.

3.5.8.1.10 ACI 318, Section 21.2

Modify ACI 318, Section 21.2, by adding new Section 21.2.9 to read as follows:

21.2.9Anchoragesfor unbonded post-tensioning tendons resisting earthquake induced forces in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall withstand, without failure, 50 cycles of loading ranging between40and85percentofthespecifiedtensile strength of the prestressing steel.

3.5.8.1.11 ACI 318, Section 21.3

Modify ACI 318, Section 21.3, by adding new Section 21.3.2.5 to read as follows:

21.3.2.5Unless the special moment frame is qualified for use through structural testing as required by Section 21.6.3, for flexural members prestressing steel shall not provide more than one-quarter of the strength for either positive or negative moment at the critical section in a plastic hinge location and shall be anchored at or beyond the exterior face of a joint.

3.5.8.1.12 ACI 318, Section 21.7
Modify ACI 318, Section 21.7, by adding new Section 21.7.10 to read as follows:

21.7.10Wall piers and wall segments.
21.7.10.1Wall piers not designed as a part of a special moment frame shall have transverse reinforcement designed to satisfy the requirements in Section 21.7.10.2.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Wall piers that satisfy Section 21.11.
2. Wall piers along a wall line within a story where other shear wall segments provide lateral support to the wall piers and such segments have a total stiffness of at least six times the sum of the stiffness of all the wall piers.

21.7.10.2Transverse reinforcement with seismic hooks at both ends shall be designed to resist the shear forces determined from Section 21.4.5.1. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Transverse reinforcement shall be extended beyond the pier clear height for at least 12 inches (305 mm).
21.7.10.3 Wall segments with a horizontal length-to-thickness ratio less than 2.5 shall be designed as columns.

3.5.8.1.13ACI 318, Section 21.8
Modify Section 21.8.1 to read as follows:

21.8.1Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy all the requirements of Section 21.7 for cast-in-place special structural walls in addition to Sections 21.13.2 through 21.13.4.

3.5.8.1.14 ACI 318, Section 21.10.1.1
Modify ACI 318, Section 21.10.1.1, to read as follows:

21.10.1.1Foundations resistingearthquake-induced forces ortransferring earthquake-inducedforces between a structure and the ground shall comply with the requirements of Section 21.10 and other applicable provisions of ACI 318 unless modified by PART 4 of the Code on soil and foundations.

3.5.8.1.15 ACI 318, Section 21.11
Modify ACI 318, Section 21.11.2.2 to read as follows:

21.11.2.2Members with factored gravity axial forces exceeding $(A_g f_c' / 10)$ shall satisfy Sections 21.4.3, 21.4.4.1(c), 21.4.4.3 and 21.4.5. The maximum longitudinal spacing of ties shall be s_o for the full column height. Spacing, s_o, shall not exceed the smaller of six diameters of the smallest longitudinal bar enclosed and 6 inches (152 mm). Lap splices of longitudinal reinforcement in such members need not satisfy Section 21.4.3.2 in structures where the seismic-force-resisting system does not include special moment frames.

3.5.8.1.16 ACI 318, Section 21.12.5
Modify ACI 318, Section 21.12.5, by adding new Section 21.12.5.6 to read as follows:

21.12.5.6Columns supporting reactions from discontinuous stiff members, such as walls, shall be designed for the special load combinations in Section 2.1.5 of this PART and shall be provided withtransversereinforcementatthespacing,s_o,as defined in Section 21.12.5.2 over their full height beneath the level at which the discontinuity

occurs. This transverse reinforcement shall be extended above and below the column as required in Section 21.4.4.5.

3.5.8.1.17 ACI 318, Section 21.13

Modify ACI 318, Section 21.13, by renumbering Section 21.13.3 to become 21.13.4 and adding new Sections 21.13.3, 21.13.5 and 21.13.6 to read as follows:

21.13.3Except for Type 2 mechanical splices, connection elements that are designed to yield shall be capable of maintaining 80 percent of their design strength at the deformation induced by the design displacement.

21.13.4 –Elements of the connection that are not designed to yield shall develop at least 1.5 S_y.

21.13.5Wall piers not designed as part of a moment frame shall have transverse reinforcement designed to resist the shear forces determined from Section 21.12.3. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm). Transverse reinforcement shall be extended beyond the pier clear height for at least 12 inches (305 mm).

EXCEPTIONS:

> *1. Wall piers that satisfy Section 21.11.*
>
> *2. Wall piers along a wall line within a story where other shear wall segments provide lateral support to the wall piers and such segments have a total stiffness of at least six times the sum of the stiffnesses of all the wall piers.*

21.13.6–Wall segments with a horizontal length-to-thickness ratio less than 2.5 shall be designed as columns.

3.5.8.1.18 ACI 318, Section 22.6

Modify ACI 318, Section 22.6, by adding new Section 22.6.7 to read:

22.6.7Detailed plain concrete structural walls.

22.6.7.1Detailed plain concrete structural walls are walls conforming to the requirements of ordinary structural plain concrete walls and Section 22.6.7.2.

22.6.7.2 - Reinforcement shall be provided as follows:

> *(a) Vertical reinforcement of at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm²) in cross-sectional area shall be provided continuously from support to support at each corner, at each side of each opening and at the ends of walls. The continuous vertical bar required beside an opening is permitted to substitute for one of the two No.5 bars required by Section 22.6.6.5.*
>
> *(b) Horizontal reinforcement at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm²) in cross-sectional area shall be provided:*
>
> > *1. Continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels and at the top of walls;*
> >
> > *2. At the bottom of load-bearing walls or in the top of foundations where doweled to the wall; and*
> >
> > *3. At a maximum spacing of 120 inches (3048 mm).*

Reinforcement at the top and bottom of openings, where used in determining the maximum spacing specified in Item 3 above, shall be continuous in the wall.

3.5.8.1.19 ACI 318, Section 22.10

Delete ACI 318, Section 22.10, and replace with the following:

22.10Plainconcrete in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
22.10.1–Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall not have elements of structural plain concrete, except as follows:

> (a) *Structural plain concrete basement, foundation or other walls below the base are permitted in detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls.Indwellingsassignedto Seismic Design CategoryD or E, the height of the wall shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm), the thickness shall not be less than 7½inches (190 mm), and the wall shall retain nomore than 4feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill. Walls shall have reinforcement in accordance with Section 22.6.6.5.*

> (b) *Isolated footings of plain concrete supporting pedestals or columns are permitted, provided the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member does not exceed the footing thickness.*
>
> *EXCEPTION: In detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height, the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member is permitted to exceed the footing thickness.*

> (c)*Plain concrete footings supporting walls are permitted, provided the footings have at least two continuous longitudinal reinforcing bars. Bars shall not be smaller than No.4 and shall have a total area of not less than 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the footing. For footings that exceed 8 inches(203 mm) in thickness,a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top and bottom of the footing.Continuity of reinforcement shall be provided at corners and intersections.*
>
> *EXCEPTIONS:*
>
> *1. In detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height and constructed with stud-bearing walls, plain concrete footings without longitudinal reinforcement supporting walls are permitted.*
>
> *2. For foundation systems consisting of a plain concrete footing and a plain concrete stem wall,a minimum ofone bar shallbeprovidedatthetopofthe stem wall and at the bottom of the footing.*
>
> *3. Where a slab on ground is cast monolithically with the footing, one No. 5 bar is permitted to be located at either the top of the slab or bottom of the footing.*

3.5.8.1.20 ACI 318, Section D.3.3
Modify ACI 318, Sections D.3.3.2 through D.3.3.5, to read as follows:

D.3.3.2In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, post-installed anchors for use under D.2.3 shall have passed the Simulated Seismic Tests of ACI 355.2.
D.3.3.3In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, the design strength of anchors shall be taken as $0.75\phi N_n$ and $0.75\phi V_n$, where ϕ is given in D.4.4 or D.4.5, and $N_n$and $V_n$are determined in accordance with D.4.1.
D.3.3.4In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, anchors shall be designed to be governed by tensile or shear strength of a ductile steel element, unless D.3.3.5 is satisfied.

D.3.3.5Instead of D.3.3.4, the attachment that the anchor is connecting to the structure shall be designed so that the attachment will undergo ductile yielding at a load level corresponding to anchor forces no greater than the design strength of anchors specified in D.3.3.3, or the minimum design strength of the anchors shall be at least 2.5 times the factored forces transmitted by the attachment.

3.5.9 Structural Plain Concrete

3.5.9.1 Scope

The design and construction of structural plain concrete, both cast-in-place and precast, shall comply with the minimum requirements of Section 3.5.9 and Chapter 22 of ACI 318, as modified in Section 3.5.8.

3.5.9.1.1 Special structures

For special structures, such as arches, underground utility structures, gravity walls and shielding walls, the provisions of this section shall govern where applicable.

3.5.9.2 Limitations

The use of structural plain concrete shall be limited to:

1. Members that are continuously supported by soil, such as walls and footings, or by other structural members capable of providing continuous vertical support.
2. Members for which arch action provides compression under all conditions of loading.
3. Walls and pedestals.

The use of structural plain concrete columns and structural plain concrete footings on piles is not permitted. See Section 3.5.8.1.15 for additional limitations on the use of structural plain concrete.

3.5.9.3 Joints

Contraction or isolation joints shall be provided to divide structural plain concrete members into flexurally discontinuous elements in accordance with ACI 318, Section 22.3.

3.5.9.4 Design

Structural plain concrete walls, footings and pedestals shall be designed for adequate strength in accordance with ACI 318, Sections 22.4 through 22.8.

EXCEPTION: For GroupR-3 occupancies and buildings of otheroccupancies lessthantwostories inheight of light-frameconstruction, the required edge thicknessofACI 318 is permitted to be reduced to 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend more than 4 inches (102 mm) on either side of the supported wall.

3.5.9.5 Precast Members

The design, fabrication, transportation and erection of precast, structural plain concrete elements shall be in accordance with ACI 318, Section 22.9.

3.5.9.6 Walls

In addition to the requirements of this section, structural plain concrete walls shall comply with the applicable requirements of ACI 318, Chapter 22.

3.5.9.6.1 Basement walls

The thickness of exterior basement walls and foundation walls shall be not less than 7½ inches (191 mm). Structural plain concrete exterior basement walls shall be exempt from the requirements for special exposure conditions of Section 1904.2.2.

3.5.9.6.2 Other walls

Except as provided for in Section 1909.6.1, the thicknessof bearing walls shall benot less than 1/24the unsupportedheight or length, whichever is shorter, but not less than 5½ inches (140 mm).

3.5.9.6.3 Openings in walls

Not less than two No. 5 bars shall be provided around window and door openings. Such bars shall extend at least 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the corners of openings.

3.5.10 Minimum Slab Provisions

3.5.10.1 General

The thickness of concrete floor slabs supported directly on the ground shall not be less than 3½ inches (89 mm). A 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the base course or subgrade and the concrete floor slab, or other approved equivalent methods or materials shall be used to retard vapor transmission through the floor slab.

EXCEPTION: A vapor retarder is not required:

1. For detached structures accessory to occupancies in Group R-3 (permanent residential group), such as garages, utility buildings or other unheated facilities.
2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet (6.5 m^2) and carports attached to occupancies in Group R-3.
3. For buildings of other occupancies where migration of moisture through the slab from below will not be detrimental to the intended occupancy of the building.
4. For driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork which will not be enclosed at a later date.
5. Where approved based on local site conditions.

3.5.11 Anchorage to Concrete — Allowable Stress Design

3.5.11.1 Scope

The provisions of this section shall govern the allowable stress design of headed bolts and headed stud anchors cast in normal-weight concrete for purposes of transmitting structural loads from one connected element to the other. These provisions do not apply to anchors installed in hardened concrete or where load combinations include earthquake loads or effects. The bearing area of headed anchors shall be not less than one and one-half times the shank area. Where strength design is used, or where load combinations include earthquake loads or effects, the design strength of anchors shall be determined in accordance with Section 3.5.12. Bolts shall conform to ASTM A 307 or an approved equivalent.

3.5.11.2 Allowable Service Load

The allowable service load for headed anchors in shear or tension shall be as indicated in Table 3.5.1.Where anchors are subject to combined shear and tension, the following relationship shall be satisfied:

$$(P_s / P_t)^{5/3} + (V_s / V_t)^{5/3} \leq 1 \qquad\qquad \text{Eq. (3.5.1)}$$

where:

P_s=Applied tension service load, pounds (N).
P_t= Allowable tensionservice load fromTable 3.5.1, pounds (N).
V_s=Applied shear service load, pounds (N).
V_t=AllowableshearserviceloadfromTable3.5.1, pounds (N).

TABLE 3.5.1
ALLOWABLE SERVICE LOAD ON EMBEDDED BOLTS (Pounds)

BOLT DIAMETER (inches)	MINIMUM EMBEDMENT (inches)	EDGE DISTANCE (inches)	SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM CONCRETE STRENGTH (psi)					
				f_c= 2,500		f_c= 3,000		f_c= 4,000	
				Tension	Shear	Tension	Shear	Tension	Shear
$^1/_4$	$2^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	3	200	500	200	500	200	500
$^3/_8$	3	$2^1/_4$	$4^1/_2$	500	1,100	500	1,100	500	1,100
$^1/_2$	4 4	3 5	6 5	950 1,450	1,250 1,600	950 1,500	1,250 1,650	950 1,550	1,250 1,750
$^5/_8$	1 $4^1/_2$	3 $6^1/_4$	1 $7^1/_2$	1,500 2,125	2,750 2,950	1,500 2,200	2,750 3,000	1,500 2,400	2,750 3,050
$^3/_4$	5 5	1 $7^1/_2$	9 9	2,250 2,825	3,250 4,275	2,250 2,950	3,560 4,300	2,250 3,200	3,560 4,400
$^7/_8$	6	$5^1/_4$	$10^1/_2$	2,550	3,700	2,550	4,050	2,550	4,050
1	7	6	12	3,050	4,125	3,250	4,500	3,650	5,300
$1^1/_8$	8	$6^3/_4$	$13^1/_2$	3,400	4,750	3,400	4,750	3,400	4,750
$1^1/_4$	9	$7^1/_2$	15	4,000	5,800	4,000	5,800	4,000	5,800

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689MPa, 1 pound = 4.45 N.

3.5.11.3 Required Edge Distance and Spacing

The allowable service loads in tension and shear specified in Table 3.5.1 are for the edge distance and spacing specified. The edge distance and spacing are permitted to be reduced to 50 percent of the values specified with an equal reduction in allowable service load. Where edge distance and spacing are reduced less than 50 percent, the allowable service load shall be determined by linear interpolation.

3.5.11.4 Increase for Special Inspection

Where special inspection is provided for the installation of anchors, a 100-percent increase in the allowable tension values of Table 3.5.1 is permitted. No increase in shear value is permitted.

3.5.12 Anchorage to Concrete — Strength Design

3.5.12.1 Scope

The provisions of this section shall govern the strength design of anchors installed in concrete for purposes of transmitting structural loads from one connected element to the

other. Headed bolts, headed studs and hooked (J- or L-) boltscast in concreteand expansion anchors and undercut anchors installed in hardened concrete shall be designed in accordance withAppendixDof ACI318 as modifiedbySection 9.8.1.16, provided they are within the scope of Appendix D of ACI Code.

EXCEPTION: Where the basic concrete breakout strength in tension of a single anchor, N_b, is determined in accordance with Equation (D-7), the concrete breakout strength requirements of Section D.4.2.2 of ACI Code shall be considered satisfied by the design procedures of Sections D.5.2 and D.6.2 of ACI Code for anchors exceeding 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter or 25 inches (635 mm) tensile embedment depth.

The strength design of anchors that are not within the scope of Appendix D of ACI 318, and as amended above, shall be in accordance with an approved procedure.

3.5.13 Shotcrete

3.5.13.1 General

Shotcrete is mortar or concrete that is pneumatically projected at high velocity onto a surface. Except as specified in this section, shotcrete shall conform to the requirements of this section for plain or reinforced concrete.

3.5.13.2 Proportions and materials

Shotcrete proportions shall beselected thatallowsuitableplacement procedures using the delivery equipment selected and shall result in finished in-place hardened shotcrete meeting the strength requirements of this code.

3.5.13.3 Aggregate

Coarse aggregate, if used, shall not exceed 3/4 inch (19.1 mm).

3.5.13.4 Reinforcement

Reinforcement used in shotcrete construction shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3.5.13.4.1 through 3.5.13.4.4.

3.5.13.4.1 Size

The maximum size of reinforcement shall be No. 5 bars unless it is demonstrated by preconstruction tests that adequate encasement of larger bars will be achieved.

3.5.13.4.2 Clearance

When No. 5 or smaller bars are used, there shall be a minimum clearance between parallel reinforcement bars of 2½ inches (64 mm). When bars larger than No. 5 are permitted, there shall be a minimum clearance between parallel bars equal to six diameters of the bars used. When two curtains of steel are provided, the curtain nearer the nozzle shall have a minimum spacing equal to 12 bar diameters and the remaining curtain shall have a mini- mum spacing of six bar diameters.

EXCEPTION: Subject to the approval of the building official, requiredclearances shall bereduced where it is demonstratedbypreconstructiontests thatadequate encasement ofthe bars usedinthe design willbe achieved.

3.5.13.4.3 Splices

Lap splices of reinforcing bars shall utilize the noncontact lap splice method with a minimum clearance of 2 inches (51 mm) between bars. The use of contact lap splices necessary for support of the reinforcing is permitted when approved by the building

official, based on satisfactory preconstruction tests that show that adequate encasement of the bars will be achieved, and provided that the splice is oriented so that a plane through the centre of the spliced bars is perpendicular to the surface of the shotcrete.

3.5.13.4.4 Spirally tied columns

Shotcrete shall not be applied to spirally tied columns.

3.5.13.5 Preconstruction Tests

When required by the building official, a test panel shall be shot, cured, cored or sawn, examined and tested prior to commencement of the project. The sample panel shall be representative of the project and simulate job conditions as closely as possible. The panel thickness and reinforcing shall reproduce the thickest and most congested area specified in the structural design. It shall be shot at the same angle, using the same nozzleman and with the same concrete mix design that will be used on the project. The equipment used in preconstruction testing shall be the same equipment used in the work requiring such testing, unless substitute equipment is approved by the building official.

3.5.13.6 Rebound

Any rebound or accumulated loose aggregate shall be removed from the surfaces to be covered prior to placing the initial or any succeeding layers of shotcrete. Rebound shall not be used as aggregate.

3.5.13.7 Joints

Except where permitted herein, unfinished work shall not be allowed to stand for more than 30 minutes unless edges are sloped to a thin edge. For structural elements that will be under compression and for construction joints shown on the approved construction documents, square joints are permitted. Before placing additional material adjacent to previously applied work, sloping andsquare edges shall be cleaned and wetted.

3.5.13.8 Damage

In-place shotcrete that exhibits sags, sloughs, segregation, honeycombing, sand pockets or other obvious defects shall be removed and replaced. Shotcrete above sags and sloughs shall be removed and replaced while still plastic.

3.5.13.9 Curing

During the curing periods specified herein, shotcrete shall be maintained above 40°F (4°C) and in moist condition.

3.5.13.9.1 Initial curing

Shotcrete shall be kept continuously moist for 24 hours after shotcreting is complete or shall be sealed with an approved curing compound.

3.5.13.9.2 Final curing

Final curing shall continue for seven days after shotcreting, or for three daysif high- early-strength cement is used, or until the specified strength is obtained. Final curing shall consist of the initial curing process or the shotcrete shall be covered with an approved moisture-retaining cover.

3.5.13.9.3 Natural curing

Natural curing shall not be used in lieu of that specified in this section unless the relative humidity remains at or above 85 percent, and is authorized by the registered design professional and approved by the building official.

3.5.13.10 Strength Tests

Strength tests for shotcrete shall be made by an approved agency on specimens that are representative of the work and which have been water soaked for at least 24 hours prior to

testing. When the maximum-size aggregate is larger than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm), specimens shall consist of not less than three 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) cores or 3-inch (76 mm) cubes. When the maximum-size aggregate is 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) or smaller, specimens shall consist of not less than 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cores or 2-inch (51 mm) cubes.

3.5.13.10.1 Sampling

Specimens shall be taken from the in-place work or from test panels, and shall be taken at least once each shift, but not less than one for each 50 cubic yards (38.2 m^3) of shotcrete.

3.5.13.10.2 Panel criteria

When the maximum-size aggregate is larger than 3/8inch (9.5 mm), the test panels shall have minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by457 mm). When the maximum size aggregate is 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) or smaller, the test panels shall have minimum dimensions of 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm). Panels shall be shot in the same position as the work, during the course of the work and by the nozzlemen doing the work. The conditions under which the panels are cured shall be the same as the work.

3.5.13.10.3 Acceptance criteria

The average compressive strength of three cores from the in-place work or a single test panel shall equal or exceed $0.85f_c'$ with no single core less than $0.75\ f_c'$. The average compressive strength of three cubes taken from the in-place work or a single test panel shall equal or exceed f_c' with no individual cube less than $0.88f_c'$. To check accuracy, locations represented by erratic core or cube strengths shall be retested.

3.5.14 Concrete- Filled Pipe Columns

3.5.14.1 General

Concrete-filled pipe columns shall be manufactured from standard, extra-strong or double-extra-strong steel pipe or tubing that is filled with concrete so placed and manipulated as to secure maximum density and to ensure complete filling of the pipe without voids.

3.5.14.2 Design

The safe supporting capacity of concrete-filled pipe columns shall be computed in accordance with the approved rules or as determined by a test.

3.5.14.3 Connections

Caps, base plates and connections shall be of approved types and shall be positively attached to the shell and anchored to the concrete core. Welding of brackets without mechanical anchorage shall be prohibited. Where the pipe is slotted to accommodate webs of brackets or other connections, the integrity of the shell shall be restored by welding to ensure hooping action of the composite section.

3.5.14.4 Reinforcement

To increase the safe load-supporting capacity of concrete-filled pipe columns, the steel reinforcement shall be in the form of rods, structural shapes or pipe embedded inthe concretecorewith sufficientclearance to ensure the composite action of the section, but not nearer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the exterior steel shell. Structural shapes used as reinforcement shall be milled to ensure bearing on cap and base plates.

3.5.14.5 Fire-Resistance-Rating Protection

Pipe columns shall be of such size or so protected as to develop the required fire-resistance ratings specified in this Code. Where an outer steel shell is used to enclose the fire-resistant covering, the shell shall not be included in the calculations for strength of the column section. The minimum diameter of pipe columns shall be 4 inches (102 mm) except that in structures of Type V construction not exceeding three stories or 40 feet (12192 mm) in height, pipe columns used in the basement and as secondary steel members shall have a minimum diameter of 3 inches (76 mm).

3.5.14.6 Approvals

Details of column connections and splices shall be shop fabricated by approved methods and shall be approved only after tests in accordance with the approved rules. Shop-fabricated concrete-filled pipe columns shall be inspected by the building official or by an approved representative of the manufacturer at the plant.

APPENDIX A
ALTERNATIVE DESIGN METHOD

A.0 Notation

Some notation definitions are modified from those in the main body of the SECTION for specific use in the application of Appendix A.

A_g = gross area of section, in²

A_v = area of shear reinforcement within a distance s, in²

A_1 = loaded area

A_2 = maximum area of the portion of the supporting surface that is geometrically similar to and concentric with the loaded area

b_o = perimeter of critical section for slabs and footings, in.

b_w = web width, or diameter of circular section, in.

d = distance from extreme compression fiber to centroid of tension reinforcement, in.

E_c = modulus of elasticity of concrete, psi

E_s = modulus of elasticity of reinforcement, psi

f'_c = specified compressive strength of concrete, psi

$\sqrt{f'_c}$ = square root of specified compressive strength of concrete, psi

f_{ct} = average splitting tensile strength of light-weight aggregate concrete, psi

f_s = permissible tensile stress in reinforcement, psi

f_y = specified yield strength of reinforcement, psi

M = design moment

n = modular ratio of elasticity

$= E_s/E_c$

N = design axial load normal to cross section occurring simultaneously with V; to be taken as positive for compression, negative for tension, and to include effects of tension due to creep and shrinkage

s = spacing of shear reinforcement in direction parallel to longitudinal reinforcement, in.

v = design shear stress

v_c = permissible shear stress carried by concrete, psi

v_h = permissible horizontal shear stress, psi

V = design shear force at section

α = angle between inclined stirrups and longitudinal axis of member

β_c = ratio of long side to short side of concentrated load or reaction area

ρ_w = ratio of tension reinforcement

$= A_s/b_w d$

$\emptyset$ = strength reduction factor

A.1 Scope

A.1.1
Nonprestressedreinforcedconcretemembersshallbepermittedtobedesignedusingservice loads(withoutloadfactors)andpermissibleservice loadstressesinaccordancewithprovisionsofAppendix A. Limitations, if any, for the use of this method shall be specified by the authority department.

A.1.2 Fordesignofmembersnotcoveredby AppendixA,appropriateprovisionsofACI Codeshall apply.

A.1.3 All applicable provisions of ACI Code for nonprestressed concrete, except Section 8.4, shall apply to members designed by the Alternative Design Method.

A.1.4 Flexural members shall meet requirements for deflection control in Section 9.5, and requirements of Sections 10.4 through 10.7 of ACI Code.

A.2 General

A.2.1 Load factors and strength reduction factors $\emptyset$ shall be taken as unity for members designed by the Alternative Design Method.

A.2.2 It shall be permitted to proportion members for 75 percent of capacities required by other parts of Appendix A when considering wind or earthquake forces combined with other loads, provided the resulting section is not less than that required for the combination of dead and live load.

A.2.3 When dead load reduces effects of other loads, members shall be designed for 85 percent of dead load in combination with the other loads.

A.3 Permissible Service Load Stresses

A.3.1 Stresses in concrete shall not exceed the following:

(a) Flexure

   Extreme fiber stress in compression............**0.45f'_c**

(b) Shear*

   Beams and one-way slabs and footings:

   Shear carried by concrete, $\mathbf{v_c}$............ $\mathbf{1.1\sqrt{f'_c}}$

   Maximum shear carried by concrete plus

   Shear reinforcement........................ $\mathbf{v_c + 4.4\sqrt{f'_c}}$

Joists:**

   Shear carried by concrete, $\mathbf{v_c}$......................$\mathbf{1.2\sqrt{f'_c}}$

Two-way slabs and footings:

Footnote: *For more detailed calculation of shear stress carried by concrete $\mathbf{V_c}$ and shear values for lightweight aggregate concrete, see Section A.7.4.

**Designed in accordance with Section 8.11 of ACI Code.

   Shear carried by concrete, $\mathbf{v_c}$†......................$\mathbf{(1+\frac{2}{\beta_c})\sqrt{f'_c}}$ but not greater than $\mathbf{2\sqrt{f'_c}}$

(c) Bearing on loaded area‡·································**0.3f'_c**

A.3.2 Tensile stress in reinforcement f_s shall not exceed the following:

(a) Grade 40 or Grade 50 reinforcement...20,000 psi

(b) Grade 60 reinforcement or greater and welded wire fabric

   (plain or deformed)...24,000 psi

(c) For flexural reinforcement, 3/8 in. or less in diameter, in one-way slabs of not

   more than 12 ft span.............................**0.50f_y** but not greater than 30,000 psi

A.4 Development and Splices of Reinforcement

A.4.1 Development and splices of reinforcement shall be as required in Chapter 12 of ACI Code.

A.4.2 In satisfying requirements of Section 12.11.3, M_n shall be taken as computed moment capacity assuming all positive moment tension reinforcement at the section to

bestressedtothepermissibletensilestressf_s,and$V_u$shallbetakenasunfactoredshearforceatthesection.

A.5Flexure

Forinvestigationofstressesatserviceloads,straight-linetheory(forflexure)shallbeusedwiththefollowing assumptions.

A.5.1 Strains vary linearly as the distance from the neutral axis, except for deep flexural members with overall depth-span ratios greater than 2/5 for continuous spans and 4/5 for simple spans, a nonlinear distribution of strain shall be considered, See Section 10.7 of ACICode.

A.5.2 Stress-strainrelationshipofconcreteisa straightlineunderserviceloadswithinpermissible serviceloadstresses.

A.5.3 Inreinforcedconcretemembers, concrete resistsnotension.

A.5.4 It shallbepermittedtotakethemodularratio, $n=E_s/E_c$,asthenearestwholenumber(butnotless than6).Exceptincalculationsfordeflections,valueof$n$forlightweightconcreteshallbeassumedto bethe sameasfornormalweightconcreteofthesame strength.

Footnote: † Ifshearreinforcement isprovided, see Section A.7.7.4and A.7.7.5.

‡Whenthesupportingsurfaceiswideronall sidesthantheloaded area,permissiblebearingstressontheloadedareashallbepermitted to be multiplied by $\sqrt{A_2/A_1}$ but no more than 2. When the supportingsurfaceisslopedorstepped,A_2shallbepermittedtobe takenastheareaofthelowerbaseofthelargestfrustumofaright pyramid or conecontainedwhollywithinthesupport andhavingforits upper basethe loadedarea, and havingsideslopes of1 vertical to2horizontal.

A.5.5 Indoublyreinforcedflexuralmembers,an effectivemodularratioof$2E_s/E_c$shallbeusedtotransformcompressionreinforcementforstresscomputations. Compressivestressinsuchreinforcementshallnotexceedpermissibletensilestress.

A.6CompressionMemberswithor withoutFlexure

A.6.1 Combinedflexureandaxialloadcapacityof compressionmembersshallbetakenas40percentof thatcomputedinaccordancewithprovisionsinChapter10 ofACICode.

A.6.2 SlendernesseffectsshallbeincludedaccordingtorequirementsofSections10.10through10.13.InEq.(10.9)and(10.18)theterm$P_u$shallbereplacedby2.5 timesthedesignaxialload,andthefactor0.75shall betakenequalto1.0.

A.6.3 Wallsshallbedesignedinaccordancewith Chapter14ofthisACI Codewithflexureandaxialload capacitiestakenas40percentofthatcomputedusing Chapter14.InEq.(14-1),∅shallbetakenequalto1.0.

A.7ShearandTorsion

A.7.1 Designshearstress$v$shallbecomputedby

$$v = \frac{V}{b_w d} \tag{A-1}$$

where$V$isdesignshearforceatsectionconsidered.

A.7.2 Whenthereaction,indirectionofapplied

shear,introducescompressionintotheendregionsofamember,sectionslocatedlessthanadistance*d*fromfaceofsupportshallbepermittedtobedesigned forthesameshear*v*asthatcomputedatadistance*d*.

A.7.3 Wheneverapplicable, effectsoftorsion,in accordancewithprovisionsofChapter11ofACI Code, shallbeadded.Shearandtorsionalmomentstrengths providedbyconcreteandlimitingmaximumstrengths fortorsionshallbetakenas55percentofthevalues giveninChapter11.

A.7.4 Shear Stress Carried by Concrete

A.7.4.1 For members subject to shear and flexure only, shear stress carried by concrete v_c shall not exceed $1.1\sqrt{f'_c}$ unless a more detailed calculation is made in accordance with SectionA.7.4.4.

A.7.4.2 For members subject to axial compression, shear stress carried by concrete v_c shall not exceed $1.1\sqrt{f'_c}$ unless a more detailed calculation is made in accordance with Section A.7.4.5.

A.7.4.3 For members subject to significant axial tension, shear reinforcement shall be designed to carry total shear, unless a more detailed calculation is made using

$$v_c = 1.1(1+0.004\,\frac{N}{A_g})\,\sqrt{f'_c} \qquad\qquad (A\text{-}2)$$

where N is negative for tension. Quantity N/A_g shall be expressed in psi.

A.7.4.4 For members subject to shear and flexure only, it shall be permitted to compute$v_c$by

$$v_c = \sqrt{f'_c} + \ 1300\rho_w \quad \frac{V_d}{M} \qquad\qquad (A\text{-}3)$$

butv_c shall not exceed $1.9\sqrt{f'_c}$. Quantity V_d/M shall not be taken greater than 1.0, where M is design moment occurring simultaneously with V at section considered.

A.7.4.5 For members subject to axial compression, it shall be permitted to compute v_c by

$$v_c=1.1(1+0.0006\,\frac{N}{A_g}\,)\,\sqrt{f'_c} \qquad\qquad (A\text{-}4)$$

Quantity N/A_gshall be expressed in psi.

A.7.4.6 Shear stresses carried by concrete $v_c$apply to normal weight concrete. When lightweight aggregate concrete is used, one of the following modifications shall apply:

(a) When f_{ct} is specified and concrete is proportioned in accordance with Section 5.2, $f_{ct}/6.7$ shall be substituted for $\sqrt{f'_c}$ but the value of $f_{ct}/6.7$ shall not exceed $\sqrt{f'_c}$;

(b) When f_{ct} is not specified, the value of $\sqrt{f'_c}$ shall be multiplied by 0.75 for"all-lightweight" concrete and by 0.85 for "sand-lightweight" concrete. Linear interpolation shall be permitted when partial sand replacement is used.

A.7.4.7 Indeterminingshearstresscarriedby concretev_c,wheneverapplicable,effectsofaxialtensionduetocreepandshrinkageinrestrainedmembersshallbeincludedanditshallbepermittedtoincludeeffectsofinclinedflexuralcompressioninvariable-depthmembers.

A.7.5ShearStressCarriedbyShear Reinforcement

A.7.5.1TypesofShearReinforcement

Shearreinforcementshallconsistofoneofthefollowing:

(a)Stirrupsperpendiculartoaxisofmember;

(b)Weldedwirefabricwithwireslocatedperpendiculartoaxisofmembermakingananangle

of 45 deg or more with longitudinal tension reinforcement;

    (c) Longitudinal reinforcement with bent portion

        making an angle of 30 deg or more with longitudinal tension reinforcement;

    (d) Combinations of stirrups and bent longitudinal reinforcement;

    (e) Spirals.

A.7.5.2 Design yield strength of shear reinforcement shall not exceed 60,000 psi.

A.7.5.3 Stirrups and other bars or wires used as shear reinforcement shall extend to a distance **d** from extreme compression fiber and shall be anchored at both ends according to Section 12.13 of ACI Code to develop design yield strength of reinforcement.

A.7.5.4 Spacing Limits for Shear Reinforcement

A.7.5.4.1 Spacing of shear reinforcement placed perpendicular to axis of member shall not exceed **d /2**, nor 24 in.

A.7.5.4.2 Inclined stirrups and bent longitudinal reinforcement shall be so spaced that every 45-deg line, extending toward the reaction from mid-depth of member *(d/2)* to longitudinal tension reinforcement, shall be crossed by at least one line of shear reinforcement.

A.7.5.4.3 When *(v-v_c)* exceeds $2\sqrt{f'_c}$, maximum spacing given in Sections A.7.5.4.1 and A.7.5.4.2 shall be reduced by one-half.

A.7.5.5 Minimum Shear Reinforcement

A.7.5.5.1 A minimum area of shear reinforcement shall be provided in all reinforced concrete flexural members where design shear stress ***v*** is greater than one-half the permissible shear stress ***v_c*** carried by concrete, except:

    (a) Slabs and footings;

    (b) Concrete joist construction defined by Section 8.11 of ACI Code;

    (c) Beams with total depth not greater than 10 in., 2.5 times thickness of flange, or one-half the width of web, whichever is greatest.

A.7.5.5.2 Minimum shear reinforcement requirements of Section A.7.5.5.1 shall be permitted to be waived if shown by test that required ultimate flexural and shear strength can be developed when shear reinforcement is omitted.

A.7.5.5.3 Where shear reinforcement is required by Section A.7.5.5.1 or by analysis, minimum area of shear reinforcement shall be computed by

$$A_v = 50\,\frac{b_w s}{f_y} \tag{A-5}$$

where ***b_w*** and ***s*** are in inches.

A.7.5.6 Design of Shear Reinforcement

A.7.5.6.1 Where design shear stress ***v*** exceeds shear stress carried by concrete ***v_c***, shear reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Sections A.7.5.6.2 through A.7.5.6.8.

A.7.5.6.2 When shear reinforcement perpendicular to axis of member is used,

$$A_v = \frac{(v - v_c)\,b_w s}{f_s} \tag{A-6}$$

A.7.5.6.3 When inclined stirrups are used as shear reinforcement,

$$A_v = \frac{(v - v_c)\,b_w s}{f_s(sin\alpha + cos\alpha)} \tag{A-7}$$

A.7.5.6.4 When shear reinforcement consists of a single bar or a single group of parallel bars, all bent up at the same distance from the support,

$$A_v = \frac{(v - v_c)b_w d}{f_s \sin\alpha} \tag{A-8}$$

where $(v\text{-}v_c)$ shall not exceed $1.6\sqrt{f'_c}$.

A.7.5.6.5 When shear reinforcement consists of a series of parallel bent-up bars or groups of parallel bent-up bars at different distances from the support, required area shall be computed by Eq.(A-7).

A.7.5.6.6 Only the centre three-quarters of the inclined portion of any longitudinal bent bar shall be considered effective for shear reinforcement.

A.7.5.6.7 When more than one type of shear reinforcement is used to reinforce the same portion of a member, required area shall be computed as the sum of the various types separately. In such computations, v_c shall be included only once.

A.7.5.6.8 Value of $(v - v_c)$ shall not exceed $4.4\sqrt{f'_c}$.

A.7.6 Shear Friction

Where it is appropriate to consider shear transfer across a given plane, such as an existing or potential crack, an interface between dissimilar materials, or an interface between two concretes cast at different times, shear-friction provisions of Section 11.7 of ACI Code shall be permitted to be applied, with limiting maximum stress for shear taken as 55 percent of that given in Section 11.7.5. Permissible stress in shear-friction reinforcement shall be that given in Section A.3.2.

A.7.7 Special Provisions for Slabs and Footings

A.7.7.1 Shear capacity of slabs and footings in the vicinity of concentrated loads or reactions is governed by the more severe of two conditions:

A.7.7.1.1 Beam action for slab or footing, with a critical section extending in a plane across the entire width and located at a distance d from face of concentrated load or reaction area. For this condition, the slab or footing shall be designed in accordance with Sections A.7.1 through A.7.5.

A.7.7.1.2 Two-way action for slab or footing, with a critical section perpendicular to plane of slab and located so that its perimeter is a minimum, but need not approach closer than $d/2$ to perimeter of concentrated load or reaction area. For this condition, the slab or footing shall be designed in accordance with Section A.7.7.2 and A.7.7.3.

A.7.7.2 Design shear stress v shall be computed by

$$v = \frac{V}{b_o d} \tag{A-9}$$

where v and b_o shall be taken at the critical section defined in Section A.7.7.1.2.

A.7.7.3 Design shear stress v shall not exceed v_c given by Eq.(A-10) unless shear reinforcement is provided

$$v_c = (1 + \frac{2}{\beta_c})\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{A-10}$$

But v_c shall not exceed $2\sqrt{f'_c}$. β_c is the ratio of long side to short side of concentrated load or reaction area. When lightweight aggregate concrete is used, the modifications of Section A.7.4.6 shall apply.

A.7.7.4 If shear reinforcement consisting of bars or wires is provided in accordance with Section 11.12.3 of ACI Code, v_c shall not exceed $\sqrt{f'_c}$, and v shall not exceed $3\sqrt{f'_c}$.

A.7.7.5 If shear reinforcement consisting of steel *I-* or channel-shaped sections (shearheads)

is provided in accordance with Section 11.12.4 of ACICode, v on the critical section defined in Section A.7.7.1.2 shall not exceed $3.5\sqrt{f'_c}$, and v on the critical section defined in Section 11.12.4.7 shall not exceed $2\sqrt{f'_c}$. In Eq. (11.37) and Eq. (11.38), design shear force$V$shall be multiplied by 2 and substituted for V_u.

A.7.8 Special Provisions for Other Members

Fordesignofdeepflexuralmembers,bracketsand corbels,andwalls,thespecialprovisionsofChapter11ofACI Codeshallbeused,withshearstrengthsprovidedbyconcreteandlimitingmaximumstrengthsfor sheartakenas55percentofthevaluesgiveninChapter11of ACI Code.InSection11.10.6,thedesignaxialloadshallbemultipliedby1.2ifcompressionand2.0iftension,and substitutedforN_u.

A.7.9CompositeConcreteFlexuralMembers

Fordesignofcompositeconcreteflexuralmembers, permissiblehorizontalshearstress$v_h$shallnotexceed 55percentofthehorizontalshearstrengthsgiveninSection17.5.3ofACICode.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 3STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION3.6: STEEL

3.6.1General

3.6.1.1 Scope.

The provisions of this section govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of steel used structurally in buildings.

3.6.2 Definitions

ThefollowingtermsasusedinthisSection have the following meanings.

AASHTO: AmericanAssociationofStateHighway andTransportationOfficials.

ADJUSTABLE ITEMS:SeeSection3.6.6.7.13.1.3.

AESS: SeeArchitecturally ExposedStructural Steel.

AISC: AmericanInstitute ofSteel Construction,Inc.

The AISC CODE: The AISC Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges, 2005, as adopted by the American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc.

The AISC SPECIFICATION: The AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings,2005, as adopted by the American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc.

ANCHOR BOLT:SeeAnchorRod.

ANCHOR ROD: Amechanicaldevicethatiseithercastordrilledandchemicallyadhered, groutedorwedgedintoconcreteand/ormasonryforthepurposeofthesubsequent attachment of Structural Steel.

ANCHOR- ROD GROUP: AsetofAnchorRodsthatreceivesasinglefabricatedStructural Steel shipping piece.

ANSI:AmericanNational Standards Institute.

ARCHITECT: Theentitythatisprofessionallyqualifiedanddulylicensedtoperform architectural services.

ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL: SeeSection3.6.6.9.

AREMA:AmericanRailway EngineeringandMaintenanceofWay Association.

ASME: American Society of MechanicalEngineers.

ASTM:AmericanSocietyfor TestingandMaterials.

AWS: AmericanWeldingSociety.

BEARING DEVICES: Shop-attachedbaseandbearingplates,loosebaseandbearingplates andlevelingdevices,suchaslevelingplates,levelingnutsandwashersandleveling screws.

7 Pass - PART (3) Section (7).docx **CASE:**Council ofAmericanStructural Engineers.

CLARIFICATION: Aninterpretation,oftheDesignDrawingsorSpecificationsthathavebeen ReleasedforConstruction,madeinresponsetoanRFIoranoteonanapprovaldrawingandprovidinganexplanationthatneitherrevisestheinformationthathasbeenReleasedforConstructionnoraltersthecostorscheduleofperformanceofthework.

COLUMN LIN:ThegridlineofcolumncenterssetinthefieldbasedonthedimensionsshownonthestructuraldesigndrawingsandusingthebuildinglayoutprovidedbytheOwnersDesignatedRepresentativeforConstruction.Column offsets are taken fromthecolumnline.Thecolumnlinemaybestraightorcurvedasshowninthe structural designdrawings.

CONNECTION: Anassemblyofoneormorejointsthatisusedtotransmitforcesbetween twoormoremembersand/orconnectionelements.

CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: Thedocumentsthatdefinetheresponsibilitiesofthepartiesthatareinvolvedinbidding,fabricatinganderectingStructuralSteel.Thesedocuments normally includetheDesignDrawings,theSpecificationsandthecontract.

DESIGN DRAWINGS: ThegraphicandpictorialportionsoftheContract Documentsshowing thedesign,locationanddimensionsofthework.Thesedocumentsgenerallyincludeplans,elevations,sections,details,schedules,diagrams andnotes.

EMBEDMENT DRAWINGS: Drawingsthatshowthelocationandplacementofitemsthatare installed to receive Structural Steel.

EOR: SeeStructuralEngineerofRecord.

ENGINEER: SeeStructuralEngineerofRecord.

ENGINEER OF RECORD: SeeStructuralEngineerofRecord.

ERECTION BRACING DRAWINGS: DrawingsthatarepreparedbytheErectortoillustratethesequenceoferection,anyrequirementsfortemporarysupportsandtherequirementsforraising,boltingand/orwelding.ThesedrawingsareinadditiontotheErection Drawings.

ERECTION DRAWINGS: Field-installationormember-placementdrawingsthatareprepared bytheFabricatortoshowthelocationandattachmentoftheindividualshippingpieces.

ERECTOR: The entity that is responsible for the erection of the Structural Steel.

ESTABLISHED COLUMN LINE: Theactualfieldlinethatismostrepresentativeoftheerected columncentersalongalineofcolumnsplacedusingthedimensionsshowninthe structuralDesignDrawingsandthelinesandbenchmarks

establishedbythe Owner'sDesignatedRepresentativeforConstruction,tobeusedinapplyingthe erection tolerances given in thisSECTIONforcolumnshippingpieces.

FABRICATOR: The entity that is responsible forfabricatingthe Structural Steel.

HAZARDOUS MATERIALS: Components,compoundsordevicesthatareeitherencountered duringtheperformanceofthecontractworkorincorporatedintoitcontaining substancesthat,notwithstandingtheapplicationofreasonablecare,presentathreatofharmt opersonsand/ortheenvironment.

INSPECTOR: TheOwner'stestingandinspectionagency.

MBMA: Metal BuildingManufacturersAssociation.

MILL MATERIAL: Steelmillproductsthatareorderedexpresslyfortherequirementsofa specificproject.

OWNER:The entity that is identifiedas suchinthe Contract Documents.

OWNER'S DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE FOR CONSTRUCTION: TheOwnerortheentitythatis responsibletotheOwnerfortheoverallconstructionoftheproject,includingits planning,qualityandcompletion.Thisisusuallythegeneralcontractor,the constructionmanagerorsimilarauthority at thejobsite.

OWNER'S DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE FOR DESIGN: TheOwnerortheentitythatis responsibletotheOwnerfortheoverallstructuraldesignoftheproject,including the Structural Steel frame. This is usuallytheStructuralEngineerofRecord.

PLANS:SeeDesignDrawings.

RCSC: ResearchCouncil onStructural Connections.

RELEASED FOR CONSTRUCTION: ThetermthatdescribesthestatusofcontractDocumentsthat areinsuchaconditionthattheFabricatorandtheErectorcanrelyuponthem forthe performanceoftheirwork,includingtheorderingofmaterialandthepreparationof ShopandErectionDrawings.

REVISION: Aninstructionordirectiveprovidinginformationthatdiffersfrominformation thathasbeenReleasedforConstruction.ARevisionmay,butdoesnotalways, impact the cost or schedule ofperformanceofthework.

RFI: Awrittenrequestforinformationorclarificationgeneratedduringtheconstruction phaseoftheproject.

SER: SeeStructuralEngineerofRecord.

SHOP DRAWINGS: DrawingsoftheindividualStructuralSteelshippingpiecesthataretobe producedinthefabricationshop.

SJI : Steel Joist Institute.

SPECIFICATIONS: The portion of the Contract Documents that consists of the written requirements for materials, standards and workmanship.

SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings, which was formerly known as the Steel Structures Painting Council.

STANDARD STRUCTURAL SHAPES: Hot-rolled W-, S-, M- and HP-shapes, channels and angles listed in ASTM A6/A6M; structural tees split from the hot-rolled W-, S- and M-shapes listed in ASTM A6/A6M; hollow structural sections produced to ASTM A500, A501, A618 or A847; and, steel pipe produced to ASTM A53/A53M.

STEEL DETAILER: The entity that produces the Shop and Erection Drawings.

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: The licensed professional who is responsible for sealing the Contract Documents, which indicates that he or she has performed or supervised the analysis, design and document preparation for the structure and has knowledge of the load-carrying structural system.

STRUCTURAL STEEL: The elements of the structural frame as given in Section 6.6.2.1.

TIER: The Structural Steel framing defined by a column shipping piece.

WELD SHOW-THROUGH: In Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel, visual indication of the presence of a weld or welds on the side of the member opposite the weld.

3.6.3 Identification and Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes

3.6.3.1 Identification

Steel furnished for structural load-carrying purposes shall be properly identified for conformity to the ordered grade in accordance with the specified ASTM standard or other specification and the provisions of this section. Steel that is not readily identifiable as to grade from marking and test records shall be tested to determine conformity to such standards.

3.6.3.2 Protection

Painting of structural steel shall comply with the requirements contained in AISC 360. Individual structural members and assembled panels of cold-formed steel construction, except where fabricated of approved corrosion-resistant steel or of steel having a corrosion-resistant or other approved coating, shall be protected against corrosion with an approved coat of paint, enamel or other approved protection.

3.6.4 Connections

3.6.4.1 Welding

The details of design, workmanship and technique for welding, inspection of welding and qualification of welding operators shall conform to the requirements of the specifications

listed in Sections 3.6.5, 3.6.6,3.6.7, 3.6.8,3.6.10 and3.6.11. Special inspection of welding shall be provided where required by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.6.4.2 Bolting

The design, installation and inspection of bolts shall be in accordance with the requirements of the specifications listed in Sections 3.6.5, 3.6.6, 3.6.7, 3.6.8, and 3.6.10, 3.6.11. Special inspection of the installation of high-strength bolts shall be provided where required by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.6.4.2.1 Anchor rods

Anchor rods shall be set accurately to the pattern and dimensions called for on the plans. The protrusion of the threaded ends through the connected material shall be sufficient to fully engage the threads of the nuts, but shall not be greater than the length of the threads on the bolts.

3.6.5 Structural Steel–Design

3.6.5.1 General

The designof structural steel for buildings and structures shall be in accordance with AISC 360-05. Where required, the seismic design of steel structures shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 3.6.5.2.

3.6.5.2 Seismic requirements for steel structures

The design of structural steel structures to resist seismic forces shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.6.5.2.1 or3.6.5.2.2 for the appropriate Seismic Design Category.

3.6.5.2.1 Seismic Design Category A,B or C

Structural steel structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C shall be of any construction permitted in Section 3.6.5. An R factor as set forth in Section 3.12.2.1 of ASCE 7-05 for the appropriate steel system is permitted where the structure is designed and detailed in accordance with the provisions of AISC 341, Part I. Systems not detailed in accordance with the above shall use the R factor in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7-05 designated for "structural steel systems not specifically detailed for seismic resistance."

3.6.5.2.2 Seismic Design Category D, E or F

Structural steel structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC341, Part I.

3.6.5.3Seismic requirements for composite construction

The design, construction and quality of composite steel and concrete components that resist seismic forces shall conform to the requirements of the AISC 360-05 and ACI 318-05. An R factor as set forth in Section 12.2.1 ofASCE 7-05 for the appropriate composite steel and concrete system is permitted where the structure is designed and detailed in accordance with the provisions of AISC 341, Part II. In Seismic Design Category B or above, the design of such systems shall conform to the requirements of AISC 341, Part II.

3.6.5.3.1 Seismic Design Categories D, E and F

Composite structures are permitted in Seismic Design Categories D, E and F, subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE7-05, where substantiating evidence is provided to demonstrate that the proposed system will perform as intended by AISC341, Part II. The substantiating evidence shall be subject to building official approval. Where composite elements or connections are required to sustain inelastic deformations, the substantiating evidence shall be based on cyclic testing.

3.6.6 Structural Steel–Fabrication and Erection

3.6.6.1 General

3.6.6.1.1 Scope

IntheabsenceofspecificinstructionstothecontraryintheContract Documents,thetradepracticesthataredefinedinthisSECTIONshallgovernthe fabricationanderectionofStructural Steel.

3.6.6.1.2 Referencedspecifications,codesandstandards

The following documents are referencedinthis SECTION:

AASHTO Specification—The 2004 AASHTO*LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*,3rdEdition,with interims,orthe2002AASHTO*Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges*,17thEdition,withinterims.

AISCManualofSteelConstruction—

TheAISC*ManualofSteelConstruction,13thEdition.*

AISC Seismic Provisions—TheAISC *Seismic Provisionsfor StructuralSteelBuildings*,March9,2005.

AISC Specification—The AISC *Specification for StructuralSteelBuildings*, March9,2005.

ANSI/ASME B46.1—ANSI/ASME B46.1-95, SurfaceTexture(SurfaceRoughness,WavinessandLay).

AREMASpecification—The1999AREMA*ManualforRailwayEngineering, VolumeII—Structures,Chapter15.*

ASTMA6/A6M—

04a,StandardSpecificationforGeneralRequirementsforRolledStructuralSteelBars,Plates,Shapes,andSheetPiling.

ASTMA53/A53M—*02,StandardSpecificationforPipe,Steel,BlackandHot-Dipped,Zinc-Coated,WeldedandSeamless.*

ASTMA325—04,*StandardSpecificationforStructuralBolts,Steel,HeatTreated,120/105ksi MinimumTensile Strength.*

ASTMA325M—04,*StandardSpecificationforHigh-StrengthBoltsforStructural Steel Joints (Metric).*

ASTMA490—04,*StandardSpecificationforHeat-TreatedSteelStructuralBolts,150ksi MinimumTensile Strength.*

ASTMA490M—04,*StandardSpecificationforHigh-StrengthSteelBolts, Classes10.9and10.9.3,forStructural Steel Joints (Metric).*

ASTMA500—03a,*StandardSpecificationforCold-FormedWeldedand SeamlessCarbonSteel*

StructuralTubinginRoundsandShapes.Nometric equivalent exists.

ASTM A501—01, *Standard Specification for Hot-FormedWelded andSeamlessCarbonSteel Structural Tubing.* Nometric equivalent exists.

ASTM A618—04,*Standard Specificationfor Hot-FormedWeldedand SeamlessHigh-StrengthLow-AlloyStructuralTubing.*Nometricequivalent exists.

ASTMA847—99a(2003),*StandardSpecificationforCold-FormedWeldedand SeamlessHigh-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Tubing withImproved AtmosphericCorrosionResistance.*Nometric equivalent exists.

ASTM F1852/F1852M—04, *StandardSpecification for "Twist-Off"Type Tension ControlStructuralBolt/Nut/WasherAssemblies,Steel,HeatTreated,120/105ksi MinimumTensile Strength.*

AWSD1.1—TheAWSD1.1*Structural WeldingCode—Steel*,2004.

CASEDocument11—*AnAgreementBetweenStructuralEngineerofRecord andContractorforTransferofComputerAidedDrafting(CAD)fileson Electronic Media,*2000

CASEDocument962— The*NationalPracticeGuidelinesfortheStructuralEngineerofRecord*,FourthEdition,2000.

RCSCSpecification— The*SpecificationforStructuralJointsUsingASTMA325orA490Bolts,*2004.

SSPC SP2—SSPCSurfacePreparationSpecificationNo.2,Hand ToolCleaning,2004.

SSPCSP6—SSPCSurface Preparation Specification No.6,CommercialBlastCleaning, 2004.

3.6.6.1.3 Units

In this SECTION, dimensions, weights and other measures are given in U.S. customary units with rounded or rationalized metric-unit equivalents in brackets. Because the values stated in each system are not exact equivalents, the selective combination of values from each of the two systems is not permitted.

3.6.6.1.4Responsibilityfor design

3.6.6.1.4.1 Whentheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesignprovidesthe design,
designdrawingsandspecifications,thefabricatorandtheerectorarenot responsibleforthesuitability,adequacyorbuilding-codeconformanceofthe design.

3.6.6.1.4.2 Whentheownerentersintoadirectcontractwiththefabricatortobot hdesign andfabricateanentire,completedsteelstructure,thefabricatorshallbe

responsibleforthesuitability,adequacy,conformancewithowner-established performancecriteria,andbuilding-codeconformanceofthestructuralsteel design.Theownershallberesponsibleforthesuitability,adequacyand building-codeconformanceofthenon-structuralsteelelementsandshall establish the performance criteriaforthestructuralsteelframe.

3.6.6.1.5 Existingstructures

3.6.6.1.5.1 Demolitionandshoringofanypartofanexistingstructurearenotwit hinthe scopeofworkthatisprovidedbyeitherthefabricatorortheerector.Such demolitionandshoringshallbeperformedinatimelymannersoasnotto interfere with or delay the work ofthe fabricatorandthe erector.

3.6.6.1.5.2
Protectionofanexistingstructureanditscontentsandequipment,soasto preventdamagefromnormalerectionprocesses,isnotwithinthescopeofwork thatisprovidedbyeitherthefabricatorortheerector.Suchprotectionshallbe performedinatimelymannersoas nottointerferewithordelaytheworkofthe fabricatorortheerector.

3.6.6.1.5.3 Surveyingorfielddimensioningofanexistingstructureisnotwithin thescope
ofworkthatisprovidedbyeitherthefabricatorortheerector.Suchsurveying orfielddimensioning,whichisnecessaryforthecompletionofshopand erectiondrawingsandfabrication,shallbeperformedandfurnishedtothe fabricatorinatimelymannersoasnottointerferewithordelaytheworkofthe fabricatorortheerector.

3.6.6.1.5.4
Abatementorremovalofhazardousmaterialsisnotwithinthescopeofwork that is provided by either the fabricator or the erector.Such

abatementor removalshallbeperformedinatimelymannersoasnottointerferewithor delay the work ofthe fabricatorandtheerector.

3.6.6.1.6 Means,methodsandsafetyoferection

3.6.6.1.6.1 Theerectorshallberesponsibleforthemeans,methodsandsafetyoferection ofthestructuralsteelframe.

3.6.6.1.6.2 Thestructuralengineerofrecordshallberesponsibleforthestructural adequacyofthedesignofthestructureinthecompletedproject.Thestructur al
engineerofrecordshallnotberesponsibleforthemeans,methodsandsafety oferectionofthestructural steel frame.SeealsoSections3.6.6.3.1.4and3.6.6.7.10.

3.6.6.2 Classification of Materials

3.6.6.2.1 Definitionofstructural steel

Structuralsteelshallconsistoftheelementsofthestructuralframethatare shownandsizedinthestructuraldesigndrawings,essentialtosupportthe designloadsanddescribedas:

Anchorrodsthatwillreceive structural steel.

Base plates.

Beams,includingbuilt-upbeams,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapes and/orplates.

Bearing plates.

Bearingsofsteel forgirders,trussesorbridges.Bracing,ifpermanent.

Canopy framing,ifmadefromstandardstructural shapesand/orplates.

Columns, including built-up columns, if made from standard structuralshapesand/orplates.

Connectionmaterialsfor framingstructuralsteelto structural steel.

Cranestops,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapes and/orplates.

Doorframes,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapesand/orplatesandif partofthestructuralsteelframe.

Edgeanglesandplates,ifattachedtothestructuralsteelframeorsteel(open-web)joists.

Embeddedsructuralsteelparts,otherthanbearingplates,thatwillreceivestructural steel.

Expansion joints, if attachedto the structural steel frame.

Fastenersforconnectingstructuralsteelitems:permanentshopbolts,nuts andwashers;shopbolts,nutsandwashersforshipment;fieldbolts, nutsandwashersforpermanent connections; and,permanent pins.

Floor-openingframes,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapesand/or platesandattachedtothestructuralsteelframeorsteel(open-web) joists.

Floor plates (checkered or plain), if attached to the structural steel frame.

Girders, includingbuilt-up girders, if made from standard structuralshapes and/or plates.

Girts, if made from standard structural shapes.

Grillage beams and girders.

Hangers,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapes,platesand/orrodsand framingstructuralsteelto structural steel.

Levelingnutsandwashers.

Levelingplates.

Levelingscrews.

Lintels, if attached tothe structural steel frame.

Marqueeframing,ifmadefromstandardstructural shapesand/orplates.

Machinerysupports,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapesand/orplatesandattachedt othestructural steel frame.

Monorailelements,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapesand/orplates andattachedtothestructural steel frame.

Posts,ifpartofthe structural steel frame.

Purlins,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapes.

Relieving angles, if attached tothe structural steel frame.

Roof-openingframes,ifmadefromstandardstructuralshapesand/or platesandattachedtothestructuralsteelframeorsteel(open-web) joists.

Roof-screensupport frames,ifmadefromstandardstructural shapes.

Sagrods,ifpartofthestructuralsteelframeandconnectingstructuralsteel to structural steel.

Shearstudconnectors,ifspecifiedtobeshopattached. Shims, if permanent.

Struts,ifpermanent andpart ofthestructuralsteelframe. Tierods,ifpart ofthe structural steel frame.

Trusses,if made fromstandardstructural shapes and/or built-upmembers.Wall-openingframes, if made from standard structural shapes and/orplates and attached to the structural steel frame. Wedges,ifpermanent.

Note: The fabricator shall fabricate the items in Section 3.6.6.2.1. Such items must be shown, sized and described in the structural design drawings. bracing includes vertical bracing for resistance to wind and seismic load and structural stability, horizontal bracing for floor and roof systems and permanent stability bracing for components of the structural steel frame.

3.6.6.2.2 Other steel, iron or metal items

Structuralsteelshallnotincludeothersteel,ironormetalitemsthatarenot generallydescribedinSection3.6.6.2.1,evenwheresuchitemsareshowninthe structuraldesigndrawingsorareattachedtothestructuralsteelframe.Other steel, iron ormetal items include but are not limitedto:

Bearings,ifnon-steel.

Cablesforpermanent bracingorsuspensionsystems.

Castings.

Catwalks.

Chutes.

Cold-formedsteel products.

Cold-rolledsteelproducts,exceptthosethatarespecificallycoveredintheAISC Specification.

Cornerguards.

Crane rails, splices, bolts and clamps.

Cranestops,ifnot madefromstandardstructural shapesorplates.

Doorguards.

Embeddedsteelparts,otherthanbearingplates,thatdonotreceivestructural steel or that areembeddedinprecastconcrete.

Expansionjoints,ifnot attachedto the structural steel frame.

Flagpolesupport steel.

Floorplates(checkeredorplain),ifnotattachedtothestructuralsteel frame.

Forgings.

Gage-metal products.Grating.

Handrail.

Hangers,ifnotmadefromstandardstructuralshapes,platesand/orrodsor not framingstructural steelto structural steel.

Hoppers.

Itemsthatarerequiredfortheassemblyorerectionofmaterialsthatare furnishedby tradesotherthanthefabricatororerector.

Ladders.

Lintels, if not attached to the structural steel frame.

Masonry anchors.

Miscellaneous metal.

Ornamental metal framing.

Pressurevessels.

Reinforcingsteel forconcrete ormasonry.

Relievingangles,ifnot attachedto the structural steel frame.

Roofscreensupport frames,ifnot madefromstandardstructural shapes.

Safety cages.

Shearstudconnectors,ifspecifiedto be fieldinstalled.

Stacks.

Stairs.

Steel deck.

Steel (open-web)joists.

Steel joist girders.

Tanks.

Toe plates.

Trenchorpit covers.

Note: Section 3.6.6.2.2 includes many items that may be furnished by the fabricator if contracted to do so by specific notation and detail in the contract documents.

3.6.6.3 Design Drawings and Specifications

3.6.6.3.1. Structural design drawings and specifications

Unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents, the structural design drawingsshallbebaseduponconsiderationofthedesignloadsandforcestobe resisted by the structural steelframe inthe completed project.

Thestructuraldesigndrawingsshallclearlyshowtheworkthatistobeperformedandshallgive the following information with sufficient dimensionstoaccuratelyconveythequantityandnatureofthestructuralsteelto be fabricated:

(a)The size, section, material gradeandlocationofall members;

(b)All geometry andworkingpointsnecessary forlayout;

(c)Floorelevations;

(d)Columncentersandoffsets;

(e)Thecamberrequirementsformembers;and,

(f)Theinformationthat is requiredinSections3.6.6.3.1.1through3.6.6.3.1.6.

Thestructuralsteelspecificationshallincludeanyspecialrequirementsforthe fabricationanderectionofthe structural steel.

The structural design drawings,specificationsandaddendashallbe numberedanddatedforthepurposesofidentification.

3.6.6.3.1.1 Permanentbracing,columnstiffeners,columnwebdoublerplates,bearing stiffenersinbeamsandgirders,webreinforcement,openingsforothertrades andotherspecialdetails,whererequired,shallbeshowninsufficientdetailin thestructuraldesigndrawingssothatthequantity, detailingandfabrication requirementsfortheseitemscanbereadily understood.

3.6.6.3.1.2 Theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesignshalleithershowthe completedesignoftheconnectionsinthestructuraldesigndrawingsorallow thefabricatortoselectorcompletetheconnectiondetailswhilepreparingthe shopanderectiondrawings.

When the fabricator is allowed to select or completetheconnectiondetails,thefollowinginformationshallbeprovidedin the structural design drawings:

(a) Any restrictions onthe types ofconnections that are permitted;

(b) Dataconcerningtheloads,includingshears,moments,axialforcesand transferforces,thataretoberesistedbytheindividualmembersandtheir connections,sufficienttoallowthefabricatortoselectorcompletethe connectiondetails while preparingtheshopanderectiondrawings;

(c) Whetherthedatarequiredin(b)isgivenattheservice-loadlevelorthe factored-loadlevel; and,

(d) WhetherLRFDorASDistobeusedintheselectionorcompletionofconnectiondetails.

Whenthefabricatorselectsorcompletestheconnectiondetails,thefabricator shallutilizetherequirements in the AISC Specification and the contract

documentsandsubmittheconnectiondetailstotheowner'sdesignated   representative for design for approval.

Note: Whentheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesignshowsthecompletedesignofthe connectionsinthestructuraldesigndrawings,thefollowinginformationis included:

(a)All weldsizes andlengths;

(b)All bolt sizes, locations, quantities and grades;

(c)All plateandanglesizes,thicknessesanddimensions; and,

(d)All workpoint locationsandrelatedinformation.

3.6.6.3.1.3   Whenlevelingplatesaretobefurnishedaspartofthecontractrequirements, theirlocationsandrequiredthicknessandsizesshallbespecifiedinthecontract documents.

3.6.6.3.1.4   Whenthestructuralsteelframe,inthecompletelyerectedandfullyconnected state,requiresinteractionwithnon-structuralsteelelements(seeSection3.6.6.2)for strengthand/orstability,thosenon-structuralsteelelementsshallbeidentifiedinthecontract documentsasrequiredinSection3.6.6.7.10.

Note: Examples of non-structural steel elements include diaphragms made of steel deck, diaphragms madeof concrete on steel deck and masonry and/or concrete shear walls.

3.6.6.3.1.5   Whencamberisrequired,themagnitude,directionandlocationofcambershall be specified in the structural designdrawings.

3.6.6.3.1.6   Specificmembersorportionsthereofthataretobeleftunpaintedshallbe identifiedinthe contractdocuments. When shop painting is required, the paintingrequirementsshallbespecifiedintheContractDocuments,including the followinginformation:

(a)Theidentificationofspecificmembersorportionsthereoftobepainted;

(b)The surface preparation that is requiredforthesemembers;

(c)Thepaintspecificationsandmanufacturer'sproductidentificationthatare requiredforthesemembers;and,

(d)The minimum dry-film shop-coat thickness that is required for these members.

3.6.6.3.2Architectural, electrical and mechanical design drawings and specifications

Allrequirementsforthequantities,sizesandlocationsofstructuralsteelshallbeshownornotedint hestructuraldesigndrawings.Theuseofarchitectural, electricaland/ormechanicaldesigndrawingsasasupplementtothestructural designdrawingsispermittedforthepurposesofdefiningdetailconfigurations andconstructioninformation.

3.6.6.3.3 Discrepancies

When discrepancies exist between the design drawings and Specifications, the design drawings shall govern. When discrepancies exist between scale dimensions in the design drawings and the figures written in them, the figures shall govern. When discrepancies exist between the structural design drawings and the architectural, electrical or mechanical design drawings or design drawings for other trades, the structural design drawings shall govern.

When a discrepancy is discovered in the contract documents in the course of the fabricator's work, the fabricator shall promptly notify the owner's designated representative for construction so that the discrepancy can be resolved by the owner's designated representative for design. Such resolution shall be timely so as not to delay the fabricator's work. See Section 3.6.6.3.5.

3.6.6.3.4 Legibility of design drawings

Design Drawings shall be clearly legible and drawn to an identified scale that is appropriate to clearly convey the information.

Note:

> Historically, the most commonly accepted scale for structural steel plans has been 1/8 in. per ft [10 mm per 1000 mm]. There are, however, situations where a smaller or larger scale is appropriate. Ultimately, consideration must be given to the clarity of the drawing.

3.6.6.3.5 Revisions to the design drawings and specifications

Revisions to the design drawings and specifications shall be made either by issuing new design drawings and specifications or by reissuing the existing design drawings and specifications. In either case, all revisions, including revisions that are communicated through responses to RFIs or the annotation of shop and/or erection drawings (see Section 3.6.6.4), shall be clearly and individually indicated in the contract documents. The contract documents shall be dated and identified by revision number. Each design drawing shall be identified by the same drawing number throughout the duration of the project, regardless of the revision.

3.6.6.3.6 Fast-track project delivery

When the fast-track project delivery system is selected, release of the structural design drawings and specifications shall constitute a Release for construction, regardless of the status of the architectural, electrical, mechanical and other interfacing designs and

> contract documents. Subsequent revisions, if any, shall be the responsibility of the owner and shall be made in accordance with Sections 3.6.6.3.5.

Note: The fast-track project delivery system generally provides for a condensed schedule for the design and construction of a project. Under this delivery system, the owner elects to release for construction the structural design drawings and specifications, which may be partially complete, at a time that may precede the completion of and coordination with architectural, mechanical, electrical and other design work and contract documents. The release of these structur

aldesigndrawingsandspecificationsmayalsoprecedethereleaseofthegeneral conditionsanddivision1specifications.

3.6.6.4 Shop and Erection Drawings

3.6.6.4.1 Owner responsibility

Theownershallfurnish,inatimelymannerandinaccordancewiththe contractdocuments,completestructuraldesigndrawingsandspecifications thathavebeenReleasedforconstruction.Unlessotherwisenoted,design drawingsthatareprovidedaspartofacontractbidpackageshallconstitute authorizationbytheownerthatthedesigndrawingsarereleasedfor construction.

Note: Whenthe owner issuesreleased-for-constructiondesigndrawings and specifications,thefabricatorandtheerectorrelyonthefactthatthesearethe owner'srequirementsfortheproject.Thisreleaseisrequiredbythefabricator priortotheorderingofmaterialandthepreparationandcompletionofshopand erectiondrawings.

3.6.6.4.2 Fabricator responsibility

ExceptasprovidedinSection 3.6.6.4.5,thefabricatorshallproduceshopand erectiondrawingsforthefabricationanderectionofthestructuralsteelandis responsible forthefollowing:

  (a) Thetransferofinformationfromthecontractdocumentsintoaccurateand complete shopanderectiondrawings; and,

  (b) Thedevelopmentofaccurate,detaileddimensionalinformationtoprovide for the fit-up of parts inthe field.

Eachshopanderectiondrawingshallbeidentifiedbythesamedrawing numberthroughoutthedurationoftheprojectandshallbeidentifiedbyrevision numberanddate,witheachspecific revision clearly identified.

Whenthefabricatorsubmitsarequesttochangeconnectiondetails thataredescribedinthecontractdocuments,theFabricatorshallnotifythe owner'sdesignatedrepresentativesfordesignandconstructioninwritingin advanceofthesubmissionoftheshopanderectiondrawings.Theowner's designatedrepresentativefordesignshallreviewandapproveorrejectthe request in a timely manner.

Whenrequestedtodo so by the owner's designated representative for design,thefabricatorshallprovidetotheowner'sdesignatedrepresentatives fordesignandconstructionitsscheduleforthesubmittalofshopanderection drawings so as to facilitate the timely flow of information between all parties.

3.6.6.4.3 Use of CAD files and/or copies of design drawings

Thefabricatorshallneitherusenorreproduceanypartofthedesigndrawingsaspartoftheshoporer ectiondrawingswithoutthewrittenpermissionofthe owner'sdesignated representative fordesign.WhenCADfiles or copiesof thedesigndrawingsaremadeavailableforthefabricator'suse,thefabricator shall accept this information underthefollowingconditions:

(a) All information contained in the CAD files or copies of the design drawings shall be considered instruments of service of the owner's designated representative for design and shall not be used for other projects, additions to the project or the completion of the project by others. CAD files and copies of the design drawings shall remain the property of the owner's designated representative for design and in no case shall the transfer of these CAD files or copies of the design drawings be considered a sale.

(b) The CAD files or copies of the design drawings shall not be considered to be contract documents. In the event of a conflict between the design drawings and the CAD files or copies thereof, the design drawings shall govern;

(c) The use of CAD files or copies of the design drawings shall not in any way obviate the Fabricator's responsibility for proper checking and coordination of dimensions, details, member sizes and fit-up and quantities of materials as required to facilitate the preparation of shop and erection drawings that are complete and accurate as required in Section 3.6.6.4.2; and,

(d) The fabricator shall remove information that is not required for the fabrication or erection of the structural steel from the CAD files or copies of the design drawings.

3.6.6.4.4 Approval

Except as provided in Section 3.6.6.4.5, the shop and erection drawings shall be submitted to the owner's designated representatives for design and construction for review and approval. These drawings shall be returned to the fabricator within 14 calendar days. Approved shop and erection drawings shall be individually annotated by the owner's designated representatives for design and construction as either approved or approved subject to corrections noted. When so required, the fabricator shall subsequently make the corrections noted and furnish corrected shop and erection drawings to the owner's designated representatives for design and construction.

3.6.6.4.4.1 Approval of the shop and erection drawings, approval subject to corrections noted and similar approvals shall constitute the following:

(a) Confirmation that the fabricator has correctly interpreted the contract documents in the preparation of those submittals;

(b) Confirmation that the owner's designated representative for design has reviewed and approved the connection details shown on the shop and erection drawings and submitted in accordance with Section 3.6.6.3.1.2, if applicable; and,

(c) Release by the owner's designated representatives for design and construction for the fabricator to begin fabrication using the approved submittals.

Such approval shall not relieve the fabricator of the responsibility for either the accuracy of the detailed dimensions in the shop and erection drawings or the general fit-up of parts that are to be assembled in the field.

The fabricator shall determine the fabrication schedule that isnecessary to meet the requirementsofthecontract.

3.6.6.4.4.2 Unlessotherwisenoted,anyadditions,deletionsorrevisionsthatareindicatedinresponsestoRFIsorontheapprovedshopanderectiondrawingsshall constituteauthorizationbytheownerthattheadditions,deletionsorrevisions arereleasedforconstruction.Thefabricatorandtheerectorshallpromptly notifytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructionwhenany directionornotationinresponsestoRFIsorontheshoporerectiondrawing sorotherinformationwillresultinanadditionalcostand/ora delay.SeeSections 3.6.6.3.5.

3.6.6.4.5 Shop and/or erection drawings not furnished by the fabricator

Whentheshopanderectiondrawingsarenotpreparedbythefabricator,but arefurnishedbyothers,theyshallbedeliveredtothefabricatorinatimely manner.Theseshopanderectiondrawingsshallbeprepared,insofarasis practical,inaccordancewiththeshopfabricationanddetailingstandardsofthe fabricator.Thefabricatorshallneitherberesponsibleforthecompletenessor accuracyofshopanderectiondrawingssofurnished,norforthegeneralfit-up of the members that are fabricated fromthem.

36.6.4.6. The RFI process

WhenRequestsforInformation(RFIs)areissued,theprocessshallincludethe maintenance of a written record of inquiries and responses relatedto interpretationandimplementation ofthecontractdocuments,includingthe clarificationsand/orrevisionstothecontractdocumentsthatresult,ifany. RFIsshallnotbeusedfortheincrementalreleaseforconstructionofdesign drawings.WhenRFIsinvolvediscrepanciesorrevisions,seeSections3.6.6.3.3,3.6.6.3.5, and3.6.6.4.4.2.

3.6.6.5 Materials

3.6.6.5.1 Mill materials

Unlessotherwisenotedinthecontractdocuments,thefabricatorispermitted toorderthematerialsthatarenecessaryforfabricationwhenthefabricator receivescontractdocumentsthathavebeenreleasedforconstruction.

3.6.6.5.1.1 Unlessotherwisespecifiedbymeansofspecialtestingrequirementsinthe contractdocuments,milltestingshallbelimitedtothoseteststhatarerequired for thematerial in the ASTM specifications indicated in the contract documents.Materialsorderedtospecialmaterialrequirementsshallbemarked bythesupplierasspecifiedinASTMA6/A6MSection12priortodeliveryto thefabricator'sshoporotherpointofuse.Suchmaterialnotsomarkedbythe supplier, shall not be used until:

(a) Itsidentificationisestablishedbymeansoftestinginaccordancewiththe applicable ASTM specifications; and,

(b) A fabricator's identification mark, as described in Section 3.6.1.2 and 3.6.1.3, has been applied.

3.6.6.5.1.2 When mill material does not satisfy ASTM A6/A6M tolerances for camber, profile, flatness or sweep, the fabricator shall be permitted to perform corrective procedures, including the use of controlled heating and/or mechanical straightening, subject to the limitations in the AISC Specification.

3.6.6.5.1.3 When variations that exceed ASTM A6/A6M tolerances are discovered or occur after the receipt of mill material the fabricator shall, at the fabricator's option, be permitted to perform the ASTM A6/A6M corrective procedures for mill reconditioning of the surface of structural steel shapes and plates.

3.6.6.5.1.4 When special tolerances that are more restrictive than those in ASTM A6/A6M are required for mill materials, such special tolerances shall be specified in the contract documents. The fabricator shall, at the fabricator's option, be permitted to order material to ASTM A6/A6M tolerances and subsequently perform the corrective procedures described in Sections 3.6.6.5.1.2 and 3.6.6.5.1.3.

3.6.6.5.2 Stock materials

3.6.6.5.2.1 If used for structural purposes, materials that are taken from stock by the fabricator shall be of a quality that is at least equal to that required in the ASTM Specifications indicated in the contract documents.

3.6.6.5.2.2 Certified mill test reports shall be accepted as sufficient record of the quality of materials taken from stock by the fabricator. The fabricator shall review and retain the certified mill test reports that cover such stock materials. However, the fabricator need not maintain records that identify individual pieces of stock material against individual certified mill test reports, provided the fabricator purchases stock materials that meet the requirements for material grade and quality in the applicable ASTM Specifications.

3.6.6.5.2.3 Stock materials that are purchased under no particular specification, under a specification that is less rigorous than the applicable ASTM Specifications or without certified mill test reports or other recognized test reports shall not be used without the approval of the owner's designated representative for design.

3.6.6.6 Shop Fabrication and Delivery

3.6.6.6.1 Identification of material

3.6.6.6.1.1 The fabricator shall be able to demonstrate by written procedure and actual practice a method of material

identification, visible up to the point of assemblingmembers as follows:

(a) Forshop-standard material, identification capability shall includeshapedesignation.Representative mill test reports shall be furnished by the fabricatorifrequestedtodosobytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentative for design, either in the contractdocuments or inseparate written instructions giventothe fabricator prior to orderingmill materials.

(b)Formaterial of grade other than shop-standardmaterial, identification capabilityshall include shapedesignationandmaterialgrade. Representativemill test reportsshall be furnished by the fabricatorif requestedtodosobytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesign, eitherinthecontractdocumentsorinseparatewritteninstructionsgivento the fabricatorprior toorderingmill materials.

(c)FormaterialorderedinaccordancewithanASTMsupplementorother specialmaterialrequirementsinthecontractdocuments,identification capabilityshallincludeshapedesignation,materialgrade,andheat number. Thecorrespondingmilltestreportsshallbefurnishedbythefabricatorif requestedtodosobytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesign, eitherinthecontractdocumentsorinseparatewritteninstructionsgivento the fabricator prior to orderingmill materials.

Unless an alternative systemis establishedinthe fabricator's written procedures,shop-standardmaterial shall beasfollows:

Material	Shop-standardmaterialgrade
W and WT	ASTM A992
M,S,MT andST	ASTM A36
HP	ASTM A36
L	ASTMA36
C andMC	ASTM A36
HSS	ASTM A500gradeB
Steel Pipe	ASTM A53gradeB
PlatesandBars	ASTM A36

3.6.6.6.1.2 Duringfabrication, up to thepointofassemblingmembers,eachpieceof material that is ordered to special material requirements shallcarry a

fabricator'sidentificationmarkor an original supplier's identification mark.

Thefabricator'sidentificationmarkshallbeinaccordancewiththefabricator's establishedmaterialidentificationsystem,whichshallbeon recordand availablepriortothestartoffabricationfortheinformationoftheowner's designatedrepresentativeforconstruction,thebuilding-codeauthorityandthe inspector.

3.6.6.6.1.3 Members that are made of material that is orderedtospecial material requirementsshall not be given the same assembling orerectionmarkas membersmadeofothermaterial,eveniftheyareofidenticaldimensionsand detail.

3.6.6.6.2 Preparation of material

3.6.6.6.2.1 Thethermalcuttingofstructuralsteelbyhand-guidedormechanicallyguided means is permitted.

3.6.6.6.2.2 Surfacesthatarespecifiedas"finished"inthecontractdocumentsshallhavea roughnessheightvaluemeasuredinaccordancewithANSI/ASMEB46.1that is equaltoorlessthan500.Theuseofanyfabricatingtechniquethatproduces sucha finishis permitted.

3.6.6.6.3 Fitting and fastening

3.6.6.6.3.1 Projectingelementsofconnectionmaterialsneednotbestraightenedinthe connecting plane, subject tothe limitations inthe AISC Specification.

3.6.6.6.3.2 BackingbarsandrunofftabsshallbeusedinaccordancewithAWSD1.1as requiredtoproducesoundwelds.Thefabricatororerectorneednotremove backingbarsorrunofftabsunlesssuchremovalisspecifiedinthecontract documents.Whentheremovalofbackingbarsisspecifiedinthecontract documents,suchremovalshallmeettherequirementsinAWSD1.1.Whent he removalofrunofftabsisspecifiedinthecontractdocuments,handflame-cuttingclosetotheedgeofthefinishedmemberwithnofurtherfinishingis permitted, unless other finishingis specifiedinthe contract documents.

3.6.6.6.3.3 Unlessotherwisenotedintheshopdrawings,high-strengthboltsforshop-attached connectionmaterialshallbeinstalledintheshopinaccordancewith the requirements in the AISC Specification.

3.6.6.6.4 Fabrication tolerances

Thetolerancesonstructuralsteelfabricationshallbeinaccordancewiththe requirementsinSections3.6.6.6.4.1through3.6.6.6.4.6.

3.6.6.6.4.1

Formembersthathavebothendsfinished(seeSection3.6.6.6.2.2)for contact

bearing,thevariationintheoveralllengthshallbeequaltoorlessthan1/32in . [1mm].Forothermembersthatframetootherstructuralsteelelements,the variationinthe detailedlengthshall be as follows:

(a)Formembersthatareequaltoorlessthan30ft[9000mm]inlength,the variationshall beequal toorlessthan1/16in.[2mm].

(b) Formembersthataregreaterthan30ft[9000mm]inlength,thevariation shall be equal to orless than 1/8in. [3mm].

3.6.6.6.4.2 Forstraightstructuralmembersotherthancompressionmembers,whethero fa singlestandardstructuralshapeorbuilt-up,thevariationinstraightnessshall beequaltoorlessthanthatspecifiedforwide-flangeshapesinASTM A6/A6M,exceptwhenasmaller variation in straightness is specifiedinthe contractdocuments.Forstraightcompressionmembers,whetherofastand ardstructuralshape or built-up,the variationinstraightness shall be equal to orlessthan1/1000oftheaxiallengthbetweenpointsthataretobelaterallysu pported.

Forcurvedstructuralmembers,thevariationfromthetheoreticalcurvature shallbeequaltoorlessthanthevariationinsweepthatisspecifiedforanequi valent straight memberofthesame straight lengthinASTM A6/A6M.

Inallcases,completedmembersshallbefreeoftwists,bendsandopen joints.Sharpkinksorbendsshall becauseforrejection.

3.6.6.6.4.3 Forbeamsandtrussesthataredetailedwithoutspecifiedcamber,themember shallbefabricatedsothat,aftererection,anyincidentalcamberduetorollin gor shopfabricationis upward.

3.6.6.6.4.4 Forbeamsthatarespecifiedinthecontractdocumentswithcamber,beams receivedbythefabricatorwith75%ofthespecifiedcambershallrequireno furthercambering.Otherwise,thevariationincambershall beasfollows:

(a) Forbeamsthatareequaltoorlessthan50ft[15000mm]inlength,the variationshall beequal toorlessthanminuszero/ plus1/2in.[13mm].

(b) Forbeamsthataregreaterthan50ft[15000mm]inlength,thevariation shallbeequaltoorlessthanminuszero/plus1/2in.plus1/8in.foreach10ftor fractionthereof[13mmplus3mmforeach3000mmorfraction thereof] inexcessof50ft [15000mm] inlength.

Forthepurposeofinspection,cambershallbemeasuredinthefabricator's shopintheunstressedcondition.

3.6.6.6.4.5 Forfabricatedtrussesthatarespecifiedinthecontractdocumentswithcambe r, thevariationincamberateachspecifiedcamberpointshallbeequaltoorless thanplusorminus1/800ofthedistancetothatpointfromthenearestpointof support.Forthepurposeofinspection,cambershallbemeasuredinthe fabricator'sshopintheunstressedcondition.For fabricated trusses that

are specifiedinthecontract documentswithout indicationofcamber,theforegoing requirementsshallbeappliedateachpanelpointofthetrusswithazerocamber ordinate.

3.6.6.6.4.6

Whenpermissiblevariationsinthedepthsofbeamsandgirdersresultinabrupt changesindepthat splices,suchdeviationsshall beaccountedforasfollows:

(a) Forspliceswithboltedjoints,thevariationsindepthshallbetakenupwith filler plates; and,

(b)Forspliceswithweldedjoints,theweldprofileshall beadjustedtoconformto the variations in depth, the required cross-section of weld shall be providedandtheslopeoftheweldsurfaceshallmeettherequirementsin AWSD1.1.

3.6.6.6.5 Shop cleaning and painting (see also Section 3.6.6.3.1.6)

Structuralsteelthatdoesnotrequireshoppaintshallbecleanedofoiland grease with solvent cleaners, and of dirt and other foreignmaterial by sweeping with a fiber brush or other suitable means. For structural steel that is required tobe shop painted, the requirements in Sections 3.6.6.6.5.1 through 3.6.6.6.5.4 shall apply.

3.6.6.6.5.1 Thefabricatorisnotresponsiblefordeteriorationoftheshopcoatthatmay resultfromexposuretoordinaryatmosphericconditionsorcorrosiveconditions that aremoreseverethanordinary atmosphericconditions.

3.6.6.6.5.2 Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,thefabricatorshall,asa minimum,handcleanthestructuralsteeloflooserust,loosemillscale,dirtand otherforeignmatter,priortopainting,bymeansofwirebrushingorbyother methodselectedbythefabricator,tomeettherequirementsofSSPC-SP2.Ifthe fabricator'sworkmanshiponsurfacepreparationistobeinspectedbytheInspector,suchinspectionshallbeperformedinatimelymannerpriortothe applicationoftheshopcoat.

3.6.6.6.5.3 Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,paintshallbeappliedby brushing,spraying,rolling,flowcoating,dippingorothersuitablemeans,atthe election of thefabricator.Whenthe term "shop coat","shoppaint"orother equivalenttermisusedwithnopaintsystemspecified,thefabricator'sstandard shoppaint shall beappliedtoaminimumdry-filmthicknessofonemil [25µm].

3.6.6.6.5.4 Touch-upofabrasionscausedbyhandlingafterpaintingshallbethe responsibilityofthecontractorthatperformstouch-upinthefieldorfield painting.

3.6.6.6.6. Marking and shipping of materials

3.6.6.6.6.1 Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,erectionmarksshallbe appliedtothestructural steel membersby paintingorothersuitablemeans.

3.6.6.6.6.2 Boltassembliesandloosebolts,nutsandwashersshallbeshippedinseparate closedcontainersaccordingtolengthanddiameter,asapplicable.Pinsand other smallpartsandpackagesofbolts,nutsandwashersshallbeshippedinboxes, crates,kegsorbarrels.Alistanddescriptionofthematerialshallappearonthe outsideofeachclosedcontainer.

3.6.6.6.7 Delivery of materials

3.6.6.6.7.1 Fabricatedstructuralsteelshallbedeliveredinasequencethatwillpermit efficientandeconomicalfabricationanderection,andthatisconsistentwith requirementsinthecontractdocuments.Iftheownerorowner'sdesignated representativeforconstructionwishestoprescribeorcontrolthesequence of deliveryofmaterials,thatentityshallspecifytherequiredsequenceinthe contract documents.If the owner's designatedrepresentative for constructioncontractsseparatelyfordeliveryandforerection,theowner's designatedrepresentativeforconstructionshallcoordinateplanningbetween contractors.

3.6.6.6.7.2 AnchorRods,washers,nutsandotheranchorageorgrillagematerialsthatare tobebuiltintoconcreteormasonryshallbeshippedsothattheywillbeavailable when needed.Theowner's designated representative for constructionshall allowthefabricatorsufficienttimetofabricateandshipsuchmaterialsbefore theyareneeded.

3.6.6.6.7.3 Ifany shortage is claimedrelative tothe quantities ofmaterials that are shownin theshippingstatements,theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefor constructionortheerectorshallpromptlynotifythefabricatorsothat theclaim canbeinvestigated.

3.6.6.6.7.4 Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,andsubjecttothe approvedshopanderectiondrawings,thefabricatorshalllimitthenumberof fieldsplices tothat consistent withminimumproject cost.

3.6.6.6.7.5 Ifmaterialarrivesatitsdestinationindamagedcondition,thereceivingentity shallpromptlynotifythefabricatorandcarrierpriortounloadingthematerial, orpromptly upondiscovery priortoerection.

3.6.6.7 Erection

3.6.6.7.1 Method of erection

FabricatedstructuralSteelshallbeerectedusingmethodsandasequencethat willpermitefficientandeconomicalperformanceoferection,andthatis

consistentwiththerequirementsinthecontractdocuments.Iftheowneror owner'sdesignatedrepresentativefor constructionwishestoprescribeor controlthemethodand/orsequenceoferection,orspecifiesthatcertain memberscannotbeerectedintheirnormalsequence,that entity shall specify the requiredmethodandsequenceinthecontractdocuments.Iftheowner's designatedrepresentativeforconstructioncontractsseparatelyforfabrication servicesandforerectionservices,theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefor constructionshall coordinate planningbetweencontractors.

3.6.6.7.2 Job-site conditions

The owner's designated representative for construction shall provide and maintainthe followingfor the fabricatorandthe erector:

(a) Adequateaccessroadsintoandthroughthejobsiteforthesafedelivery andmovementofthematerialtobeerectedandofderricks,cranes,trucks andothernecessary equipment undertheirownpower;

(b)Afirm,properlygraded,drained,convenientandadequatespaceatthejob sitefortheoperationoftheerector'sequipment,freefromoverhead obstructions,suchaspowerlines,telephonelinesorsimilarconditions;and,

(c)Adequatestoragespace,whenthestructuredoesnotoccupythefull availablejobsite,toenablethefabricatorandtheerectortooperateat maximumpracticalspeed.

Otherwise,theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructionshall informthefabricatorandtheerectoroftheactualjob-siteconditionsand/or special delivery requirementspriortobidding.

3.6.6.7.3 Foundation, piers and abutments

Theaccuratelocation,strengthandsuitabilityof,andaccessto,allfoundations, piersandabutmentsshallbetheresponsibilityoftheowner'sdesignated representativeforconstruction.

3.6.6.7.4 Lines and bench marks

Theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructionshallberesponsible fortheaccuratelocationoflinesandbenchmarksatthejobsiteandshallfurnish theerectorwithaplanthatcontainsallsuchinformation.Theowner's designatedrepresentativeforconstructionshallestablishoffsetlinesand referenceelevationsateachlevelfortheerector'suseinthepositioningof adjustable items(seesection3.6.7.13.1.3),ifany.

3.6.6.7.5 Installation of anchor rods, foundation bolts and other embedded items

3.6.6.7.5.1Anchorrods,foundationboltsandotherembeddeditemsshallbesetbythe owner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructioninaccordancewith embedmentdrawingsthathavebeenapprovedbytheowner'sdesignated representativesfordesignandconstruction.Thevariationinlocationofthe se itemsfromthedimensionsshownintheembedmentdrawingsshallbeas follows:

(a) The variation in dimension between the centres of any two anchor rods within an anchor-rod group shall be equal to or less than 1/8 in. [3mm].

(b) The variation in dimension between the centres of adjacent anchor-rod groups shall be equal to or less than 1/4 in. [6mm].

(c) The variation in elevation of the tops of anchor rods shall be equal to or less than plus or minus 1/2 in. [13mm].

(d) The accumulated variation in dimension between centres of anchor-rod groups along the column line through multiple anchor-rod groups shall be equal to or less than 1/4 in. per 100 ft [2mm per 10000mm], but not to exceed a total of 1 in. [25mm].

(e) The variation in dimension from the centre of any anchor-rod group to the column line through that group shall be equal to or less than 1/4 in. [6 mm].

The tolerances that are specified in (b), (c) and (d) shall apply to offset dimensions shown in the structural design drawings, measured parallel and perpendicular to the nearest column line, for individual columns that are shown in the structural design drawings as offset from column lines.

3.6.6.7.5.2

Unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, anchor rods shall be set with their longitudinal axis perpendicular to the theoretical bearing surface.

3.6.6.7.5.3 Embedded items and connection materials that are part of the work of other trades, but that will receive structural steel, shall be located and set by the owner's designated representative for construction in accordance with an approved embedment drawing. The variation in location of these items shall be limited to a magnitude that is consistent with the tolerances that are specified in Section 3.6.7.13 for the erection of the structural steel.

3.6.6.7.5.4 All work that is performed by the owner's designated representative for construction shall be completed so as not to delay or interfere with the work of the fabricator and the erector. The owner's designated representative for construction shall conduct a survey of the as-built locations of anchor rods, foundation bolts and other embedded items, and shall verify that all items covered in Section 3.6.6.7.5 meet the corresponding tolerances. When corrective action is necessary, the owner's designated representative for construction shall obtain the guidance and approval of the owner's designated representative for design.

3.6.6.7.6 Installation of bearing devices

All leveling plates, leveling nuts and washers and loose base and bearing plates that can be handled without a derrick or crane are set to line and grade by the owner's designated representative for construction. Loose base and bearing

platesthatrequirehandlingwithaderrickorcraneshallbesetbytheerectorto linesandgradesestablishedbytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefor construction.Thefabricatorshallclearlyscribeloosebaseandbearingplates withlines or other suitable marks tofacilitate proper alignment.

Promptlyafterthesettingofbearingdevices,theowner'sdesignated representative forconstructionshallcheckthemforlineandgrade.The variationinelevationrelativetotheestablishedgradeforallbearingdevices shallbeequaltoorlessthanplusorminus1/8in.[3mm].Thefinallocationof bearing devices shallbe the responsibilityoftheowner'sdesignated representativeforconstruction.

3.6.6.7.7 Grouting

Groutingshallbetheresponsibilityoftheowner'sdesignatedrepresentative for construction.Levelingplatesandloosebaseandbearingplatesshallbe promptlygroutedaftertheyaresetandcheckedforlineandgrade.Columns withattachedbaseplates,beamswithattachedbearingplatesandothersimilar memberswithattachedbearingdevicesthataretemporarilysupportedon levelingnutsandwashers,shimsorothersimilarlevelingdevices,shallbe promptlygroutedafterthestructuralsteelframeorportionthereofhasbeen plumbed.

Note:

> Inthemajorityofstructurestheverticalloadfromthecolumnbasesistransmitte dtothefoundationsthroughstructuralgrout.In general, there arethreemethodsby whichsupport is providedforcolumnbasesduringerection:

> (a)Pre-groutedlevelingplatesorloosebaseplates;

> (b)Shims; and,

> (c)LevelingnutsandwashersontheAnchorRodsbeneaththecolumnbase.

3.6.6.7.8 Field connection material

3.6.6.7.8.1 Thefabricatorshallprovidefieldconnectiondetailsthatareconsistentwithth e requirementsinthecontractdocumentsandthatwill,inthefabricator's opinion,result ineconomical fabricationanderection.

3.6.6.7.8.2 Whenthefabricatorisresponsibleforerectingthestructuralsteel,the fabricatorshallfurnishallmaterialsthatarerequiredforbothtemporaryand permanent connectionofthecomponent partsofthestructural steel frame.

3.6.6.7.8.3 Whentheerectionofthestructuralsteelisnotperformedbythefabricator,the fabricatorshall furnishthe followingfieldconnectionmaterial:

(a) Bolts,nutsandwashersoftherequiredgrade,typeandsizeandin sufficientquantityfor all structural steel-to-structuralsteelfield connectionsthataretobepermanentlybolted,includinganextra2percent of each bolt size (diameter and length);

(b) Shimsthatareshownasnecessaryformake-upofpermanentstructural steel-to-structural steel connections; and,

(c)Backingbarsandrun-offtabsthat arerequiredforfieldwelding.

3.6.6.7.8.4 Theerectorshallfurnishallweldingelectrodes,fit-upboltsanddriftpinsused fortheerectionoftheStructuralSteel.

3.6.6.7.9 Loose material

Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,loosestructuralsteel itemsthatarenotconnectedtothestructuralsteelframeshallbesetbythe owner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructionwithoutassistancefrom theerector.

3.6.6.7.10 Temporary support of structural steel frames

3.6.6.7.10.1 Theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesignshallidentifythefollowing in the contract documents:

(a) The lateral-load-resistingsystemandconnectingdiaphragmelementsthat provide for lateral strengthandstability inthe completedstructure; and,

(b) Anyspecialerectionconditionsorotherconsiderationsthatarerequiredby thedesignconcept,suchastheuseofshores,jacksorloadsthatmustbe adjusted as erection progressestosetormaintaincamber,positionwithin specifiedtolerancesorprestress.

3.6.6.7.10.2 Theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructionshallindicatetothe erectorpriortobidding,theinstallationschedulefornon-structuralsteel elements ofthelateral-load-resistingsystemandconnectingdiaphragmelements identifiedbytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesigninthecontract documents.

3.6.6.7.10.3

Basedupontheinformationprovidedinaccordancewith Sections3.6.7.10.1 and3.6.7.10.2,theerectorshalldetermine,furnishandinstallalltemporarysupports, suchastemporaryguys,beams,falsework,cribbingorotherelementsrequired fortheerectionoperation.Thesetemporarysupportsshallbesufficienttosecure thebarestructuralsteelframingoranyportionthereofagainstloadsthatare likelytobeencounteredduringerection,includingthoseduetowindandthosethat result fromerection operations.

Theerectorneednotconsiderloads duringerectionthatresultfromthe performanceofworkby,ortheactsof,others,exceptasspecificallyidentified bytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativesfordesignandconstruction,nor thosethatareunpredictable,suchasloadsduetohurricane,tornado,earthquake, explosion orcollision.

Temporarysupportsthatarerequiredduringoraftertheerectionofthe structuralsteelframeforthesupportofloadscausedbynon-structuralsteel elements,includingcladding,interiorpartitionsandothersuchelementstha

t   willinduceortransmitloadstothestructuralsteelframeduringorafter erection, shall be the responsibility of others.

3.6.6.7.10.4

Alltemporarysupportsthatarerequiredfortheerectionoperationandfurnished andinstalledbytheerectorshallremainthepropertyoftheerectorandshall notbemodified,movedorremovedwithouttheconsentoftheerector. Temporarysupportsprovidedbytheerectorshallremaininplaceuntilthe portionofthestructuralsteelframethattheybraceiscompleteandthe lateral-load-resistingsystemandconnectingdiaphragmelementsidentifiedbythe owner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesigninaccordancewithSection3.6 .7.10.1areinstalled.Temporarysupportsthatarerequiredtobeleftinplaceaf ter   thecompletionofStructuralSteelerectionshallbe removedwhennolonger neededbytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstructionand returnedtotheerectoringoodcondition.

3.6.6.7.11 Safety protection

3.6.6.7.11.1 Theerectorshallprovidefloorcoverings,handrails,walkwaysandothersa fety protectionfortheerector'spersonnelasrequiredbylawandtheapplicable safetyregulations.Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,th e erectorispermittedtoremovesuchsafetyprotectionfromareaswherethe erectionoperationsarecompleted.

3.6.6.7.11.2 Whensafetyprotectionprovidedbytheerectorisleftinanareafortheuseof othertradesafterthestructuralsteelerectionactivityiscompleted,theowne r's designatedrepresentative for constructionshall:

(a)Accept responsibility for and maintain this protection;

(b) Indemnifythefabricatorandtheerectorfromdamagesthatmaybe incurredfromtheuseofthis protectionby othertrades;

(c)Ensure that this protectionis adequateforusebyotheraffectedtrades;

(d) Ensure that this protectioncomplies withapplicable safety regulations whenbeingusedby othertrades; and,

(e) Removethisprotectionwhenitisnolongerrequiredandreturnittothe erector in the same condition as it was received.

3.6.6.7.11.3 Safetyprotectionforothertradesthat arenot underthedirect employment ofthe erectorshallbetheresponsibilityoftheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativef or construction.

3.6.6.7.11.4 Whenpermanentsteeldeckingisusedforprotectiveflooringandisinstalled by theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstruction,allsuchworkshall be

scheduledandperformedinatimelymannersoasnottointerferewithordelay theworkofthefabricatorortheerector.Thesequenceofinstallationthatis usedshall meet all safety regulations.

3.6.6.7.11.5 Unlesstheinteractionandsafetyofactivitiesofothers,suchasconstruction by othersorthestorageofmaterialsthatbelongtoothers,arecoordinatedwiththe workoftheerectorbytheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstruction, suchactivitiesshallnotbepermitteduntiltheerectionofthestructuralsteel frameorportionthereofiscompletedbytheerectorandacceptedbythe owner'sdesignatedrepresentativeforconstruction.

3.6.6.7.12Structural steel frame tolerances

Theaccumulationofthemilltolerancesandfabricationtolerancesshallnot causetheerectiontolerancestobeexceeded.

3.6.6.7.13 Erection tolerances

Erectiontolerancesshallbedefinedrelativetomemberworkingpointsand workinglines, whichshall be definedas follows:

(a)Formembersotherthanhorizontalmembers,thememberworkpointshall be the actualcentre of the member ateachendoftheshippingpiece.

(b)Forhorizontalmembers,theworkingpointshallbetheactualcenterlineof thetopflangeortopsurfaceateachend.

(c) Thememberworkinglineshallbethestraightlinethatconnectsthe memberworkingpoints.

Thesubstitutionofotherworkingpointsispermittedforeaseofreference, providedtheyarebased upontheabovedefinitions.

Thetolerancesonstructuralsteelerectionshallbeinaccordancewith therequirementsinSections3.6.7.13.1through3.6.7.13.3.

3.6.6.7.13.1

Thetolerancesonpositionandalignmentofmemberworkingpointsandwor kinglinesshall beasdescribed inSections3.6.7.13.1.1through3.6.7.13.1.3.

3.6.6.7.13.1.1

Foranindividualcolumnshippingpiece,theangularvariationoftheworkin g linefromaplumblineshallbeequaltoorlessthan1/500ofthedistance betweenworking points, subject tothe followingadditional limitations:

(a)Foranindividualcolumnshippingpiecethatisadjacenttoanelevator shaft,thedisplacementofmemberworkingpointsshallbeequaltoorless than1in.[25mm]fromtheestablishedcolumnlineinthefirst20stories. Abovethislevel,anincreaseinthedisplacementof1/32in.[1mm]is permittedforeachadditionalstoryuptoamaximumdisplacementof2in.[50 mm] fromtheestablishedcolumnline.

(b) For an exterior individual column shipping piece, the displacement of member working points from the established column

line in the first 20 stories shall be equal to or less than 1 in. [25 mm] toward and 2 in. [50 mm] away from the building line. Above this level, an increase in the displacement of 1/16 in. [2 mm] is permitted for each additional story up to a maximum displacement of 2 in. [50 mm] toward and 3 in. [75 mm] away from the building line.

(c) For an exterior individual column shipping piece, the member working points at any splice level for multi-tier buildings and at the tops of columns for single-tier buildings shall fall within a horizontal envelope, parallel to the building line, that is equal to or less than 1 1/2 in. [38 mm] wide for buildings up to 300 ft [90 000 mm] in length. An increase in the width of this horizontal envelope of 1/2 in. [13 mm] is permitted for each additional 100 ft [30 000m] in length up to a maximum width of 3 in. [75 mm].

(d) For an exterior column shipping piece, the displacement of member working points from the established column line, parallel to the building line, shall be equal to or less than 2 in. [50 mm] in the first 20 stories. Above this level, an increase in the displacement of 1/16 in. [2 mm] is permitted for each additional story up to a maximum displacement of 3 in. [75 mm] parallel to the building line.

3.6.6.7.13.1.2

For members other than column shipping pieces, the following limitations shall apply:

(a) For a member that consists of an individual, straight shipping piece without field splices, other than a cantilevered member, the variation in alignment shall be acceptable if it is caused solely by variations in column alignment and/or primary supporting member alignment that are within the permissible variations for the fabrication and erection of such members.

(b) For a member that consists of an individual, straight shipping piece that connects to a column, the variation in the distance from the member

workingpointtotheupperfinishedsplicelineofthecolumnshallbee qualtoorlessthanplus3/16in.[5mm] andminus5/16in.[8mm].

(c)Foramemberthatconsistsofanindividualshippingpiecethatdo esnot

connecttoacolumn,thevariationinelevationshallbeacceptableifit is

causedsolelybythevariationsintheelevationsofthesupportingme mbers

withinthepermissiblevariationsforthefabricationanderectionoft hose members.

(d) Foramemberthatconsistsofanindividual,straightshippingpiecea ndthatisasegmentofafieldassembledunit

containingfieldsplicesbetween pointsofsupport,theplumbness,elevationandalignmentshallbe acceptableiftheangularvariationoftheworkinglinefromtheplan alignmentisequaltoorlessthan1/500ofthedistancebetweenworking points.

(e)For a cantilevered member that consists of an individual, straight shippingpiece,theplumbness,elevationandalignmentshallbeacceptablei fthe angular variation of theworking line from a straight line that is extended in the plan direction from the working point at its supported end is equal to or less than 1/500 of the distance from the working point at the free end.

(f)Foramemberofirregularshape,theplumbness,elevationandalignment shall be acceptable if the fabricated member is within its tolerances and the members that support it are within the tolerances specified in this SECTION.

(g)For a member that is fully assembled in the field in an unstressed condition, the same tolerances shall apply as if fully assembled in the shop.

(h)For a member that isfield-assembled,element-by-element in place, temporarysupportshallbeusedoranalternativeerectionplanshallbe submittedtotheowner'sdesignatedrepresentativesfordesignand construction.ThetoleranceinSection7.13.1.2(d)shallbemetinthe supported condition with working points taken at the point(s) of temporary support.

3.6.6.7.13.1.3 FormembersthatareidentifiedasAdjustableItemsbytheowner'sdesignat ed representative for design in the contract documents, the fabricator shall

provideadjustableconnectionsforthesememberstothesupportingstructur al steelframe.Otherwise, the fabricator ispermitted to provide non-adjustable connections. When adjustable items are specified, the owner's designated representative for designshall

indicatethetotaladjustabilitythatisrequired fortheproperalignmentofthesesupportsforothertrades.Thevariationinthe positionandalignment ofadjustable items shall be as follows:

(a) The variation in the vertical distance from the upper finished splice line of the nearest column to the support location specified in the structural design drawings shall be equal to or less than plus or minus 3/8 in. [10 mm].

(b)The variation in the horizontal distance from the established finish line at the particular floor shall be equal to or less than plus or minus 3/8 in. [10 mm].

(c)Thevariationinverticalandhorizontalalignmentattheabuttingendsof adjustableitemsshallbeequaltoorlessthanplusorminus3/16in.[5 mm].

3.6.6.7.13.2 Inthedesignofsteelstructures,theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefor designshallprovideforthenecessaryclearancesandadjustmentsformaterial furnishedbyothertradestoaccommodatethemilltolerances,fabrication tolerances anderectiontolerances inthissectionforthestructural steel frame.

3.6.6.7.13.3 Priortoplacingorapplyinganyothermaterials,theowner'sdesignated representative forconstructionshalldeterminethatthelocationofthe structuralsteelisacceptableforplumbness,elevationandalignment.the erectorshallbegiveneithertimelynoticeofacceptancebytheowner's designatedrepresentativeforconstruction,oralistingofspecificitemsthat are to be corrected in order to obtain acceptance. Such notice shall be rendered promptly upon completion of any part of the work and prior to the start of work by other trades that may be supported, attached or applied to the structural steel frame.

3.6.6.7.14 Correction of errors

Thecorrectionofminormisfitsbymoderateamountsofreaming,grinding, welding or cutting, and the drawing of elements into line with drift pins, shall be consideredtobenormalerectionoperations.Errorsthatcannotbecorrected usingtheforegoingmeans,orthatrequiremajorchangesinmemberor connection configuration, shall be promptly reported to the owner's designated representatives for design and construction and the fabricator by the erector, to enable the responsible entity to either correct the error or approve the most efficient and economical method of correction to be used by others.

3.6.6.7.15 Cuts, alterations and holes for other trades

Neitherthefabricatornortheerectorshallcut,drillorotherwisealtertheir work,northeworkofothertrades,toaccommodate other trades, unless such workisclearlyspecifiedinthecontractdocuments.Whensuchworkisso specified, the owner's designated representatives for design and construction shall furnish complete information as to materials, size, location and number of alterationsinatimelymannersoasnottodelaythepreparationofshopand erection drawings.

3.6.6.7.16 Handling and storage

The erector shall take reasonable care in the proper handling and storage of the structural steel during erection operations to avoid the accumulation of excess dirtandforeignmatter.Theerectorshallnotberesponsiblefortheremoval fromthestructuralsteelofdust,dirtorotherforeignmatterthatmay accumulate during erection as the result of job-site conditions or exposure to the elements. The erector shall handle and store all bolts, nuts, washers and related fasteningproductsinaccordancewiththerequirementsoftheRCSC Specification.

3.6.6.7.17 Field painting

Neither the fabricator nor the erector is responsible to paint field bolt heads and nuts or field welds, nor to touch up abrasions of the shop coat, nor to perform any other field painting.

3.6.6.7.18Finalcleaning up

Upon the completion of erection and before final acceptance, the erector shall remove all of the erector's falsework, rubbish and temporary buildings.

3.6.6.8 Quality Assurance

3.6.6.8.1 General

3.6.6.8.1.1 Thefabricatorshallmaintainaqualityassuranceprogramtoensurethatthe workisperformedinaccordancewiththerequirementsinthisSECTION,theAISC Specificationandthecontractdocuments.Thefabricatorshallhavetheoptionto usetheAISCQualityCertification Programtoestablishandadministerthe quality assurance program.

Note: The AISC Quality Certification Program confirms to the construction industry that a certified structural steel fabrication shop has the capability by reason ofcommitment,personnel,organization,experience,procedures,knowledgeandeq uipmenttoproducefabricatedstructuralsteeloftherequiredqualityforagiven category of work. The AISC Quality Certification Program is not intendedto involve inspection and/or judgment of product quality on individual projects.Neitherisitintendedtoguarantee the quality of specific fabricatedstructural steel products.

3.6.6.8.1.2 The erector shall maintain a quality assurance program to ensure that the workisperformedinaccordancewiththerequirementsinthisSECTION,theAISC Specificationandthecontractdocuments.TheErectorshallbecapableof performing the erection of the structural steel, and shall provide the equipment, personnelandmanagementforthescope,magnitudeandrequiredqualityof eachproject.The Erector shall have the option to use the AISC ErectorCertification Program to establish and administer the quality assurance program.

Note:The AISC Erector Certification Program confirms to the construction industrythatacertifiedstructuralsteelerectorhasthecapabilitybyreasonof

commitment, personnel, organization,experience,procedures,knowledgeandequipment to erect fabricated structural steel to the required quality for a givencategoryofwork.TheAISCErectorCertificationProgramisnotintendedtoinvolveinspectionand/orjudgmentofproductqualityonindividualprojects.Neither is it intended to guarantee the quality of specific erected structural steel products.

3.6.6.8.1.3 Whentheownerrequiresmoreextensivequalityassuranceorindependent inspectionbyqualifiedpersonnel,orrequiresthatthefabricatorbecertified under the AISC Quality Certification Program and/or requires that the erector be certified under the AISC Erector Certification Program, this shall be clearly statedinthecontractdocuments,includingadefinitionofthescopeofsuch inspection.

3.6.6.8.2 Inspection ofmill material

Certifiedmilltestreportsshallconstitutesufficientevidencethatthemill product satisfies material order requirements. The fabricator shall make a visual inspection of material that is received from the mill, but need not perform any material tests unless the owner's designated representative for design specifies inthecontractdocumentsthatadditionaltestingistobeperformedatthe owner's expense.

3.6.6.8.3 Non-destructive testing

When non-destructive testing is required, the process, extent, technique and standards of acceptance shall be clearly specified in the contract documents.

3.6.6.8.4 Surface preparation and shop painting inspection

Inspectionofsurfacepreparationandshoppaintingshallbeplannedforthe acceptanceofeachoperationasthefabricatorcompletesit.Inspectionofthe paintsystem,includingmaterialandthickness,shallbemadepromptlyupon completion of the paint application. When wet-film thickness is to be inspected,it shall be measured during the application.

3.6.6.8.5 Independent inspection

When inspection by personnel other than those of the fabricator and/or erector isspecifiedinthecontractdocuments,therequirementsinSections3.6.6.8.5.1through 3.6.6.8.5.6 shall be met.

3.6.6.8.5.1 Thefabricatorandtheerectorshallprovidetheinspectorwithaccesstoall placeswheretheworkisbeingperformed.Aminimumof24hoursnotificati on shall begivenpriortothecommencement ofwork.

3.6.6.8.5.2 Inspection of shop work by the inspector shall be performed in the fabricator's shop to the fullest extent possible. Such inspections shall be timely, in-sequence and performed in such a manner aswill not disrupt fabrication operations and willpermittherepairofnon-conformingworkpriortoanyrequiredpainting while the material is still in-process in the fabrication shop**.**

3.6.6.8.5.3 Inspectionoffieldworkshallbepromptlycompletedwithoutdelayingthe progress or correction of the work.

3.6.6.8.5.4 Rejection of material or workmanship that is not in conformance with the contract documents shall be permitted at any time during the progress of the work. However, this provision shall not relieve the owner or the inspector of the obligation for timely, in-sequence inspections.

3.6.6.8.5.5 The fabricator, erector, and owner's designated representatives for design and construction shall be informed of deficiencies that are noted by the inspector promptly after the inspection. Copies of all reports prepared by the inspector shall be promptly given to the fabricator, erector and owner's designated representatives for design and construction. The necessary corrective work shall be performed in a timely manner.

3.6.6.8.5.6 The inspector shall not suggest, direct, or approve the fabricator or erector to deviate from the contract documents or the approved shop and erection drawings, or approve such deviation, without the written approval of the owner's designated representatives for design and construction.

3.6.6.9 Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel

3.6.6.9.1 General Requirements

When members are specifically designated as "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel" or "AESS" in the contract documents, the requirements in Sections 3.6.6.1 through 3.6.6.8 shall apply as modified in Section 3.6.6.9. AESS members or components shall be fabricated and erected with the care and dimensional tolerances that are stipulated in Sections 3.6.6.9.2 through 3.6.6.9.4. The following additional information shall be provided in the contract documents when AESS is specified:

(a) Specific identification of members or components that are AESS;

(b) Fabrication and/or erection tolerances that are to be more restrictive than provided for in this SECTION, if any; and,

(c) Requirements, if any, of a mock-up panel or components for inspection and acceptance standards prior to the start of fabrication.

3.6.6.9.2 Fabrication

3.6.6.9.2.1 The permissible tolerances for out-of-square or out-of-parallel, depth, width and symmetry of rolled shapes shall be as specified in ASTM A6/A6M. Unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, the exact matching of abutting cross-sectional configurations shall not be necessary. The as-fabricated straightness tolerances of members shall be one-half of the standard camber and sweep tolerances in ASTM A6/A6M.

3.6.6.9.2.2 The tolerances on overall profile dimensions of members that are built-up from a series of standard structural shapes, plates and/or bars by welding shall be taken as the accumulation of the variations that are permitted for the component parts in ASTM A6/A6M. The as-fabricated straightness tolerances for the member as a whole shall be one-half the standard camber and sweep tolerances for rolled shapes in ASTM A6/A6M.

3.6.6.9.2.3 Unlessspecificvisualacceptancecriteriaforweldshow-througharespecified inthecontractdocuments,themembersorcomponentsshallbeacceptableas produced.

3.6.6.9.2.4 All copes,mitresandcutsinsurfacesthatareexposedtoviewshallbemade withuniformgapsof1/8in.[3mm]ifshownasopenjoints,orinreasonable contact ifshownwithout gap.

3.6.6.9.2.5 Allweldsthatareexposedtoviewshallbevisuallyacceptableiftheymeetthe requirementsinAWSD1.1,exceptallgrooveandplugweldsthatareexposedtoviewshallnotprojectmorethan1/16in.[2mm]abovetheexposedsurface.
Finishingorgrindingofweldsshallnotbenecessary,unlesssuchtreatmentis requiredtoprovideforclearancesorfit ofothercomponents.

3.6.6.9.2.6 Erectionmarksorotherpaintedmarksshallnotbemadeonthosesurfacesof weathering steelAESSmembersthataretobeexposedinthecompleted structure.Unlessotherwisespecifiedinthecontractdocuments,thefabricator shallcleanweatheringsteelAESSmemberstomeettherequirementsofSSPC- SP6.

3.6.6.9.2.7 Stamped or raised manufacturer's identification marks shall not be filled, groundorotherwiseremoved.

3.6.6.9.2.8 Seams of hollow structural sections shall be acceptable as produced.Seams shallbeorientedawayfromvieworas directedinthecontractdocuments.

3.6.6.9.3 Deliveryofmaterials

Thefabricatorshallusespecialcaretoavoidbending,twistingorotherwise distortingthestructural steel.

3.6.6.9.4 Erection

3.6.6.9.4.1 Theerectorshallusespecialcareinunloading,handlinganderectingthe structuralsteeltoavoidmarkingordistortingthestructuralsteel.Careshall alsobetakentominimizedamagetoanyshoppaint.Iftemporarybracesor erectionclipsareused,careshallbetakentoavoidthecreationofunsightly surfacesuponremoval.Tackweldsshallbegroundsmoothandholesshallbe filledwithweldmetalorbodysolderandsmoothedbygrindingorfiling.The erectorshallplanandexecutealloperationsinsuchamannerthattheclosefit and neat appearance ofthe structure will not be impaired.

3.6.6.9.4.2 Unless otherwise specifiedinthe contractdocuments, AESS members and componentsshallbeplumbed,leveledandalignedtoatolerancethatisone-half thatpermittedfornon-AESSmembers.Toaccommodatetheseerection tolerancesforAESS,theowner'sdesignatedrepresentativefordesignshall specifyconnectionsbetweenAESSmembersandnon-AESSmembers,

masonry,concreteandothersupportsasadjustableitems,inordertoprovide theerectorwithmeansforadjustment.

3.6.6.9.4.3 When AESS is backed with concrete, the owner's designated representative forconstructionshallprovidesufficientshores,tiesandstrong backstoprevent sagging,bulgingorsimilardeformationoftheAESSmembersduetothewe ight andpressureofthewet concrete.

3.6.7 Steel Joists

3.6.7.1 General

The design, manufacture and use of open web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with one of the following Steel Joist Institute (SJI) specifications:

1. SJI K-1.1

2. SJI LH/DLH-1.1

3. SJI JG-1.1

Where required, the seismic design of buildings shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 6.5.2 or6.10.5.

3.6.7.2Design

The registered design professional shall indicate on the construction documents the steel joist and/or steel joist girder designations from the specifications listed in Section 3.6.6.1 and shall indicate the requirements for joist and joist girder design, layout, end supports, anchorage, non-SJI standard bridging, bridging termination connections and bearing connection design to resist uplift and lateral loads.These documents shall indicate special requirements as follows:

1. Special loads including:

1.1. Concentrated loads;

1.2. Nonuniform loads;

1.3. Net uplift loads;

1.4. Axial loads;

1.5. End moments; and

1.6. Connection forces.

2. Special considerations including:

2.1. Profiles for nonstandard joistand joist girder configurations(standard joist and joist girder configurations are as indicated in the SJI catalog);

2.2. Oversized or other nonstandard web openings;and

2.3. Extended ends.

3. Deflection criteria for live and total loads for non-SJIstandard joists.

3.6.7.3 Calculations

The steel joist and joist girder manufacturer shall design the steel joists and/or steel joist girders in accordance with the current SJI specifications and load tables to support the load requirements of Section 3.6.6.2. The registered design professional may require submission of the steeljoist and joist girder calculations as prepared by a registered design professional responsible for the product design. If requested by the registered design professional, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit design calculations with a cover letter bearing the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's registered design professional. In addition to standard calculations under this seal and signature, submittal of the following shall be included:

> 1. Non-SJI standard bridging details (e.g. for cantilevered conditions, net uplift, etc.).
>
> 2. Connection detailsfor:
>
>> 2.1. Non-SJI standard connections (e.g. flush-framed or framed connections);
>>
>> 2.2. Field splices; and
>>
>> 2.3. Joist headers.

3.6.7.4Steel joist drawings

Steel joist placement plans shall be provided to show the steel joist products as specified on the construction documents and are to be utilized for field installation in accordance with specific project requirements as stated in Section 3.6.6.2. Steel placement plans shall include, at a minimum, the following:

> 1. Listing of all applicable loads as stated in Section 3.6.6.2 and used in the design of the steel joists and joist girders as specified in the construction documents.
>
> 2. Profiles for nonstandard joist and joist girder configurations (standard joist and joist girder configurations are as indicated in the SJI catalog).
>
> 3. Connection requirements for:
>
>> 3.1. Joist supports;
>>
>> 3.2. Joist girder supports;
>>
>> 3.3. Field splices; and
>>
>> 3.4. Bridging attachments.
>
> 4. Deflection criteria for live and total loads for non-SJIstandard joists.
>
> 5. Size, location and connections for all bridging.
>
> 6. Joist headers.
>
>> Steel joist placement plans do not require the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's registered design professional.

3.6.7.5 Certification

At completion of fabrication, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit a certificate of compliance stating that work was performed in accordance with approved construction documents and with SJI standard specifications.

3.6.8 Steel Cable Structures

3.6.8.1 General

The design, fabrication and erection including related connections, and protective coatings of steel cables for buildings shall be in accordance with ASCE 19.

3.6.8.2 Seismic requirements for steel cable

The design strength of steel cables shall be determined by the provisions of ASCE 19 except as modified by these provisions.

1. A load factor of 1.1 shall be applied to the prestress force included in T3 and T4 as defined in Section 3.12.

2. In Section 3.2.1, Item (c) shall be replaced with "1.5 T3"and Item (d) shall be replaced with "1.5 T4."

3.6.9 Steel Storage Racks

3.6.9.1 Storage racks

The design, testing and utilization of industrial steel storage racks shall be in accordance with the RMI Specification for the Design, Testing and Utilization of Industrial Steel Storage Racks. Racks in the scope of this specification include industrial pallet racks, movable shelf racks and stacker racks and does not apply to other types of racks, such as drive-in and drive-through racks, cantilever racks, portable racks or rack buildings. Where required, the seismic design of storage racks shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

3.6.10 Cold-Formed Steel

3.6.10.1 General

The design of cold-formed carbon and low-alloy steel structural members shall be in accordance with AISI-NAS.The design of cold-formed stainless-steel structural members shall be in accordance with ASCE 8. Cold-formed steel light-framed construction shall comply with Section 3.6.10.

3.6.10.2 Composite Slabs on Steel Decks

Composite slabs of concrete and steel deck shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 3.

3.6.11 Cold-Formed Steel, Light-Framed Construction

3.6.11.1 General

The design, installation and construction of cold-formed carbon or low-alloy steel, structural and nonstructural steel framing shall be in accordance with AISI-General and AISI-NAS.

3.6.11.2 Headers

The design and installation of cold-formed steel box headers, back-to-back headers and single and double L-headers used in single-span conditions for load-carrying purposes shall be in accordance with AISI-Header, subjectto the limitations therein.

3.6.11.3 Trusses

The design, quality assurance, installation and testing of cold-formed steel trusses shall be in accordance with AISI-Truss, subjectto the limitations therein.

3.6.11.4 Wall Stud Design

The design and installation of cold-formed steel studs for structural and nonstructural walls shall be in accordance with AISI-WSD.

3.6.11.5LateralDesign

The design oflight-framed cold-formed steel walls and diaphragms to resist wind and seismic loads shall be in accordance with AISI-Lateral.

3.6.11.6 Prescriptive Framing

Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, up to two stories in height, shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with AISI-PM, subject to the limitations therein.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 3STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION 3.7: MASONRY

3.7.1General

3.7.1.1 Scope

This chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of masonry.

3.7.1.2 Design Methods

Masonry shall comply with the provisions of one of the following design methods in this Section as well as the requirements of Sections 3.7.1 through 3.7.4. Masonry designed by the allowable stress design provisions of Section 3.7.1.2.1,the strength design provisions of Section3.7.1.2.2 or the prestressed masonryprovisions of Section3.7.1.2.3 shall comply with Section 3.7.5.

3.7.1.2.1 Allowable stress design

Masonry designed by the allowable stress design method shall comply with the provisions of Sections **3.**7.6 and **3.**7.7.

3.7.1.2.2 Strength design

Masonrydesigned bythe strength design method shall comply with the provisions of Sections **3.**7.6 and **3.**7.8, except that autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) masonry shall comply with the provisions of Section **3.**7.6 and Chapter 1 and Appendix Aof ACI530/ASCE 5/TMS 402. AAC masonry shall not be used in the seismic-force-resisting system of structures classified as Seismic Design CategoryB, C, D, Eor F.

3.7.1.2.3Prestressed masonry

Prestressed masonry shall be designed in accordance with Chapters 1 and 4 of ACI530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and Section **3.**7.6.

3.7.1.2.4 Empirical design

Masonry designed by the empirical design method shall comply with the provisions of Sections **3.**7.6 and **3.**7.9 or Chapter 5 of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS 402.

3.7.1.2.5 Glass unit masonry

Glass unit masonry shall comply with the provisions of Section **3.**7.10 or Chapter 7 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/ TMS 402.

3.7.1.2.6 Masonry veneer

Masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 14 orChapter 6 of ACI530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

3.7.1.3 Design and ConstructionDocuments

The construction documents shall show all of the items required by this PART including the following:

> 1. Design calculations (in design documents only)
>
> 2. Specified size, grade, type andlocation of reinforcement, anchors and wall ties.
>
> 3. Reinforcing bars to be welded and welding procedure.

4. Size and location of structural elements.

5. Provisions for dimensional changes resulting from elastic deformation, , shrinkage, temperature and moisture.

3.7.1.3.1 Fireplace drawings

The construction documents shall describe in sufficient detail the location, size and construction of masonry fireplaces. The thickness and characteristicsofmaterials and the clearances fromwalls, partitions and ceilings shall be clearly indicated.

3.7.2 Definition and Notation

3.7.2.1Definitions

Following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this SECTION and as used elsewhere in this PART, have the meanings shown herein.

AAC MASONRY: Masonry made of autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) units, manufactured without internal reinforcement and bonded together using thin- or thick-bed mortar.

ADOBE CONSTRUCTION: Construction in which the exterior load-bearing and non-loadbearing walls and partitions are of unfired clay masonry units, and floors, roofs and interior framing are wholly or partly of wood or other approved materials.

> **Adobe, stabilized:** Unfired clay masonry units to which admixtures, such as emulsified asphalt, are added during the manufacturing processto limit the units' water absorption so as to increase their durability.

> **Adobe, unstabilized:** Unfired clay masonry units that do not meet the definition of "Adobe, stabilized."

ANCHOR: Metal rod, wire or strap that secures masonry to its structural support.

ARCHITECTURAL TERRA COTTA: Plain or ornamental hard-burned modified clay units, larger in size than brick, with glazed or unglazed ceramic finish.

AREA:

> **Bedded:** The area of the surface of a masonry unit that is in contact with mortar in the plane of the joint.

> **Gross cross-sectional:** The areadelineatedbythe out-to-outspecified dimensions of masonry in theplane under consideration.

Net cross-sectional: The area of masonry units, grout and mortar crossed by the plane under consideration based on out-to-out specified dimensions.

AUTOCLAVEDAERATEDCONCRETE(AAC): Low-density cementitious product of calcium silicate hydrates, whose material specifications are defined in ASTM C 1386.

BEDJOINT: The horizontal layer ofmortar on which a masonry unit is laid.

BOND BEAM: A horizontal grouted element within masonry in which reinforcement is embedded.

BONDREINFORCING: The adhesion between steel reinforcement and mortar or grout.

BRICK

> **Calcium silicate (sand lime brick):** A masonry unit made of sand and lime.
>
> **Clay or shale:** A masonry unit made of clay or shale, usually formed into a rectangular prism while in the plastic state and burned or fired in a kiln.
>
> **Concrete:** A masonry unit having the approximate shape of a rectangular prism and composed of inert aggregate particles embedded in a hardened cementitious matrix.

BUTTRESS: A projecting part of a masonry wall built integrally therewith to provide lateral stability.

CAST STONE: A building stone manufactured from Portland cement concrete precast and used as a trim, veneer or facing on or in buildings or structures.

CELL: A void space having a gross cross-sectional area greater than 1½ square inches(967 mm^2).

CHIMNEY: A primarily vertical enclosure containing one or more passageways for conveyingflue gases to the outside atmosphere.

CHIMNEY TYPES

> **High-heat appliance type:** Anapprovedchimneyfor removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, high-heat appliances producing combustion gases in excess of 2,000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 3.21.13.11.3).
>
> **Low-heat appliance type:** Anapprovedchimneyfor removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, low-heatappliances producing combustiongases not in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) under normal operating conditions, butcapable of producingcombustiongasesof1,400°F (760°C) during intermittent forced firing for periods up to 1 hour. Temperatures shall bemeasured at the appliance flue outlet.
>
> **Masonrytype:** Afield-constructedchimneyofsolid masonry units or stones.
>
> **Medium-heat appliance type:** An approved chimneyfor removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, medium-heat appliances producing combustion gases not exceeding 2,000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 3.7.13.11.2).
>
> **CLEANOUT:** An opening to the bottom of a grout space of sufficient size and spacing to allow the removal of debris.
>
> **COLLAR JOINT:** Vertical longitudinal joint between wythes of masonry or between masonry and backup construction that is permitted to be filled with mortar or grout.

COLUMN, MASONRY: An isolated vertical member whose horizontal dimension measured at right angles to its thicknessdoes not exceed three times its thickness and whose height is at least four times its thickness.

COMPOSITE ACTION: Transfer of stress between components of a member designed so that in resisting loads, the combined components act together as a single member.

COMPOSITE MASONRY: Multiwythe masonry members acting with composite action.

COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY: Maximum compressive force resisted per unit of net cross-sectional area of masonry, determined by the testing of masonry prisms or a function of individual masonry units, mortar and grout.

CONNECTOR: Amechanicaldevice forsecuringtwo or more pieces, parts or memberstogether,including anchors, wall ties and fasteners.

COVER: Distancebetween surface ofreinforcing bar and edge of member.

DIAPHRAGM:A roof or floor system designed to transmit lateral forces to shear walls or other lateral-load-resisting elements.

DIMENSIONS

> **Actual:** The measured dimension of a masonry unit or element.

> **Nominal:** The specified dimension plus an allowance for the joints with which the units are to be laid. Thickness is given first, followed by height and then length.

> **Specified:** The dimensions specified for the manufacture or construction of masonry, masonry units, joints or any other component of a structure.

EFFECTIVE HEIGHT: For braced members, the effective height is the clear height between lateral supports and is used for calculating the slenderness ratio. The effective height for unbraced members is calculated in accordance with engineering mechanics.

FIREPLACE: A hearth and fire chamber or similar prepared place in which a fire may be made and which is built in conjunction with a chimney.

FIREPLACE THROAT: The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

FOUNDATION PIER: An isolated vertical foundation member whose horizontal dimension measured at right angles to its thicknessdoes not exceed three times its thickness and whose height is equal to or less than four times its thickness.

GLASS UNIT MASONRY: Masonry composed of glass units bonded by mortar.

GROUTED MASONRY

> **Grouted hollow-unit masonry:**That form of grouted masonry construction in which certain designated cells of hollow units are continuously filled with grout.

> **Grouted multiwythemasonry:** That form of grouted masonry construction in which the space between the wythes is solidly or periodically filled with grout.

HEAD JOINT: Vertical mortar joint placed between masonry units within the wythe at the time the masonry units are laid.

HEADER(Bonder): Amasonry unit thatconnects two or more adjacent wythes of masonry.

HEIGHT, WALLS: The vertical distance from the foundation wall or other immediate support of such wall to the top of the wall.

MASONRY:A built-up construction or combination of building units or materials of clay, shale, concrete, glass, gypsum, stone or other approved units bonded together with or without mortar or grout or other accepted methods of joining.

> **Ashlar masonry:** Masonry composed of various-sized rectangular units havingsawed, dressed or squared bed surfaces, properly bonded and laid in mortar.
>
> **Coursed ashlar:** Ashlar masonry laid in courses of stone of equal height for each course,although different coursesshall be permitted to be of varying height.
>
> **Glass unit masonry:**Masonry composed ofglass units bonded by mortar.
>
> **Plain masonry:** Masonry in which the tensile resistance of the masonry is taken into consideration and the effects of stresses in reinforcement are neglected.
>
> **Random ashlar:** Ashlar masonry laid in courses of stone set without continuous joints and laid up without drawn patterns. When composed of material cut into modular heights, discontinuous but aligned horizontal joints are discernible.
>
> **Reinforced masonry:** Masonry construction in which reinforcement acting in conjunction with the masonry is used to resist forces.
>
> **Solid masonry:** Masonry consisting of solid masonry units laid contiguously with the joints between the units filled with mortar.
>
> **Unreinforced (plain) masonry:**Masonry in which the tensile resistance of masonryis taken into consideration and the resistance of the reinforcing steel, if present,is neglected.

MASONRYUNIT: Brick, tile, stone, glass block or concrete block conforming to therequirements specified in Section3.7.3.

> > **Clay:** A building unit larger in size than a brick, composed of burned clay, shale, fired clay or mixtures thereof.
> >
> > **Concrete:** Abuilding unit or block larger in size than 12inches by 4 inches by 4 inches (305 mm by 102 mm by 102 mm) made of cement and suitable aggregates.
> >
> > **Hollow:** A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in any plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional areameasured in the same plane.
> >
> > **Solid:** Amasonry unit whose netcross-sectional area in every plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is 75 percent or more of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

MEAN DAILY TEMPERATURE: The average daily temperature of temperature extremes predicted by a local weather bureau for the next 24 hours.

MORTAR:A plastic mixture of approved cementitious materials, fine aggregates and water used to bond masonry or other structural units.

MORTAR, SURFACE-BONDING:A mixture to bond concrete masonry units that contains hydraulic cement, glass fiber reinforcement with or without inorganic fillers or organic modifiers and water.

PLASTIC HINGE: The zone in a structural member in which the yield moment is anticipated to be exceeded under loading combinations that include earthquakes.

PRESTRESSEDMASONRY: Masonry in which internal stresses have been introduced to counteract potential tensile stresses in masonry resulting from applied loads.

PRISM: An assemblage of masonry units and mortar with or without grout used as a test specimen for determining properties of the masonry.

RUBBLEMASONRY: Masonrycomposedofroughly shaped stones.

> **Coursed rubble:**Masonry composed of roughlyshaped stones fitting approximately on level beds and well bonded.

> **Random rubble:** Masonry composed ofroughly shaped stones laid without regularity of coursing but well bonded and fitted together to form well-divided joints.

> **Rough or ordinary rubble:**Masonry composed of unsquared field stones laid without regularity of coursing but well bonded.

RUNNING BOND: The placement of masonry units such that head joints in successive courses are horizontally offset at least one-quarter the unit length.

SHEAR WALL:

> **Detailed plain masonry shear wall:** A masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces neglecting stresses in reinforcement,anddesigned inaccordancewithSection3.7.6.1.1.

> **Intermediate prestressed masonry shear wall:** A prestressed masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces considering stresses in reinforcement, and designed in accordance with Section 3.7.6.1.1.2.

> **Intermediate reinforced masonry shear wall:** A masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces considering stresses in reinforcement, and designed in accordance with Section 3.7.6.1.1.

> **Ordinary plain masonry shear wall:** A masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces neglecting stresses in reinforcement, and designed in accordance with Section3.7.6.1.1.

> **Ordinary plain prestressed masonry shear wall:** A prestressed masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces considering stresses in reinforcement, and designed in accordance with Section 3.7.6.1.1.1.

Ordinary reinforced masonry shear wall: A masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces considering stresses in reinforcement, and designed in accordance with Section 3.7.6.1.1.

Special prestressed masonry shear wall: A prestressed masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces considering stresses in reinforcement and designed in accordancewith Section 3.7.6.1.1.3 except that only grouted, laterally restrained tendons are used.

Special reinforced masonry shear wall: A masonry shear wall designed to resist lateral forces considering stresses in reinforcement, and designed in accordance with Section3.7.6.1.1.

SHELL: The outer portion of a hollow masonry unit as placed in masonry.

SPECIFIED: Required by design and construction documents.

SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY:f'_m. Minimum compressive strength, expressed as force per unit of net cross-sectional area, required of the masonry used in construction by the design and construction documents, and upon which the project design is based. Whenever thequantity f'_m is under the radical sign, the square root of numerical value only is intended and the result has units of pounds per square inch (psi) (MPa).

STACK BOND: The placement of masonry units in a bond pattern is such that head joints in successive courses are vertically aligned. For the purpose of this PART, requirements for stack bond shall apply to masonry laid in other than running bond.

STONE MASONRY: Masonry composed of field, quarried or cast stone units bonded by mortar.

Ashlar stone masonry: Stone masonry composed of rectangular units having sawed, dressed or squared bed surfaces and bonded by mortar.

Rubble stone masonry: Stone masonry composed of irregular-shaped units bonded by mortar.

STRENGTH:

Design strength: Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor.

Nominal strength: Strength of a member or cross section calculated in accordance with these provisions before application of any strength-reduction factors.

Required strength: Strength of a member or cross section required to resist factored loads.

THIN-BEDMORTAR: Mortar for use in constructionofAAC unit masonry with joints 0.06 inch (1.5 mm) or less.

TIE, LATERAL: Loop of reinforcing bar or wire enclosing longitudinal reinforcement.

TIE, WALL: Aconnector that connects wythes of masonry walls together.

TILE: A ceramic surface unit, usually relatively thin in relation to facial area, made from clay or a mixture of clay or other ceramic materials, called the body of the tile, having either a "glazed" or "unglazed" face and fired above red heat in the course of manufacture to a temperature sufficiently high enough to produce specific physical properties and characteristics.

TILE, STRUCTURAL CLAY: A hollow masonry unit composed of burned clay, shale, fire clay or mixture thereof, and having parallel cells.

WALL: A vertical element with a horizontal length-to-thickness ratio greater than three, used to enclose space.

> **Cavity wall:** A wall built of masonry units or of concrete, or a combination of these materials, arranged to provide an air- space within the wall, and in which the inner and outer parts of the wall are tied together with metal ties.

> **Composite wall:** A wall built of a combination of two or more masonry unitsbondedtogether,one forming the backup and the other forming the facing elements.

> **Dry-stacked, surface-bonded walls:** A wall built of concrete masonry units where the units are stacked dry, without mortar on the bed or head joints, and where both sides of the wall are coated with a surface-bonding mortar.

Masonry-bonded hollow wall: A wall built of masonry units so arranged as to provide an airspace within the wall, and in which the facing and backing of the wall are bonded together with masonry units.

Parapet wall: The part of any wall entirely above the roof line.

WEB: Aninterior solid portion of a hollow masonry unit as placed in masonry.

WYTHE: Each continuous, verticalsectionof a wall,one masonry unit in thickness.

3.7.2.2   NOTATION

A_n = Netcross-sectional areaofmasonry, square inches(mm^2).

b = Effective width of rectangular member or width of flange for T and I sections, inches (mm).

d_b = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).

F_s = Allowable tensile or compressive stress in reinforcement, psi (MPa).

f_r = Modulusof rupture, psi (MPa).

f_y = Specified yield stressofthereinforcement ortheanchor bolt, psi (MPa).

f'_{AAC} = Specified compressive strength of AAC masonry, the minimum compressive strength for a class of AAC masonry as specified in ASTM C 1386, psi (MPa).

f'_m = Specified compressive strength of masonry at age of 28 days, psi (MPa).

f'_{mi} = Specified compressive strength of masonry at the time of prestress transfer, psi (MPa).

$K=$ The lesser of the masonry cover, clear spacing between adjacent reinforcement, or five times d_b, inches (mm).

$L_s=$ Distance between supports, inches (mm).

$L_w=$ Length of wall, inches (mm).

$l_d=$ Required development length or laplength of reinforcement, inches (mm).

$l_{de}=$ Embedment length of reinforcement, inches (mm).

$P_w=$ Weight of wall tributary to section under consideration, pounds (N).

$t=$ Specified wall thicknessdimension or the least lateral dimension of a column, inches (mm).

$V_n=$ Nominalshear strength, pounds (N).

$V_u=$ Required shear strength due to factored loads, pounds(N).

$W=$ Wind load, or related internal moments in forces.

= Reinforcement size factor.

ρ_n = Ratioof distributed shear reinforcement on plane perpendicular to plane ofA_{mv}.

$\rho_{max}=$ Maximumreinforcement ratio.

$\varphi=$ Strength reduction factor.

3.7.3 Masonry Construction Materials

3.7.3.1 Concrete Masonry Units

Concrete masonry units shall conform to the following standards: ASTM C 55 for concrete brick; ASTM C 73 for calcium silicate face brick; ASTM C 90 for load-bearing concrete masonry units or ASTM C 744 for prefaced concrete and calcium silicate masonry units.

3.7.3.2 Clay or Shale Masonry Units

Clay or shale masonry units shall conform to the following standards: ASTM C 34 for structural clay load-bearing wall tile; ASTM C 56 for structural clay nonload-bearing wall tile; ASTM C 62 for building brick (solid masonry units made from clay or shale); ASTM C 1088 for solidunitsof thinveneerbrick;ASTMC126 for ceramic-glazedstructural clay facingtile, facingbrick and solid masonry units; ASTM C 212for structural clay facing tile; ASTM C 216 for facing brick (solid masonry units made from clay or shale); ASTM C 652 for hollow brick (hollow masonry units made from clay or shale); and ASTM C 1405 for glazed brick (single-fired solid brick units).

EXCEPTION: Structural clay tile for nonstructural use in fire-proofing of structural members and in wall furring shall not be required to meet the compressive strength specifications. The fire-resistance rating shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E 119 and shall comply with the requirements of this Code.

3.7.3.3 AAC Masonry

AAC masonry units shall conform to ASTM C 1386 for the strength class specified.

3.7.3.4 Stone Masonry Units

Stone masonry units shall conform to thefollowingstandards: ASTMC503 for**marble** building stone (exterior); ASTM C 568 for limestone building stone; ASTM C 615 forgranite building stone; ASTM C 616 for sandstone building stone; or ASTM C 629 for **slate building** stone.

3.7.3.5 Ceramic Tile

Ceramic tile shall be as defined in, and shall conform to the requirements of, ANSI A137.1.

3.7.3.6 Glass Unit Masonry

Hollow glass units shall be partially evacuated and have a minimum average glass facethickness of 3/16inch(4.8 mm). Solid glass-block units shall be provided when required. The surfaces of units intended to be in contact with mortar shall be treated with a polyvinyl butyral coating or latex- based paint. Reclaimed units shall not be used.

3.7.3.7 Second-Hand Units

Second-hand masonry units shall not be reused unless they conform to the requirements of new units. The units shall be of whole, sound materials and free from cracks and other defects that will interfere with proper laying or use. Old mortar shall be cleaned from the unit before reuse.

3.7.3.8 Mortar

Mortar for use in masonry construction shall conform to ASTM C 270 and shall conform to the proportion specifications of Table 3.7.1 or the property specifications of Table 3.7.2. Type S or N mortar shall be used for glass unit masonry. The amount of water used in mortar for glass unit masonry shall be adjusted to account for the lack of absorption. Retempering of mortar for glass unit masonry shall not bepermitted after initial set. Unused mortar shall be discarded within2½hours after initial mixing, except that unused mortar for glass unit masonry shall be discarded within 1½ hours after initial mixing.

3.7.3.9 Surface-Bonding Mortar

Surface-bonding mortar shall comply with ASTM C 887. Surface bonding of concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C 946.

3.7.3.10 Mortars for Ceramic Wall and Floor Tile

Portland cement mortars for installing ceramic wall and floor tile shall comply with ANSI A108.1A and ANSI A108.1B and be of the compositions indicated in Table 3.7.3.

TABLE 3.7.3 CERAMIC TILE MORTAR COMPOSITIONS

LOCATION	MORTAR	COMPOSITION
Walls	Scratch-coat	1 cement; 1/5 hydrated lime;4 dry or 5 damp sand
	Setting bed and leveling coat	1 cement; 1/2 hydrated lime;5 damp sand to 1 cement, 1 hydrated lime, 7 damp sand

| Floors | Setting bed | 1 cement; 1/10 hydrated lime;5 dry or 6 damp sand; or 1cement; 5 dry or 6 damp sand |
| Ceilings | Scratch-coatand sand bed | 1 cement; 1/2 hydrated lime;21/2 dry sand or 3 damp sand |

3.7.3.10.1 Dry-set Portland cement mortars

Premixed prepared Portland cement mortars, which require only the addition of water and are used in the installation of ceramic tile, shallcomply with ANSI A118.1. Theshear bond strength for tile set in such mortar shall be as required in accordance with ANSI A118.1. Tile set in dry-set Portland cement mortar shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

3.7.3.10.2 Latex-modifiedPortlandcementmortar

Latex-modified Portland cement thin-set mortars in which latex is added to dry-set mortar as a replacement for all or part of the gauging water that are used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.4. Tile set in latex-modified Portland cement shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

3.7.3.10.3 Epoxy mortar

Ceramic tile set and grouted with chemical-resistant epoxy shall comply with ANSI A118.3. Tile set and grouted with epoxy shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.6.

3.7.3.10.4 Furan mortar and grout

Chemical-resistant furan mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.5. Tile set and grouted with furan shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.8.

TABLE 3.7.1 MORTAR PROPORTIONS

MORTAR	TYPE	Portland cement[a] or blended cement[b]	Masonrycement[c] M	S	N	Mortarcement[d] M	S	N	HYDRATEDLIME[e] OR LIME PUTTY	AGGREGATE MEASURED IN A DAMP, LOOSE CONDITION
Cement-lime	M	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	$1/4$	Not less than $2^1/4$and not more than 3 times the sum of the separate volumes of cementitious materials
	S	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over $1/4$to $1/2$	
	N	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over $1/2$to $1^1/4$	
	O									
Mortar cement	M	1	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	
	M	—	—	—	—	1	—	—	—	
	S									
	S	$1/2$	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	
	N									
	O	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	—	
Masonry cement	M	1	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	
	M	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	
	S									
	S	$1/2$	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	
	N									
	O	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	

a.Portland cement conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 150.

b.Blended cement conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 595.

c.Masonry cement conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 91.

d.Mortar cement conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 1329.

e.Hydrated lime conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 207.

TABEL 3.7.2 MORTAR PROPERTIES

MORTAR	TYPE	AVERAGECOMPRESSIVE[b] STRENGTH AT 28 DAYS minimum (psi)	WATERRETENTION minimum(%)	AIR CONTENT maximum(%)
Cement-lime	M	2,500	75	12
	S	1,800		12
	N		75	
	O	750		14[c]
Mortar cement	M	2,500	75	12
	S	1,800		12
	N		75	
	O	750		14[c]
Masonry cement	M	2,500	75	18
	S	1,800		18
	N		75	
	O	750		20[d]

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895kPa.

a.Thisaggregateratio(measuredindamp,loosecondition)shallnotbelessthan$2^1/_4$andnotmorethan3timesthesumofthe separatevolumesofcementitiousmaterials.

b.Average of three 2-inch cubes of laboratory-prepared mortar, in accordance with ASTM C 270.

c.When structural reinforcement is incorporated in cement-lime or mortar cement mortars, the maximum air content shall not exceed 12 percent.

d.When structural reinforcement is incorporated in masonry cement mortar, the maximum air content shall not exceed 18 percent.

3.7.3.10.5 Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout

Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.8. Tile set andgrouted with modified epoxy-emulsionmortar and grout shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.9.

3.7.3.10.6Organicadhesives

Water-resistantorganic adhesives used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A136.1. The shear bond strength after water immersion shall not be less than 40 psi (275 kPa) for Type I adhesive and not less than 20 psi (138 kPa) for Type II adhesive when tested in accordance with ANSI A136.1. Tile set in organic adhesives shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.4.

3.7.3.10.7Portlandcementgrouts

Portlandcement grouts used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.6. Portland cement grouts for tile work shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.10.

3.7.3.11 Mortar for AAC Masonry

Thin-bed mortar for AAC masonry shall comply with Section 3.7.3.11.1. Mortar for leveling courses of AAC masonry shall comply with Section 3.7.3.11.2.

3.7.3.11.1Thin-bed mortar for AAC masonry

Thin-bed mortar for AAC masonry shall be specifically manufactured for use with AAC masonry. Testing to verify mortar properties shall be conducted by the thin-bed mortar manufacturerand confirmed by an independent testing agency:

1. The compressive strength of thin-bed mortar, as determined by ASTM C 109, shall meet or exceed the strength of the AAC masonry units.

2. The shear strength of thin-bed mortar shall meet or exceed the shear strength of the AAC masonry units for wall assemblages tested in accordance with ASTM E519.

3. The flexural tensile strength of thin-bed mortar shall not be less than the modulus of rupture of the masonry units. Flexural strength shall be determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E 72 (transverse load test), ASTM E 518 Method A (flexural bond strength test) or ASTM C 1072 (flexural bond strength test).

   3.1. For conducting flexural strength tests in accordance with ASTM E 518, at least five test specimens shall be construct e d a s stack-bonded prisms at least 32 inches (810 mm) high. The type of mortar specified by the AAC unit manufacturer shall be used.

   3.2. For flexural strength tests in accordance with ASTM C 1072, test specimens shall be constructed as stack-bonded prisms comprised with at least three bed joints. A total of at least five joints shall be tested using the type of mortar specified by the AAC unit manufacturer.

4. The splitting tensile strength of AAC masonry assemblages composed of two AAC masonry units bonded with one thin-bed mortar joint shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 1006 and shall equal or exceed $2.4\sqrt{f'_{AAC}}$.

3.7.3.11.2 Mortar for leveling courses of AAC masonry

Mortar used for the leveling courses of AAC masonry shall conform to Section **3.**7.3.8 and shall be Type M or S.

3.7.3.12 Grout

Grout shall conform to Table 3.7.4 or to ASTM C 476. When grout conforms to ASTM C 476, the grout shall be specified by proportion requirements or property requirements.

TABLE 3.7.4 GROUT PROPORTIONS BY VOLUME FOR MASONRY CONSTRUCTION

TYPE	PARTS BY VOLUME OF PORTLAND CEMENT OR BLENDED CEMENT	PARTS BY VOLUME OF HYDRATED LIME OR LIME PUTTY	AGGREGATE, MEASURED IN A DAMP, LOOSE CONDITION	
			Fine	Coarse
Fine grout	1	1	$2^1/_4$-3 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious	__

Coarse grout	1	1	2$\frac{1}{4}$-3 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials	1-2 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials

3.7.3.13 Metal Reinforcement and Accessories

Metal reinforcement and accessories shall conform to Sections 3.7.3.13.1 through 3.7.3.13.8.

3.7.3.13.1 Deformedreinforcing bars

Deformed reinforcing bars shallconform to one of the followingstandards: ASTM A 615 for deformed and plain billet-steel bars for concretereinforcement; ASTMA706 forlow-alloy steel deformed bars for concretereinforcement; ASTMA767 for zinc-coated reinforcing steel bars; ASTM A 775 for epoxy-coated reinforcing steel bars; and ASTMA 996 for rail andaxle steel-deformed bars for concretereinforcement**.**

3.7.3.13.2 Joint reinforcement

Joint reinforcement shall comply with ASTM A951.The maximum spacing of crosswires in

ladder-type joint reinforcement and point of connection of cross wires to longitudinal wires of truss-type reinforcement shall be 16 inches (400 mm).

3.7.3.13.3 Deformed reinforcing wire

Deformed reinforcing wire shall conform to ASTM A 496.

3.7.3.13.4 Wire fabric

Wire fabric shall conform to ASTM A 185 for plain steel-welded wire fabric for concrete reinforcement or ASTM A 497 for welded deformed steel wire fabric for concrete reinforcement.

3.7.3.13.5 Anchors, ties and accessories

Anchors, ties and accessories shall conform to the following standards: ASTMA 36 for structural steel; ASTMA 82 for plain steel wire for concretereinforcement; ASTMA 185for plain steel-welded wire fabric for concrete reinforcement; ASTMA 240 for chromium and chromium-nickle stainless steel plate, sheet and strip; ASTMA 307 Grade A for anchorbolts; ASTMA 480 for flat rolled stainless and heat-resisting steelplate, sheet andstrip; and ASTMA1008for cold-rolled carbon steel sheet.

3.7.3.13.6 Prestressing tendons

Prestressing tendons shall conform to one of the following standards:

    1. Wire . . . .   ASTM A 421

    2. Low-relaxation wire . . . .   ASTM A 421

    3. Strand . . . .   ASTM A 416

    4. Low-relaxation strand . . . .   ASTM A 416

5. Bar. . . . . .ASTM A 722

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Wire, strands and bars not specifically listed in ASTMA 421, ASTM A 416 or ASTMA 722 arepermitted, providedtheyconform to the minimumrequirementsinASTMA421, ASTMA416 orASTMA722 andare approved by the architect/engineer.

2. Bars and wires of less than 150 kips per square inch (ksi) (1034MPa) tensile strength and conforming to ASTMA 82, ASTMA 510, ASTMA 615, ASTMA 996 or ASTM A 706 are permitted to be used as prestressed tendons, provided that:

    2.1. The stress relaxation properties have been assessed by testsaccording to ASTM E 328 for the maximum permissible stress in the tendon.

    2.2. Other non-stress-related requirements of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402,

Chapter 4, addressingprestressingtendonsare met.

3.7.3.13.7 Corrosion protection

Corrosion protection for prestressing tendons shall comply with the requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602, Article 2.4G. Corrosion protectionfor prestressinganchorages, couplersandend blocksshall comply withtherequirementsofACI530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602, Article 2.4H. Corrosion protection for carbon steel accessories used in exterior wall construction orinterior wallsexposed toa mean relative humidityexceeding 75percent shall comply with either Section**3.**7.3.13.7.2 or **3.**7.3.13.7.3. Corrosion protection for carbon steel accessories used in interior walls exposed to a mean relative humidity equal to or less than 75 percent shall comply with either Section**3.**7.3.13.7.1, **3.**7.3.13.7.2 or **3.**7.3.13.7.3.

3.7.3.13.7.1 Mill galvanized

Mill galvanized coatings shall be applied as follows:

1. For joint reinforcement, wall ties, anchors and inserts, a minimum coating of 0.1 ounce per square foot ($31g/m^2$) complying with the requirements of ASTMA 641 shall be applied.

2. For sheet metal ties and sheet metal anchors, a minimum coating complying with Coating Designation G-60 according to the requirements of ASTM A 653 shall be applied.

3. For anchor bolts, steel plates or bars not exposed to the earth, weather or a mean relative humidity exceeding 75 percent, a coating is not required.

3.7.3.13.7.2 Hot-dipped galvanized

Hot-dipped galvanized coatings shall be applied after fabrication as follows:

1. Forjoint reinforcement, wallties, anchors and inserts,

aminimumcoating of 1.5 ouncesper square foot (458 g/m^2) complying with the requirements of ASTMA 153, ClassBshall be applied.

2. For sheet metal ties and anchors, the requirements of ASTMA 153, Class B shall be met.

3. For steel plates and bars, the requirements of either ASTMA 123 or ASTMA 153, ClassBshall be met.

3.7.3.13.7.3 Epoxy coatings

Carbon steel accessories shall be epoxy coated as follows:

1.For joint reinforcement, the requirements of ASTM A 884, Class A,Type 1 having aminimum thickness of 7 mils (175 μm) shall be met.

2. For wire ties and anchors, the requirements of ASTM A 899, Class C

having a minimum thickness of 20 mils (508 μm) shall be met.

3. For sheet metal ties and anchors, a minimum thickness of 20 mils (508 μm) per surface shall be provided or a minimum thickness in accordance with the manufacturer'sspecificationshallbeprovided.

3.7.3.13.8 Tests

Where unidentifiedreinforcement is approved for use, not less than three tension and three bending tests shall be made on representative specimens of the reinforcement from each shipment and grade of reinforcing steel proposed for use in the work.

3.7.4 Construction

3.7.4.1 Masonry Construction

Masonry construction shall comply with the requirements of Sections3.7.4.1.1 through3.7.4.5 and with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

3.7.4.1.1 Tolerances

Masonry, except masonry veneer, shall be constructed within the tolerances specified in ACI530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

3.7.4.1.2 Placing mortar and units

Placement of mortar and clay and concrete units shall comply with Sections**3.**7.4.1.2.1, **3.**7.4.1.2.2, **3.**7.4.1.2.3 and **3.**7.4.1.2.5. Placement of mortar and glass unit masonry shall comply with Sections **3.**7.4.1.2.4 and **3.**7.4.1.2.5. Placement of thin-bed mortar and AACmasonry shall comply withSection**3.**7.4.1.2.6.

3.7.4.1.2.1 Bed and head joints

Unlessotherwise required or indicated on theconstruction documents,

headbedjoints shall be3/8inch (9.5 mm) thick, except that the thicknessof the bed joint of the starting course placed over foundations shall not be less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) and not more than 3/4inch (19.1 mm).

3.7.4.1.2.1.1 Open-end units

Open-end units with beveled ends shall be fully grouted. Head joints of open-end units with beveled ends need not be mortared. The beveled ends shall form a grout key that permits grouts within 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) of the face of the unit. The units shall be tightly butted to prevent leakage of the grout.

3.7.4.1.2.2 Hollow units

Hollow units shall be placed such that face shells of bed joints are fully mortared. Webs shall be fully mortared in all courses of piers, columns, pilasters, in the starting course on foundations where adjacent cells or cavities

are to be grouted, and where otherwise required. Head joints shall be mortared a minimum distance from each face equal to the face shell thickness of the unit.

3.7.4.1.2.3 Solid units

Unless otherwise required or indicated on the construction documents, solid units shall be placed in fully mortared bed and head joints. The ends of the units shall becompletely buttered. Head joints shall not be filled by slushing with mortar. Head joints shall be constructed by shoving mortar tight against the adjoining unit. Bed joints shall not be furrowed deep enough to produce voids.

3.7.4.1.2.4 Glass unit masonry

Glass units shall be placed so head and bed joints are filled solidly. Mortar shall not be furrowed.

Unless otherwise required, head and bed joints ofglass unit masonry shall be 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick,except that vertical joint thickness of radial panels shallless than not be less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). The bed joint thickness tolerance shall be minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). The head joint thickness tolerance shall be plus or minus 1/8 inch(3.2 mm).

3.7.4.1.2.5 Placement in mortar

Units shall be placed while the mortar is soft and plastic. Any unit disturbed to the extent that the initial bond is broken after initial positioning shall be removed and relaid in fresh mortar.

3.7.4.1.2.6 Thin-bed mortar and AAC masonry units

AAC masonry construction shall begin with a leveling course of masonry meeting the requirements of Section3.7.4.1.2. Subsequent courses of AAC masonry units shall be laid with thin-bed mortar using a special notched trowel manufactured for use with thin-bed mortar to spread the mortar so that it completely fills the bed joints.

Unless otherwise specified, the head joints shall be similarly filled. Joints in AAC

masonry shall be approximately 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) and shall be formed by striking on the ends and tops of AAC masonry units with a rubber mallet. Minor adjustments in unit position shall be made while the mortar is still soft and plastic by tapping it into the proper position. Minor sanding of the exposed faces of AAC masonry shall be permitted to provide a smooth and plumb surface.

3.7.4.1.2.7 Grouted masonry

Between grout pours, a horizontal construction joint shall be formed by stopping all wythes at the same elevation and with the grout stopping a minimum of 1½ inches (38 mm) below a mortar joint, except at the top of the wall. Where bond beams occur, the grout pour shall be stopped a minimum of ½ inch (12.7 mm) below the top of the masonry.

3.7.4.1.3 Installation of wall ties

The ends of wall ties shall be embedded in mortar joints. Walltie ends shall engage outer face shells of hollow units by at least ½inch (12.7 mm). Wire wall ties shall be embedded at least 1½ inches (38 mm) into the mortar bed of solid masonry units or solid-grouted hollow units. Wall ties shall not be bent after being embedded in grout or mortar.

3.7.4.1.4 Chases and recesses

Chases and recesses shall be constructed as masonry units are laid. Masonry directly above chases or recesses wider than 12inches(305 mm) shall be supported on lintels.

3.7.4.1.5 Lintels

The design for lintels shall be in accordance with the masonry design provisions of either Section**3.**7.7 or **3.**7.8. Minimum length of end support shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

3.7.4.1.6 Support on wood

Masonry shall not be supported on wood girders or other forms of wood construction.

3.7.4.1.7 Masonry protection

The top of unfinished masonry work shall be covered to protect the masonry from the weather.

3.7.4.1.8 Weep holes

Weep holes provided in the outside wythe of masonry walls shall be at a maximum spacing of33 inches (838 mm) on center (o.c.). Weep holes shall not beless than 3/16inch (4.8 mm) in diameter.

3.7.4.2 Corbeledmasonry

Except for corbels designed perSection 3.7.4 or 3.7.8, the following shall apply:

1. Corbels shall be constructed of solid masonry units.

2. The maximum corbeledprojection beyond the face of the wall shall not exceed:

    2.1. One-half of the wall thicknessfor multiwythe walls bonded by mortar or grout and wall ties or masonry headers or

    2.2.   One-halfthe   wythe   thicknessforsingle   wythewalls   , masonrybondedhollowwalls, multiwythe walls with open collarjoints and

veneer walls.

   3. The maximum projection of one unit shall not exceed:

     3.1. One-half the nominal unit height of the unit or

      3.2. One-third the nominal thicknessof the unit or wythe.

   4. The back surface of the corbelled section shall remain within 1 inch (25mm) of plane.

3.7.4.2.1 Molded cornices

Unless structural support and anchorage are provided to resist the overturning moment, the center of gravity of projecting masonry or molded cornices shall lie within the middle one-third of the supporting wall. Terra cotta and metal cornices shall be provided with a structural frame of approved noncombustible material anchored in an approved manner.

3.7.4.3 Cold Weather Construction

The cold weather construction provisions of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602, Article1.8 C, or the following procedures shall be implemented when either the ambient temperature falls below 40°F (4°C) or the temperature of masonry units is below 40°F (4°C).

3.7.4.3.1 Preparation

   1. Temperatures of masonry units shall not be less than20°F (-7°C) when laid in the masonry. Masonry units containing frozen moisture, visible ice or snow on their surface shall not be laid.

   2. Visible ice and snow shall be removed from the top surface of existingfoundationsand masonryto receivenew construction. These surfaces shall be heated to above freezing, using methods that do not result in damage.

3.7.4.3.2 Construction

The following requirements shall apply to work in progress and shall bebased on ambient temperature**.**

     3.7.4.3.2.1 Construction requirements for temperatures between 40°F (4°C) and 32°F (0°C). The following construction requirements shall be met when the ambient temperature is between 40°F (4°C) and 32°F (0°C):

       1. Glass unit masonry shall not be laid.

       2. Water and aggregates used in mortar and grout shall not be heated above 140°F (60°C).

       3. Mortar sand or mixing water shall be heated to produce mortar temperatures between 40°F (4°C) and120°F (49°C)at the time of mixing. When water and aggregates for grout are below 32°F(0°C), they shall be heated.

     3.7.4.3.2.2 Construction requirements for temperatures between 32°F (0°C) and 25°F(-4°C).The requirements of Section 2104.3.2.1and the following construction requirements shall be met when the ambient temperature is between 32°F (0°C) and25°F (-4°C):

       1. The mortar temperature shall be maintained above freezing until

used in masonry.

2. Aggregates and mixing water for grout shall be heated to produce grout temperature between 70°F (21°C) and 120°F (49°C) at the time of

mixing. Grout temperature shall be maintained above 70°F (21°C) at the time of grout placement.

3. Heat AAC masonry units to a minimum temperature of 40°F (4°C) before installing thin-bed mortar.

3.7.4.3.2.3 Construction requirements for temperatures between 25°F (-4°C) and 20°F (-7°C).The requirements of Sections 3.7.4.3.2.1 and 3.7.4.3.2.2and the following construction requirements shall be met when the ambient temperature is between 25°F (-4°C) and 20°F (-7°C):

1. Masonry surfacesunder constructionshallbe heated to 40°F (4°C).

2. Wind breaks or enclosures shall be provided when the wind velocity exceeds 15 miles per hour (mph) (24 km/h).

3. Priorto grouting,masonry shall beheated to a minimum of 40°F (4°C).

3.7.4.3.2.4 Construction requirements for temperatures below 20°F (-7°C). The requirements of Sections3.7.4.3.2.1, 3.7.4.3.2.2 and 3.7.4.3.2.3 and the followingconstruction requirement shall be met when the ambient temperature is below 20°F (-7°C): Enclosures and auxiliary heat shall be provided to maintain air temperature within the enclosure to above 32°F (0°C).

3.7.4.3.3 Protection

The requirements of this Section and Sections 3.7.4.3.3.1 through 3.7.4.3.3.5 apply after the masonry is placed and shall be based on anticipated minimum dailytemperature for grouted masonry andanticipated mean daily temperature for ungrouted masonry.

3.7.4.3.3.1 Glass unit masonry

The temperature of glass unit masonry shall be maintained above 40°F (4°C) for **48** hours after construction.

3.7.4.3.3.2 AAC masonry

The temperature of AAC masonry shall be maintained above 32°F (0°C) for the first 4 hours after thin-bed mortar application.

3.7.4.3.3.3 Protection requirements for temperatures between 40°F (4°C) and

25°F (-4°C). When the temperature is between 40°F (4°C) and 25°F (-4°C), newly constructed masonry shall be covered with a weather-resistive membrane for 24 hours after being completed.

3.7.4.3.3.4 Protection requirements for temperatures between 25°F (-4°C) and 20°F (-7°C). When the temperature is between 25°F (-4°C) and 20°F

(-7°C), newly constructed masonry shall be completely covered with weather-

resistiveinsulating blankets, or equal protection, for 24 hours after being completed. The time period shall be extended to 48 hours for grouted masonry, unless the only cement in the grout is Type III Portland cement.

3.7.4.3.3.5 Protection requirements for temperatures below 20°F (-7°C). When the temperature is below 20°F (-7°C), newly constructed masonry shall be maintained at a temperature above 32°F (0°C) for at least 24 hours after being completed by using heated enclosures, electric heating blankets, infrared lamps or other acceptable methods. The time period shall be extended to 48 hoursfor grouted masonry, unless the only cement in the grout is Type III Portland cement.

3.7.4.4 Hot Weather Construction

The hot weather construction provisions of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602, Article 1.8 D, or the following procedures shall be implemented when the temperature or the temperatureand wind-velocity limits of this Section are exceeded.

3.7.4.4.1 Preparation

The following requirements shall be met prior to conducting masonry work.

3.7.4.4.1.1 Temperature

When the ambient temperature exceeds 100°F (38°C), or exceeds 90°F (32°C) with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph (3.5 m/s):

> 1. Necessary conditions and equipment shall be provided to produce mortar having a temperature below 120°F (49°C).

> 2.Sand piles shall bemaintained in a damp, loose condition.

3.7.4.4.1.2 Special conditions

When the ambient temperature exceeds 115°F (46°C), or 105°F (40°C) with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph (3.5 m/s), the requirements of Section 7.4.4.1.1 shall be implemented, and materials and mixing equipment shall beshaded from direct sunlight.

3.7.4.4.2 Construction

The following requirements shall be met while masonry work is in progress.

3.7.4.4.2 Temperature

When the ambient temperature exceeds 100°F (38°C), or exceeds 90°F (32°C) with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph (3.5 m/s):

1. The temperature of mortar and grout shall be maintained below 120°F (49°C).

2. Mixers, mortar transport containers and mortar boards shall be flushed with cool water before they come into contact with mortar ingredients or mortar.

3. Mortar consistency shall be maintained by retempering with cool water.

> 4.Mortar shall be used within 2 hours of initial mixing.

> 5. Thin-bed mortar shall be spread no more than 4 feet (1219 mm) ahead of AAC masonry units.

6. AAC masonry units shall be placed within one minute after spreading thin-bed mortar.

3.7.4.4.2.2 Special conditions

When the ambient temperature exceeds 115°F(46°C),orexceeds105°F (40°C) with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph (3.5 m/s), the requirements of Section 3.7.4.4.2.1 shall be implemented and cool mixing water shall be used for mortar and grout. The use of ice shall be permitted in the mixing water prior to use. Ice shall not be permitted in the mixing water when added to the other mortar or grout materials.

3.7.4.4.3 Protection

Whenthe meandaily temperature exceeds 100°F (38°C) or exceeds 90°F (32°C) with a wind velocitygreater than 8 mph (3.5 m/s), newly constructed masonry shall be fog sprayed until damp at least three times a day until the masonry is three days old.

3.7.4.5 Wetting of Brick

Brick (clay or shale) at the time of laying shall require wetting if the unit's initial rate of water absorptionexceeds 30 grams per 30 square inches(19355 mm2) per minute or 0.035 ounce per square inch (1 g/645 mm2) per minute, as determined by ASTM C 67.

3.7.5 Quality Assurance

3.7.5.1 General

A quality assurance program shall be used to ensure that the constructed masonry is in compliance with the construction documents.The quality assurance program shall comply with the inspection and testing requirements specified.

3.7.5.2 Acceptance Relative to Strength Requirements

3.7.5.2.1 Compliancewith $f'_m$and f'_{AAC}. Compressive strength of masonry shall be considered satisfactory if the compressive strength of each masonry wythe and groutedcollar joint equals or exceeds the value of f'_m for clay andconcrete masonry and f'_{AAC} for AAC masonry. For partially grouted clayand concretemasonry, the compressive strength of boththe grouted and ungrouted masonry shallequal or exceed the applicable f'_m. At the time of prestress, the compressive strength of the masonry shall equal or exceed f'_{mi}, which shall be less than or equal to f'_m.

3.7.5.2.2 Determination of compressive strength

The compressive strength for each wythe shall be determined by the unit strength method or by the prism test method as specified herein.

3.7.5.2.2.1 Unit strength method

3.7.5.2.2.1.1 Clay masonry

The compressive strength of masonry shall be determined based on the strength of the units and the type of mortar specified using Table 7.5, provided:

1. Units conform to ASTM C 62, ASTM C 216 or ASTM C 652 and

are sampled and tested in accordance with ASTM C 67.

2. Thickness of bed joints does not exceed 5/8 inch(15.9 mm).

3. For grouted masonry, the grout meets one of the following requirements:

3.1. Grout conforms to ASTM C 476.

3.2. Minimumgrout compressivestrength equals or exceeds f'_mbut not less than2,000 psi (13.79 MPa). The compressivestrength of grout shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 1019.

TABEL 3.7.5 COMPRESSIVE STRENGTHOF CLAY MASONRY

NET AREA COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF CLAY MASONRY UNITS (psi)		NET AREA COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY (psi)
Type M or S mortar	Type N mortar	
1,700	2,100	1,000
3,350	4,150	1,500
4,950	6,200	2,000
6,600	8,250	2,500
8,250	10,300	3,000
9,900	—	3,500
13,200	—	4,000

For SI:1 pound per square inch = 0.00689MPa.

3.7.5.2.2.1.2 Concrete masonry

The compressive strength of masonry shall be determined based on the strength of the unit and type of mortar specified using Table 7.6, provided:

1. Units conform to ASTM C 55 or ASTM C 90 and are sampled and tested in accordance with ASTM C 140.

2.Thickness of bed joints does not exceed 5/8 inch(15.9 mm).

3. For grouted masonry, the grout meets one of the following requirements:

3.1. Grout conforms to ASTM C 476.

3.2. Minimum grout compressive strength equals or exceeds f'_mbut not less than2,000 psi (13.79 MPa). The compressive strength of grout shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1019.

TABEL 3.7.6 COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF CONCRETE MASONRY

NET AREA COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (psi)		NET AREA COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY (psi)[a]
Type M or S mortar	Type N mortar	
1,250	1,300	1,000

1,900	2,150	1,500
2,800	3,050	2,000
3,750	4,050	2,500
4,800	5,250	3,000

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689MPa.

a. For units less than 4 inches in height, 85 percent of the values listed.

3.7.5.2.2.1.3 AAC masonry

Thecompressive strength ofAACmasonryshallbebased onthe strength of the AAC masonry unit only and the following shall be met:

>   1. Units conform to ASTM C 1386.

>   2. Thickness of bed joints does not exceed 1/8 inch(3.2 mm).

>   3. For grouted masonry, the grout meets one of the following requirements:

>   3.1. Grout conforms to ASTM C 476.

>   3.2. Minimumgrout compressivestrength equals orexceeds f'_{AAC} but not less than 2,000 psi (13.79 MPa).The compressive strength of grout shall be determined in accordance with ASTMC 1019.

3.7.5.2.2.2 Prism test method

3.7.5.2.2.2.1 General

The compressive strength of clay and concrete masonry shall be determined by the prism test method:

>   1. Where specified in the construction documents.

>   2. Where masonry does not meet the requirements for application of the unit strength method in Section 3.7.5.2.2.1.

3.7.5.2.2.2.2 Number of prisms per test

A prism test shall consist of three prisms constructed and tested in accordance with ASTM C 1314.

3.7.5.3 Testing Prisms from Constructed Masonry

When approved by the building official, acceptance of masonry that does not meet the requirements of Section 3.7.5.2.2.1 or3.7.5.2.2.2 shall be permitted to be based on tests of prisms cut from the masonry construction in accordance with Sections3.7.5.3.1, 3.7.5.3.2 and 3.7.5.3.3

3.7.5.3.1 Prism Sampling and Removal

A set of three masonry prisms that are at least 28 days old shall be saw cut from the masonry for each 5,000 square feet (465 m2) of the wall area that is in question but not

less than one set of three masonry prisms for the project.The length,width and height dimensionsof theprisms shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C 1314. Transporting, preparation and testing of prisms shall be in accordance with ASTM C1314.

3.7.5.3.2 Compressive strength calculations

The compressive strength of prisms shall be the value calculated in accordance ASTM C 1314, except that the net cross-sectional area of the prism shall be based on the net mortar bedded area.

3.7.5.3.3 Compliance

Compliance with the requirement for the specified compressive strength of masonry, f'_m, shall be considered satisfied provided the modified compressivestrength equals or exceeds the specified f'_m. Additional testing of specimens cut from locations in question shall be permitted**.**

3.7.6 Seismic Design

3.7.6.1 Seismic Design Requirements for Masonry

Masonry structures and components shall comply with the requirements in Section 3.1.14.2.2 and Section 3.1.14.3, 3.1.14.4, 3.1.14.5, 3.1.14.6 or3.1.14.7 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 depending on the structure's Seismic Design Category. All masonry walls, unless isolated on three edges from in-plane motion of the basic structural systems, shall be considered to bepart of the seismic-force-resisting system. In addition, the following requirements shall be met.

3.7.6.1.1 Basic seismic-force-resisting system

Buildings relying on masonry shear walls as part of the basic seismic-force-resistingsystemshall comply withSection3.1.14.2.2 of ACI530/ASCE5/TMS402 orwith Section3.7.6.1.1.1, 3.7.6.1.1.2 or 3.7.6.1.1.3

3.7.6.1.1.1 Ordinary plain prestressed masonry shear walls

Ordinary plain prestressed masonry shear walls shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 of ACI530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

3.7.6.1.1.2 Intermediate prestressed masonryshear walls

Intermediateprestressedmasonryshearwalls shall comply with the requirements of Section 3.1.14.2.2.4 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and shall be designed by Chapter 4, Section 3.4.4.3, of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 forflexuralstrength and bySection3.3.3.4.1.2 of ACI530/ASCE5/TMS402 for shearstrength.Sections3.1.14.2.2.5, 3.3.3.3.5 and 3.3.3.4.3.2(c) of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS 402 shall be applicable for reinforcement. Flexural elements subjected to load reversals shall be symmetrically reinforced. The nominal moment strength at any section along a member shallnotbeless than one-fourth the maximum momentstrength.The cross-sectional area of bonded tendons shall be considered to contribute to the minimum reinforcement in Section 3.1.14.2.2.4 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402. Tendons shall be located in cells that are grouted the full height of the wall.

3.7.6.1.1.3 Special prestressed masonry shear walls

Special prestressedmasonry shear walls shall comply withthe requirementsofSection 3.1.14.2.2.5ofACI530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and shall be designed by Chapter4, Section 3.4.4.3, of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 for flexural strength and by Section 3.3.3.4.1.2 of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS402 for shear strength.Sections 3.1.14.2.2.5(a),3.3.3.3.5 and 3.3.3.4.3.2(c) of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS 402 shall be applicable for reinforcement. Flexural elements subjected to load reversals shall be symmetrically reinforced. The nominal moment strength at any section along a member shall not be less than one-fourth the maximum moment strength. The cross-sectional area of bonded tendons shall be considered to contribute to the minimum reinforcement inSection 3.1.14.2.2.5 of ACI530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

3.7.6.1.1.3.1Prestressing tendons

Prestressing tendonsshall consist of bars conforming to ASTMA722.

3.7.6.1.1.3.2 Grouting

All cells of the masonry wall shall be grouted.

3.7.6.2 Anchorage of Masonry Walls

Masonry walls shall be anchored to the roof and floors that provide lateral support for the wall in accordance with Section 1604.8.2.

3.7.6.3 Seismic Design Category B

Structures assigned toSeismic Design Category B shall conform to the requirementsof Section 3.1.14.4 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and to the additional requirements of this Section.

3.7.6.3.1 Masonry walls not part of the lateral-force-resisting system

Masonry partitionwalls, masonry screen walls and other masonry elements that are not designed to resist vertical or lateral loads, other than those induced by their own mass, shall be isolated from the structure so that the vertical and lateral forces are not imparted to these elements. Isolation joints and connectors between these elements and the structureshall be designed to accommodate the design story drift.

3.7.6.4Additional Requirements for Structures in Seismic DesignCategory C

Structures assigned to Seismic Design CategoryCshall conform to the requirementsof Section3.7.6.3, Section 3.1.14.5 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and the additional requirements of this Section.

3.7.6.4.1 Design of discontinuous members that are part of the lateral-force-resisting system

Columns and pilasters that are part of the lateral-force-resisting system and that support reactions from discontinuous stiff members such as walls shall be provided with transverse reinforcement spaced at no more than one-fourth of the least nominal dimension of the column or pilaster. The minimum transverse reinforcement ratio shall be 0.0015. Beams supporting reactions from discontinuous walls or frames shall be provided

with transverse reinforcement spaced at no more than one-half of the nominal depth of the beam. The minimum transverse reinforcement ratio shall be 0.0015.

3.7.6.5 Additional requirements for structures in Seismic Design Category D

Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D shall conform to the requirements of Section3.7.6.4, Section 3.1.14.6 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and the additional requirements of this Section.

3.7.6.5.1 Loads for shear walls designed by the working stress design method

When calculating in-plane shear or diagonal tension stresses by the working stress design method, shear walls that resist seismic forces shall be designed to resist 1.5 times the seismic forces. The 1.5 multiplier need not be applied to the overturning moment.

3.7.6.5.2 Shear wall shear strength

For a shear wall whose nominal shear strength exceeds the shear corresponding to development of its nominal flexural strength, two shear regions exist.

For all cross sections within a region defined by the base of the shear wall and a plane at a distance L_w above the base of the shear wall, the nominal shear strength shall be determined by Equation (7.1).

$$V_n = A_n \quad \rho_n f_y \qquad \qquad \text{Eq. (7.1)}$$

The required shear strength for this region shall be calculated at a distanceL_w /2 above the base of the shear wall, but not to exceed one-half story height.

For the other region, the nominal shear strength of the shear wall shall be determined from Section 3.7.8.

3.7.6.6Additional Requirements for Structures in Seismic Design Category E orF

Structures assigned to Seismic Design CategoryEor Fshall conform to the requirements of Section 3.7.6.5 and Section 3.1.14.7 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS402.

3.7.7 Allowable Stress Design

3.7.7.1 General

The design of masonry structures using allowable stress design shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 and 2 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS402 except as modified by Sections 3.7.7.2 through 3.7.7.8.

3.7.7.2 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.2.1.2, load combinations

Delete Section 3.2.1.2.1.

3.7.7.3 ACI530/ASCE5/TMS 402, Section 2.1.3,design strength

Delete Sections 3.2.1.3.4 through 3.2.1.3.4.3.

3.7.7.4 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.2.1.6, columns

Add the following text to Section 3.2.1.6:

3.2.1.6.6 Light-frame construction. Masonry columns used only to support light-frame roofs of carports, porches, sheds or similar structures with a maximum area of 450 square feet(41.8 m^2) assigned to Seismic Design CategoryA, B or C are permitted to be designed and constructed as follows:

1. Concrete masonry materials shall be in accordance with Section 3.7.3.1 of this PART of the Code. Clay or shale masonry units shall be in accordance with Section 3.7.3.2 of this PART ofthe Code.

2. The nominal cross-sectional dimension of columns shall not be less than 8 inches(203 mm).

3. Columns shall be reinforced with not less than oneNo. 4 bar centered in each cell of the column.

4. Columns shall be grouted solid.

5. Columns shall not exceed 12 feet (3658 mm) in height.

6. Roofs shall be anchored to the columns. Such anchorage shall be capable of resisting the design loads specified in this PART of thisCode.

7. Where such columns are required to resist uplift loads, the columns shall be anchored to their footingswith two No.4 bars extending a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) into the columns and bent horizontally a minimum of 15 inches (381 mm) in opposite directions into the footings. One of these bars is permitted to be the reinforcing bar specified inItem 3 above. The total weight of a column and its footing shall not be less than 1.5 times the design uplift load.

3.7.7.5 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.2.1.10.7.1.1, lap splices

Modify Section 3.2.1.10.7.1.1 as follows:

3.2.1.10.7.1.1The minimum length of lap splices for reinforcing bars in tension or compression, l$_d$, shall be

l$_d$ = 0.002d$_b$f$_s$ *Eq.(7.2)*

For SI: ld = 0.29dbfs

but not less than 12inches (305 mm). In no case shall the length of the lapped splice be less than 40 bar diameters.

where:

d$_b$=Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).

f$_s$=Computedstress inreinforcementdue todesign loads, psi (MPa).

In regions of moment where the design tensile stresses in the reinforcement are greater than 80 percent of the allowable steel tension stress, Fs, the lap length of splices shall be increased not less than 50 percent of the minimum required length. Other equivalent means of stress transfer to accomplish the same 50 percent increase shall be permitted.

Where epoxy coated bars are used, lap length shall be increased by 50 percent.

3.7.7.6 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.2.1.10.7, splices of reinforcement

Modify Section 3.2.1.10.7 as follows:

> **3.2.1.10.7** Splices of reinforcement. Lap splices, welded splices or mechanical splices are permitted in accordance with the provisions of this section. All welding shall conform to AWS D1.4. Reinforcement larger than No. 9 (M#29) shall be spliced using mechanical connections in accordance with Section 2.1.10.7.3.

3.7.7.7 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.2.3.6, maximum bar size

Add the following to Chapter 3.2:

> **3.2.3.6** Maximum bar size. The bar diameter shall not exceed one-eighth of thenominal wallthicknessand shall not exceed one-quarter of the least dimension of the cell, course or collar joint in which it is placed.

3.7.7.8 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.2.3.7, maximum reinforcement percentage

Add the following text to Chapter3.2:

3.2.3.7 Maximum reinforcement percentage.Special rein- forced masonry shear walls having a shear span ratio, M/V_d, equal to or greater than 1.0 and havingan axial load, P, greater than 0.05 $f'_m A_n$that are subjected to in-plane forces shall have a maximum reinforcement ratio, ρ_{max}, not greater than that computed as follows:

$$\rho_{max} = \frac{nf'_m}{2f_y\left(n+\frac{f_y}{f'_m}\right)}$$

Eq. (7.3)

The maximum reinforcement ratio does not apply in the out-of-plane direction.

3.7.8 Strength Design of Masonry

3.7.8.1 General

The design of masonry structures using strength design shall comply with Section3.7.6 and therequirements of Chapters 1 and 3 of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS402, except as modified by Sections 3.7.8.2 through 3.7.8.4.

EXCEPTION: AAC masonry shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 1 and Appendix A of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS 402.

3.7.8.2 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.3.3.3.3 development

Add the following text to Section 3.3.3.3.3:

The required development length of reinforcement shall be determined by Equation(3-15), but shall not be less than 12 inches (305 mm) and need not be greater than72 d_b.

3.7.8.3 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.3.3.3.4, splices

Modify items (b) and (c) of Section 3.3.3.4 as follows:

3.3.3.3.4 (b). A welded splice shall have the bars butted and welded to develop at least 125 percent of the yield strength, fy, of the bar in tension or compression, as required. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706steel reinforcement. Welded splices shall not be permitted in plastic hinge zones of

intermediate or special reinforced walls or special moment frames of masonry.

3.3.3.4 (c). Mechanical splices shall be classified as Type 1 or 2 according to Section 21.2.6.1 of ACI 318. Type 1 mechanical splices shall not be used within a plastic hinge zone or within a beam-column joint of intermediate or special reinforced masonry shear wallsor special moment frames. Type 2 mechanical splices are permitted in any location within a member.

3.7.8.4 ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402, Section 3.3.3.3.5, maximum areas of flexural tensile reinforcement

Add the following text to Section 3.3.3.3.5:

3.3.3.3.5.5 For special prestressed masonry shear walls, strain in all prestressing steel shall be computed to be compatible with a strain in the extreme tension reinforcement equal to five times the strain associated with the reinforcement yield stress, f_y. The calculation of the maximum reinforcement shall consider forces in theprestressing steel that correspond to these calculated strains.

3.7.9 Empirical Design of Masonry

3.7.9.1 General

Empirically designed masonry shall conform to this SECTION or Chapter 5 of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

3.7.9.1.1 Limitations

The use of empirical design of masonry shall be limited as follows:

1. Empirical design shall not be used for buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, nor for the design of the seismic-force-resisting system for buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C.

2. Empirical design shall not be used for masonry elements that are part of the lateral force-resisting system where the basic wind speed exceeds 110 mph (79 m/s).

3. Empiricaldesignshallnotbeusedforinterior masonry elements thatare not part of the lateral-force-resistingsysteminbuildingsotherthan enclosed buildings as defined in Chapter 6 of ASCE 7 in:

   3.1. Buildingsover 180 feet(55100mm)in height.

   3.2. Buildings over 60 feet (18 400 mm) in height where the basic wind speed exceeds 90 mph (40 m/s).

   3.3. Buildings over 35 feet (10 700 mm) in height where the basic wind speed exceeds 100 mph (45 m/s).

   3.4. Where the basic wind speed exceeds 110 mph(79 m/s).

4. Empiricaldesignshallnotbeusedforexterior masonry elements thatare not part of the lateral- force-resisting system and that are more than 35 feet (10 700 mm) above ground:

   4.1. Buildings over 180 feet(55100mm)in height.

   4.2. Buildings over 60 feet (18 400 mm) in height where the basic wind

speed exceeds 90 mph (40 m/s).

    4.3. Buildings over 35 feet (10 700 mm) in height where the basic wind

        speed exceeds 100 mph (45 m/s).

  5. Empirical design shall not be used for exterior masonry elements that are less than or equal to 35 feet (10700 mm) above ground where the basic wind speed exceeds 110 mph (79 m/s).

  6. Empirical design shall only be used when the resultant of gravity loads is within the centre third of the wall thickness and within the central area bounded by lines at one-third of each cross-sectional dimension of foundation piers.

  7. Empirical design shall not be used for AAC masonry.

In buildings that exceed one or more of the above limitations, masonry shall bedesigned in accordance with theengineered design provisions of Section 3.7.7 or 3.7.8 or the foundation wall provisions of Section 1805.5.

3.7.9.2 Lateral Stability

3.7.9.2.1 Shear walls

Where the structure depends upon masonry walls for lateral stability, shear walls shall be provided parallel to the direction of the lateral forces resisted.

3.7.9.2.1.1 Cumulative length of shear walls

In each direction in which shear walls are required for lateral stability, shear walls shall be positioned in two separate planes. The minimum cumulative length of shear walls provided shall be 0.4 times the long dimension of the building.Cumulative length of shear walls shall not include openings or any element with a length that is less than one-half its height.

3.7.9.2.1.2 Maximum diaphragm ratio

Masonry shear walls shall be spaced so that the length-to-width ratio of each diaphragm transferring lateral forces to the shearwalls does not exceed the values given in Table3.7.7.

TABLE 3.7.7 DIAPHRAGM LENGTH-TO-WIDTH RATIOS

FLOOR OR ROOF DIAPHRAGM CONSTRUCTION	MAXIMUM LENGTH-TO-WIDTH RATIO OF DIAPHRAGM PANEL
Cast-in-place concrete	5:1
Precast concrete	4:1
Metal deck with concrete fill	3:1
Metal deck with no fill	2:1
Wood	2:1

3.7.9.2.2 Roofs

The roof construction shall be designed so as not to impart out-of-plane lateral thrust to the walls under roof gravity load.

3.7.9.2.3Surface-bonded walls

Dry-stacked, surface-bonded concrete masonry walls shall comply with the requirements of this SECTION for masonry wall construction, except where otherwise noted in this Section.

3.7.9.2.3.1 Strength

Dry-stacked, surface-bonded concrete masonry walls shall be of adequate strength and proportions to support all superimposed loads without exceeding the allowable stresses listed in Table 3.7.8. Allowable stresses not specified in Table 3.7.8 shall comply with the requirements of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

TABEL 3.7.8 ALLOWABLE STRESS GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA FORDRY-STACKED, SURFACE-BONDED CONCRETE MASONRY WALLS

DESCRIPTION	MAXIMUMALLOWABLE STRESS (psi)
Compressionstandardblock	45

Flexuraltension
  Horizontalspan
  Vertical span
	
	30
	18

Shear	10

For SI:1 pound per square inch = 0.006895MPa.

3.7.9.2.3.2 Construction

Construction of dry- stacked, surface-bonded masonry walls,including stacking and leveling of units, mixing and application of mortar and curing and protection shall comply with ASTM C 946.

3.7.9.3 Compressive Stress Requirements

3.7.9.3.1 Calculations

Compressive stresses in masonry due to vertical dead plus live loads, excluding wind or seismic loads, shall be determined in accordance with Section3.7.9.3.2.1. Dead and live loads shall be as specified inthis PART of the Code, with live load reductions as permitted in this Code.

3.7.9.3.2 Allowable compressive stresses

The compressive stresses in masonry shall not exceed the values given in Table 3.7.9. Stress shall be calculated based on specified rather than nominal dimensions.

3.7.9.3.2.1 Calculated compressive stresses

Calculated compressive stresses for single wythe walls and for multiwythe composite masonry walls shall be determined by dividing the design load bythe gross cross-sectional area of the member. The area of openings, chases or recesses in walls shall not be included in the gross

cross-sectional area of the wall.

3.7.9.3.2.2 Multiwythe walls

The allowable stress shall be as given in Table 7.9 for the weakest combination of the units used in each wythe.

3.7.9.4 Lateral support

3.7.9.4.1 Intervals

Masonry walls shall be laterally supported in either the horizontal or vertical direction at intervals not exceeding those given in Table 3.7.10.

TABLE 3.7.10 WALL LATERAL SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS

CONSTRUCTION	MAXIMUM WALL LENGTH TO THICKNESS OR WALL HEIGHT TO THICKNESS
Bearing walls Solid units or fully grouted All others	20 18
Nonbearing walls Exterior Interior	18 36

3.7.9.4.2 Thickness

Except for cavity walls and cantilever walls, the thicknessof a wall shall be its nominal thicknessmeasured perpendicular to the face of the wall. For cavity walls, the thickness shall be determined as the sum of the nominal thicknesses of the individual wythes.For cantilever walls, except for parapets, the ratio of height-to-nominal thicknessshall not exceed 6 for solid masonry or 4 for hollow masonry. For parapets, see Section 3.7.9.5.4.

3.7.9.4.3 Support elements

Lateral support shall be provided by cross walls, pilasters, buttresses or structural frame members when the limiting distance is taken horizontally, or by floors, roofs acting as diaphragms or structural frame members when the limiting distance is taken vertically.

3.7.9.5 Thickness of Masonry

Minimum thickness requirements shall be based on nominal dimensions of masonry.

3.7.9.5.1 Thickness of walls

The thickness of masonry walls shall conform to the requirements of Section 3.7.9.5.

3.7.9.5.2 Minimum thickness

3.7.9.5.2.1 Bearing walls

The minimum thickness of masonry bearing walls more than one storey high shall be8 inches (203 mm). Bearing walls of one-storey buildings shall not be less

than 6 inches (152 mm) thick.

3.7.9.5.2.2 Rubble stone walls

The minimum thickness of rough, random or coursed rubble stone walls shall be16 inches (406 mm).

3.7.9.5.2.3 Shear walls

The minimum thickness of masonry shear walls shall be 8 inches(203 mm).

3.7.9.5.2.4 Foundation walls

The minimum thickness of foundation walls shall be 8 inches(203 mm) and as required by Section 3.7.9.5.3.1.

TABEL 3.7.9 ALLOWABLE COMPRESSIVE STRESSES FOR EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY

CONSTRUCTION; COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF UNIT GROSS AREA (psi)	ALLOWABLE COMPRESSIVE STRESSES[a] GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (psi)	
	Type M or S mortar	Type N mortar
Solid masonry of brick and other solid units of clay or shale; sand-lime or concrete brick: 8,000 or greater 4,500 2,500 1,500	350 225 160 115	300 200 140 100
Grouted masonry, of clay or shale; sand-lime or concrete: 4,500 or greater 2,500 1,500	225 160 115	200 140 100
Solid masonry of solid concrete masonry units: 3,000 or greater 2,000 1,200	225 160 115	200 140 100
Masonry of hollow load-bearing units: 2,000 or greater 1,500 1,000 700	140 115 75 60	120 100 70 55
Hollow walls (non-compositemasonry bonded)[b] Solid units: 2,500 or greater 1,500 Hollow units	160 115 75	140 100 70
Stone ashlar masonry: Granite Limestone or marble Sandstone or cast stone	720 450 360	640 400 320
Rubble stone masonry Coursed, rough or random	120	100

For SI:1 pound per square inch = 0.006895MPa.

a.Linearinterpolationfordeterminingallowablestressesformasonryunitshavingcompressivestrengthswhichareint

ermediatebetweenthosegiveninthetableis permitted.

b. *Wherefloorandroofloadsarecarriedupononewythe,thegrosscross-sectionalareaisthatofthewytheunderload;ifbothwythesareloaded,thegrosscross-sectionalareaisthatofthewallminustheareaofthecavitybetweenthewythes.Wallsbondedwithmetaltiesshallbeconsideredasnon-compositewallsunlesscollar joints are filled with mortar or grout.*

3.7.9.5.2.5 Foundation piers

The minimum thickness of foundation piers shall be 8 inches (203 mm).

3.7.9.5.2.6 Parapet walls

The minimum thickness of parapet walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) and as required by Section 3.7.9.5.4.1.

3.7.9.5.2.7 Change in thickness

Where walls of masonry of hollow units or masonry bonded hollow walls are decreased in thickness, a course or coursesof solidmasonryshallbeinterposedbetweenthe wall below and the thinner wall above, or special units or construction shall beused to transmit the loads from face shells or wythes above to those below.

3.7.9.5.3 Foundation walls

Foundation walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 3.7.9.5.3.1 or 3.7.9.5.3.2.

3.7.9.5.3.1 Minimum thickness

Minimum thickness for foundation walls shall comply with the requirements of Table 3.7.11. The provisions of Table 3.7.11 are only applicable where the following conditions are met

1. The foundation wall does not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) in height between lateral supports;

2. The terrain surrounding foundation walls is graded to drain surface water away from foundation walls;

3. Backfill is drained to remove ground water away from foundation walls;

4. Lateral support is provided at the top of foundation walls prior to backfilling;

5. The length of foundation walls between perpendicular masonry walls or pilasters is a maximum of three times the basement wall height;

6. The backfill is granular and soil conditions in the area are non-expansive; and

7. Masonry is laid in running bond using Type M or S mortar.

TABLE 3.7.11 FOUNDATION WALL CONSTRUCTION

WALL CONSTRUCTION	NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)	MAXIMUM DEPTH OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL (feet)
Fully grouted masonry	8 10 12	7 8 8
Hollow unit masonry	8 10 12	5 6 7
Solid unit masonry	8 10 12	5 7 7

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm

.**3.7.9.5.3.2 Designrequirements**

Where the requirements of Section 3.7.9.5.3.1 are not met, foundation wallsshall be designedinaccordance withPART 4 of this Code.

3.7.9.5.4 Parapet walls

3.7.9.5.4.1 Minimum thickness

The minimum thickness of unreinforced masonry parapets shall meet Section 3.7.9.5.2.6 and their height shall not exceed three times their thickness.

3.7.9.6 Bond

3.7.9.6.1 General

The facing and backing of multiwythe masonry walls shall be bonded in accordance with Section3.7.9.6.2, 3.7.9.6.3, 3.7.9.6.4.

3.7.9.6.2 Bonding with masonry headers

3.7.9.6.2.1 Solid units

Where the facing and backing (adjacentwythes) ofsolid masonry constructionare bonded by means of masonry headers, no less than 4 percent of the wall surface of each face shall be composed of headers extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into the backing.Thedistance betweenadjacent full-length headers shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) either vertically or horizontally. In walls in which a single header does not extend through the wall, headers from the opposite sides shall overlap at least 3 inches (76 mm), or headers from opposite sides shall becovered with another header courseoverlapping the header below at least 3 inches (76 mm).

3.7.9.6.2.2 Hollowunits

Where two ormore hollow units are used to make up the thicknessof a wall, the stretcher courses shall be bonded at vertical intervals notexceeding 34 inches (864 mm) by lapping at least 3 inches (76 mm)over the unit below, or by lapping at vertical intervals not exceeding 17 inches (432 mm) with units that are at least 50 percent greater in thickness than the units below.

3.7.9.6.2.3 Masonry bonded hollow walls

In masonry bonded hollow walls,thefacingand backing shallbe bonded so that not less than 4 percent of the wall surface of each face is composed of masonry bonded units extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into the backing. The distance between adjacent bonders shall not exceed 24 inches(610 mm) either vertically or horizontally.

3.7.9.6.3 Bonding with wall ties or joint reinforcement

3.7.9.6.3.1 Bonding with wall ties

Except as required by Section 7.9.6.3.1.1, where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry walls are bonded with wire size W2.8(MW18) wall ties or metal wire of equivalent stiffness embedded in the horizontal mortar joints, there shall be at least one metal tie for each 4½ square feet (0.42 m2) of wall area. The maximum vertical distance between ties shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), and the maximum horizontal distance shall not exceed 36 inches (914 mm). Rods or ties bent to rectangular shape shall be used with hollow masonry units laid with the cells vertical. In other walls, the ends of ties shall be bent to 90-degree (1.57 rad) angles to provide hooks no less than 2 inches(51 mm) long. Wall ties shall be without drips. Additional bonding ties shall be provided at allopenings, spaced not more than 36 inches (914 mm) apart around the perimeter and within12 inches (305 mm) of the opening.

3.7.9.6.3.1.1 Bondingwithadjustablewallties

Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry are bonded with adjustable wall ties, there shall be at least one tie for each 1.77 square feet (0.164 m2) of wall area. Neither the vertical nor horizontal spacing of the adjustable wall ties shall exceed 16inches (406 mm). The maximum vertical offset of bed joints from one wythe to the other shall be 1¼ inches(32 mm). The maximum clearance between connecting parts of the ties shall be 1/16inch (1.6 mm). Whenpintle legs are used, ties shall have at least two wire size W2.8 (MW 18) legs.

3.7.9.6.3.2 Bondingwithprefabricatedjointreinforcement

Where the facingand backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry are bonded with prefabricated joint reinforcement, there shall be at least one cross wire serving as a tie for each $2^2/_3$ square feet (0.25 m2) of wall area. The verticalspacing of the jointreinforcing shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm). Cross wires on prefabricated joint reinforcement shall not be less than W1.7 (MW11) and shall be withoutdrips. The longitudinal wires shall be embedded in the mortar.

3.7.9.6.4 Bonding with natural or cast stone

3.7.9.6.4.1 Ashlar masonry

In ashlar masonry, bonder units, uniformly distributed, shall beprovidedto the extent of not less than 10 percent of the wall area. Suchbonder units shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm)into the backing wall.

3.7.9.6.4.2 Rubble stone masonry

Rubble stone masonry 24 inches (610 mm) or less in thickness shall have bonder units with a maximum spacing of 36 inches (914 mm) vertically and 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally, and if the masonry is of greater thicknessthan 24 inches (610 mm), shall have one bonder unit for each 6 square feet (0.56 m2) of wall surface on both sides.

3.7.9.6.5 Masonry bonding pattern

3.7.9.6.5.1 Masonry laid in running bond

Each wythe of masonry shall be laid in running bond, head joints in successivecoursesshallbeoffset bynotless than one-fourth the unit length or the masonry walls shall be reinforcedlongitudinallyasrequired inSection3.7.9.6.5.2.

3.7.9.6.5.2 Masonry laid in stack bond

Where unit masonry is laid with less head joint offset than in Section7.9.6.5.1, the minimum area of horizontal reinforcement placed in mortar bed joints or in bond beams spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) apart, shall be0.0003 times the vertical cross-sectional area of the wall.

3.7.9.7 Anchorage

3.7.9.7.1 General

Masonry elements shall be anchored in accordance with Sections 3.7.9.7.2 through 3.7.9.7.4.

3.7.9.7.2 Intersecting walls

Masonry walls depending upon one another for lateral support shall be anchored or bonded at locations where they meet or intersect by one of the methodsindicatedinSections3.7.9.7.2.1 through3.7.9.7.2.5.

3.7.9.7.2.1 Bonding pattern

Fifty percent of the units at the intersection shall be laid in an overlapping masonry bonding pattern, with alternate units having a bearing of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on the unit below.

3.7.9.7.2.2 Steel connectors

Walls shall be anchored by steel connectors having a minimum sectionof ¼inch (6.4 mm) by 1½inches (38 mm), with ends bent up at least 2 inches(51 mm) or with cross pins to form anchorage. Suchanchors shall be at least 24 inches (610 mm) long and the maximum spacing shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).

3.7.9.7.2.3 Joint reinforcement

Walls shall be anchored by joint reinforcement spaced at a maximum distance of 8 inches (203 mm). Longitudinal wires of such reinforcement shall be at least wire size W1.7 (MW11) and shall extend at least 30 inches (762 mm) in each direction at the intersection.

3.7.9.7.2.4 Interior non-load-bearingwalls

Interior non-load-bearing walls shall beanchored at their intersection, at vertical intervals of not more than 16 inches (406 mm) with joint reinforcement or ¼-inch (6.4 mm) mesh galvanized hardware cloth.

3.7.9.7.2.5 Ties, joint reinforcement or anchors

Other metal ties, joint reinforcement or anchors, if used, shallbe spaced to provide equivalent area of anchorage to that required by this Section**.**

3.7.9.7.3 Floor and roof anchorage

Floor and roof diaphragms providing lateral support to masonry shall comply with the live loads specified in this PART of the Code and shall be connected to the masonry in accordance with Sections 3.7.9.7.3.1 through 3.7.9.7.3.3. Roof loading shall be determined in accordance with PART 3 of this Code and, when net uplift occurs, uplift shall be resisted entirely by an anchorage system designed in accordance with

the provisions of Sections 3.2.1 and 3.2.3, Sections 3.3.1 and 3.3.3 or Chapter 4 of ACI 530/ASCE5/TMS 402.

3.7.9.7.3.1 Wood floor joists

Wood floor joists bearing on masonry walls shall be anchored to the wall at intervals not to exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) by metal strap anchors. Joists parallel to the wall shall be anchored with metal straps spaced not more than 72 inches (1829 mm) o.c. extending over or under and secured to at least three joists. Blocking shall be provided between joists at each strap anchor.

3.7.9.7.3.2 Steel floor joists

Steel floor joists bearing on masonry walls shall be anchored to the wall with 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) round bars, or theirequivalent,spaced not more than 72 inches (1829 mm) o.c. Where joists are parallel to the wall, anchors shall be located at joist bridging.

3.7.9.7.3.3 Roof diaphragms

Roof diaphragms shall be anchored to masonry walls with ½-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) bolts, 72 inches (1829 mm) o.c. or their equivalent. Boltsshall extend and beembedded at least 15 inches (381 mm) into the masonry, or be hooked or welded to not less than 0.20 square inch (129 mm2) of bond beam reinforcement placed not less than 6 inches(152 mm) from the top of the wall.

3.7.9.7.4Wallsadjoiningstructuralframing

Where walls are dependent upon the structural frame for lateral support, they shall be anchored to the structural members with metal anchors or otherwise keyed to the structural members. Metal anchors shall consist of ½-inch (12.7 mm) bolts spaced at 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c. embedded 4 inches (102 mm) into the masonry, or their equivalent area.

3.7.9.8 Adobe Construction

Adobe construction shall comply with this section and shall be subject to the requirements of thisSection for Type V construction.

3.7.9.8.1 Unstabilized adobe

3.7.9.8.1.1 Compressive strength

Adobe units shall have an average compressive strength of 300 psi (2068 kPa) when tested in accordance with ASTM C 67. Five samples shall be tested and no individual unit is permitted to have a compressive strength of less than 250 psi (1724 kPa).

3.7.9.8.1.2 Modulus of rupture

Adobe units shall have an average modulus of rupture of 50 psi (345 kPa) when tested in accordance with the following procedure. Five samples shall be tested and no individual unit shall have a modulus of rupture of less than 35 psi (241 kPa).

3.7.9.8.1.2.1 Support conditions

A cured unit shall be simply supported by 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylindrical supports located 2 inches (51 mm) in from each end and extending the full width of the unit.

3.7.9.8.1.2.2 Loading conditions

A 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylinder shall be placed at midspan parallel to the supports.

3.7.9.8.1.2.3 Testing procedure

A vertical load shall be applied to the cylinder at the rate of 500 pounds per minute (37 N/s) until failure occurs.

3.7.9.8.1.2.4 Modulus of rupture determination

The modulus of rupture shall be determined by the equation:

$$f_r = 3WL_s /2bt^2 \qquad\qquad \textbf{Eq. (7.4)}$$

where, for the purposes of this section only:

b = Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).

f_r = Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).

L_s = Distance between supports, inches (mm).

t = Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).

W = The applied load at failure, pounds (N).

3.7.9.8.1.3 Moisture content requirements

Adobe units shall have a moisture content not exceeding 4 percent by weight.

3.7.9.8.1.4 Shrinkage cracks

Adobe units shall not contain more than three shrinkage cracks and any single shrinkage crack shall not exceed 3 inches (76 mm) in length or 1/8

inch (3.2 mm) in width.

3.7.9.8.2 Stabilized adobe

3.7.9.8.2.1 Material requirements

Stabilized adobe shall comply with the material requirements of unstabilized adobe in addition to Sections 3.7.9.8.2.1.1 and 3.7.9.8.2.1.2.

3.7.9.8.2.1.1 Soil requirements

Soil used for stabilized adobe units shall be chemically compatible with the stabilizing material.

3.7.9.8.2.1.2 Absorption requirements

A 4-inch (102 mm) cube, cut from a stabilized adobe unit dried to a constant weight in a ventilated oven at 212°F to 239°F (100°C to 115°C), shall not absorb more than 2½ percent moisture by weight when placed upon a constantly water-saturated, porous surface for seven days. A minimum of five specimens shall be tested and each specimen shall be cut from a separate unit.

3.7.9.8.3 Allowable stress

The allowable compressive stress based on gross cross-sectional area of adobe shall not exceed 30 psi (207 kPa).

3.7.9.8.3.1 Bolts

Bolt values shall not exceed those set forth in Table 3.7.12.

3.7.9.8.4 Construction

3.7.9.8.4.1 General

3.7.9.8.4.1.1 Height restrictions

Adobe construction shall be limited to buildings not exceeding one story, except that two-story construction is allowed when designed by a registered design professional.

3.7.9.8.4.1.2 Mortar restrictions

Mortar for stabilized adobe units shall comply with this Section or adobe soil. Adobe soil used as mortar shall comply with material requirements for stabilized adobe. Mortar for unstabilized adobe shall be Portland cement mortar.

TABLE 3.7.12 ALLOWABLE SHEAR ON BOLTS IN ADOBE MASONRY

DIAMETER OF BOLTS (inches)	MINIMUM EMBEDMENT (inches)	SHEAR (pounds)
$^{1}/_{2}$	—	—
$^{5}/_{8}$	12	200
$^{3}/_{4}$	15	300
$^{7}/$	18	400
1	21	500
$1^{1}/_{8}$	24	600

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

3.7.9.8.4.1.3 Mortar joints

Adobe units shall be laid with full head and bed joints and in full running bond.

3.7.9.8.4.1.4 Parapetwalls

Parapet walls constructed of adobe units shall be waterproofed.

3.7.9.8.4.2 Wall thickness

The minimum thickness of exterior walls in one-story buildings shall be 10 inches (254 mm). The walls shall be laterally supported at intervals not exceeding 24 feet (7315 mm). The minimum thickness of interior load-bearing walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm). In no case shall the unsupported height of any wall constructed of adobe units exceed 10 timesthe thicknessof such wall.

3.7.9.8.4.3 Foundations

3.7.9.8.4.3.1 Foundation support

Walls and partitions constructed of adobe units shall be supported by foundations orfootings that extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjacent ground surfaces and are constructed of solid masonry (excluding adobe) or concrete. Footings and foundations shall comply with PART 4 of this Code.

3.7.9.8.4.3.2 Lower course requirements

Stabilized adobe units shall be used in adobe walls for the first 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished first-floor elevation.

3.7.9.8.4.4 Isolated piers or columns

Adobe units shall not be used for isolated piers or columns in a load-bearing capacity.Walls less than 24 inches (610 mm) in length shall be considered isolated piers or columns.

3.7.9.8.4.5 Tie beams

Exterior walls and interior load-bearing walls constructed of adobe units shall have a continuous tie beam at the level of the floor or roof bearing and meeting the following requirements.

3.7.9.8.4.5.1 Concrete tie beams

Concrete tie beams shall be a minimum depth of 6 inches(152 mm) and a minimum width of 10 inches (254 mm). Concrete tie beams shall be continuously reinforced with a minimum of two No. 4 reinforcing bars. The ultimate compressive strength of concrete shall be at least 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) at 28 days.

3.7.9.8.4.5.2 Wood tie beams

Wood tie beams shall be solid or built up of lumber having a minimum nominal thickness of 1 inch (25 mm), and shall have a minimum depth of 6inches (152 mm) and a minimum width of 10 inches (254 mm). Joints in

wood tie beams shall be spliced a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Nosplices shall be allowed within 12 inches (305 mm) of an opening. Wood used in tie beams shall be approved naturally decay-resistant orpressure-treated wood.

3.7.9.8.4.6 Exterior finish

Exterior walls constructed of unstabilized adobe units shall have their exterior surface covered with a minimum of two coats of Portland cement plaster having a minimum thickness of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) and conforming to ASTM C 926. Lathing shall comply with ASTM C 1063. Fasteners shall be spaced at 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. maximum. Exposed wood surfaces shall be treated with an approved wood preservative or other protective coating prior to lath application.

3.7.9.8.4.7 Lintels

Lintels shall be considered structural members and shall be designed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this PART of this Code.

3.7.10 Glass Unit Masonry

3.7.10.1 Scope

This section covers the empirical requirements for non-load-bearing glass unit masonry elements in exterior or interior walls.

3.7.10.1.1 Limitations

Solid or hollow approved glass block shall not be used in fire walls, party walls, fire barriers or fire partitions, or for load-bearing construction. Such blocks shall beerected with mortar andreinforcementin metalchannel-typeframes, structuralframes, masonry-orconcrete recesses, embedded panel anchors as provided for both exteriorandinterior wallsor other approvedjointmaterials. Wood strip framing shall not be used in walls required to have a fire-resistance rating by other provisions of this Code.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Glass-block assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour shall be permitted as openingprotectives in fire barriers and fire partitions that have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less and do not enclose exit stairways or exit passageways.

2. Glass-block assemblies.

3.7.10.2 Units

Hollow or solid glass-block units shall be standard or thin units.

3.7.10.2.1 Standard units

The specified thickness of standard units shall be at least $3\,^7/_8$inches (98 mm).

3.7.10.2.2 Thin units

The specified thickness of thin units shall be $3\,^1/_8$ inches (79 mm) for hollow units or 3 inches (76 mm) for solid units.

3.7.10.3 Panel size

3.7.10.3.1 Exterior standard-unit panels

The maximum area of each individual exterior standard-unit panel shall be144 square feet (13.4 m^2) when the design wind pressure is20 psf (958 N/m^2). The maximum panel dimension between structural supports shall be 25 feet(7620 mm) in width or 20 feet (6096 mm) in height. The panel areas are permitted to beadjusted in accordance with Figure 3.7.1 for other wind pressures.

3.7.10.3.2 Exterior thin-unit panels

The maximum area of each individual exterior thin-unit panel shall be 85 square feet (7.9 m^2). The maximum dimension between structural supports shall be 15 feet (4572 mm) in width or 10 feet (3048 mm) in height. Thin units shall not be used in applications where the design wind pressure exceeds 20 psf (958 N/m^2).

3.7.10.3.3 Interior panels

The maximum area of each individual standard-unit panel shall be 250 square feet (23.2 m^2). The maximum area of each thin-unit panel shall be 150 square feet (13.9 m^2). The maximum dimension between structural supports shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) in width or 20 feet (6096 mm) in height.

3.7.10.3.4 Solid units

Themaximumarea of solid glass-block wall panels in both exterior and interior walls shall not be more than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).

3.7.10.3.5 Curved panels

The width of curved panels shall conform to the requirements of Sections 7.10.3.1, 7.10.3.2 and 7.10.3.3, except additional structural supports shall be provided at locations where a curved section joins a straight section, and at inflection points in multi-curved walls.

3.7.10.4 Support

3.7.10.4.1 General requirements

Glass unit masonry panels shall be isolated so that in-plane loads are not imparted to the panel.

3.7.10.4.2 Vertical

Maximum total deflection of structural members supporting glass unit masonry shall not exceed l/600.

3.7.10.4.2.1 Support on wood construction

Glass unit masonry having an installed weight of 40 psf (195 kg/m^2) or less and a maximum height of 12 feet (3658 mm) shall be permitted to be supported on wood construction**.**

3.7.10.4.2.2 Expansion Joint

A vertical expansion joint in glass unit masonry shall be providedto isolate the glass unit masonry supported by wood construction from that supported by other types of construction.

3.7.10.4.3 Lateral

Glass unit masonry panels more than one unit wide or one unit high shall be laterally supported alongtheir tops and sides. Lateral support shall be provided by panel anchors along the top and sides spaced not more than16 inches (406 mm) o.c. or by channel-type restraints. Glass unit masonry panels shall be recessed at least 1 inch (25 mm) within channels and chases. Channel-type restraints shall be oversized to accommodate expansion material in the opening and packing and sealant between the framing restraints and the glass unit masonry perimeter units. Lateral supports for glass unit masonry panels shall be designed to resist applied loads, or a minimum of 200 pounds per lineal feet (plf) (2919 N/m) of panel, whichever is greater.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Lateral support at the top of glass unit masonry panels that are no more than one unit wide shall not be required.

2. Lateral support at the sides of glass unit masonry panels that are no more than oneunit high shall not be required.

3.7.10.4.3.1 Single unit panels

Single unit glass unit masonry panels shall conform to the requirements of Section 3.7.10.4.3, except lateral support shall not be provided by panel anchors.

3.7.10.5 Expansion Joints

Glass unit masonry panels shall be provided with expansion joints along the top and sides at structural supports. Expansion joints shall have sufficient thickness to accommodate displacements of the supporting structure, but shall not be less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) in thickness. Expansion joints shall be entirely free of mortar or other debris and shall be filled with resilient material. The sills of glass-block panelsshall be coated with approved water-based asphaltic emulsion, or other elastic waterproofing material, prior to laying the first mortar course.

3.7.10.6 Mortar

Mortar for glass unit masonry shall comply with Section 3.7.3.8.

3.7.10.7 Reinforcement

Glass unit masonry panels shall have horizontal joint reinforcement spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on centre, located in the mortar bed joint, and extending the entire length of the panel but not across expansion joints. Longitudinal wires shall be lapped a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) at splices. Joint reinforcement shall be placed in the bed joint immediately below and above openings in the panel. The reinforcement shall have not less than two parallel longitudinal wires of size W1.7 (MW11), and have welded cross wires of size W1.7 (MW11).

3.7.11 Masonry Fireplaces

3.7.11.1 Definition

A masonry fireplace is a fireplace constructed of concrete or masonry. Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with this Section.

3.7.11.2 Footings and Foundations

Footings for masonry fire-places and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry at least 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (153 mm) beyond the face of the fire- place or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

AREA OF PANEL, sq-ft
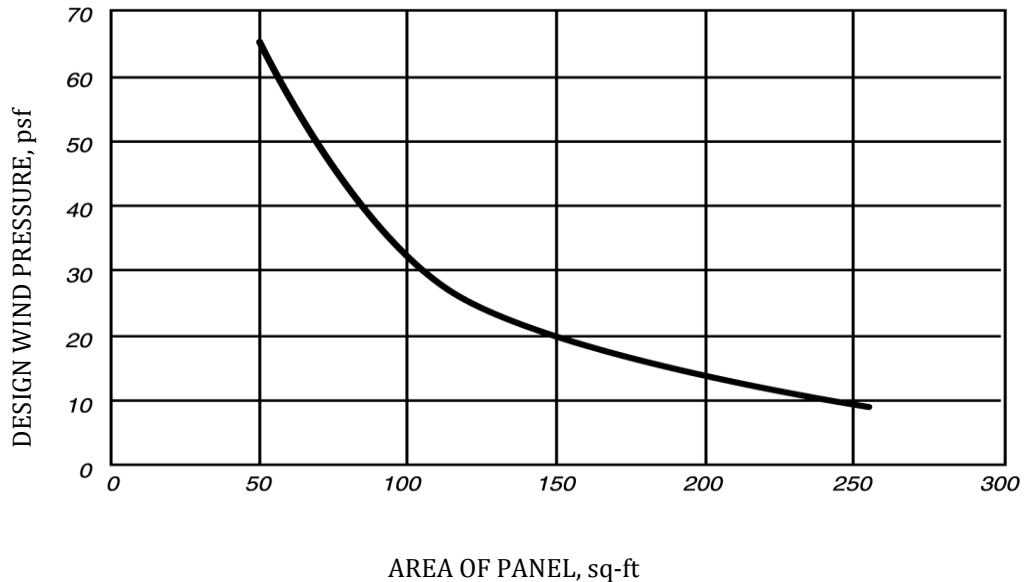
For SI:1 square foot = 0.0929m², 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m².

FIGURE 3.7.1

GLASS MASONRY DESIGN WIND LOAD RESISTANCE

3.7.11.2.1 Ash dump cleanout

Cleanout openings, located within foundation walls below fireboxes, when provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed, except when in use. Cleanouts shall be accessible and located so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

3.7.11.3 Seismic Reinforcing

Masonry or concrete fireplaces shall beconstructed, anchored,supported and reinforced as required inthis Section.InSeismicDesign CategoryD, masonry and concretefireplacesshall bereinforcedand anchored as detailed in Sections 3.7.11.3.1, 3.7.11.3.2, 3.7.11.4 and3.7.11.4.1 forchimneysserving fireplaces.InSeismic Design Category A, B or C, reinforcement and seismic anchorage isnotrequired. InSeismic Design Category EorF,masonry and concretechimneysshall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 3.7.1 through 3.7.8.

3.7.11.3.1 Vertical reinforcing

For fireplaces with chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars, anchored in the foundation, shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance

with Section 3.11.3.12. For fireplaces with chimneys greater than40 inches(1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

3.7.11.3.2 Horizontalreinforcing

Verticalreinforcement shall beplaced enclosed within 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) ties or otherreinforcing of equivalentnetcross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on centre in concrete; or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry at a minimum of every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

3.7.11.4 Seismic Anchorage

Masonry and concretechimneys in Seismic Design CategoryD shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade, except where constructed completely within the exterior walls. Anchorage shall conform to the following requirements.

3.7.11.4.1 Anchorage

Two 3/16-inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by25.4 mm) straps shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches(305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to a minimum of four floor joists with two 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

3.7.11.5 Firebox Walls

Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. When a lining of firebrick at least 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness or other approved lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall not be greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). When no lining is provided, the total minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of solid masonry.Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C 27 or ASTM C 1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199.

3.7.11.5.1 Steel fireplace units

Steel fireplace units are permitted to be installed with solid masonry to form a masonryfireplace provided they are installed according to either the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in thickness, and an air-circulating chamber which is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with solid masonry to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of solid masonry or concrete. Circulating air ducts employed with steel fireplace units shall beconstructed of metal or masonry.

3.7.11.6 Firebox Dimensions

The firebox of a concrete r masonry fireplace shall have a minimum depth of 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) in

depth. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall not be less thanthe cross-sectional area of the flue.

EXCEPTION:

Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is at least 12 inches (305 mm) and at least one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, and the throat is at least 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel, and at least 1/20 the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

3.7.11.7 Lintel and Throat

Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening.

3.7.11.7.1 Damper

Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located at least 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or at the top of the flue venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace. Damper controls shall be permitted to be located in the fireplace.

3.7.11.8 Smoke Chamber Walls

Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonryunits grouted solid, stone or concrete. Corbeling of masonry units shall not leave unit

cores exposed to the inside of the smoke chamber.The inside surface of corbeledmasonry shall be parged smooth. Where no lining is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry. When a lining of firebrick at least 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay at least 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of solid masonry,includingthe lining.Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C 27 or ASTM C 1261 and shall be laid with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199.

3.7.11.8.1 Smoke chamber dimensions

The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall not be greater than the inside width of thefireplaceopening. The inside surfaceof thesmoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.76rad) from vertical when prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or when the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. When the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

3.7.11.9 Hearth and Hearth Extension

Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. No combustible material shall remain againstthe undersideof hearths or hearth extensions after construction.

3.7.11.9.1 Hearth thickness

The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches(102 mm).

3.7.11.9.2 Hearth extension thickness

The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

EXCEPTION:

When the bottom of the firebox opening is raised at least 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than3/8-inch-thick (9.5 mm) brick,concrete,stone, tile or other approved noncombustible material is permitted.

3.7.11.10Hearth Extension Dimensions

Hearth extensions shall extend at least 16 inches (406 mm) in front of, and at least8 inches (203 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplaceopening is 6 square feet (0.557 m2) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend at least 20 inches (508 mm) in front of, and at least 12 inches (305 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening.

3.7.11.11 Fireplace clearance

Any portion of a masonry fire- place located in the interior of a building or within the exterior wall of a building shall have a clearance to combustibles of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from

> the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 3.7.11.12.
>
> ### EXCEPTIONS:
>
> 1. Masonry fireplaces listed and labeled for use in con- tact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
>
> 2. When masonry fireplaces are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches(306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
>
> 3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, flooring and drywall, are permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls andhearthextension, inaccordance withFigure3.7.2, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is a minimum of 12inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
>
> 4. Exposed combustible mantels or trim is permitted to be placed directly on

the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening, provided such combustible materials shall not be placed within 6 inches (153 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material directly above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such opening. Combustible materials located along the sides of the fireplace opening that project more than 1½ inches (38 mm) from the face of the fireplace shall have an additional clearance equal to the projection.
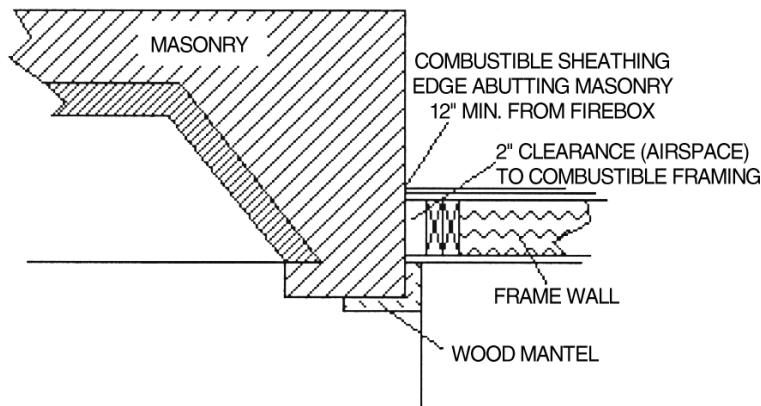
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

FIGURE 3.7.2

ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION TO FIREPLACE CLEARANCE PROVISION

3.7.11.12 Fireplace Fireblocking

All spaces between fireplaces and floors and ceilingsthrough which fireplaces pass shall befireblockedwithnoncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and shall only be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

3.7.11.13 Exterior Air

Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this section shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

3.7.11.13.1 Factory-built fireplaces

Exterior combustion air ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be listed components of the fireplace, and installed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.11.13.2 Masonry fireplaces

Listed combustion air ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed according to the terms of their listing and manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.11.13.3 Exterior air intake

The exterior air intake shall be capable of providing all combustion air from the exterior

of the dwelling. The exterior air intake shall not be located within the garage, attic, basement or crawl space of the dwelling nor shall the air intake be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of ¼-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

3.7.11.13.4 Clearance

Unlisted combustion air ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

3.7.11.13.5 Passageway

The combustion airpassageway shall be a minimum of 6 square inches (3870 mm^2) and not more than 55 square inches (0.035 m^2), except that combustion air systems for listed fireplaces or for fireplaces tested for emissions shall be constructed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.11.13.6 Outlet

The exterior air outlet is permitted to be located in the back or sides of the firebox chamber or within24 inches (610 mm) of the firebox opening on or near the floor. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

3.7.12 Masonry Heaters

3.7.12.1 Definition

A masonry heater is a heating appliance constructed of concrete or solid masonry, hereinafter referred to as "masonry," which is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox may include flow in a horizontal or downwarddirectionbeforeenteringthechimney and which delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

3.7.12.2 Installation

Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this Section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements ofASTM E1602; or

2. Masonry heaters shall belisted and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.7.12.3 Footings and Foundation

Thefireboxfloor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thicknessof 4 inches (102 mm)of noncombustiblematerialand besupportedona noncombustible footing andfoundation in accordance with Section **3.**7.13.2.

3.7.12.4 Seismic Reinforcing

In Seismic Design CategoryD, E and F, masonry heaters shall be anchored to the masonry foundation in accordance with Section **3.**7.13.3. Seismic reinforcing

shall not be required within the body of a masonry heater with a height that is equal to or less than 3.5 times its body width and where the masonry chimney serving the heater is not supported by the body of the heater. Where the masonry chimney shares a common wall with the facing of the masonry heater, the chimney portion of the structure shall be reinforced in accordance with Section **3.**7.13.

3.7.12.5 Masonry Heater Clearance

Combustiblematerials shall not be placed within 36 inches (765 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211, Section 8-7 (clearances for solid fuel-burning appliances), and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. When the masonry heater wall thickness is at least 8 inches (203 mm) thick of solid masonry and the wall thicknessof the heat exchange channels is at least 5 inches (127 mm) thick of solid masonry, combustible materials shall not beplaced within 4inches(102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A

clearance of at least 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.

2. Masonry heaters listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.13 Masonry Chimneys

3.7.13.1 Definition

A masonry chimney is a chimney constructed of concrete or masonry, hereinafter referred to as "masonry." Masonry chimneys shall be constructed, anchored, supported and reinforced as required in this Section.

3.7.13.2 Footings and Foundations

Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry at least 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides.Footings shall befounded on naturalundisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

3.7.13.3 Seismic reinforcing

Masonry or concrete chimneys shall be constructed, anchored,supported and reinforced as required inthis Section.InSeismicDesign CategoryD, masonry and concretechimneys shallbereinforcedand anchored as detailedinSections 3.7.13.3.1,3.7.13.3.2 and3.7.13.4. In Seismic Design CategoryA, B or C, reinforcement and seismic anchorage is not required. In Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry and concrete chimneys shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 3.7.1 through3.7.8.

3.7.13.3.1 Vertical reinforcing

Forchimneysupto40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars anchored in the foundation shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section3.7.3.12. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches(1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

3.7.13.3.2 Horizontal reinforcing.

Verticalreinforcement shall beplaced enclosed within 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) ties, or otherreinforcing of equivalentnetcross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) o.c. in concrete, or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry, at a minimum of every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

3.7.13.4 Seismic Anchorage

Masonry and concretechimneys and foundationsinSeismic Design Category Dshallbe anchoredat each floor, ceilingor roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade, except where constructed completely within the exterior walls. Anchorage shall conform to the following requirements.

3.7.13.4.1 Anchorage

Two 3/16-inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by25 mm) straps shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches(305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to a minimum of four floor joists with two 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

3.7.13.5 Corbeling

Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12inches (305 mm) in thicknessunless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second storey of a two-storey dwelling, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls is permitted to equal the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

3.7.13.6 Changes in Dimension

The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

3.7.13.7 Offsets

Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centreline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the centre of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an approved manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply.

Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section 3.7.13.5.

3.7.13.8 AdditionalLoad

Chimneys shall notsupport loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Masonry chimneys are permitted to be constructed as part of the masonry walls or concretewalls of the building.

3.7.13.9Termination

Chimneys shall extend at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall not be less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

3.7.13.9.1Sparkarrestors

Where asparkarrestor is installed on amasonry chimney,the spark arrestorshall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall not be less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

2. The arrestor screen shall have heatand corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or24-gage stainless steel.

3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than 1/2 inch (13 mm) nor blockthe passage of spheres having a diameter less than 3/8inch (11 mm).

4. The spark arrestor shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimneyflue.

3.7.13.10 Wall Thickness

Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of concrete, solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal thickness**.**

3.7.13.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys

Where masonry is used as veneer for a framed chimney, through flashing and weep holes shall be provided.

3.7.13.11 Flue Lining (Material)

Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of appliance connected, according to the terms of the appliance listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.13.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general)

Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements ofASTM C 315, or equivalent.

2. Listed chimney lining systems complying with UL1777.

3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units listed for installation within masonry chimneys.

4. Other approved materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from fluegases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

3.7.13.11.1.1 Flue linings for specific appliances

Flue linings otherthan those coveredin Section 3.7.13.11.1 intended for use with specific appliances shall comply with Sections 3.7.13.11.1.2 through 3.7.13.11.1.4 and Sections 3.7.13.11.2 and 3.7.13.11.3.

3.7.13.11.1.2 Gas appliances

Flue lining systems for gas appliances shall be in accordance with the International Fuel Gas Code.

3.7.13.11.1.3 Pellet fuel-burning appliances

Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be limited to flue lining systems complying withSection 3.7.13.11.1 and pellet vents listedfor installation within masonrychimneys (see Section 3.7.13.11.1.5 for marking).

3.7.13.11.1.4 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with L-vent

Flue lining and ventsystems for use in masonry chimneyswith oil-firedappliances approved for use with Type L vent shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section3.7.13.11.1 and listed chimneylinerscomplying with UL641(see Section3.7.13.11.1.5 for marking).

3.7.13.11.1.5 Notice of usage

When a flue is relined with a material not complyingwith Section 3.7.13.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a label attached to a wall,ceilingorother conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The label shall include the following message or equivalent language: "This chimney is for use only with(type or category of appliance) that burns (type of fuel). Do not connect other types of appliances."

3.7.13.11.2 Concreteandmasonrychimneysfor medium-heat appliances

3.7.13.11.2.1 General

Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall comply with Sections3.7.13.1 through 3.7.13.5.

3.7.13.11.2.2 Construction

Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of solid masonry units or of concrete with walls a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) thick, or with stone masonry a minimum of 12inches (305 mm) thick.

3.7.13.11.2.3 Lining

Concrete and masonrychimneys shall be lined with an approved medium-duty refractory brick a minimum of 4½inches (114 mm) thick laid on the

4½-inch bed (114 mm) in an approved medium-duty refractory mortar. The lining

shall start 2 feet (610 mm) or more below the lowest chimney connector entrance. Chimneys terminating 25 feet (7620 mm) or less above a chimney connector entrance shall be lined to the top.

3.7.13.11.2.4 Multiplepassageway

Concreteand masonry chimneyscontaining more than one passage-wayshallhavetheliners separatedbya minimum4-inch-thick (102 mm) concreteor solid masonry wall.

3.7.13.11.2.5 Termination height

Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm).

3.7.13.11.2.6 Clearance

A minimum clearance of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be provided between the exterior surfaces of a concrete or masonry chimney for medium-heat appliances and combustible material.

3.7.13.11.3Concreteandmasonrychimneysfor high-heat appliances

3.7.13.11.3.1 General

Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall comply with Sections3.7.13.1 through 3.7.13.5.

3.7.13.11.3.2 Construction

Chimneys for high-heat appliances shall be constructed with double walls of solid masonry units or of concrete, each wall to be a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) thick with a minimum airspace of 2 inches (51 mm) between the walls.

3.7.13.11.3.3 Lining

The inside of the interior wall shall be lined with an approved high-duty refractory brick, a minimumof 4½inches(114 mm) thick laid on the4½-inch bed (114 mm) in an approved high-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start at the base of the chimney and extend continuously to the top.

3.7.13.11.3.4 Termination height

Concreteand masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall extend a minimum of 20 feet (6096 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

3.7.13.11.3.5 Clearance

Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall have approvedclearance from buildings and structures to preventoverheating combustible materials,permit inspection and maintenance operations on the chimney and prevent danger of burnsto persons**.**

3.7.13.12Clay flue lining (installation)

Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C 1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case

of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a maximum slope no greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an air space or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue lining shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

3.7.13.13 Additional Requirements

3.7.13.13.1 Listed materials

Listed materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.13.13.2 Space around lining

The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance.

EXCEPTION:

This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3.7.13.14 Multiple Flues

When two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

EXCEPTION:

When venting only one appliance, two flues are permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered at least 4 inches (102 mm).

3.7.13.5 Flue Area (Appliance)

Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than the area of the connector from the appliance. Chimney flues connected to more thanone appliance shall not be less than the area of the largest connector plus 50percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Chimney flues serving oil-fired appliances sized in accordance with NFPA 31.

2. Chimney flues serving gas-fired appliances sized in accordance with the International Fuel Gas Code.

3.7.13.16 Flue Area (Masonry Fireplace)

Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section3.7.13.16.1 or 3.7.13.16.2.

3.7.13.16.1 Minimum area

Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of at least 1/12 of the fire- place opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of at least 1/10 of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio less than2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of atleast 1/10of the fireplace opening.Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of at least 1/8 of the fireplace opening.

3.7.13.16.2 Determination of minimum area

The minimum net cross-sectional area of the flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure 3.7.3. A flue size providing at least the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are as provided in Tables 3.7.13 and 3.7.14 or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.
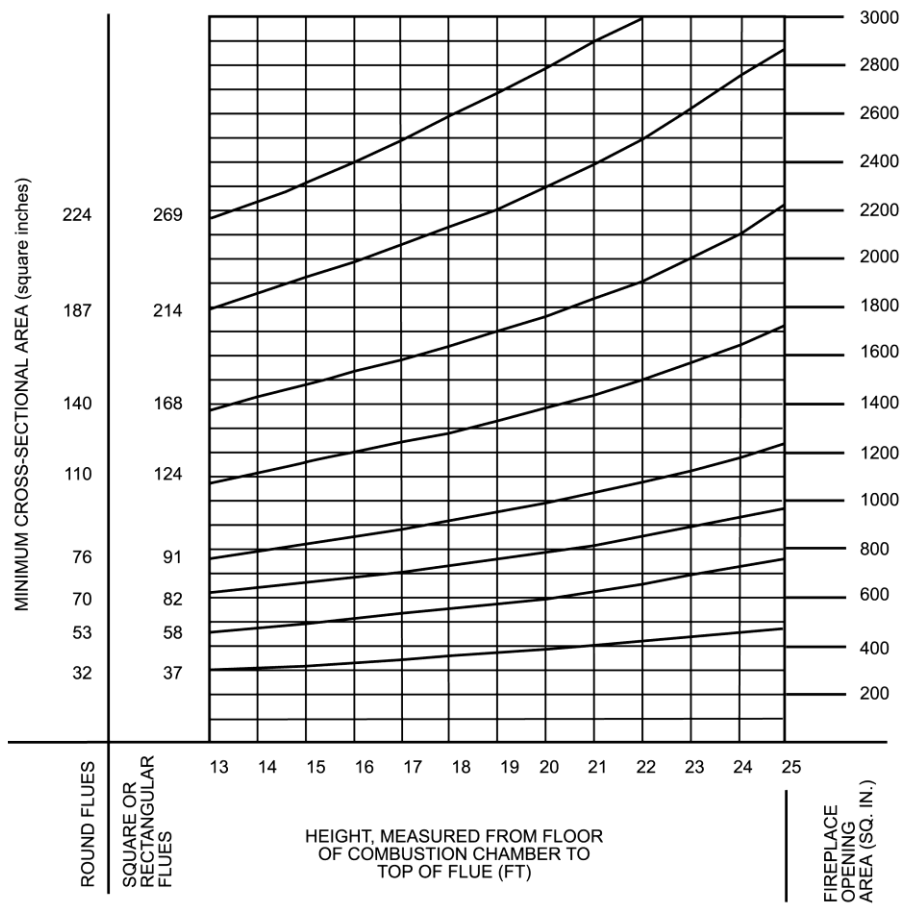
For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm2. a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C 315.

FIGURE 3.7.3FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS

TABLE 3.7.13NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUES SIZESa

FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)

6	28
7	38
8	50
10	78
$10^3/_4$	90
12	113
15	176
18	254

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

a.   *Flue sizes are based on ASTM C 315.*

TABLE 3.7.14NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES

FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
4.5×8.5	23
4.5×13	34
8×8	42
8.5×8.5	49
8×12	67
8.5×13	76
12×12	102
8.5×18	101
13×13	127
12×16	131
13×18	173
16×16	181
16×20	222
18×18	233
20×20	298
20×24	335
24×24	431

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2

3.7.13.17 Inlet

Inlets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Inlets shall have a thimble of fireclay,rigidrefractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

3.7.13.18 MasonryChimneyCleanoutOpenings

Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches(152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located at least 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inletopening. The height of the opening shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

EXCEPTION:

Chimney flues serving masonryfireplaces, where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

3.7.13.19 Chimney Clearances

Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51

mm). Chimneys located entirely outsidethe exterior wallsof the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to providefireblockingin accordance with Section 3.7.13.20.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system listed and labeled for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer'sinstruction, are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.

2. Where masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.

3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, are permitted to abut the masonry chimneysidewalls, in accordance with Figure 7.4, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining. Combustible material and trim shall not overlap the corners of the chimneyby more than 1 inch (25mm).
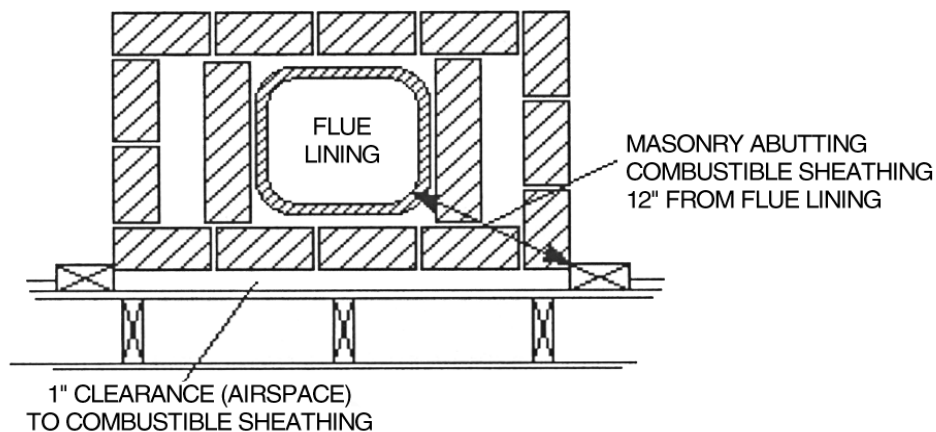
For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 3.7.4 ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION THREE CHIMNEY CLEARANCE PROVISION

3.7.13.20 Chimney Fireblocking

All spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and shall only be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 2016

PART 4

SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 4   SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

4.1 GENERAL

4.1.1 Scope

This section covers soil and foundation design for all buildings such as individual footings, combined footings, strip footings, rafts, piles and other foundation systems to ensure safety and serviceability without exceeding the permissible stresses of foundation material and the bearing capacity of the supporting soil. Some parameters related to seismic – resistant designs are also included.

This section is formulated with a view to implement in national and economical policies in soils and foundations, such that the design of buildings can be accomplished with safety and usability, using advanced technology, with economy and rationality, assuring the quality and protection of the environment.

Design of soil and foundation must be carried out based on the principles of suiting measures to local conditions, using local materials, protecting the environment and economizing on resources. The design shall be painstakingly performed with comprehensive consideration given to the type of structures, availability of materials and geotechnical survey data of soil and rock.

4.1.2 Design

Allowable bearing pressures, allowable stresses and design formulae provided in this section shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in Structural Design Section **3.2.1**. The quality and design of materials used structurally in excavations, footings and foundations shall conform to the requirements specified in this code (see Section on Structural Design, Concrete, Masonry and Steel). Safety during construction and the protection of adjacent public and private properties shall govern the design and construction of excavations and fills.

4.1.2.1 Foundation design for seismic overturning

Where the foundation is proportioned using the load combinations specified in Structural Design **Section 3.4.2**, and the computation of the seismic overturning moment is by the equivalent lateral-force method or the model analysis, the proportioning shall be in accordance with Section **3.4.2.**

4.1.2.1.1 Reduction of Foundation Overturning

Overturning effects at the soil foundation interface are permitted to be reduced by 25 percent for foundations of structures that satisfy both of the following conditions:

    a) The structure is designed in accordance with the Equivalent Lateral Force Analysis as set forth in Structural Design **Section 3.4.2.**

    b) The structure is not an inverted pendulum or cantilevered column type structure.

Overturning effects at the soil-foundation interface are permitted to be reduced by 10 percent for foundations of structures designed in accordance with the modal analysis requirements of Structural Design **Section 3.4.2.**

4.1.3 Definitions

For the purpose of this Section, the following definitions shall apply.

4.1.3.1 Soil

Clay. Very fine – grained soil (the particles are less than 0.002 mm in size), consisting mainly of hydrate silicate of aluminum. Clay is a plastic cohesive soils which shrinks on drying, expands on wetting and when compressed it gives up water. It comes from the chemical decomposition and disintegration of rock constituents.

Clay (Firm) or (Medium Stiff). A clay which at its natural water content can be moulded by substantial pressure with the fingers and can be excavated with a spade.

Clay (Very soft). (Soft), A clay which at its natural water content can be easily moulded with the fingers and readily excavated.

Clay (Stiff), (Very Stiff), (Hard). A clay which at its natural water content cannot be moulded with fingers and require a pick or pneumatic spade for its removal.

Gravel. Cohesionless aggregates of angular or rounded or semi – rounded fragments of more or less unaltered rocks or minerals. The size is larger than 2.0 mm and less than 60 mm.

Hard Rock. A fresh rock which is normally required blasting or chiseling for excavation.

Laterite and Lateritic soils. Laterite which possess reddish colour should be regarded as a highly weathered material resulted from the concentration of hydrate oxides of iron and aluminum. In the laterite, the ratio of silica oxide (SiO_2) to sesquioxides (Fe_2O_3, Al_2O_3) is usually less than 1.33. Laterite are good foundation soils and it can be used as subbase material for road and small airfield construction. Lateritic soil has the reddish colour and the ratio of silica oxide (SiO_2) to sesquioxides (Fe_2O_3, Al_2O_3) is generally from 1.33 to 2. They are fair to good foundation materials for buildings. Lateritic soils can be divided into three groups; ferruginous soil, ferrallitic soils and ferrisols soils. Ferruginous soil can have better strength than others. The clay minerals of lateritic soils are mostly kaolinite in nature.

Liquefaction. The phenomenon of liquefaction is generally associated with cohesion-less soils. It results from seismic shaking that is of a sufficient intensity and duration. It occurs most commonly in loose, saturated, granular soils that are uniformly graded and that contain few fines. Although sands are especially susceptible, liquefaction is also known to develop in some silts and gravels. The generation of excess pore pressure due to rapid loading under un-drained condition is hallmark of all liquefaction phenomena.

Predominant Period of Soil. It is a parameter that provides a useful tool, although somewhat crude representation of the frequency content of a ground motion. The predominant period is defined as the period of vibration corresponding to the maximum value of the Fourier amplitude spectrum (FAS). During an earthquake, the buildings which have the natural periods of as same as the predominant period of underlying soil deposits will be felt strong shaking and are liable to severe damage.

Problematic Soil

(a) Expansive Soil. Foundation materials that exhibit volume change when there are changes in their moisture content are referred to as expansive or swelling clay soils. More detailed is shown in Appendix A.

(b) Dispersive Soil. The soil which disperse in the presence of water and can therefore be easily scoured. The most major soil type is CLAY and SILT combination with some amount of sand. The index properties give no indication about this treacherous soil. Detail criteria and suggested tests are shown in Appendix A.

(c) Peat. Peat is a fibrous mass of organic matter in various stages of decomposition and dark brown and black in color and of spongy consistency.

(d) Black Cotton Soil. It is the inorganic clay of medium to high compressibility. They form a major soil group in middle parts of Myanmar. They are predominantly montmorillonitic in structure and Black or Blackish Grey or Greenish brown in color. They are characterized by high shrinkage and swelling properties.

Sand. Sand is cohesionless soils, the soil particles do not tend to stick together. The particle size ranges from 0.06 mm to 2 mm.

Sand (Fine). Sand which contains particles of size greater than 0.06 mm and less than 0.02 mm

Sand (Medium). Sand which contains particles of size greater than 0.02 mm and less than 0.6 mm

Sand (Coarse). Sand which contains particles of size greater than 0.6 mm and less than 2 mm

Silt. A fine grained soil with little or no plasticity, the size of particles ranges from 0.002 mm to 0.06 mm.

Soft Rock. A rocky cemented material which offers a high resistance to picking up with pick axes and sharp fools but which does not normally required blasting or chiseling for excavation.

Soil. Sediments or other unconsolidated accumulations of soil particles produced by the physical and chemical decomposition of rock and which may or may not contain organic matter, soil is not solid matter but contains air and water between the soil particles.

Soil (Coarse Grained). Soil which includes the coarse and large siliceous and unaltered products of weathered rock is regarded as coarse grained soil. They possess no plasticity and tend to lock cohesion when in dry state.

Soil (Fine Grained). Soil where more than 50% of the material less than 60mm is smaller than 0.06mm.Soil consisting of fine and altered products of weathered rocks, possessing cohesion and plasticity in their natural state is regarded as fine grained soil.

Soil Amplification. Soil amplification is the ratio of amplitude of displacement of the objective layer (surface) to that of the reference layer (engineering bedrock). It is a function with respect to frequency and is equivalent with the ratio of acceleration. The areas covered with thick, soft soil generally show higher amplification. Basin effects also have a great control on amplification characteristics of soil deposits. Some severe damages during an earthquake are mainly related to soil amplification.

4.1.3.2 Shallow Foundation

Back Fill. Material used to raise the ground level to fill a depression, or for construction of an embankment.

Bearing Capacity Safe *(q_s)*. [$\approx$ gross allowable bearing capacity ($q'_{all} = q_u/FS$)

The maximum pressure which the soil can carry safety without risk of shear failure. It is equal to the net safe bearing capacity plus original overburden pressure. It is also referred to as the ultimate bearing capacity divided by the factor of safety.

$q_s = q_{ns} + \gamma D = q_{nu}/F + \gamma D = q_u/FS$

Bearing Capacity. The supporting power of a soil or rock is referred to as its bearing capacity.

Bearing Capacity, Ultimate *(q_u)*. It is defined as the minimum gross pressure intensity at the base of the foundation at which the soil fails in shear. (or) The intensity of loading on the foundation which would cause shear failure of the soil

Bearing Pressure, Allowable *(q_a)*. It is the net loading intensity at which neither the soil fails in shear nor there excessive settlement detrimental to the structure.

Continuous Spread Footing. These are also known as wall footings or strip footings and are used to support bearing walls.

Combined Footing. It supports more than one column. It is useful when columns are located too close together for each to have its own footing.

Factor of Safety. It is applied to the ultimate bearing capacity (net) to arrive at the value of the safe bearing capacity (net).

Footing. It is a portion of the foundation of a structure that transmits loads directly to the soil.

Foundation. It is the part of the structure which is in direct contact with and transmitting loads to the ground.

Ring Spread Footing. These are continuous footings that have been wrapped into a circle. It is commonly used to support the walls of above ground circular storage tanks.

Shallow Foundation. Foundations that have a depth of embedment to width ration of approximately less than four.

Spread Footing. It is an enlargement at the bottom of a column or bearing wall that spreads the applied structural loads over a sufficiently large soil area.

Strip Footing. A footing providing a continuous longitudinal ground bearing.

Mat Foundation (Raft Foundation). A mat is essentially a very large spread footing that usually encompasses the entire footprint of the structure. They are also known as raft foundation.

4.1.3.3 Deep Foundation

Augered uncased piles. Augered uncased piles are constructed by depositing concrete into an uncased auger hole, either during or after the withdrawal of the auger.

Bearing Pile. The pile which transfers the load to a stronger stratum underlying the weak zone.

Batter Pile (Raker Pile). The pile which is installed at an angle to the vertical.

Bored Pile. A pile formed with or without a casing by drilling a hole and subsequently filling it with plain or reinforced concrete.

Belled piers. Belled piers are cast-in-place concrete piers constructed with a base that is larger than the diameter of the remainder of the pier. The belled base is designed to increase the load-bearing area of the pier in end bearing.

Caisson piles. Caisson piles are cast-in-place concrete piles extending into bedrock. The upper portion of a caisson pile consists of a cased pile that extends to the bedrock. The lower portion of the caisson pile consists of an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock.

Concrete-filled steel pipe and tube piles. Concrete-filled steel pipe and tube piles are constructed by driving a steel pipe or tube section into the soil and filling the pipe or tube section with concrete. The steel pipe or tube section is left in place during and after the deposition of the concrete.

Cut -off Level. It is the level where the installed pile is cut-off to connect the pile cap or beams or any other structural components at that level. (or)The prescribed elevation at which the top of a pile is cut. This may be above or below ground level.

Driven uncased piles. Driven uncased piles are constructed by driving a steel shell into the soil to shore an unexcavated hole that is later filled with concrete. The steel casing is lifted out of the hole during the deposition of the concrete.

Driven Precast Pile. The precast piles are constructed in concrete (reinforced or pre-stressed) which is cast and cured in a casting yard and subsequently driven into the ground until it has attained sufficient strength.

Driven Cast-in Situ Pile. A pile installed by driving a permanent or temporary casing, and filling the hole so formed with plain or reinforced concrete.

Enlarged base piles. Enlarged base piles are cast-in-place concrete piles constructed with a base that is larger than the diameter of the remainder of the pile. The enlarged base is designed to increase the load-bearing area of the pile in end bearing.

Flexural Length. Flexural length is the length of the pile from the first point of zero lateral deflection to the underside of the pile cap or grade beam.

Friction Pile. The pile which carries the load by mobilizing the friction along its sides.

Factor of Safety. It is the ratio of the ultimate load capacity of a pile to the safe load (working load) of a pile.

Jacked Pile. A pile, usually in short section, which is forced into ground by jacking it against a reaction from the kentledge.

Kentledge. Material used to add temporary loading to a structure or as a dead weight in a loading test.

Micropiles. Micropiles are 16-inch-diameter (406 mm) or less bored, grouted-in-place piles incorporating steel pipe (casing) and/or steel reinforcement.

Negative Skin Friction. A downward frictional force acting to the shaft of a pile caused by the consolidation of compressible strata. It has the effect to increase the loading on the pile and reducing the factor of safety.

Pile Foundations. Pile foundations consist of concrete, wood or steel structural elements either driven into the ground or cast in place. Piles are relatively slender in comparison to their length, with lengths exceeding 12 times the least horizontal dimension. Piles derive their load-carrying capacity through skin friction, end bearing or a combination of both.

Pier Foundations. Pier foundations consist of isolated masonry or cast-in-place concrete structural elements extending into firm materials. Piers are relatively short in comparison to their width, with lengths less than or equal to 12 times the least horizontal dimension of the pier. Piers derive their load-carrying capacity through skin friction, through end bearing, or a combination of both.

Pile Raft. A foundation formed of piles and a raft acting together.

Pile Cap. A concrete block cast on the head of a pile or a group of piles to transmit the load from the structure to the pile or group of piles.

Steel-cased piles. Steel-cased piles are constructed by driving a steel shell into the soil to shore an unexcavated hole. The steel casing is left permanently in place and filled with concrete.

Test Pile. A pile installed before the commencement of the main piling works, to which a load is applied to determine the load/settlement characteristics of the pile and the surrounding soil.

Tension Pile. A pile that is designed to resist a tensile force.

Timber piles. Timber piles are round, tapered timbers with the small (tip) end embedded into the soil.

Ultimate Load. The maximum load which a pile can carry before failure of ground or failure of pile materials.

Working Load (allowable load). The load which the pile is designed to carry.

4.1.4   ABBREVIATION AND SYMBOLS

A_g	Pile cross-sectional area, square inches
A_{ch}	Core area defined by spiral outside diameter
a_{max}	Peak ground acceleration of the site
A_{sh}	Cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement
CLSM	Controlled low- strength material
CPT	Cone Penetration Test
CQHP	Committee for Quality control of High-rise building construction Project
CRR	Cyclic Resistance Ratio of the in situ soil
CSR	Cyclic Stress Ratio of the in situ soil
D	Depth of Soil
E	Modulus of Elasticity
FAS	Fourier amplitude spectrum
FI	No. of fracture
FS	Factor of Safety
$f'c$	Specified compressive strength of concrete
f_{yh}	Yield strength of spiral reinforcement
f_{pc}	The effective stress on the gross section
Fy	Minimum specified yield strength
F_b	Bending at fiber stress
F_v	Longitudinal shear
F_c	Axial compression
F_{cb}	Axial compression when combined with bending
$F_{c(per)}$	Compression perpendicular to grain
$F_{t(par)}$	Tension parallel to grain
$Ft_{(per)}$	Tension perpendicular to grain
fy	Yield strength of the steel

g	Acceleration due to gravity (32.2 ft/s2 or 9.81 m/s2)
GPR	Ground-Probing Rader
h_c	Cross-sectional dimension of pile core measured center to center of hoop reinforcement
IP	Induce polarization survey
k_s	Modulus of Sub-grade Reaction
LL	Liquid Limit
P	Axial load on pile, pounds
PGA	Peak Ground Acceleration
PGV	Peak Ground Velocity
PGD	Peak Ground Displacement
RQD	Rock Quality Designation
SASW	Spectral Analysis of Surface Wave
S.C.R	Solid Core Recovery
SP	Self – potential survey
SPT	Standard Penetration Test
T.C.R	Total Core Recovery
TDEM	Electromagnetic Survey
TEM	Transient Electromagnetic
v_s^{30}	Average shear wave velocity of upper 30 m depth
VLF	Very low frequency
q	Bearing Pressure
q_a	Bearing Pressure, Allowable
q_s	Bearing Capacity, Safe
q_{ns}	Bearing Capacity, Net Safe
q_{nu}	Bearing Capacity, Net Ultimate
q_u	Bearing Capacity, Ultimate
w	Water content
σ_{vo}	Total vertical stress at a particular depth
σ'_{vo}	Vertical effective stress at a particular depth
r_d	Depth reduction factor or stress reduction coefficient
s	Spacing of transverse reinforcement measured along length of pile
c	Cohesion
w	Water Content
γ	Unit Weight of Soil

δ	Settlement
σ_{vo}	Total vertical stress at a particular depth where the liquefaction analysis is being performed.
σ'_{vo}	Vertical effective stress at a particular depth where the liquefaction analysis is being
r_d	Depth reduction factor or stress reduction coefficient
ρ_s	Spiral reinforcement index (vol. spiral/vol. core).

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 4   SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

4.2 SITE INVESTIGATION

4.2.1 Geotechnical Site Investigation

Geotechnical site investigation is the process of evaluating the geotechnical character of a site. It may include one or more of the followings:

- Evaluation of the geology and hydrogeology of the site.

- Examination of existing geotechnical information pertaining to the site.

- Excavating or boring in soil or rock.

- In-situ assessment of geotechnical properties of materials.

- Recovery of samples of soil or rock for examination, identification, recording, testing or display.

- Testing of soil or rock samples to quantify properties relevant to the purpose of the investigation.

- Reporting of results.

The specific procedure for geotechnical investigation of a particular site will depend on the geographical and geological conditions and nature of the proposed construction. A timely and intelligently planned site exploration should be considered a pre – requisite for efficient, safe, economical design and construction.

The following general procedure should conduct for site investigation.

a) Desk study

b) Site reconnaissance

c) Subsurface investigation

4.2.1.1 Desk study

In general, any investigation should start with the collection and examination of the existing data on soil and rock and any available geological information relating to the site. Terrain conditions on the proposed site must also be studied. A desk study should typically include collection of geological and engineering geological data through geologic maps, structural geology maps as shown in Appendix B, previous reports, study of aerial photographs, satellite images, and topographic maps.

4.2.1.2 Site reconnaissance

This should involve a walk-over or drive-over of the site area in order to study the character and variability of the ground, select appropriate site investigation methods and visually classify any existing soil or rock exposures.

On going over the site, the study of the following features may be useful: local topography, excavations, cuttings, quarries, evidences of erosion, landslides, fills, water levels in wells and streams, flood marks, and drainage patterns, etc. If there has been an earlier use of the site, information should be gathered in particular about the location of fills and excavations. The present land use should be noted along with any constraints on access for exploration equipment.

4.2.1.3 Subsurface Investigation

The methods of site investigation are largely dependent upon the nature of the ground to be investigated and engineering practices. Adequate subsurface investigation should be carried out prior to the design and construction of the proposed development. In some instances it may be appropriate

that this is done before acquiring a building site or making other investments dependent upon a particular site. The procedures for investigation, sampling, and testing shall be in accordance with the appropriate ASTM or AASHTO standards.

4.2.1.3.1 Purpose of Subsurface Investigation

The purpose of subsurface investigation is to assess the nature and sequence of the subsurface soils and rocks; groundwater conditions and the physical and mechanical properties of the subsurface materials.

Some typical examples of the purpose of subsurface investigations are as follows:-

a) To establish suitable horizontal and vertical location of a proposed structure on the site.

b) To locate and evaluate borrow materials for construction of earth embankments for highways or an earth dam.

c) To locate and evaluate sands and gravels suitable for highway aggregate, concrete aggregate, filter material or slope.

d) To determine the need for subgrade or foundation treatment to support loads or to control water movement.

e) To estimate foundation settlement or evaluate the stability of slopes or foundation.

4.2.1.3.2 Methods of Subsurface Investigation.

Some of the following methods may be selected and applied during the site investigation depending on the requirements of the proposed structures. Detailed procedures and the applicability of each method are described in Appendix C.

A summary of their applications is shown in Table 4.2.1.3.2.1.

a) Open Trial Pits (Test Pits) Method

b) Auger Boring (Hand Auger Method)

c) Shell and Auger Boring

d) Wash Boring

e) Standard Penetration Test

f) Cone Penetration Test

g) Rotary Boring

h) Percussion Boring

Table 4.2.1.3.2.1 Exploration objectives and suggested applicable methods

Sr. No.	Purpose of Exploration	Open Trial Pit/ Test pit	Hand Auger Boring	Shell & Auger boring	Wash Boring	SPT	CPT	Rotary Boring	Percussion Boring
1.	Faults	√						√	
2.	Deep – land							√	√
3.	Shallow – land	√	√	√	√	√	√		√
4.	Subaqueous							√	
5.	Soft-soil depth		√	√	√	√	√	√	√
6.	Sliding masses	√	√	√	√		√		
7.	Rock depth							√	√
8.	Rock-mass conditions							√	
9.	Disturbed Soil samples	√	√	√	√	√		√	
10.	Representative Soil samples	√	√	√	√	√		√	
11.	Undisturbed Soil samples	√	√	√	√			√	
12.	Rock cores							√	
13	1 to 2 - Storeyed Buildings (3 - 9 m Depth)	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
14.	2 to 6 - Storeyed Buildings (9 - 20 m Depth)	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
15.	(7 to 8 - Storeyed Buildings (20 - 30 m Depth)				√	√	√	√	√
16.	High – rise Buildings (9 – Storeyed and above) (30 - 80 m Depth)				√	√	√	√	√

Note: The depths mentioned in Table 4.2.1.3.2.1 are only the minimum requirements. Site investigation should be carried out to sufficient extent and depth to establish the significant soil strata and ground variation. Boreholes should go more than 5 meters into hard stratum with SPT blow counts of 100 or more than 3 times pile diameters beyond the intended founding level.)

4.2.1.3.2.2 Hydrogeological Investigation

Groundwater is generally collected and moves in interconnected voids, pore spaces, cracks, fissures, joints, bedding planes and other openings in soil and rock formations beneath the ground surface. The level of the water table is not stationary. It fluctuates according to the rainfall or seasons. The hydrogeological condition of a proposed site potentially has a great effect on foundation design consideration.

For investigation of the groundwater table, the following methods are suggested to be applied and types of water table should be described according to Appendix D.

4.2.1.3.2.2.1 Method of Groundwater Table Investigation

4.2.1.3.2.2.1.1 Logging at Test Borehole

One day after drilling, the standing groundwater level is usually measured by a level indicator or measuring tape. If drilling of the test borehole is continued on another day, the water table must be measured before and after drilling.

4.2.1.3.2.2.1.2 Installation of Piezometer and Logging

After the completion of drilling the test borehole to the required depth, a piezometer can be installed inside a PVC slotted screen and can be used to measure the water table for an extended period.

4.2.1.3.2.2.1.3 Permeability Tests and Filtration of Groundwater

Some of the following tests may be applied according to the client's requirements.

1) Permeability

These are primarily seepage tests:

a) Variable head test

b) Constant head test

The variable head test is typically carried out in cased boreholes below the ground water table or in slow draining soils. The borehole is filled with water and rate of fall is measured against time. An alternative approach is to bail water from the hole and record the rate of rise in the water level until the rise becomes negligible.

The constant head test is typically carried out in unsaturated granular soils. The ground around the hole is saturated by adding metered quantities of water to the hole until the quantity decreases to a steady value. Water continues to be added to maintain a constant level recording the quantity of water added at regular intervals.

(2) Packer Test

The general test involves installing packers in boreholes and expanding them with air pressure to seal off sections of the borehole. Water under pressure is introduced between the packers and the elapsed time and volume of water pumped into the rock mass is noted. Curves of flow versus pressure are plotted and approximate values for the rock mass permeability can be estimated.

One of two procedures is used depending on rock quality. The common procedure, used in poor to moderately poor rock with hole collapse problems, involves drilling the hole to some depth and performing the test with a single packer. Casing is installed if necessary and the hole is advanced to the next test depth. In good quality rock where the hole remains open, the hole is drilled to the final depth and testing proceeds in sections from the bottom up with two packers. Packer spacing depends on rock quality.

(3) Pumping Test

Pumping tests are usually carried out in gravity wells or artesian wells in soil and rock. The well is pumped a a constant rate until a cone of drawdown measured in observation wells has stabilized (recharge equals the pumping rate). Values of the soil or rock mass permeability can be obtained from the test results.

4.2.1.3.2.3 Geotechnical Instrumentation

The primary requirement of any instrument is that it should be capable of determining a required parameter, such as water pressure, or displacement, without leading to a change in that parameter as a result of the presence of the instrument in the soil. Instrumentation for displacement measurement and pore water pressure and groundwater level measurements are presented in Appendix E.

4.2.1.4 Number and Position of Borehole locations.

The number of boreholes and their locations depend on the following:

> 1. type and size of the project
>
> 2. soil variability

Factors to be considered in test site selection include the proposed development layout, the site geology and access constraints. The extent to which these factors influence, test site selection will depend on the specific details of each project. A number of examples are described as follows:

> 1. For large buildings, boreholes should be located close to the proposed foundations;
>
> 2. For an industrial plant with a few items of heavy plant and numerous items of light plant, a grid pattern for most of the site would be appropriate with additional holes located at the proposed heavy plant sites;
>
> 3. Test pits should not be located in the intended footing positions for houses because of the weakening of the ground by the excavation. Where the layout of a proposed housing estate is known, future road alignments, property boundaries or service line easements (prior to installation of services) are preferred locations to building envelopes for test pits.
>
> 4. For bridges, boreholes should be located at the proposed abutment and pier locations.
>
> 5. For railways and highways in steep terrain, target boreholes locations should include proposed cuts;

Access is a factor which can influence test site location. Access onto peat swamps, tidal flats and mangrove areas can be very difficult. These are also areas which have a high probability of containing soft unstable soils, which will create problems for future development. Consideration as to how to gain access to such areas should be given at the proposal stage of a project. Existing buildings spoil piles or drainage channels may also prevent drill rig or excavator access.

| < 5,000 sq-ft | about 10,000 sq-ft | about 20,000 sq-ft |
| or 5,00sq-m | or 10,00sq-m | or 20,00sq-m |
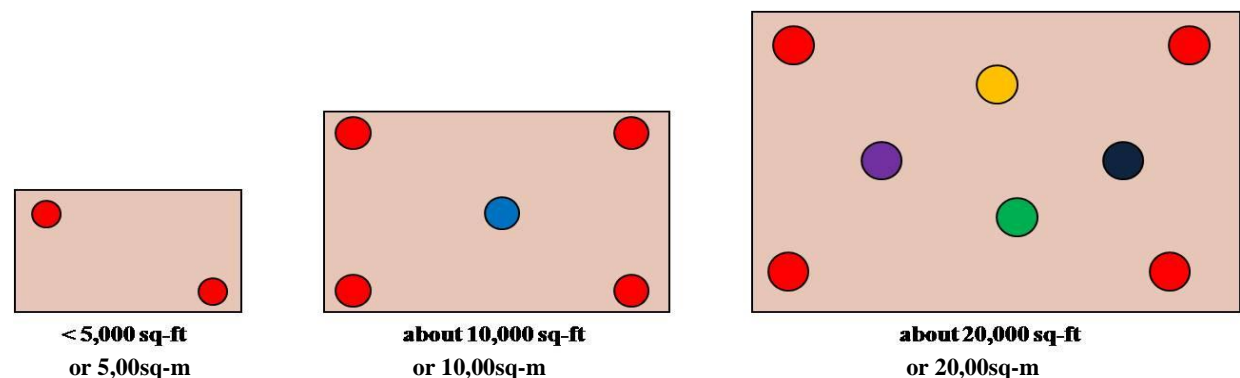
Figure 4.2.1.4 Suggested numbers, position and locations of Minimum Number of Boreholes

Suggested number and locations of boreholes are shown in Table 4.2.1.4 (1) and 4.2.1.4 (2).

Table 4.2.1.4 (1) Suggested number and locations of boreholes

Project	Distance between borings (meter) Horizontal Stratification of Soil and Rock			Minimum number of Boreholes for each structures
	Uniform	Average	Erratic	
3- 8 story buildings	50	30	15	4
1 -2-storey buildings	60	30	15	3

The borehole spacing suggested by the Committee for Quality control of High-rise building construction Projects (C.Q.H.P) (minimum number of borings = 2 boreholes) is as follows:

1. One boring for every 2500 sq-ft (or) 250 sq-m of built-over area < 10,000 sq-ft (or) 1,000 sq-m.

2. One boring for every extra 5,000 sq-ft (or) 500 sq-m for large area projects>10,000 sq-ft (or) 1,000 sq-m.

3. Additional borings for irregular soil conditions.

Table 4.2.1.4 (2) Suggested number and locations of boreholes

Area for Investigation	Boring Spacing (meter) / Boring number
New site of wide extent	borings 60 to 150 m apart
site on soft compressible strata	30 to 60 m at building locations.
Large structure (closely spaced footings)	Space borings 15 m in both directions , foundation walls at machinery or elevator
Low-load warehouse (large area)	Minimum of 4 borings at the corners
Isolated foundations 250 to 10,00sq-m	Minimum of 3 borings around perimeter
Isolated rigid foundation, < 250 sq-m	Min: of 2 borings at opposite corners
Major waterfront structures (drydocks)	space borings generally < 15 m. Add critical locations, deep pumped well, gate seat, tunnel, or culverts.
Long bulkhead or wharf wall.	borings on line of wall at 60 m spacing.
Slope stability, deep cuts, embankments	3 to 5 borings on line in critical direction
Water retaining structures	Space preliminary borings 60 m, cutoff, critical abutment

4.2.1.4.1 Depth of Boring.

Sowers (1979) suggested specified depth criteria as follows:

Minimum depth of borings $\quad= 10\,S^{0.7}$ (ft) or $3\,S^{0.7}$ (m) (for narrow and light buildings)

Minimum depth of borings $\quad= 20\,S^{0.7}$ (ft) or $6\,S^{0.7}$ (m) (for wide and heavy buildings)

Where, S = the number of stories in the building

The Committee for Quality control of High-rise building construction Project (CQHP) suggested the following depth specifications.

1. Shallow foundations specified depth as 1.5 times lesser dimension (B < L) (Limit to 30ft (or) 10 m minimum)

2. Deep foundations: Minimum depth of borings = $15\,S^{0.7}$ (ft) or $5\,S^{0.7}$ (m) (Limit to 3 consecutive SPT values $\geq$ 50)

(Note: As stated in Clause 3.4.2 of ACI 336.3R-93 (reapproved in 1998) for Design and construction of Drilled Piers, Boring depth should be adequate to investigate settlement of the bearing stratum below the pier. Where practical, at least one boring should go into bedrock.)

(Site investigation should be carried out to sufficient extent and depth to establish the significant soil strata and ground variation. (a) The number of boreholes should be the greater of (i) one borehole per 300sq m or (ii) one borehole at every interval between 10m to 30m, but not less than 3 boreholes in a project site. (b) Boreholes should go more than 5 meters into hard stratum with SPT blow counts of 100 or more than 3 times pile diameters beyond the intended founding level.)

4.2.1.5 Geophysical Methods

The existing methods and techniques of geophysical exploration can be adapted with some modifications to most targets of environmental and engineering interest (shallow depth). In principle, all the geophysical techniques that have been advised for subsurface investigations essentially detect a discontinuity; that is, one underground region differs sufficiently from another in some physical properties such as density, magnetic susceptibility, elasticity, spontaneous polarization, electric resistivity and conductivity, dielectric permittivity, radioactivity and thermal conductivity and so on. The common geophysical methods using in engineering practice are as follows and their summary of application is shown in Table 4.2.1.5.

1. Seismic Survey (Hammering, Blasting)

2. Electrical Methods (Resistivity, IP, SP, VES)

3. Magnetic Survey

4. Time Domain Electromagnetic Survey (TDEM)

5. Gravity Survey

6. Radioactivity Survey

A detailed explanation of each method is presented in Appendix F.

Table 4.2.1.5 Common geophysical methods and its application

Sr. No.	Purpose of Investigation	Magnetic	Gravity	Electrical				Electromagnetic			Seismic	
		Normal	Normal	SP	VES	ER	IP	VLF	GPR	TEM	Reft	Refr
1.	Subsurface Cavities					√						
2.	Clays, Peat and Soil			√		√			√			
3.	Construction Sites								√			√
4.	Fissures zones in rock					√		√	√			
5.	Fracture zones in rock	√	√			√			√			√
6.	Geological Mapping	√	√									
7.	Groundwater in crystalline rock					√		√				
8.	Groundwater in sedimentary areas				√							
9.	Groundwater flow			√								
10.	Overburden thickness				√							√
11.	Pollution of soil and groundwater					√						
12.	Saltwater invasion					√	√					
13.	Sand deposits								√			√

4.2.1.6 Sampling and Testing

The frequency of sampling and testing in an investigation depends on the information that is already available about the ground conditions and the technical objectives of the investigation.

4.2.1.6.1 Methods of Sampling.

1. In Standard Penetration Test (SPT) (ASTM D1586-99), use the split-spoon sampler for disturbed samples and use the piston tube steel sampler for undisturbed samples.

2. Hand augering method for undisturbed samples.

3. Test pitting for disturbed and undisturbed samples

4. Rotary drilling (manual) for s for disturbed and undisturbed samples and disturbed samples.

Some special techniques of sampling and testing are shown in the following Table 2.3.12 (1).

Table 4.2.1.6.1 (1) Some special techniques of sampling and insitu testing

Type of Ground	Special Techniques
Sand	SPT, CPT, sand samplers
Soft Sensitive Clay	CPT, Flat Plate Dilatometer, borehole or penetration shear vane, thin wall open tube or piston sampler, continuous soil sampler, large diameter samplers
Hard Stony Clay	Plate bearing test, pressure meter, rotary core sampling
Rock	Pressure meter, rotary core drilling using larger core sizes than 70 mm diameter

4.2.1.6.1.1 Soil samples

The selection of a sampling technique depends on the quality of the sample that is required and the character the ground, particularly the extent of disturbance by the sampling process. In choosing a sampling method, it should be made clear whether the mass properties or the intact materials properties of the ground are to be determined.

Sampling methods will differ according to the types of building for which the investigation is being carried out. The following procedure should be followed during sampling.

1. For low rise buildings, houses and sites where the soil profile is expansive, the upper about 1 – 3 m of the profile is critical and sufficient samples should be recovered from this depth interval to characterize the founding conditions.

2. Samples, both disturbed and undisturbed, should be taken in every 1m (more samples will be required if there is a lithologic change within 1m).

3. The collected samples must be sent urgently to the laboratory within two days, or the samples must be stored well enough to maintain their natural conditions.

The weight of sample must be as shown in Table 4.2.1.6.1 (2)

Table 4.2.1.6.1 (2) The recommended weight of soil samples for different tests (BS 5930-99)

Purpose of Sample	Soil	Mass of Sample Required (kg)
Soil identification, including Atterberg's Limits, Sieve analysis, Moisture content test	Clay, Silt, Sand	1
	Fine and Medium Gravel	5
	Coarse Gravel	30
Compaction Tests	All	25 – 60
Comprehensive examination of construction materials, including soil stabilization	Clay, Silt, Sand	100
	Fine and Medium Gravel	130
	Coarse Gravel	160

Complete detailed descriptions must be included on each sample bag as follows:

1. Location (GPS), Project name

2. Sample No.

3. Depth from where to where

4. Collector's name

5. Date of sampling

6. Investigation and Sampling Method

4.2.1.6.1.1.1 Disturbed and Undisturbed Samples.

1. The Standard Penetration Test (SPT) splitspoon sampler may be used for disturbed samples but the piston tube steel sampler or thin wall tube sampler must be used for undisturbed samples.

2. The hand augering method is suitable for obtaining disturbed samples. Undisturbed samples require the use of a thin wall tube sampler.

3. Test pitting is suitable for disturbed samples and for obtaining undisturbed samples either by cutting blocks of soil or using a thin wall tube sampler.

4. Rotary drilling (manual) is suitable for obtaining both disturbed and undisturbed core samples

4.2.1.6.1.1.2 Representative samples

The samples collected at a proposed site should be representative of the natural conditions of the soil such as natural moisture content and density and should be free from remolding effects.

4.2.1.6.1.2 Rock Samples

It is well known that rocks masses are non-homogeneous and the properties of samples taken from one portion of the rock may be different from those taken from another location. Therefore sampling should be properly done to represent the rock mass.

Samples can usually be collected from the field in the form of large blocks in the case of surface and near surface deposits by breaking from the parent body manually using steel hammers. When the deposit is deep under the ground, the samples can be obtained in the form of cores obtained from diamond drilling and large blocks may be available from blasting.

The following procedure should be followed during sampling.

1. Store the samples in the Core-box.

2. On the core-box, a detailed description must be included as follows:

    (i) Borehole No., Location (GPS), Project Name.

    (ii) Depth from where to where

    (iii) Logger's name

    (iv) Rock Quality Designation (RQD)

    (v) Total Core Recovery (T.C.R)

    (vi) Solid Core Recovery (S.C.R)

    (vii) Core recovery (%)

    (viii) No. of fractures (FI)

3. One core-box must have at least 3m of core run.

4. Cores must be placed in the core-box as soon as the drilling is finished and core losses must be shown systematically as well.

5. Photographs of core samples must be taken after placing the core in the core-box.

6. The core samples in the box must be covered with plastic sheets.

7. Core-boxes with core samples must be locked and stored in cool place.

8. The core samples for laboratory tests must be handled well, placed carefully onto PVC tubing, sealed with wax and covered with plastic sheets.

4.2.1.6.2 Protection, Handling, Labeling of Samples

4.2.1.6.2.1 Protection and Handling.

Samples may cost a considerable sum of money to obtain and should be treated with great care. Ideally, samples should be moisture-proofed immediately after collection either by waxing, spraying, or packing in polythene bags or sheets. They should be transported and stored under cover, and generally protected from excessive changes in humidity and temperature. Temperature must be

between 20º C and 45º C. The usefulness of laboratory test results depends on the quality of samples at the time they are tested.

4.2.1.6.2.2 Labeling

All samples should be labeled with a unique reference number immediately after being collected. The label should show all necessary information about the sample (site name, borehole number, depth, top and bottom of a core, etc) and should also be recorded on the daily field report. The label should be marked with indelible ink and be sufficiently robust to withstand the effects of the environment and transportation.

4.2.1.6.3 Visual Examination and Description of Laboratory Samples

Information about the grading and plasticity of soils can be estimated from visual inspection of bulk samples obtained during drilling and from tube samples. Information about the structures and fabric of soils cracks in rocks can be visually examined from high quality samples.

The description of samples of soil and rock tested in the laboratory forms an important part of the record of the test results. Such descriptions should be included on the laboratory work sheet. Descriptions of samples noted in the laboratory should be compared with the equivalent field descriptions and any anomalies should be resolved.

4.2.2 Laboratory Tests

1. Grain Size analysis

    (i) Dry – sieve analysis to 75 microns (No. 200 Sieve)

    (ii) Wet – sieve analysis for soil less than 75 microns (No. 200 Sieve)

        – Pipette method

        – Hydrometer analysis

2. Test for determination of water content and dry unit weight of soil

3. Test for determination of specific gravity

4. Test for determination of consistency of soil

5. Shear strength tests

6. Compaction test

7. California Bearing Ratio (CBR) Test

8. Permeability tests

9. Consolidation tests

10. Dispersibility tests

11. Other tests

    (i) Vane shear test

    (ii) Swelling pressure test

    (iii) Free swell test

    (iv) Linear shrinkage test

4.2.2.2 Result Presentation.

A common sample form for presentation of test results is shown in Appendix G.

4.2.3 Soil and Rock Classification

4.2.3.1 Classification of Soil According to ASTM D-2487-00.

A soil classification system divides soil into groups and sub-groups based on common engineering properties such as the grain-size distribution, liquid limit and plastic limit. The major classification system presently in use is the American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM). The ASTM system was originally proposed by A. Casagrande in 1942 and was later revised and adopted by the United States Bureau of Reclamation and U.S Army Corps of Engineers in 1969. The system is used extensively in geotechnical works. The symbols and terminology shown in Table 4.2.3.1 (1) and Table 4.2.3.1 (2) are used for identification. Classification of non – plastic and plastic soils and sample forms of classification are shown in Tables 4.2.3.1 (3), 4.2.3.1 (4) and 4.2.3.1 (5).

Table 4.2.3.1 (1) Terminology used to denote percentage by weight of each component

Descriptive Term	Range of Proportion
Trace (eg. trace sand, trace clay)	1 – 9 %
Some (eg. Some sand, some clay)	10 – 19 %
Adjective (eg. Sandy, silty)	20 – 34 %
Major soil (eg. SAND, CLAY, SILT)	≥ 35 %

Table 4.2.3.1 (2) Symbols for Soil Identification in ASTM System

Symbol	Description
G	Gravel
S	Sand
M	Silt
C	Clay
O	Organic Silts and Clay
Pt	Peat and highly organic soils
H	High plasticity
L	Low Plasticity
W	Well graded
P	Poorly graded

Terminologies used to indicate the compactness and consistency of disturbed materials are described in the following tables.

Table 4.2.3.1 (3) Compactness of non – plastic soil based on SPT values

Compactness of non – plastic soil	SPT values Blows / foot (or) Blows / 0.305 m	Relative Density (%)
Very Loose	0 – 4	0 – 20
Loose	4 – 10	20 – 40
Medium Dense	10 – 30	40 – 70
Dense	30 – 50	70 – 90
Very Dense	> 50	> 90

Table 4.2.3.1 (4) Consistency of plastic soil based on UCS values and SPT values

Consistency of plastic soil	Range of Unconfined Compressive Strength			SPT values Blows /foot (or) Blows / 0.305 m
	(psf)	(KN/Sq.meter)	(Ton/Sq.ft)	
Very soft	0 – 500	< 25	< 0.25	0 – 2
Soft	500 – 1000	25 – 50	0.25 – 0.5	2 – 4
Medium Stiff (firm)	1000 – 2000	50 – 100	0.5 – 1.0	5 – 12
Stiff	2000 – 4000	100 – 200	1.0 – 2.0	12 – 25
Very Stiff	4000 – 6000	200 – 300	2.0 – 3.0	25 – 40
Hard	6000 – 8000	300 – 400	3.0 – 4.0	40 – 50
Very Hard	> 8000	> 400	> 4.0	> 50

The classification of soil at the proposed site should be described as shown in the following sample form.

Table 4.2.3.1 (5) Sample form of soil classification

Compactness or Consistency of soil	Colour	Soil Type	Others (If have)
eg. Very Dense	Reddish Brown	SAND and SILT	With lime powder
eg. Stiff	Yellowish Grey	Silty CLAY	With broken bricks

Unified Soil Classification System (USCS) which is adopted as ASTM D-2487-00 is also application for classification of soil. The plasticity chart and characteristics of soil groups with the group symbols for various types of soil in USCS are shown in Appendix H.

4.2.3.2 Classification of Soil According to $\bar{v}_s^{30}$ (Seismic Site Classification)

For seismic design consideration, the soil is generally classified based on their average shear wave velocity of upper 30 m depth, $\bar{v}_s^{30}$, of soil layers as shown in Table 4.2.3.2.

$$\bar{v}_s^{30} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} t_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} t_i/v_{si}}$$

Where,

$\bar{v}_s^{30}$ = Average S-wave velocity in upper 30 m depth

n = Number of soil layers

t_i = Thickness of ith soil layer

v_{si} = S-wave velocity of ith soil layer

Table 4.2.3.2 Seismic Site Classification

Site Class	$\bar{v}_s^{30}$	$\bar{N}$
E (Soft Soil)	< 600 ft/s (< 175 m/s)	< 15
D (Medium Dense Soil)	600 – 1,200 ft/s (175 – 350 m/s)	15 – 50
C (Dense Soil)	1,200 – 2,500 ft/s (120- 250 m/s)	> 50

4.2.3.3 Classification of Construction Materials

4.2.3.3.1 Materials for Concrete Aggregate

Material suitable for use as concrete aggregate, shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C-33-03.

4.2.3.3.2 Materials for backfills.

Materials which are classified within Group (a) in Table 4.2.3.3.2 are suitable for use as backfill materials. Materials which are classified as Group (b) in Table 4.2.3.3.2 are unsuitable for use as backfill but may be designated for other uses.

Various types of backfills are shown in Table 4.2.3.3.2.

Table 4.2.3.3.2 Various Types of Backfills

DESCRIPTION OF BACKFILL MATERIAL	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION
Group (a)	
Well-graded, clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GW
Poorly graded clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GP
Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand mixes	GM
Clayey gravel, poorly graded gravel-and-clay mixes	GC
Well-graded, clean sands; gravelly sand mixes	SW
Poorly graded clean sands; sand-gravel mixes	SP
Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixes	SM
Sand-silt clay mix with plastic fines	SM-SC
Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixes	SC
Inorganic silts and clayey silts	ML
Mixture of inorganic silt and clay	ML-CL
Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity	CL
Group (b)	
Organic silts and silt clays, low plasticity	OL
Inorganic clayey silts, elastic silts	MH
Inorganic clays of high plasticity	CH
Organic clays and silty clays	OH

4.2.4 Seismic Design Category

4.2.4.1 Site class definitions.

The design categories A, B, C, D, E, F shall be classified based on the average shear wave velocity at upper 30 m (100 ft) depth, standard penetration resistance, and un-drained shear strength of soil in accordance with Section **3.4.1** of Structural Design.

When the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the site class, Site Class D shall be used unless the building official or geotechnical data determines that Site Class E or F soil is likely to be present at the site.

4.2.4.2 Spectral Response Acceleration Parameters

4.2.4.2.1 Preparation of Maps of Response Acceleration of 0.2s and 1s

The parameters S_s and S_1 shall be determined from the prepared 0.2 and 1-second spectral response acceleration maps or shall be determined based on seismic source to site distance, magnitude of designed earthquake, focal depth and v_s^{30} for a particular site of interest. Where S_1 is less than or equal to 0.04 and S_s is less than or equal to 0.15, the structure is permitted to be assigned to Seismic Design Category A.

4.2.4.2.2 Values of Site Coefficient F_a

According to Section **3.4.1** of Structural Design.

4.2.4.2.3 Values of Site Coefficient F_v

According to Section **3.4.1** of Structural Design.

4.2.4.3 Soil Amplification

1D seismic response analysis by using equivalent linear method should be used to obtain the amplification factor of underlying soil of a proposed site. Amplification is the ratio of amplitude of the objective layer to those of the reference layer, and is a function with respect to frequency.

For high – rise buildings (generally starting from 9 – storeys), the calculated amplification based on soil data from the proposed site should be used for design consideration.

4.2.4.4 Fundamental Frequency and Predominant Period

Fundamental Frequency or Predominant Period of underlying soil is one of the important parameters in seismic resistant design consideration. Buildings with similar natural period of resonance and resonance frequency to those of the supporting soil can be expected to suffer severe damage during an earthquake.

The frequency or period that is corresponding to peak soil amplification is usually regarded as the Fundamental Frequency or Predominant Period of that soil for that site. These parameters can be obtained through seismic response analysis.

4.2.4.5 Seismic Response Analysis

This is the most important and most reliable approach that can be conducted for seismic resistant design of a structure. It is a simulation based on the specific soil parameters of the site, the shear wave velocity structure and generated or recorded bedrock motion.

Seismic Response Analysis will give all the required parameters for the design of various structures, including high – rise buildings, such as peak ground acceleration, peak ground velocity, peak ground displacement, amplification factor, fundamental frequency and predominant period. The general procedure for 1D seismic response analysis is shown in Appendix I.

4.2.5 Report Preparation and Geotechnical Criteria.

The buildings of 9 storeys and above are generally regarded as high – rise buildings. For such buildings, the geotechnical investigation report should be prepared according to the instructions of the Committee for Quality Control of High – Rise Buildings. These instructions are summarized as follows.

The site investigation, laboratory testing and report shall include the following components:

    (a) Environmental study of the site and surrounding area.

    (b) A site location plan and a site area plan with the number of boreholes, depths, elevation and their locations marked on the plan.

    (c) A subsurface investigation and sampling of the foundation soils shall be carried out in accordance with the standard methods adopted in Myanmar for high-rise buildings.

    (d) The following tests shall be carried out as appropriate for the site conditions.

        1. Visual soil classification

        2. Tests for Moisture content and density of all soil samples

        3. Grain size analysis for selected samples

        4. Atterberg's Limits Tests (liquid limit, plastic limit, and plasticity index) for semi-plastic and plastic soil.

5. Unconfined compressive strength test for semi-plastic soils and plastic soils.

6. Direct shear test for selected soil samples or triaxial compression test for selected soil samples.

7. Specific gravity test for selected soil samples.

8. Consolidation test for semi-plastic soils or plastic soil samples for shallow foundation.

(e) Seismicity of the area, liquefaction, predominant period, fundamental frequency, and amplification (site effects) of soils at a proposed site should be included.

(f) For high – rise buildings, seismic response analysis has to be included for seismic-resistant design practices.

(g) Soil profiles with standard soil descriptions, depths, elevation, groundwater levels and the results of in-situ testing such as the standard penetration tests (SPT) and/or vane shear tests shall be provided for each borehole. If rock was encountered, the report should include a description of the rock including the degree of weathering and fracturing, compressive strength and rock quality designation (RQD) if core was recovered.

(h) A geological description of the site shall be provided.

(i) Recommendations shall be presented for alternative types of foundations along with founding depths and any precautions that are relevant.

(j) For shallow foundations, recommended allowable bearing capacity values at various depths should be provided for each borehole profile..

(k) The results of any other appropriate tests and other general recommendations for foundation design and construction should also be presented in the report.

(l) Photographs of the site, and site investigation should also be included.

(m) The report should include a discussion of the advantages and disadvantages of the proposed site with respect to the proposed high-rise development.

For other geotechnical investigation reports (9 – storeyed and above), the sampling method mentioned in above will keep on applying. For lower buildings (less than 9 – storeyed), proper types of sampling methods (e.g, standard drilling method) may apply and soil sampling methods must be included in report. In soil reports, standards of sampling and standard for tests must be clearly described.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 4   SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

4.3 EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL

4.3.1 Excavations near footing or foundations

Excavations for any purpose shall not remove lateral support from any footing or foundation without first underpinning or protecting the footing or foundation against settlement or lateral translation.

4.3.2 Placement of backfill

Excavations outside the foundation shall be backfilled with soil that is free of organic material, construction debris, cobbles and boulders or shall be backfilled with a controlled low-strength material (CLSM).The backfill shall be placed in lifts and compacted in a manner that does not damage the foundation, the waterproofing or the damp-proofing material.

4.3.3 Site grading

The ground immediately adjacent to the foundation shall be sloped away from the building at a slope of not less than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5 percent slope)for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. If physical obstruction or allotment boundaries prohibit 10 feet (3048mm) of horizontal distance, a 5 percent slope shall be provided to an approved alternative method of diverting water away from the foundation. Swales used for this purpose shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent where located within10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent away from the building.

4.3.4 Grading and Filling in Flood Hazard Areas

1. Unless such fill is placed, compacted and sloped to minimize shifting, slumping and erosion during the rise and fall of flood water and, as applicable, wave action.

2. In floodways, unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses, performed by a registered design professional in accordance with standard engineering practice, that the proposed grading or fill, or both, will not result in increased flood levels during the occurrence of the design flood.

3. In flood hazard areas subject to high velocity wave action, unless such fill is conducted and/or placed to avoid diversion of water and waves toward any building or structure.

4. Where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, unless it has been demonstrated that the cumulative effect of the proposed flood hazard area encroachment, when combined with all other existing and anticipated flood hazard area encroachments, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point.

4.3.5 Compacted Fill Material

Where footings bear onto compacted fill material, the compacted fill shall comply with the provisions of an approved report, which shall contain the following.

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of compacted fill material.

2. Specifications for material to be used as compacted fill.

3. Test methods to be used to determine the maximum dry density and optimum moisture content of the material to be used as compacted fill.

4. Maximum allowable thickness of each lift of compacted fill material.

5. Field test methods for determining the in – place dry density of the compacted fill.

6. The minimum acceptable in-place dry density expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density determined in accordance with Item 3.

7. The number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 6.

4.3.6 Controlled Low-Strength Material

Where footings will bear on controlled low- strength material (**CLSM**), the **CLSM** shall comply with the provisions of an approved report, which shall contain the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of the CLSM.

2. Specifications for the CLSM.

3. Laboratory or field test method (s) to be used to determine the compressive strength or bearing capacity of the CLSM.

4. Test methods for determining the acceptance of the CLSM in the field.

5. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 4.

4.3.7 Soil improvement

Suitable improvement methods should be applied according to the requirements of proposed sites.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016

PART 4   SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

4.4 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS FOR SOILS AND ROCKS

4.4.1 Basic Design Concepts for Expansive Soil and Black Cotton Soil

Most of the expansive soils likely to be encountered in Myanmar have formed residually over rocks, particularly basalts. These soils generally contain a large percentage of active clay content. Montmorillonite is the predominant clay mineral in expansive soils. Tropical expansive soils, often called Black Cotton Soil (in Myanmar), are major foundation problems in America, Africa, and Asia. The term "Black Cotton Soil" is believed to have originated in India where the locations of these soils are favorable for growing cotton. All expansive soils have a high water holding capacity and it is not possible to completely dry the soil in oven at a temperature of 110º C. The high percentage of clay is responsible for high volumetric changes during wetting and drying. The soil in the dry state can often have high strength, but the soils become soft when in the wet state. During summer and dry seasons, the soil shrinks volumetrically (in three dimensions).

The thickness of black cotton soils are typically in the range of about 4meter depth from ground surface.

The depth at which structures are founded in black cotton soils depends on such factors as the structural design, amount of permissible movement, soil characteristics and profile, and expected moisture variations over the life of the structure.

The use of mats, stiffened rafts, strip footings or individual pad footings will require special evaluation of site specific soil-structure interaction, design of structural elements accordingly and/or special soil treatment or replacement methods.

Where the thickness of expansive soil is less than 2 meter, the observed expansive soil layer could be removed and replaced with suitable non-reactive material. . However, if the thickness of the expansive soil layer is more than 2meter., it may be appropriate to treat the layer by stabilization using cement or lime or some other special treatment.

Moisture variation in expansive soils should be minimized by implementing the following essential points:

a) Providing a good drainage system around the outside of buildings.

b) Avoiding sewage pipes passing near the buildings either surface or subsurface and leading such pipes directly away from the structure at right angles to exterior walls. Such pipes and connections should be well designed to avoid danger of leakage.

c) Keeping taps and other water connections in gardens and walls away from the structure.

d) Planting trees at a distance equal to the mature height of the trees. They should not be planted closer to the structures. Many shrubs also absorb large quantities of moisture from a soil and can cause volume changes of expansive soils.

e) Providing good ventilation and drainage below a suspended floor - this can be helpful in maintaining moisture equilibrium.

f) Paving areas around the structures – this is often advantageous in maintaining a uniform moisture content beneath the structure. Adequate insulation by membranes, such as asphalt or asphalted fiber glass, is helpful in protecting the moisture losses of soil and penetration of surface water.

g) Protecting and backfilling of all foundation excavations in expansive soil areas without delay in order to minimize changes in the natural moisture regime.

h) Providing an appropriate layout and type of ground beams for such soil.

i) Some engineers suggested that safe soil bearing capacity of expansive soils should be taken just over swelling pressure of that soil.

4.4.2 Basic Design Concepts for Potential Landslide Areas

Slope stability analysis should first be performed t in such areas to establish whether various stability measures have to be performed to ensure the stability of buildings.

The main causes that influence landslide potential in Myanmar are: (i) gravity and the gradient of the slope, (ii) hydrogeological characteristics of the slope, (iii) presence of troublesome earth material, (iv). processes of erosion, (v) man-made causes, (vi) geological conditions, and (vii) occurrence of a triggering event.

The general procedure for slope stability analysis is presented in Appendix J.

4.4.3 Strength Parameters of Soils and Rocks

To assist with footing design, the strength parameters for soils and rocks which are encountered at the proposed sites have to be determined. The angle of internal friction, 'ϕ' and cohesion, 'c' are two main shear strength parameters of soils and rocks and are dependent on many factors such as; the types of soil and rock, moisture content, the presence of micro fractures, rate of loading, permeability, stress history and so on. The shear strength, compressive strength and tensile strength of soil and rock have to be calculated by using any available methods and approaches. Both results from in-situ tests in the field and results from laboratory tests have to be considered.

4.4.4 Lateral Earth Pressure *(Both Static and Dynamic)*

The seismic behavior of earth retaining structures depends on the total lateral earth pressure that develops during an earthquake. These total pressures include both static gravitational pressure that exists before an earthquake occurs and the dynamic pressure induced by the earthquake. The lateral earth pressure for retaining structures needs to be calculated for both static and dynamic loading conditions.

For static earth pressure (both active and passive pressures), Rankine Theory (1857) or Coulomb Theory (1776) or Logarithmic spiral method or Stress – Deformation Analysis such as finite element analysis should be conducted.

Calculation of seismic lateral earth pressure on a retaining structure is one of the important applications of the pseudo-static (quasi-static) seismic inertial force. For calculation of dynamic earth pressure (both active and passive pressures), Mononobe – Okabe method (1929) or Steedman – Zeng method (1990) or finite element analysis should be performed.

4.4.5 Design Parameters (Static Load)

The following parameters have to be determined and submitted to the design engineers for consideration in the design for static loading conditions.

> a) Natural water content in soil
>
> b) Specific Gravity and Density
>
> c) Dry Unit Weight
>
> d) Specific Gravity of soil particles
>
> e) Natural Void Ratio
>
> f) Saturation
>
> g) Water Ratio

h) Liquid limit

i) Plastic Limit

j) Plastic Ratio

k) Liquid Ratio

l) Coefficient of Compression

m) Compression Modulus

n) Angle of Internal Friction

o) Cohesion

p) Coefficient of Collapsible (Angle of repose)

q) Initial Pressure of Collapsible

(To evaluate stability, informality, bearing capacity of foundation)

4.4.6 Seismic Design Parameters (Seismic Load)

For seismic – resistant design, considerations of high – rise buildings and infrastructures, the following parameters are recommended.

4.4.6.1 Average shear wave velocity of upper 30 m depth, $\bar{v}_s^{30}$

The evaluation of strong motions and site effects of local soil conditions requires information on shear wave velocity especially for areas where thick sediment layers are overlying bedrock.

a) The average shear wave velocity at upper 30 m depth, $(\bar{v}_s^{30})$ will be used for classification of seismic design categories as in Structural Design Section 4.2.3.2.

b) $\bar{v}_s^{30}$ will be used for determination of soil amplification factor during an earthquake.

c) $\bar{v}_s^{30}$ will also be used seismic response analysis for determination of soil amplification factor during an earthquake.

The average shear wave velocity of the top 30 m, v_s^{30} can be evaluated by some geophysical methods or by SPT results.

4.4.6.2 Spectral Response acceleration

The response acceleration will be determined from maps or from empirical calculation by using some attenuation relationships or from response analysis for high – rise buildings and important public buildings.

4.4.6.3 PGA, PGV, PGD

The peak ground acceleration (PGA), peak ground velocity (PGV) and peak ground displacement (PGD) of soil will be calculated by response analysis and should be used in seismic resistant design considerations.

4.4.6.4 Amplification of Soil

The amplification of soil should be calculated by response analysis for high – rise buildings and where thick sediment layers are observed.

4.4.6.5 Fundamental Frequency and Predominant Period of Soil.

The fundamental frequency and predominant period of soil will be calculated by response analysis and should be used for seismic resistant designs.

MYANMAR NATIONAL BUILDING CODE – 2016
PART 4   SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

4.5 FOOTINGS AND FOUNDATIONS

4.5.1 General

4.5.1.1 Allowable Load Bearing Values of Soils

4.5.1.1.1 Presumptive load-bearing values.

The presumptive load-bearing values provided in Table 4.5.1.1.1 shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in Structural Design Section **2.1.3.** The maximum allowable foundation pressure, lateral pressure or lateral sliding-resistance values for supporting soils near the surface shall not exceed the values specified in Table 4.5.1.1.1 unless data to substantiate the use of a higher value are submitted and approved. Presumptive load-bearing values shall apply to materials with similar physical characteristics and dispositions. Mud, organic silt, organic clays, peat or unprepared fill shall not be assumed to have a presumptive load-bearing capacity unless data to substantiate the use of such a value are submitted.

> **Exception:** A presumptive load-bearing capacity is permitted to be used where the building official deems the load-bearing capacity of mud, organic silt or unprepared fill is adequate for the support of lightweight and temporary structures.

4.5.1.1.2 Allowable load-bearing pressure by calculation

An assessment of the allowable load-bearing pressure shall be based on the engineering properties of the soil, that is, cohesion, angle of internal friction, density, etc. The bearing capacity shall be calculated from stability considerations of shear and a factor of safety of 2.5 shall be adopted for safe bearing capacity. The potential effects of interference of adjacent foundations should be taken into account.

The procedure for determining the ultimate bearing capacity and allowable bearing pressure of shallow foundations based on shear and allowable settlement criteria shall be calculated by approved analytical, numerical or empirical methods. The bearing pressure beneath a stiff foundation may be assumed to be distributed linearly. The distribution of bearing pressure beneath a flexible foundation may be derived by modeling the foundation as a beam or slab resting on a deforming continuum or series of springs, with appropriate stiffness and strength.

Table 4.5.1.1.1 Allowable Foundation and lateral pressure

CLASS OF MATERIALS	ALLOWABLE FOUNDATION PRESSURE (psf) [d]	LATERAL BEARING (psf/below natural grade) [d]	LATERAL SLIDING	
			Coefficient of friction [a]	Resistance (psf) [b]
1. Crystalline bedrock	12,000	1,200	0.7	-
2. Sedimentary and foliated rock	4,000	400	0.35	-
3. Sandy gravel and/or gravel (GW and GP)	3,000	200	0.35	-
4. Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel	2,000	150	0.25	-
5. Clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt	500 [c]	30	-	40

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
    1 pound per square foot per foot= 0.157 kPa/m.

a. Coefficient to be multiplied by the dead load.

b. Lateral sliding resistance value to be multiplied by the contact area.

c. Where the building official determines that in-place soils with an allowable bearing capacity of less than 500 psf, the allowable bearing capacity shall be determined by a soils investigation.

d. An increase of 1/3 is permitted when using the alternate load combinations in structural design section that include wind or earthquake loads.

4.5.1.1.3 Lateral sliding resistance

Where the loading is not normal to the foundation base, foundations shall be checked against failure by sliding on the base. The resistance of structural walls to lateral sliding shall be calculated by combining the values derived from the lateral bearing and the lateral sliding resistance shown in Table 4.5.1.1.1 unless data to substantiate the use of higher values are submitted for approval. For clay, sandy clay, silty clay and clayey silt, in no case shall the lateral sliding resistance exceed one-half the dead load.

4.5.1.1.3.1 Increases in allowable lateral sliding resistance

The resistance values derived from the table are permitted to be increased by the tabular value for each additional foot (305 mm) of depth to a maximum of 15 times the tabular value.

4.5.1.2 Settlement

4.5.1.2.1 Design consideration for settlement calculation

Calculations of settlements shall include both immediate and long-term settlement. The following three components of settlement should be considered for partially or fully saturated soils:

1) immediate settlement; for fully-saturated soil due to shear deformation at constant volume, and for partially-saturated soil due to both shear deformation and volume reduction;

2) settlement caused by consolidation;

3) settlement caused by creep.

Special consideration should be given to soils such as organic soils and sensitive clays, in which settlement may be prolonged almost indefinitely due to creep. For estimating settlement in soils, the depth to be considered will depend on the size and shape of the foundation, the variation in soil stiffness with depth and the spacing of foundation elements. For individual pad footings this depth may be roughly estimated as 2 times the foundation width and may be up to 4 times the foundation width for strip footings. The depth may be reduced for lightly-loaded, wider foundation such as rafts. This approach is not valid for very soft soils. Any possible settlement caused by self-weight compaction of the soil, flooding and vibration in fill and collapsible soils shall be assessed.

The permissible values of total and differential settlement for a given type of structure may be taken as given in Table 4.5.1.2.1.

4.5.1.3 Modulus of Sub-grade Reaction, k_s.

It is defined as the pressure applied by the footing divided by the resulting settlement.

$$k_s = \frac{q}{\delta}$$

Where test data are not available, the modulus of subgrade reaction k_s shall be reasonably estimated by following formula.

$$k_s = 12 \text{ (FS) } q_a \text{ (SI)}$$

Values of k_s may also be estimated using Table 4.5.1.3.

Table 4.5.1.3Range of Values of Modulus of Subgrade Reaction, *ks*

Soil	K_s, pcf	K_s, KN/m^3
Loose sand	30-100	4800-16000
Medium dense sand	60-500	9600-80000
Dense sand	400-800	64000-128000
Clayey medium dense sand	200-500	12000-80000
Silty medium dense sand	150-100	24000-48000
Clayey soil:		
qa≤ 200 kPa (4 ksf)	75-150	12000-24000
200≤qa≤400 kPa	150-300	24000-48000
qa≥800 kPa	>300	>48000

Note: Use values as guide and for comparison when using appropriate equation

4.5.1.4 Liquefaction

Liquefaction is the sudden and large decrease of shear strength of a submerged cohesionless soil caused by contraction of the soil structure, produced by shock or earthquake-induced shear strains, associated with a sudden but temporary increase of pore water pressures. Liquefaction occurs when the increase in pore water pressures causes the effective stress to become equal to zero and the soil behaves as liquid. Liquefaction potential should be evaluated if site parameters meet the following criteria.

1. Soil having less than 15% of the particles, based on dry weight, that are finer than 0.005 mm (% finer than 0.005 mm < 15%)
2. Soil having a liquid limit (LL) less than 35. (LL < 35)
3. Soil having water content *w* greater than 0.9 of the liquid limit. (*w*> 0.9 LL)
4. Soil below the groundwater table
5. Site having potential of a peak ground acceleration a_{max} greater than 0.10g or local magnitude 5 or larger

The Factor of Safety (FS) against liquefaction shall be defined as

FS = CRR / CSR

where

CRR = Cyclic Resistance Ratio of the in situ soil

CSR = Cyclic Stress Ratio of the in situ soil

$$\text{CSR} = 0.65 r_d \left(\frac{\sigma_{vo}}{\sigma'_{vo}}\right)\left(\frac{a_{max}}{g}\right)$$

where

a_{max} = peak ground acceleration of the site

g = acceleration of gravity (32.2 ft/s2 or 9.81 m/s2)

σ_{vo} = total vertical stress at a particular depth where the liquefaction analysis is being performed.

σ'_{vo} = vertical effective stress at a particular depth where the liquefaction analysis is being performed.

r_d = depth reduction factor or stress reduction coefficient

$r_d = 1 - 0.00366 \, z$ (z in feet)

$r_d = 1 - 0.012 \, z$ (z in meter)

CRR shall be determined by Figure 4.5.1.4 which has been developed for an earthquake magnitude of 7.5 and for other different magnitudes, the CRR values shall be multiplied by the magnitude scaling factor indicated in Table 4.5.1.4.

Table 4.5.1.2.1 Permissible Differential Settlement and Tilt

Sl No. (1)	Type of Structure (2)	Isolated Foundations						Raft Foundations					
		Sand and Hard Clay			Plastic Clay			Sand and Hard Clay			Plastic Clay		
		Maximum settlement mm	Differential settlement mm	Angular distortion mm	Maximum settlement mm	Differential settlement mm	Angular distortion mm	Maximum settlement mm	Differential settlement mm	Angular distortion mm	Maximum settlement mm	Differential settlement mm	Angular distortion mm
		(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)
i)	For steel structure	50	.003 3L	1/300	50	.003 3L	1/300	75	.003 3L	1/300	100	.003 3L	1/300
ii)	For reinforced concrete structures	50	.001 5L	1/666	75	.001 5L	1/666	75	.002 1L	1/500	100	.002 0L	1/500
iii)	For multistoreyed buildings												
	a) RC or steel framed buildings with panel walls	60	.002L	1/500	75	.002L	1/500	75	.002 5L	1/400	125	.003 3L	1/300
	b) For load bearing walls												
	1) $L/H = 2$*	60	.000 2L	1/5 000	60	.000 2L	1/5000	Not likely to be encountered					
	2) $L/H = 7$*	60	.000 4L	1/2 500	60	.000 4L	1/2500						
iv)	For water towers and silos	50	.001 5L	1/666	75	.001 5L	1/666	100	.002 5L	1/400	125	.002 5L	1/400

NOTE — The values given in the table may be taken only as a guide and the permissible total settlement/different settlement and tilt (angular distortion) in each case should be decided as per requirements of the designer.

L denotes the length of deflected part of wall/raft or centre-to-centre distance between columns.

H denotes the height of wall from foundation footing.

* For intermediate ratios of L/H, the values can be interpolated.

Table 4.5.1.4 Magnitude Scaling Factor

Anticipated earthquake magnitude	Magnitude Scaling Factor (MSF)
8 ½	0.89
7 ½	1.00
6 ¾	1.13
6	1.32
5 ¼	1.50

Note: To determine the Cyclic Resistance Ratio of the in situ soil, multiply the magnitude scaling factor indicated above by the Cyclic Resistance Ratio determined from Fig. 4.5.1.4.
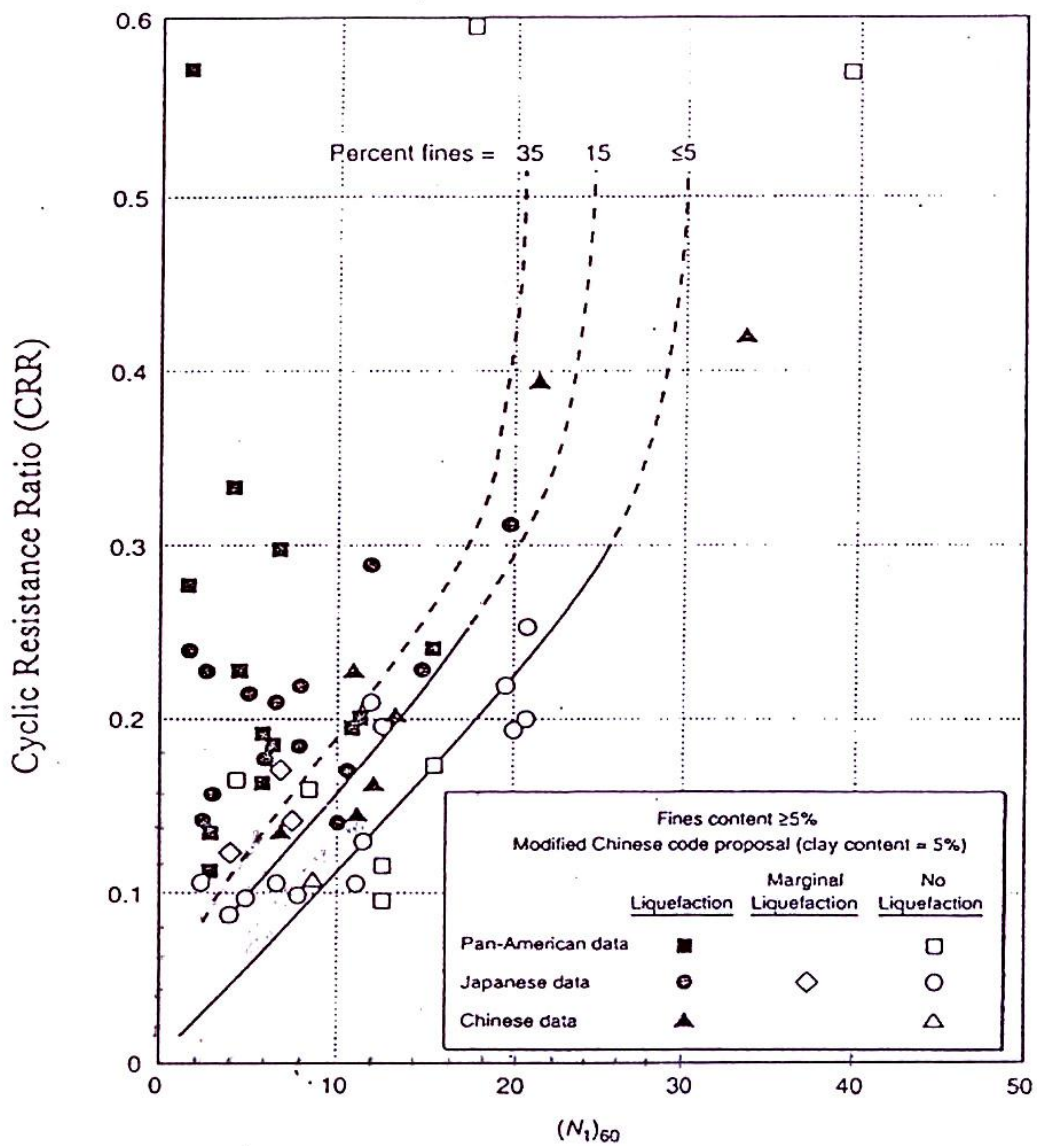
Figure 4.5.1.4 Cyclic Resistance Ratio of the in Situ Soil

4.5.1.5 General Construction Requirements

4.5.1.5.1 Concrete strength

Concrete in footings shall have a specified compressive strength (f'c) of not less than 2,500 pounds per square inch (psi) (17241.38 Kpa) at 28 days.

4.5.1.5.2 Footing seismic ties

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, individual spread footings founded on soil defined in Section 1613.5.2 as Site Class E or F shall be interconnected by ties. Ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the product of the larger footing load times the seismic coefficient, SDS, divided by 10 unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade.

4.5.1.5.3 Plain concrete footings

The edge thickness of plain concrete footings supporting walls of other than light-frame construction shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) where placed on soil.

> **Exception**: For plain concrete footings supporting Group R-3 occupancies, the edge thickness is permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend beyond a distance greater than the thickness of the footing on either side of the supported wall.

4.5.1.5.4 Placement of concrete

Concrete footings shall not be placed through water unless a tremie or other method approved by the building official is used. Where placed under or in the presence of water, the concrete shall be deposited by approved means to ensure minimum segregation of the mix and negligible turbulence of the water.

4.5.1.5.5 Protection of concrete

Concrete footings shall be protected from freezing during depositing and for a period of not less than five days thereafter. Water shall not be allowed to flow through the deposited concrete.

4.5.1.5.6 Forming of concrete

Concrete footings are permitted to be cast against the earth where, in the opinion of the building official, soil conditions do not require forming. Where forming is required, it shall be in accordance with Chapter 6 of ACI 318.

4.5.1.6 Damp Proofing and Waterproofing

4.5.1.6.1 General

Walls or portions that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be damp proofed and water proofed in accordance with this section. Groups other than residential or institutional, omission of damp proofed and water proofed for those spaces are not detrimental effect to the building or occupancy.

4.5.1.6.1.1 Story above grade plane

Where a basement is considered a story above graded plane and the basement floor and wall is partially below the finished ground level for 25 percent or more of the perimeter, the floor and walls shall be damp proofed and a foundation drain shall be installed. The foundation drain shall be installed around the portion of the perimeter where the basement floor is below ground level.

4.5.1.6.1.2 Under floor space

Unless an approved drainage system is provided ,the ground level of the under-floor space shall be as high as the outside finished ground level where the ground water table rises to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ground level at the outside building perimeter, or that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site.

4.5.1.6.1.2.1 Flood hazard areas

For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas, the finished ground level of an under-floor space such as crawl space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level.

4.5.1.6.1.3 Ground-water control

The floor and walls shall be damp proofed, where the ground water table is lowered and maintained at an elevation not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the bottom of the lowest floor. The design of the system to lower the ground-water table shall be based on accepted principles of engineering.

4.5.1.6.2 Damp proofing

Floors and walls shall be damp proofed where the ground-water investigation indicates that a hydrostatic pressure will not occur.

4.5.1.6.2.1 Floors

Damp proofing materials for floors shall be installed between the floor and the base course, except where a separate floor is provided above a concrete slab. Damp proofing materials shall be used locally available materials or other approved methods or materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

4.5.1.6.2.2 Walls

Damp proofing materials for walls shall be installed on the exterior surface of the wall, and shall extend from the top of the footing to above ground level. Damp proofing materials for walls shall be used locally available materials or other approved materials.

4.5.1.6.2.2.1 Surface preparation of walls

All the holes and recesses on the concrete walls shall be sealed by bituminous material or other approved methods or materials prior to the application of damp proofing materials. Unit masonry walls shall be parged on the exterior surface below ground level with not less than 0.375 inches (10 mm) of Portland cement. The parging shall be coved at the footing.

> **Exception:** Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is approved for direct application to the masonry.

4.5.1.6.3 Water proofing

Floors and walls shall be water proofed where the ground-water investigation indicates that a hydrostatic pressure condition exists, and design does not include a ground-water control system.

4.5.1.6.3.1 Floors

Concrete floors are required to be water proofed and designed and constructed to resist the hydrostatic pressures to which the floors will be subjected. Waterproofing shall be accomplished by placing a membrane of locally available materials or other approved methods or materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instruction.

4.5.1.6.3.2 Walls

Concrete walls and masonry walls are required to be water proofed and shall be designed and constructed to withstand hydrostatic pressures and other lateral loads to which the wall be subjected. Water proofing shall be applied from the bottom of the wall to not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the maximum elevation of the ground-water table. The remainder of the wall shall be damp proofed. Water proofing materials for walls shall be used locally available materials or other approved materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instruction.

4.5.1.6.3.2.1 Surface preparation of walls

The walls shall be prepared prior to application of waterproofing materials on concrete or masonry walls.

4.5.1.6.3.3 Joints and penetrations

Joints in walls and floors, joints between the wall and floor and penetrations of the wall and floor shall be made water-tight utilizing approved methods and materials.

4.5.1.6.4 Subsoil drainage system

Where a hydrostatic pressure condition does not exist, damp proofing shall be provided and a base shall be installed under the floor and a drain installed around the foundation perimeter.

4.5.2 Shallow Foundation

4.5.2.1 Design Information and Consideration

4.5.2.1.1 Design Information

For the satisfactory design of foundations, the following information is necessary:

a) The type and condition of the soil or rock to which the foundation transfers the loads;

b) The general layout of the columns and load bearing walls showing the estimated loads, including moments and torques due to various loads (dead load, imposed load, wind load, seismic load) coming on the foundation units;

c) The allowable bearing pressure of the soils;

d) The changes in ground water level, drainage and flooding conditions and also the chemical conditions of the subsoil water, particularly with respect to its sulphate content;

e) The behaviour of the buildings, topography and environment/ surroundings adjacent to the site, the type and depths of foundations and the bearing pressure assumed; and Seismic zone of the region.

f) Seismic zone of the region.

4.5.2.1.2 Design Consideration

4.5.2.1.2.1 Design

Footings shall be designed that the allowable bearing capacity of the soil is not exceeded, and that differential settlement is minimized.

4.5.2.1.2.2 Design loads

Footings shall be designed for the most unfavorable effects due to the combinations of loads specified in Structural Design Section. The dead load is permitted to include the weight of foundations, footings and overlying fill. Reduced live loads, as specified in Structural Design Section, are permitted to be used in the design of footings. Where machinery operations or other vibrations are transmitted through the foundation, consideration shall be given in the footing design to prevent detrimental disturbances of the soil.

4.5.2.2 Depth of Foundations

The minimum depth of foundations below the undisturbed ground surface shall be 24 inches (609mm). On rock or such other weather resisting natural ground, removal of the top soil may be all that is required. In such cases, the surface shall be cleaned and, if necessary, stepped or otherwise prepared so as to provide a suitable bearing and thus prevent slipping or other unwanted movements. Where shallow sub-soils are of a shifting or moving character, foundation shall be carried to a sufficient depth to ensure stability.

4.5.2.2.1 Foundation at Different Levels.

Where footings are adjacent to sloping ground or where the bottoms of the footings of a structure are at different levels or at levels different from those of the footings of adjoining structures, the depth of the footings shall be such that the difference in footing elevations shall be subject to the following limitations:

a) When the ground surface slopes downward adjacent to a footing, the sloping surface shall not intersect a frustum of bearing material under the footing having sides which make an angle of 30° with the horizontal for soil and horizontal distance from the lower edge of the footing to the sloping surface shall be at least 24 inches (609 mm) for rock and 36 inches (914 mm) for soil (see Figure 4.5.2.2.1 (1)).

b) In the case of footings in granular soil, a line drawn between the lower adjacent edges of adjacent footings shall not have a steeper slope than 30° (see Figure 4.5.2.2.1 (2)).

c) In case of footing of clayey soils a line drawn between the lower adjacent edge of the upper footing and the upper adjacent edge of lower footing shall not have a steeper slope than 30° (see Figure 4.5.2.2.1 (3)).
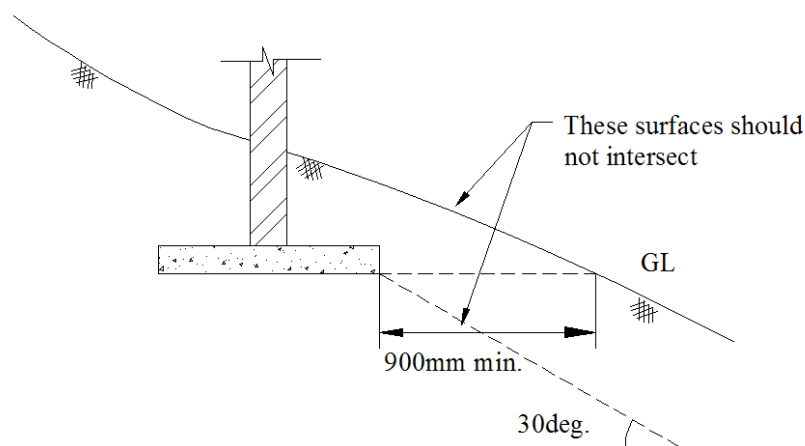
Figure 4.5.2.2.1 (1) Footing in Sloping Ground
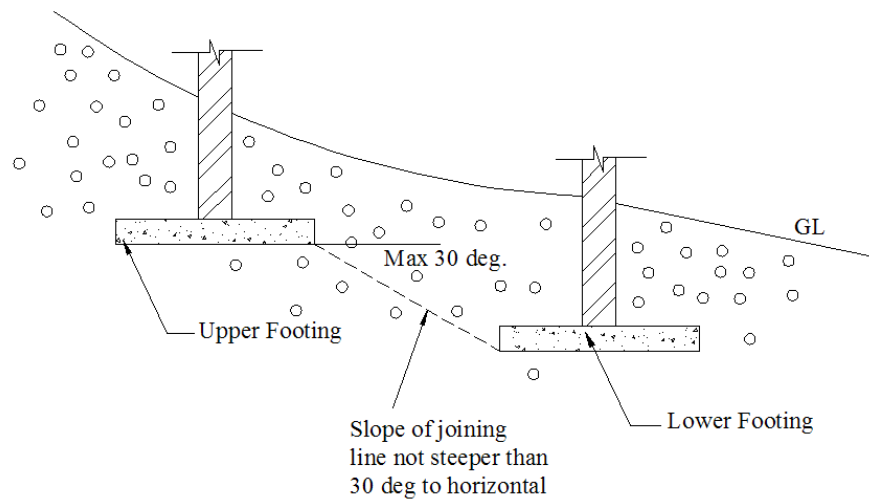
Figure 4.5.2.2.1 (2) Footing in Granular Soil
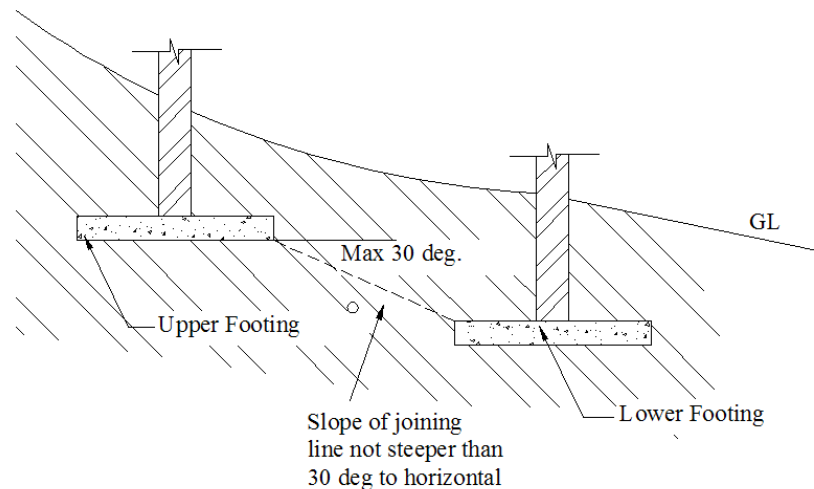
Figure 4.5.2.2.1 (3) Footing in Clayey Soil

4.5.2.3 Foundation on or adjacent to slopes

The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall conform to Sections 4.5.2.3.1 through 4.5.2.3.5.

4.5.2.3.1 Building clearance from ascending slopes

In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided for in Section 4.5.2.3.5 and Figure 4.5.2.3.1 and 4.5.2.3.2, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.

4.5.2.3.2 Footing setback from descending slope surface

Footings on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in firm material with an embedment and set back from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the footing without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 4.5.2.3.5 and Figure 4.5.2.3.1 and 4.5.2.3.3, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

4.5.2.3.3 Pools

The setback between pools regulated by this code and slopes shall be equal to one-half the building footing setback distance required by this section. That portion of the pool wall within a horizontal distance of 7 feet (2134 mm) from the top of the slope shall be capable of supporting the water in the pool without soil support.

4.5.2.3.4 Foundation elevation

On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an approved drainage device a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the building official, provided it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

4.5.2.3.5 Alternate setback and clearance

Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the building official. The building official is permitted to require an investigation and recommendation of a registered design professional to demonstrate that the intent of this section has been satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slop gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.
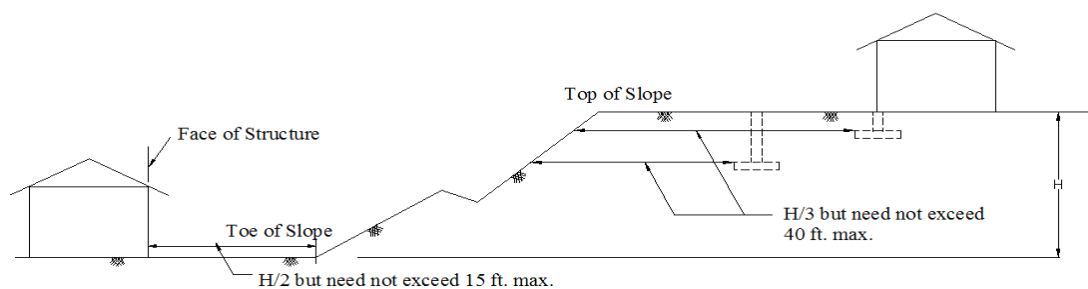
Figure 4.5.2.3.1 Foundation Clearances from Slopes
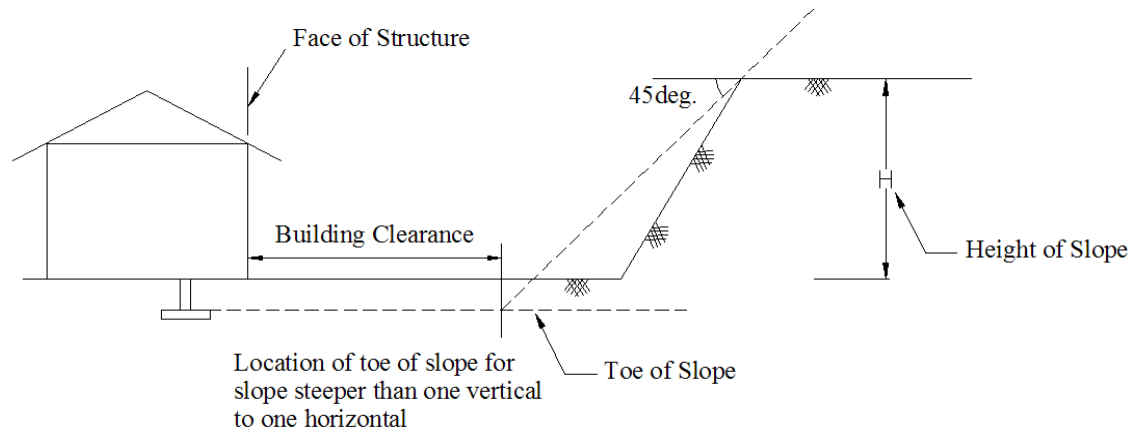
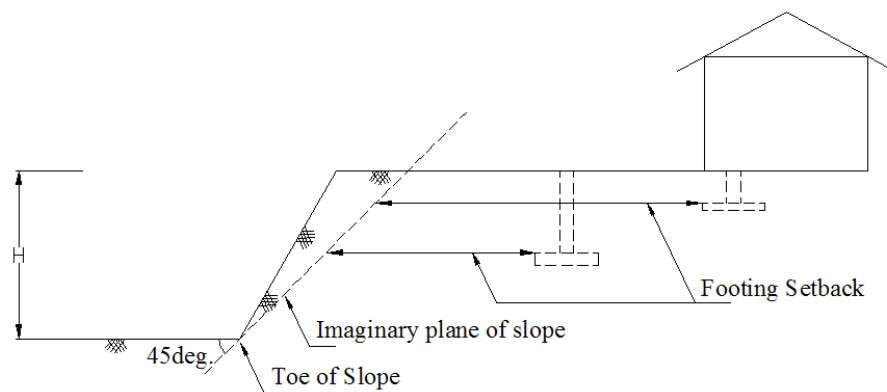Figure 4.5.2.3.2 Foundation Clearances from Ascending Slopes

Figure 4.5.2.3.3 Foundation Setback from Descending Slopes

4.5.2.4 Spread Foundations

4.5.2.4.1 Pad Foundation (Isolated Footing)

For buildings such as low rise dwellings and lightly framed structures, pad foundations may be of unreinforced concrete provided that the angle of spread of load from the column or base plate to the outer edge of the ground bearing does not exceed one vertical to ½ horizontal for masonry or one vertical to one horizontal for cement concrete and that the stresses in the concrete due to bending and shear do not exceed permissible stresses. Where brick or masonry foundations have been used, the same rules shall apply.

For buildings other than low rise and lightly framed structures, it is customary to use reinforced concrete foundations. The thickness of the foundation should under no circumstances be less than 6 inches (152 mm) and will generally be greater than this to maintain cover to reinforcement where provided. Where concrete foundations are used they should be designed in accordance with the code of practice appropriate to the loading assumptions.

4.5.2.4.2 Strip foundations

Similar considerations to those for pad foundations apply to strip foundations. On sloping sites strip foundations should be on a horizontal bearing, stepped where necessary to maintain adequate depth.

4.5.2.4.2.1 Continuous wall foundations

In continuous wall foundations it is recommended that reinforcement be provided wherever an abrupt change in magnitude of load or variation in ground support occurs. Continuous wall foundations will normally be constructed in mass concrete provided that the angle of spread of load from the edge of the wall base to the outer edge of the ground bearing does not exceed one (vertical) in one (horizontal). Foundations on sloping ground, and where re-grading is likely to take place, may require to be designed as retaining walls to accommodate steps between adjacent ground floor slabs or finished ground levels. At all changes of level unreinforced foundations should be lapped at the steps for a distance at least equal to the thickness of the foundation or a minimum of 12inches (300 mm). Where the height of the step exceeds the thickness of the foundation, special precautions should be taken. The thickness of reinforced strip foundations should be not less than 6 inches (152 mm), and care should be taken with the excavation levels to ensure that this minimum thickness is maintained.

For the longitudinal spread of loads, sufficient reinforcement should be provided to withstand the tensions induced. It will sometimes be desirable to make strip foundations of inverted tee beam sections, in order to provide adequate stiffness in the longitudinal direction. At corners and junctions the longitudinal reinforcement of each wall foundation should be lapped.

4.5.2.5 Raft foundations

Suitably designed raft foundations may be used in the following circumstances.

a) For lightly loaded structures on soft natural ground where it is necessary to spread the load, or where there is variable support due to natural variations, made ground or weaker zones. In this case the function of the raft is to act as a bridge across the weaker zones. Rafts may form part of compensated foundations.

b) Where differential settlements are likely to be significant. The raft will require special design, involving an assessment of the disposition and distribution of loads, contact pressures and stiffness of the soil and raft.

c) Design of the raft and structure to accommodate subsidence requires consideration by suitably qualified persons; the effects of mining may often involve provision of a flexible structure.

d) When buildings such as low rise dwellings and lightly framed structures have to be erected on soils susceptible to excessive shrinking and swelling, consideration should then be given to raft foundations placed on fully compacted selected fill material used as replacement for the surface layers.

e) For heavier structures where the ground conditions are such that there are unlikely to be significant differential settlements or heave, individual loads may be accommodated by isolated foundations. If these foundations occupy a large part of the available area they may, subject to design considerations, be joined to form a raft.

4.5.2.6 Short Piling

Where it is necessary to transmit foundation loads from buildings such as low rise dwellings or lightly framed structures through soft or made ground, or unstable formations or shrinking/swelling clays more than about 6.5 ft (2000 mm) deep, the use of short piles should be considered as an alternative to shallow foundations, particularly where a high groundwater table is encountered. The type, method of construction, size and load capacity should be carefully

considered in relation to the associated requirements of pile caps and ground beams necessary to transfer loads from the superstructure to the piles.

4.5.3 Deep Foundation

4.5.3.1 General requirements

4.5.3.1.1 General

Pier and pile foundations shall be designed and installed on the basis of a foundation investigation as defined in section 4.2, unless sufficient data upon which to base the design and installation is available.

The investigation and report provisions of Section 4.2 shall be expanded to include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Recommended pier or pile types and installed capacities.

2. Recommended center-to-center spacing of piers or piles.

3. Driving criteria.

4. Installation procedures.

5. Field inspection and reporting procedures (to include procedures for verification of the installed bearing capacity where required).

6. Pier or pile load test requirements.

7. Durability of pier or pile materials.

8. Designation of bearing stratum or strata.

9. Reductions for group action, where necessary.

4.5.3.1.2 Special types of piles

The use of types of piles not specifically mentioned herein is permitted, subject to the approval of the building official, upon the submission of acceptable test data, calculations and other information relating to the structural properties and load capacity of such piles. The allowable stresses shall not in any case exceed the limitations specified herein.

4.5.3.1.3 Pile caps

Pile caps shall be of reinforced concrete, and shall include all elements to which piles are connected, including grade beams and mats. The soil immediately below the pile cap shall not be considered as carrying any vertical load. The tops of piles shall be embedded not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into pile caps and the caps shall extend at least 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the edges of piles. The tops of piles shall be cut back to sound material before capping.

4.5.3.1.4 Stability

Piers or piles shall be braced to provide lateral stability in all directions. Three or more piles connected by a rigid cap shall be considered braced, provided that the piles are located in radial directions from the centroid of the group not less than 60 degrees apart. A two-pile group in a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced along the axis connecting the two piles. Methods used to brace piers or piles shall be subject to the approval of the building official. Piles supporting walls shall be driven alternately in lines spaced at least 1 foot (305 mm) apart and located symmetrically under the center of gravity of the wall load carried, unless effective measures are

taken to provide for eccentricity and lateral forces, or the wall piles are adequately braced to provide for lateral stability. A single row of piles without lateral bracing is permitted for one- and two-family dwellings and lightweight construction not exceeding two stories or 35 feet (10668 mm) in height, provided the centers of the piles are located within the width of the foundation wall.

4.5.3.1.5 Structural integrity

Piers or piles shall be installed in such a manner and sequence as to prevent distortion or damage that may adversely affect the structural integrity of piles being installed or already in place.

4.5.3.1.6 Splices

Splices shall be constructed so as to provide and maintain true alignment and position of the component parts of the pier or pile during installation and subsequent thereto and shall be of adequate strength to transmit the vertical and lateral loads and moments occurring at the location of the splice during driving and under service loading. Splices shall develop not less than 50 percent of the least capacity of the pier or pile in bending. In addition, splices occurring in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the embedded portion of the pier or pile shall be capable of resisting at allowable working stresses the moment and shear that would result from an assumed eccentricity of the pier or pile load of 3 inches (76 mm), or the pier or pile shall be braced in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.4 to other piers or piles that do not have splices in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of embedment.

4.5.3.1.7 Allowable pier or pile loads.

4.5.3.1.7.1 Determination of allowable loads

The allowable axial and lateral loads on piers or piles shall be determined by an approved formula, load tests or method of analysis.

4.5.3.1.7.2 Driving criteria

Allowable compressive load on any pile shall be determined by the application of an approved driving formula. Allowable loads shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.7.3. The formula or wave equation load shall be determined for gravity-drop or power-actuated hammers and the hammer energy used shall be the maximum consistent with the size, strength and weight of the driven piles. The introduction of fresh hammer cushion or pile cushion material just prior to final penetration is not permitted.

4.5.3.1.7.3 Load tests

Where design compressive loads per pier or pile are greater than those permitted or where the design load for any pier or pile foundation is in doubt, control test piers or piles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D 1143 or ASTM D 4945. At least one pier or pile shall be test loaded in each area of uniform subsoil conditions. Where required by the building official, additional piers or piles shall be load tested where necessary to establish the safe design capacity. The resulting allowable loads shall not be more than one-half of the ultimate axial load capacity of the test pier or pile as assessed by one of the published methods with consideration for the test type, duration and subsoil. The ultimate axial load capacity shall be determined by a registered design professional with consideration given to tolerable total and differential settlements at design load in accordance with settlement analysis. In subsequent installation of the balance of foundation piles, all piles shall be deemed to have a supporting capacity equal to the control pile where such piles are of the same type, size and relative length as the test pile; are installed using the same or comparable methods and equipment as the test pile; are installed in similar subsoil conditions as the test pile; and, for driven piles, where the rate of penetration (e.g.,net displacement per blow) of

such piles is equal to or less than that of the test pile driven with the same hammer through a comparable driving distance.

4.5.3.1.7.3.1 Load test evaluation

It shall be permitted to evaluate pile load tests with any of the following methods:

1. Davisson Offset Limit.

2. Brinch-Hansen 90% Criterion.

3. Butler-Hoy Criterion.

4. Other methods approved by the building official.

4.5.3.1.7.3.2 Non-destructive testing

For quality assurance of concrete piles, non-destructive integrity test may be carried out prior to construction of beam or caps.

4.5.3.1.7.4 Allowable frictional resistance

The assumed frictional resistance developed by any pier or uncased cast-in-place pile shall not exceed one-sixth of the bearing value of the soil material as set forth in Table 4.1, up to a maximum of 500 psf (24 kPa), unless a greater value is allowed by the building official after a soil investigation, is submitted or a greater value is substantiated by a load test.

4.5.3.1.7.5 Uplift capacity

Where required by the design, the uplift capacity of a single pier or pile shall be determined by an approved method of analysis based on a minimum factor of safety of three or by load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D 3689. The maximum allowable uplift load shall not exceed the ultimate load capacity as determined in Section 4.5.3.1.7.3 divided by a factor of safety of two. For pile groups subjected to uplift, the allowable working uplift load for the group shall be the lesser of:

1. The proposed individual pile uplift working load times the number of piles in the group.

2. Two-thirds of the effective weight of the pile group and the soil contained within a block defined by the perimeter of the group and the length of the pile.

4.5.3.1.7.6 Load-bearing capacity

Piers, individual piles and groups of piles shall develop ultimate load capacities of at least twice the design working loads in the designated load-bearing layers. Analysis shall show that no soil layer underlying the designated load-bearing layers causes the load-bearing capacity safety factor to be less than two.

4.5.3.1.7.7 Bent piers or piles

The load-bearing capacity of piers or piles discovered to have a sharp or sweeping bend shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by load testing a representative pier or pile.

4.5.3.1.7.8 Overloads on piers or piles

The maximum compressive load on any pier or pile due to mis-location shall not exceed 110 percent of the allowable design load.

4.5.3.1.8 Lateral support

4.5.3.1.8.1 General

Any soil other than fluid soil shall be deemed to afford sufficient lateral support to the pier or pile to prevent buckling and to permit the design of the pier or pile in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the applicable provisions of this code.

4.5.3.1.8.2 Unbraced piles

Piles standing unbraced in air, water or in fluid soils shall be designed as columns in accordance with the provisions of this code. Such piles driven into firm ground can be considered fixed and laterally supported at 5 feet (1524 mm) below the ground surface and in soft material at 10 feet (3048 mm) below the ground surface unless otherwise prescribed by the building official after a foundation investigation by an approved agency.

4.5.3.1.8.3 Allowable lateral load

Where required by the design, the lateral load capacity of a pier, a single pile or a pile group shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by lateral load tests to at least twice the proposed design working load. The resulting allowable load shall not be more than one-half of that test load that produces a gross lateral movement of 1 inch (25.4 mm) at the ground surface.

4.5.3.1.9 Use of higher allowable pier or pile stresses

Allowable stresses greater than those specified for piers or for each pile type are permitted where supporting data justifying such higher stresses is filed with the building official. Such substantiating data shall include:

1. A soils investigation in accordance with Section 4.2.

2. Pier or pile load tests in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.7.3, regardless of the load supported by the pier or pile.

The design and installation of the pier or pile foundation shall be under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and pier or pile foundations who shall certify to the building official that the piers or piles as installed satisfy the design criteria.

4.5.3.1.10 Piles in subsiding areas

Where piles are installed through subsiding fills or other subsiding strata and derive support from underlying firmer materials, consideration shall be given to the downward frictional forces that may be imposed on the piles by the subsiding upper strata. Where the influence of subsiding fills is considered as imposing loads on the pile, the allowable stresses specified in this chapter are permitted to be increased where satisfactory substantiating data are submitted.

4.5.3.1.11 Negative Skin Friction or Down Drag Force

When a soil stratum, through which a pile shaft has penetrated into an underlying hard stratum, compresses as a result of either its being unconsolidated or its being under a newly placed fill or as a result of re-moulding during driving of the pile, a drag down force is generated along the pile shaft up to a point in depth where the surrounding soil does not move downwards relative to the pile shaft. Recognition of the existence of such a phenomenon shall be made and a suitable reduction shall be made to the allowable load, where appropriate.

4.5.3.1.12 Settlement analysis

The settlement of piers, individual piles or groups of piles shall be estimated based on approved methods of analysis. The predicted settlement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any stresses to exceed allowable values.

4.5.3.1.13 Pre-excavation

The use of jetting, augering or other methods of pre-excavation shall be subject to the approval of the building official. Where permitted, pre-excavation shall be carried out in the same manner as used for piers or piles subject to load tests and in such a manner that will not impair the carrying capacity of the piers or piles already in place or damage adjacent structures. Pile tips shall be driven below the pre-excavated depth until the required resistance or penetration is obtained.

4.5.3.1.14 Installation sequence

Piles shall be installed in such sequence as to avoid compaction the surrounding soil to the extent that other piles cannot be installed properly, and to prevent ground movements that are capable of damaging adjacent structures.

4.5.3.1.15 Use of vibratory drivers

Vibratory drivers shall only be used to install piles where the pile load capacity is verified by load tests in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.7.3. The installation of production piles shall be controlled according to power consumption, rate of penetration or other approved means that ensure pile capacities equal or exceed those of the test piles.

4.5.3.1.16 Pile drivability

Pile cross sections shall be of sufficient size and strength to withstand driving stresses without damage to the pile, and to provide sufficient stiffness to transmit the required driving forces.

4.5.3.1.17 Protection of pile materials

Where boring records or site conditions indicate possible deleterious action on pier or pile materials because of soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors, the pier or pile materials shall be adequately protected by materials, methods or processes approved by the building official. Protective materials shall be applied to the piles so as not to be rendered ineffective by driving. The effectiveness of such protective measures for the particular purpose shall have been thoroughly established by satisfactory service records or other evidence.

4.5.3.1.18 Use of existing piers or piles

Piers or piles left in place where a structure has been demolished shall not be used for the support of new construction unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the building official, which indicates that the piers or piles are sound and meet the requirements of this code. Such piers or piles shall be load tested or redriven to verify their capacities. The design load applied to such piers or piles shall be the lowest allowable load as determined by tests or re-driving data.

4.5.3.1.19 Heaved piles

Piles that have heaved during the driving of adjacent piles shall be redriven as necessary to develop the required capacity and penetration, or the capacity of the pile shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.7.3.

4.5.3.1.20 Identification

Pier or pile materials shall be identified for conformity to the specified grade with this identity maintained continuously from the point of manufacture to the point of installation or shall be

tested by an approved agency to determine conformity to the specified grade. The approved agency shall furnish an affidavit of compliance to the building official.

4.5.3.1.21 Pier or pile location plan

A plan showing the location and designation of piers or piles by an identification system shall be filed with the building official prior to installation of such piers or piles. Detailed records for piers or individual piles shall bear an identification corresponding to that shown on the plan.

4.5.3.1.22 Spacing of Piles

The centre to centre spacing of a pile is considered from two aspects as follows:

> a) Practical aspects of installing the piles; and
>
> b) The nature of the load transfer to the soil and possible reduction in bearing capacity of a group of piles thereby.

In the case of piles founded on a very hard stratum and deriving their capacity mainly from end bearing, the spacing will be governed by the competency of the end bearing strata. The minimum spacing in such cases shall be 2.5 times the diameter of the shaft. In case of piles resting on rock, a spacing of two times the diameter may be adopted. Piles deriving their bearing capacity mainly from friction shall be sufficiently apart to ensure that the zones of soil from which the piles derive their support do not overlap to such an extent that their bearing values are reduced. Generally, the spacing in such cases shall not be less than three times the diameter of the shaft. In the case of loose sand or filling, closer spacing than in dense sand may be possible, in driven piles since displacement during the piling may be absorbed by vertical and horizontal compaction of the strata. The minimum spacing in such strata may be two times the diameter of the shaft.

4.5.3.1.23 Special inspection

4.5.3.1.23.1 Pier foundations

Special inspections shall be performed during installation and testing of pier foundations as required by Table 4.5. The approved soils report, required by Section 4.2, and the documents prepared by the registered design professional in responsible charge shall be used to determine compliance.

4.5.3.1.23.2 Pile foundations

Special inspections shall be performed during installation and testing of pile foundations as required by Table 4.6. The approved soils report, required by Section 4.2, and the documents prepared by the registered design professional in responsible charge shall be used to determine compliance.

Table 4.5.3.1.23.2 (1) Required Verification and Inspection of Pier Foundations

VERIFICATION AND INSPECTION TASK	CONTINUOUS DURING TASK LISTED	PERIODICALLY DURING TASK LISTED
1.Verify pier materials, sizes and lengths comply with the requirements.	X	✓
2. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm pier diameters, bell diameters (if applicable), lengths, embedment into bedrock (if applicable) and adequate end capacity.	X	✓

3. For concrete piers, perform additional inspections as specified in special inspection required for concrete construction	✓	✓
4. For masonry piers, perform additional inspections as specified in special inspection required for masonry construction	✓	✓

Table 4.5.3.1.23.2 (2) Required Verification and Inspection of Pile Foundations

VERIFICATION AND INSPECTION TASK	**CONTINUOUS DURING TASK LISTED**	**PERIODICALLY DURING TASK LISTED**
1.Verify pier materials, sizes and lengths comply with the requirements.	X	✓
2. Determine capacities of test piles and conduct additional load tests, as required.	X	✓
3. Observe driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each pile.	√	✓
4. Verify placement locations and plumpness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any pile damage.	√	✓
5. For steel piles, perform additional inspections as specified in special inspection required for steel construction	✓	✓
6. For concrete piles and concrete-filled piles, perform additional inspections as specified in special inspection required for concrete construction	✓	✓
7. For specialty piles, perform additional inspections as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.	✓	✓
8. For augured uncased piles and caisson piles, perform inspections in accordance with pier foundations.	✓	✓

4.5.3.1.24 Seismic design of piers or piles

4.5.3.1.24.1 Seismic Design Category C

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C in accordance with Part 3 (Structural Design), the following shall apply. Individual pile caps, piers or piles shall be interconnected by ties. Ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension and compression, a force equal to the product of the larger pile cap or column load times the seismic coefficient, SDS, divided by 10 unless it can be demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade, reinforced concrete slabs on grade, confinement by competent rock, hard cohesive soils or very dense granular soils.

> **Exception:** Piers supporting foundation walls, isolated interior posts detailed so the pier is not subject to lateral loads, lightly loaded exterior decks and patios of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, are not subject to

interconnection if it can be shown the soils are of adequate stiffness, subject to the approval of the building official.

4.5.3.1.24.1.1 Connection to pile cap

Concrete piles and concrete-filled steel pipe piles shall be connected to the pile cap by embedding the pile reinforcement or field-placed dowels anchored in the concrete pile in the pile cap for a distance equal to the development length. For deformed bars, the development length is the full development length for compression or tension, in the case of uplift, without reduction in length for excess area. Alternative measures for laterally confining concrete and maintaining toughness and ductile-like behavior at the top of the pile will be permitted provided the design is such that any hinging occurs in the confined region. Ends of hoops, spirals and ties shall be terminated with seismic hooks, turned into the confined concrete core. The minimum transverse steel ratio for confinement shall not be less than one-half of that required for columns. For resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipe (round HSS sections), concrete-filled steel pipe or H-piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section.

> **Exception:** Anchorage of concrete-filled steel pipe piles is permitted to be accomplished using deformed bars developed into the concrete portion of the pile. Splices of pile segments shall develop the full strength of the pile, but the splice need not develop the nominal strength of the pile in tension, shear and bending when it has been designed to resist axial and shear forces and moments from the load combinations of Structural Design Section.

4.5.3.1.24.1.2 Design details

Pier or pile moments, shears and lateral deflections used for design shall be established considering the nonlinear interaction of the shaft and soil, as recommended by a registered design professional. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the pile-to-pile diameter or width is less than or equal to six, the pile may be assumed to be rigid. Pile group effects from soil on lateral pile nominal strength shall be included where pile center-to-center spacing in the direction of lateral force is less than eight pile diameters. Pile group effects on vertical nominal strength shall be included where pile center- to-center spacing is less than three pile diameters. The pile uplift soil nominal strength shall be taken as the pile uplift strength as limited by the frictional force developed between the soil and the pile. Where a minimum length for reinforcement or the extent of closely spaced confinement reinforcement is specified at the top of the pier or pile, provisions shall be made so that those specified lengths or extents are maintained after pier or pile cutoff.

4.5.3.1.24.2 Seismic Design Category D, E or F

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F in accordance with Structural Design (Section 1613), the requirements for Seismic Design Category C given in Section 4.5.3.1.24.1 shall be met, in addition to the following. Provisions of ACI 318, Section 21.10.4, shall apply when not in conflict with the provisions of Sections 4.5.3. Concrete shall have a specified compressive strength of not less than 3,000 psi (20.68 MPa) at 28 days.

> **Exceptions:** 1. Group R or U occupancies of light-framed construction and two stories or less in height are permitted to use concrete with a specified compressive strength of not less than 2,500 psi (17.2MPa) at 28 days. 2. Detached one- and two-family dwellings of light-frame construction and two stories or less in height are not required to comply with the provisions of ACI 318, Section 21.10.4.3. Section 21.10.4.4(a) of ACI 318 need not apply to concrete piles.

4.5.3.1.24.2.1 Design details for piers, piles and grade beams

Piers or piles shall be designed and constructed to withstand maximum imposed curvatures from earthquake ground motions and structure response. Curvatures shall include free-field soil strains modified for soil-pile-structure interaction coupled with pier or pile deformations induced by lateral pier or pile resistance to structure seismic forces. Concrete piers or piles on Site Class E or F sites, as determined in Structural Design Section, shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 21.4.5.1, 21.4.4.2 and 21.4.5.3 of ACI 318 within seven pile diameters of the pile cap and the interfaces of soft to medium stiff clay or liquefiable strata. For precast prestressed concrete piles, detailing provisions as given in Section 4.5.3.2.2.3.2.1 and 4.5.3.2.2.3.2.2 shall apply. Grade beams shall be designed as beams in accordance with ACI 318, Chapter 21. When grade beams have the capacity to resist the forces from the load combinations in Structural Design Section, they need not conform to ACI 318, Chapter 21.

4.5.3.1.24.2.2 Connection to pile cap

For piles required to resist uplift forces or provide rotational restraint, design of anchorage of piles into the pile cap shall be provided considering the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pile cap. Anchorage shall develop a minimum of 25 percent of the strength of the pile in tension. Anchorage into the pile cap shall be capable of developing the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the lesser of the nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete pile, or the nominal tensile strength of a steel pile, or the pile uplift soil nominal strength factored by 1.3 or the axial tension force resulting from the load combinations of Structural Design Section 4.1.5.

2. In the case of rotational restraint, the lesser of the axial and shear forces, and moments resulting from the load combinations of Structural Design Section 4.1.5 or development of the full axial, bending and shear nominal strength of the pile.

4.5.3.1.24.2.3 Flexural strength

Where the vertical lateral-force-resisting elements are columns, the grade beam or pile cap flexural strengths shall exceed the column flexural strength. The connection between batter piles and grade beams or pile caps shall be designed to resist the nominal strength of the pile acting as a short column. Batter piles and their connection shall be capable of resisting forces and moments from the load combinations of Structural Design Section 4.1.5

4.5.3.2 Driven Pile Foundation

4.5.3.2.1 Timber piles

Timber piles shall be designed with the prevailing code. Only structural timber shall be used for piles.

4.5.3.2.1.1 Materials

Round timber piles shall conform to ASTM D 25.

4.5.3.2.1.2 Preservative treatment

Timber piles used to support permanent structures shall be treated unless it is established that the tops of the untreated timber piles will be below the lowest ground-water level assumed to exist during the life of the structure. Preservative-treated timber piles shall be subject to a quality control program administered by an approved agency. Pile cutoffs shall be treated.

4.5.3.2.1.3 Defective piles

Any substantial sudden increase in rate of penetration of a timber pile shall be investigated for possible damage. If the sudden increase in rate of penetration cannot be correlated to soil strata, the pile shall be removed for inspection or rejected.

4.5.3.2.1.4 Allowable stresses

The allowable stresses of timber pile shall not exceed values specified in Table 4.7.

Table 4.5.3.2.1.4 Allowable Working Stresses for Sawn Timbers (Psi)

Symbol	Description	Pyinkado	Teak	Padauk	In/Kanyin
F_b	Bending at fiber stress	2500	2000	2500	1500
F_v	Longitudinal shear	240	120	175	130
F_c	Axial compression	1900	1200	1700	760
F_{cb}	Axial compression when combine with bending	1900	1200	1700	760
$F_{c(per)}$	Compression perpendicular to grain	970	450	1050	400
$F_{t(par)}$	Tension parallel to grain where reduced by notches, daps, connectors or abrupt changes in section	1600	960	1350	610
$F_{t(par)}$	Tension parallel to grain where no stress concentration exists	1900	1200	1700	760
$F_{t(per)}$	Tension perpendicular to grain	60	40	60	60
E	Modulus of Elasticity	2.0+E6	1.44+E6	1.65+E6	1.3+E6
Note: 1psi = 6.8966Kpa					

4.5.3.2.2 Precast concrete piles

4.5.3.2.2.1 The materials, reinforcement and installation of precast concrete piles

It shall conform to Sections 4.5.3.2.2.1 through 4.5.3.2.2.4.

4.5.3.2.2.1.1 Design and manufacture

Piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by handling, driving and service loads.

4.5.3.2.2.1.2 Minimum dimension

The minimum lateral dimension shall be 6 inches (152 mm).

4.5.3.2.2.1.3 Reinforcement

Longitudinal steel shall be arranged in a symmetrical pattern and be laterally tied with steel ties or wire spiral spaced not more than 4 inches (102 mm) apart, center to center, for a distance of 2 feet (610 mm) from the ends of the pile; and not more than 6 inches (152 mm) elsewhere except that at the ends of each pile, the first five ties or spirals shall be spaced 1 inch (25.4 mm) center to center. The gage of ties and spirals shall be as follows:

For piles having a diameter of 16 inches (406 mm) or less, wire shall not be smaller 6 mm.

For piles having a diameter of more than 16 inches (406 mm) and less than 20 inches (508 mm), wire shall not be smaller than 8 mm.

For piles having a diameter of 20 inches (508 mm) and larger, wire shall not be smaller than 9 mm.

4.5.3.2.2.1.4 Installation

Piles shall be handled and driven so as not to cause injury or overstressing, which affects durability or strength.

4.5.3.2.2.2 Precast non prestressed piles

Precast non prestressed concrete piles shall conform to Sections 4.5.3.2.2.2.1 through 4.5.3.2.2.2.5.

4.5.3.2.2.2.1 Materials

Concrete shall have a 28-day specified compressive strength (*f'c*) of not less than 3,000 psi (20.68 MPa).

4.5.3.2.2.2.2 Minimum reinforcement

The minimum amount of longitudinal reinforcement shall be 0.8 percent of the concrete section and shall consist of at least four bars.

4.5.3.2.2.2.2.1 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C in accordance with Section 1613, the following shall apply. Longitudinal reinforcement with a minimum steel ratio of 0.01shall be provided throughout the length of precast concrete piles. Within three pile diameters of the bottom of the pile cap, the longitudinal reinforcement shall be confined with closed ties or spirals of a minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) diameter. Ties or spirals shall be provided at a maximum spacing of eight times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar, not to exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Throughout the remainder of the pile, the closed ties or spirals shall have a maximum spacing of 16 times the smallest longitudinal bar diameter not to exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

4.5.3.2.2.2.2.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category D, E or F

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the requirements for Seismic Design Category C in Section 4.5.3.2.3.2.1 shall apply except as modified by this section. Transverse confinement reinforcement consisting of closed ties or equivalent spirals shall be provided in accordance with Sections 21.4.4.1, 21.4.4.2 and liquefiable sites and where spirals are used as the 21.4.4.3 of ACI 318 within three pile diameters of the bottom of the pile cap. For other than Site Class E or F, or transverse reinforcement, a volumetric ratio of spiral reinforcement of not less than one-half that required by Section 21.4.4.1(a) of ACI 318 shall be permitted.

4.5.3.2.2.2.3 Allowable stresses

The allowable compressive stress in the concrete shall not exceed 33 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength (*f'c*) applied to the gross cross-sectional area of the pile. The allowable compressive stress in the reinforcing steel shall not exceed 40 percent of the yield strength of the steel (*fy*) or a maximum of 30,000 psi (207 MPa). The allowable tensile stress in the reinforcing steel shall not exceed 50 percent of the yield strength of the steel (*fy*) or a maximum of 24,000 psi (165 MPa).

4.5.3.2.2.2.4 Installation

A precast concrete pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of at least 75 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength (*f'c*), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

4.5.3.2.2.5 Concrete cover

Reinforcement for piles that are not manufactured under plant conditions shall have a concrete cover of not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Reinforcement for piles manufactured under plant control conditions shall have a concrete cover of not less than 1.25 inches (32 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and not less than 1.5 inches (38 mm) for No. 6 through No. 11 bars except that longitudinal bars spaced less than 1.5 inches (38 mm) clear distance apart shall be considered bundled bars for which the minimum concrete cover shall be equal to that for the equivalent diameter of the bundled bars. Reinforcement for piles exposed to seawater shall have a concrete cover of not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

4.5.3.2.2.3 Precast prestressed piles

Precast prestressed concrete piles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.2.2.3.1 through 4.5.3.2.2.3.5.

4.5.3.2.2.3.1 Materials

Prestressing steel shall conformto ASTM A 416. Concrete shall have a 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$) of not less than 5,000 psi (34.48 MPa).

4.5.3.2.2.3.2 Design

Precast prestressed piles shall be designed to resist stresses induced by handling and driving as well as by loads. The effective prestress in the pile shall not be less than 400 psi (2.76MPa) for piles up to 30 feet (9144 mm) in length, 550 psi (3.79 MPa) for piles up to 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length and 700 psi (4.83 MPa) for piles greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length. Effective prestress shall be based on an assumed loss of 30,000 psi (207 MPa) in the prestressing steel. The tensile stress in the prestressing steel shall not exceed the values specified in ACI 318.

4.5.3.2.2.3.2.1 Design in Seismic Design Category C

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C in accordance with Structural Design Section 1613, the following shall apply. The minimum volumetric ratio of spiral reinforcement shall not be less than 0.007 or the amount required by the following formula for the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

$$\rho_s = 0.12 f'c/f_{yh} \qquad \text{(Equation 4.5-1)}$$

where:

$f'c$ = Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).

f_{yh} = Yield strength of spiral reinforcement $\leq$ 85,000 psi (586 MPa).

ρ_s = Spiral reinforcement index (vol. spiral/vol. core).

At least one-half the volumetric ratio required by Equation 4-1 shall be provided below the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

The pile cap connection by means of dowels as indicated in Section 4.5.3.1.24 is permitted. Pile cap connection by means of developing pile reinforcing strand is permitted provided that the pile reinforcing strand results in a ductile connection.

4.5.3.2.2.3.2.2 Design in Seismic Design Category D, E or F

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the requirements for Seismic Design Category C in Section 4.5.3.2.2.3.2.1 shall be met, in addition to the following:

1. Requirements in ACI 318, Chapter 21, need not apply, unless specifically referenced.

2. Where the total pile length in the soil is 35 feet (10668 mm) or less, the lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall occur through the length of the pile. Where the pile length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the ductile pile region shall be taken as the greater of 35 feet (10668 mm) or the distance from the underside of the pile cap to the point of zero curvature plus three times the least pile dimension.

3. In the ductile region, the center-to-center spacing of the spirals or hoop reinforcement shall not exceed one-fifth of the least pile dimension, six times the diameter of the longitudinal strand, or 8 inches (203 mm), whichever is smaller.

4. Circular spiral reinforcement shall be spliced by lapping one full turn and bending the end of the spiral to a 90-degree hook or by use of a mechanical or welded splice complying with Sec. 12.14.3 of ACI 318.

5. Where the transverse reinforcement consists of circular spirals, the volumetric ratio of spiral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall comply with the following:

$$\rho_s = 0.25(f'c/f_{yh})(A_g/A_{ch} - 1.0)[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'cA_g)] \quad \text{(Equation 4.5-2)}$$

but not less than:

$$\rho_s = 0.12(f'c/f_{yh})[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'c\,A_g)] \quad \text{(Equation 4.5-3)}$$

and need not exceed:

$$\rho_s = 0.021 \quad \text{(Equation 4.5-4)}$$

where:

A_g = Pile cross-sectional area, square inches (mm^2).

A_{ch} = Core area defined by spiral outside diameter, square inches (mm2).

$f'c$ = Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).

f_{yh} = Yield strength of spiral reinforcement ≤ 85,000 psi (586 MPa).

P = Axial load on pile, pounds (kN), as determined from Equations 16-5 and 16-6.

ρ_s = Volumetric ratio (vol. spiral/ vol. core).

This required amount of spiral reinforcement is permitted to be obtained by providing an inner and outer spiral.

6. When transverse reinforcement consists of rectangular hoops and cross ties, the total cross-sectional area of lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region with spacings, and perpendicular to dimension, h_c, shall conform to:

$$A_{sh} = 0.3sh_c\,(f'_c/f_{yh})(A_g/A_{ch} - 1.0)[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_cA_g)] \quad \text{(Equation 4.5-5)}$$

but not less than:

$$A_{sh} = 0.12sh_c\,(f'c/f_{yh})[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'cA_g)] \quad \text{(Equation 4.5-6)}$$

where:

f_{yh} = ≤ 70,000 psi (483 MPa).

h_c = Cross-sectional dimension of pile core measured center to center of hoop reinforcement, inch (mm).

s = Spacing of transverse reinforcement measured along length of pile, inch (mm).

A_{sh} = Cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement, square inches (mm2).

$f'c$ = Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).

The hoops and cross ties shall be equivalent to deformed bars not less than 10 mm in size. Rectangular hoop ends shall terminate at a corner with seismic hooks.

Outside of the length of the pile requiring transverse confinement reinforcing, the spiral or hoop reinforcing with a volumetric ratio not less than one-half of that required for transverse confinement reinforcing shall be provided.

4.5.3.2.2.3.3 Allowable stresses

The allowable design compressive stress, fc, in concrete shall be determined as follows:

$$fc = 0.33\,f'c - 0.27f_{pc} \qquad \text{(Equation 4.5-7)}$$

where:

$f'c$ = The 28-day specified compressive strength of the concrete.

f_{pc} = The effective prestress stress on the gross section.

4.5.3.2.2.3.4 Installation

A prestressed pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of at least 75 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

4.5.3.2.2.3.5 Concrete cover

Prestressing steel and pile reinforcement shall have a concrete cover of not less than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) for square piles of 12 inches (305 mm) or smaller size and 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) for larger piles, except that for piles exposed to seawater, the minimum protective concrete cover shall not be less than 2 1/2 inches (64 mm).

4.5.3.2.3 Structural steel piles

Structural steel piles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.2.3.1 through 4.5.3.2.3.4.

4.5.3.2.3.1 Materials

Structural steel piles, steel pipe and fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates shall conform toASTMA36, ASTMA252, ASTMA283, ASTMA572, ASTM A 588, ASTM A 690, ASTM A 913 or ASTM A992.

4.5.3.2.3.2 Allowable stresses

The allowable axial stresses shall not exceed 35 percent of the minimum specified yield strength (Fy).

> **Exception:** Where justified in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.9, the allowable axial stress is permitted to be increased above $0.35Fy$, but shall not exceed $0.5Fy$.

4.5.3.2.3.3 Dimensions of H-piles

Sections of H-piles shall comply with the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of 3/8 inch (10 mm).

4.5.3.2.3.4 Dimensions of steel pipe piles

Steel pipe piles driven open ended shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm). The pipe shall have a minimum cross section of 0.34 square inch (219 mm2) to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 N-m) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 Mpa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer. Where pipe wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, a suitable cutting shoe shall be provided.

4.5.3.3 Cast-In-Place Concrete Pile Foundations

4.5.3.3.1 General

The materials, reinforcement and installation of cast-in-place concrete piles shall conform to Sections 4.5.3.3.1.1 through 4.5.3.3.1.3.

4.5.3.3.1.1 Materials

Concrete shall have a 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$) of not less than 2,500 psi (17.24 MPa). Where concrete is placed through a funnel hopper at the top of the pile, the concrete mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a cohesive workable mix having a slump of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not more than 8 inches (203 mm). Where concrete is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pumpable concrete.

4.5.3.3.1.2 Reinforcement

Except for steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less in the pile and as provided in Section 4.5.3.3.3.4, reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the pile as a unit before the reinforced portion of the pile is filled with concrete except in augered uncased cast-in-place piles. Tied reinforcement in augered uncased cast-in-place piles shall be placed after piles are concreted, while the concrete is still in a semi fluid state.

4.5.3.3.1.2.1 Reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C in accordance with Section 1613, the following shall apply. A minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.0025 shall be provided for uncased cast-in-place concrete drilled or augered piles, piers or caissons in the top one-third of the pile length, a minimum length of 10 feet (3048 mm) below the ground or that required by analysis, whichever length is greatest. The minimum reinforcement ratio, but no less than that ratio required by rational analysis, shall be continued throughout the flexural length of the pile. There shall be a minimum of four longitudinal bars with closed ties (or equivalent spirals) of a minimum 3/8 inch (9 mm) diameter provided at 16-longitudinal-bar diameter maximum spacing. Transverse confinement reinforcement with a maximum spacing of 6 inches (152 mm) or 8-longitudinal- bar diameters, whichever is less, shall be provided within a distance equal to three times the least pile dimension of the bottom of the pile cap.

4.5.3.3.1.2.2 Reinforcement in Seismic Design Category D, E or F

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the requirements for Seismic Design Category C given above shall be met, in addition to the following. A minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005 shall be provided for uncased cast-in-place drilled or augered concrete piles, piers or caissons in the top one-half of the pile length a minimum length of 10 feet (3048 mm) below ground or throughout the flexural length of the pile, whichever length is greatest. The flexural length shall be taken as the length of the pile to a point where the concrete section cracking moment strength multiplied by 0.4 exceeds the required moment strength at that point. There shall be a minimum of four longitudinal bars with transverse confinement reinforcement provided in the pile in accordance with Sections 21.4.4.1, 21.4.4.2 and 21.4.4.3 of ACI 318 within three times the least pile dimension of the bottom of the pile cap. A transverse spiral reinforcement ratio of not less than one-half of that required in Section 21.4.4.1(a) of ACI 318 for other than Class E, F or liquefiable sites is permitted. Tie spacing throughout the remainder of the concrete section shall neither exceed 12-longitudinal-bar diameters, one-half the least dimension of the section, nor 12 inches (305 mm). Ties shall be a minimum of 10 mm bars for piles with a least dimension up to 20 inches (508 mm), and 12 mm bars for larger piles.

4.5.3.3.1.3 Concrete placement

Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-sized shaft. Concrete shall not be placed through water except where a tremie or other approved method is used. When depositing concrete from the top of the pile, the concrete shall not be chuted directly into the pile but shall be poured in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the pile.

4.5.3.3.2 Enlarged base piles

Enlarged base piles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.2.1 through 4.5.3.3.2.5.

4.5.3.3.2.1 Materials

The maximum size for coarse aggregate for concrete shall be 3/4 inch (19.1 mm). Concrete to be compacted shall have a zero slump.

4.5.3.3.2.2 Allowable stresses

The maximum allowable design compressive stress for concrete not placed in a permanent steel casing shall be 25 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength $(f'c)$. Where the concrete is placed in a permanent steel casing, the maximum allowable concrete stress shall be 33 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength $(f'c)$.

4.5.3.3.2.3 Installation

Enlarged bases formed either by compacting concrete or driving a precast base shall be formed in or driven into granular soils. Piles shall be constructed in the same manner as successful prototype test piles driven for the project. Pile shafts extending through peat or other organic soil shall be encased in a permanent steel casing. Where a cased shaft is used, the shaft shall be adequately reinforced to resist column action or the annular space around the pile shaft shall be filled sufficiently to reestablish lateral support by the soil. Where pile heave occurs, the pile shall be replaced unless it is demonstrated that the pile is undamaged and capable of carrying twice its design load.

4.5.3.3.2.4 Load-bearing capacity

Pile load-bearing capacity shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.7.3

4.5.3.3.2.5 Concrete cover

The minimum concrete cover shall be 21/2 inches (64 mm) for uncased shafts and 1 inch (25 mm) for cased shafts.

4.5.3.3.3 Drilled or augered uncased piles

Drilled or augered uncased piles shall conform to Sections 4.5.3.3.3.1 through 4.5.3.3.3.5.

4.5.3.3.3.1 Allowable stresses

The allowable design stress in the concrete of drilled or augered uncased piles shall not exceed 33 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength ($f\,'c$). The allowable compressive stress of reinforcement shall not exceed 40 percent of the yield strength of the steel or 25,500 psi (175.8 MPa).

4.5.3.3.3.2 Dimensions

The pile length shall not exceed 30 times the average diameter. The minimum diameter shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

> **Exception:** The length of the pile is permitted to exceed 30 times the diameter, provided that the design and installation of the pile foundation are under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and pile foundations. The registered design professional shall certify to the building official that the piles were installed in compliance with the approved construction documents.

4.5.3.3.3.3 Installation

Where pile shafts are formed through unstable soils and concrete is placed in an open-drilled hole, a steel liner shall be inserted in the hole prior to placing the concrete. Where the steel liner is withdrawn during concreting, the level of concrete shall be maintained above the bottom of the liner at a sufficient height to offset any hydrostatic or lateral soil pressure. Where concrete is placed by pumping through a hollow- stem auger, the auger shall be permitted to rotate in a clockwise direction during withdrawal. The auger shall be withdrawn in continuous increments. Concreting pumping pressures shall be measured and maintained high enough at all times to offset hydrostatic and lateral earth pressures. Concrete volumes shall be measured to ensure that the volume of concrete placed in each pile is equal to or greater than the theoretical volume of the hole created by the auger. Where the installation process of any pile is interrupted or a loss of concreting pressure occurs, the pile shall be redrilled to 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the tip of the auger when the installation was interrupted or concrete pressure was lost and reformed. Augered cast-in-place piles shall not be installed within six pile diameters center to center of a pile filled with concrete less than 12 hours old, unless approved by the building official. If the concrete level in any completed pile drops due to installation of an adjacent pile, the pile shall be replaced.

4.5.3.3.3.4 Reinforcement

For piles installed with a hollow- stem auger where full-length longitudinal steel reinforcement is placed without lateral ties, the reinforcement shall be placed through the hollow stem of the auger prior to filling the pile with concrete. All pile reinforcement shall have a concrete cover of not less than 2.5 inches (64 mm).

> **Exception:** Where physical constraints do not allow the placement of the longitudinal reinforcement prior to filling the pile with concrete or where partial-length longitudinal reinforcement is placed without lateral ties, the reinforcement is allowed to be placed after the piles are completely concreted but while concrete is still in a semifluid state.

4.5.3.3.3.5 Reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the corresponding requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.1.2.1 and 4.5.3.3.1.2.2 shall be met.

4.5.3.3.4 Driven uncased piles

Driven uncased piles shall conform to Sections 4.5.3.3.4.1 through 4.5.3.3.4.4.

4.5.3.3.4.1 Allowable stresses

The allowable design stress in the concrete shall not exceed 25 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$) applied to a cross-sectional area not greater than the inside area of the drive casing or mandrel.

4.5.3.3.4.2 Dimensions

The pile length shall not exceed 30 times the average diameter. The minimum diameter shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

> **Exception:** The length of the pile is permitted to exceed 30 times the diameter, provided that the design and installation of the pile foundation is under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and pile foundations. The registered design professional shall certify to the building official that the piles were installed in compliance with the approved design.

4.5.3.3.4.3 Installation

Piles shall not be driven within six pile diameters center to center in granular soils or within one-half the pile length in cohesive soils of a pile filled with concrete pile rises or drops, the pile shall be replaced. Piles shall not less than 48 hours old unless approved by the building official. If the concrete surface in any completed be installed in soils that could cause pile heave.

4.5.3.3.4.4 Concrete cover

Pile reinforcement shall have a concrete cover of not less than 2.5 inches (64 mm), measured from the inside face of the drive casing or mandrel.

4.5.3.3.5 Steel-cased piles

Steel-cased piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.5.1 through 4.4.3.3.5.4.

4.5.3.3.5.1 Materials

Pile shells or casings shall be of steel and shall be sufficiently strong to resist collapse and sufficiently water tight to exclude any foreign materials during the placing of concrete. Steel shells shall have a sealed tip with a diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

4.5.3.3.5.2 Allowable stresses

The allowable design compressive stress in the concrete shall not exceed 33 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$). The allowable concrete compressive stress shall be 0.40 ($f'c$) for that portion of the pile meeting the conditions specified in Sections 4.5.3.3.5.2.1 through 4.5.3.3.5.2.4.

4.5.3.3.5.2.1 Shell thickness

The thickness of the steel shell shall not be less than manufacturer's standard gage No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) (1.75 mm) minimum.

4.5.3.3.5.2.2 Shell type

The shell shall be seamless or provided with seams of strength equal to the basic material and be of a configuration that will provide confinement to the cast-in-place concrete.

4.5.3.3.5.2.3 Strength

The ratio of steel yield strength (*fy*) to 28-day specified compressive strength (*f'c*) shall not be less than six.

4.5.3.3.5.2.4 Diameter

The nominal pile diameter shall not be greater than 16 inches (406 mm).

4.5.3.3.5.3 Installation

Steel shells shall be mandrel driven their full length in contact with the surrounding soil. The steel shells shall be driven in such order and with such spacing as to ensure against distortion of or injury to piles already in place. A pile shall not be driven within four and one-half average pile diameters of a pile filled with concrete less than 24 hours old unless approved by the building official. Concrete shall not be placed in steel shells within heave range of driving.

4.5.3.3.5.4 Reinforcement

Reinforcement shall not be placed within 1 inch (25 mm) of the steel shell. Reinforcing shall be required for unsupported pile lengths or where the pile is designed to resist uplift or unbalanced lateral loads.

4.5.3.3.5.4.1 Seismic reinforcement

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the reinforcement requirements for drilled or augered uncased piles in Section 4.5.3.3.3.5 shall be met.

> **Exception:** A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness no less than the manufacturer's standard gage No. 14 gage [0.068 inch (1.7 mm)] is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or equivalent spirals required in an uncased concrete pile. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

4.5.3.3.6 Concrete-filled steel pipe and tube piles

Concrete- filled steel pipe and tube piles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.6.1 through 4.5.3.3.6.5.

4.5.3.3.6.1 Materials

Steel pipe and tube sections used for piles shall conform to ASTM A 252 or ASTM A 283. Concrete shall conform to Section 4.5.3.3.1.1. The maximum coarse aggregate size shall be 3/4 inch (19.1 mm).

4.5.3.3.6.2 Allowable stresses

The allowable design compressive stress in the concrete shall not exceed 33 percent of the 28-day specified compressive strength (*f c*). The allowable design compressive stress in the steel shall not exceed 35 percent of the minimum specified yield strength of the steel (*Fy*), provided *Fy* shall not be assumed greater than 36,000 psi (248 MPa) for computational purposes.

> **Exception:** Where justified in accordance with Section 4.5.3.1.9, the allowable stresses are permitted to be increased to 0.50 *Fy*.

4.5.3.3.6.3 Minimum dimensions

Piles shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum wall thickness in accordance with Section 4.5.3.2.3.4. For mandrel-driven pipe piles, the minimum wall thickness shall be 1/10 inch (2.5 mm).

4.5.3.3.6.4 Reinforcement

Reinforcement steel shall conform to Section 4.5.3.1.9. Reinforcement shall not be placed within 1 inch (25 mm) of the steel casing.

4.5.3.3.6.4.1 Seismic reinforcement

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the following shall apply. Minimum reinforcement no less than 0.01 times the cross-sectional area of the pile concrete shall be provided in the top of the pile with a length equal to two times the required cap embedment anchorage into the pile cap, but not less than the tension development length of the reinforcement. The wall thickness of the steel pipe shall not be less than 3/16 inch (5 mm).

4.5.3.3.6.5 Placing concrete

The placement of concrete shall conform to Section 4.5.3.3.1.3, but is permitted to be chuted directly into smooth-sided pipes and tubes without a centering funnel hopper.

4.5.3.3.7 Caisson piles

Caisson piles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.7.1 through 4.5.3.3.7.6.

4.5.3.3.7.1 Construction

Caisson piles shall consist of a shaft section of concrete-filled pipe extending to bedrock with an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock and filled with concrete. The caisson pile shall have a full-length structural steel core or a stub core installed in the rock socket and extending into the pipe portion a distance equal to the socket depth.

4.5.3.3.7.2 Materials

Pipe and steel cores shall conform to the material requirements in Section 1809.3. Pipes shall have a minimum wall thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) and shall be fitted with a suitable steel-driving shoe welded to the bottom of the pipe. Concrete shall have a 28-day specified compressive strength (f_c) of not less than 4,000 psi (27.58 MPa). The concrete mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a cohesive workable mix with a slump of 4 inches to 6 inches (102 mm to 152 mm).

4.5.3.3.7.3 Design

The depth of the rock socket shall be sufficient to develop the full load-bearing capacity of the caisson pile with a minimum safety factor of two, but the depth shall not be less than the outside diameter of the pipe. The design of the rock socket is permitted to be predicated on the sum of the allowable load-bearing pressure on the bottom of the socket plus bond along the sides of the socket. The minimum outside diameter of the caisson pile shall be 18 inches (457 mm), and the diameter of the rock socket shall be approximately equal to the inside diameter of the pile.

4.5.3.3.7.4 Structural core

The gross cross-sectional area of the structural steel core shall not exceed 25 percent of the gross area of the caisson. The minimum clearance between the structural core and the pipe shall be 2

inches (51 mm). Where cores are to be spliced, the ends shall be milled or ground to provide full contact and shall be full-depth welded.

4.5.3.3.7.5 Allowable stresses

The allowable design compressive stresses shall not exceed the following: concrete, 0.33 $f'c$; steel pipe, 0.35 Fy and structural steel core, 0.50 Fy.

4.5.3.3.7.6 Installation

The rock socket and pile shall be thoroughly cleaned of foreign materials before filling with concrete. Steel cores shall be bedded in cement grout at the base of the rock socket. Concrete shall not be placed through water except where a tremie or other approved method is used

4.5.3.3.8 Micropiles

Micropiles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.8.1 through 4.5.3.3.8.5.

4.5.3.3.8.1 Construction

Micropiles shall consist of a grouted section reinforced with steel pipe or steel reinforcing. Micropiles shall develop their load-carrying capacity through a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock. The full length of the micropile shall contain either a steel pipe or steel reinforcement.

4.5.3.3.8.2 Materials

Grout shall have a 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$) of not less than 4,000 psi (27.58 MPa). The grout mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a pumpable mixture. Reinforcement steel shall be deformed bars in accordance with ASTM A 615 Grade 60 or 75 or ASTM A 722 Grade 150. Pipe/casing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) and as required to meet Section 4.5.3.1.6. Pipe/casing shall meet the tensile requirements of ASTM A 252 Grade 3, except the minimum yield strength shall be as used in the design submittal [typically 50,000 psi to 80,000 psi (345 MPa to 552 MPa)] and minimum elongation shall be 15 percent.

4.5.3.3.8.3 Allowable stresses

The allowable design compressive stress on grout shall not exceed 0.33 $f'c$. The allowable design compressive stress on steel pipe and steel reinforcement shall not exceed the lesser of 0.4 Fy, or 32,000 psi (220 MPa). The allowable design tensile stress for steel reinforcement shall not exceed 0.60 Fy. The allowable design tensile stress for the cement grout shall be zero.

4.5.3.3.8.4 Reinforcement

For piles or portions of piles grouted inside a temporary or permanent casing or inside a hole drilled into bedrock or a hole drilled with grout, the steel pipe or steel reinforcement shall be designed to carry at least 40 percent of the design compression load. Piles or portions of piles grouted in an open hole in soil without temporary or permanent casing and without suitable means of verifying the hole diameter during grouting shall be designed to carry the entire compression load in the reinforcing steel. Where a steel pipe is used for reinforcement, the portion of the cement grout enclosed within the pipe is permitted to be included at the allowable stress of the grout.

4.5.3.3.8.4.1 Seismic reinforcement

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, a permanent steel casing shall be provided from the top of the pile down 120 percent times the flexural length. The flexural length

is the length of the pile from the first point of zero lateral deflection to the underside of the pile cap or grade beam. Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the pile shall be considered as an alternative system. The alternative pile system design, supporting documentation and test data shall be submitted to the building official for review and approval.

4.5.3.3.8.5 Installation

The pile shall be permitted to be formed in a hole advanced by rotary or percussive drilling methods, with or without casing. The pile shall be grouted with a fluid cement grout. The grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe extending to the bottom of the pile until grout of suitable quality returns at the top of the pile.

The following requirements apply to specific installation methods:

1. For piles grouted inside a temporary casing, the reinforcing steel shall be inserted prior to withdrawal of the casing. The casing shall be withdrawn in a controlled manner with the grout level maintained at the top of the pile to ensure that the grout completely fills the drill hole.

2. During withdrawal of the casing, the grout level inside the casing shall be monitored to check that the flow of grout inside the casing is not obstructed. For a pile or portion of a pile grouted in an open drill hole in soil without temporary casing, the minimum design diameter of the drill hole shall be verified by a suitable device during grouting.

3. For piles designed for end bearing, a suitable means shall be employed to verify that the bearing surface is properly cleaned prior to grouting.

4. Subsequent piles shall not be drilled near piles that have been grouted until the grout has had sufficient time to harden.

5. Piles shall be grouted as soon as possible after drilling is completed.

6. For piles designed with casing full length, the casing must be pulled back to the top of the bond zone and reinserted or some other suitable means shall be employed to verify grout coverage outside the casing.

4.5.3.4 Composite Piles

4.5.3.4.1 General

Composite piles shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.4.2 through 4.5.3.4.5.

4.5.3.4.2 Design

Composite piles consisting of two or more approved pile types shall be designed to meet the conditions of installation.

4.5.3.4.3 Limitation of load

The maximum allowable load shall be limited by the capacity of the weakest section incorporated in the pile.

4.5.3.4.4 Splices

Splices between concrete and steel or wood sections shall be designed to prevent separation both before and after the concrete portion has set, and to ensure the alignment and transmission of the total pile load. Splices shall be designed to resist uplift caused by upheaval during driving of adjacent piles, and shall develop the full compressive strength and not less than 50 percent of the tension and bending strength of the weaker section.

4.5.3.4.5 Seismic reinforcement

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F in accordance with Section 1613, the following shall apply. Where concrete and steel are used as part of the pile assembly, the concrete reinforcement shall comply with that given in Sections 4.5.3.3.1.2.1 and 4.5.3.3.1.2.2 or the steel section shall comply with Section 4.5.3.3.6.4.1.

4.5.3.5 Pier Foundations

4.5.3.5.1 General

Isolated and multiple piers used as foundations shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.5.2 through 4.5.3.5.10, as well as the applicable provisions of Section 4.4.3.1.

4.5.3.5.2 Lateral dimensions and height

The minimum dimension of isolated piers used as foundations shall be 2 feet (610 mm), and the height shall not exceed 12 times the least horizontal dimension.

4.5.3.5.3 Materials

Concrete shall have a 28-day specified compressive strength ($f'c$) of not less than 2,500 psi (17.24 MPa). Where concrete is placed through a funnel hopper at the top of the pier, the concrete mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a cohesive workable mix having a slump of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not more than 6 inches (152 mm). Where concrete is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pump able concrete.

4.5.3.5.4 Reinforcement

Except for steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less in the pier, reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the pier hole as a unit before the reinforced portion of the pier is filled with concrete.

> **Exception:** Reinforcement is permitted to be wet set and the 21/2- inch (64 mm) concrete cover requirement be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm) for Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, provided the construction method can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the building official. Reinforcement shall conform to the requirements of Sections 4.5.3.3.1.2.1 and 4.5.3.3.1.2.2.

> **Exceptions:**
>
> 1. Isolated piers supporting posts of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction are permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but not less than a minimum of one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, when detailed so the pier is not subject to lateral loads and the soil is determined to be of adequate stiffness.
>
> 2. Isolated piers supporting posts and bracing from decks and patios appurtenant to Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction are permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, when the lateral load, *E*, to the top of the pier does not exceed 200 pounds (890 N) and the soil is determined to be of adequate stiffness.
>
> 3. Piers supporting the concrete foundation wall of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction are permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but not less than two No. 4 bars, without ties or spirals, when it can be shown the concrete pier will not rupture when designed for

the maximum seismic load, *Em*, and the soil is determined to be of adequate stiffness.

4. Closed ties or spirals where required by Section 4.5.3.3.1.2.2 are permitted to be limited to the top 3 feet (914 mm) of the piers 10 feet (3048 mm) or less in depth supporting Group R-3 and U occupancies of Seismic Design Category D, not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction.

4.5.3.5.5 Concrete placement

Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-sized shaft. Concrete shall not be placed through water except where a tremie or other approved method is used. When depositing concrete from the top of the pier, the concrete shall not be chute directly into the pier but shall be poured in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the pier.

4.5.3.5.6 Belled bottoms

Where pier foundations are belled at the bottom, the edge thickness of the bell shall not be less than that required for the edge of footings. When the sides of the bell slope at an angle less than 60 degrees (1 rad) from the horizontal, the effects of vertical shear shall be considered.

4.5.3.5.7 Masonry

Where the unsupported height of foundation piers exceeds six times the least dimension, the allowable working stress on piers of unit masonry shall be reduced in accordance with ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.

4.5.3.5.8 Concrete

Where adequate lateral support is not provided, and the unsupported height to least lateral dimension does not exceed three, piers of plain concrete shall be designed and constructed as pilasters in accordance with ACI 318. Where the unsupported height to least lateral dimension exceeds three, piers shall be constructed of reinforced concrete, and shall conform to the requirements for columns in ACI 318.

> **Exception:** Where adequate lateral support is furnished by the surrounding materials as defined in Section 4.5.3.1.8, piers are permitted to be constructed of plain or reinforced concrete. The requirements of ACI 318 for bearing on concrete shall apply.

4.5.3.5.9 Steel shell

Where concrete piers are entirely encased with a circular steel shell, and the area of the shell steel is considered reinforcing steel, the steel shall be protected under the conditions specified in Section 4.5.3.1.17. Horizontal joints in the shell shall be spliced to comply with Section 1808.2.7.

4.5.3.5.10 Dewatering

Where piers are carried to depths below water level, the piers shall be constructed by a method that will provide accurate preparation and inspection of the bottom, and the depositing or construction of sound concrete or other masonry in the dry.

APPENDIX A

Problematic Soils

a) Expansive Soil

Foundation materials that exhibit volume change when there are changes in their moisture content are referred to as expansive or swelling clay soils.

Typical expansive or swelling materials are highly plastic clays and clay shale that often contain colloidal clay minerals such as the montmorillonites.

Expansive soils include marls, clayey siltstones, sandstones and saprolites.

Problems that may occur in structures on expansive soils relate to the 'differential movement of the soils (i.e., heave or settlement caused by change in soil moisture).

b) Dispersive Soil

Soils which disperse in the presence of water and can therefore be easily scoured are described as dispersive. The most predominant soil type is CLAY and SILT combinations with some amount of sand. Index properties (Atterberg limits) give no indication about this treacherous soil.

1. Dispersive soils are structurally unstable and disperse in water, back into their basic particles: sand, silt and clay.

2. Dispersible soils are highly erodible and present problems for successfully managing erosion and sedimentation.

3. Dispersion is caused by the presence of sodium.

4. The ratio of salinity (EC) to sodicity (SAR) determines the effects of salts and sodium on soils.

5. The swelling factor predicts whether sodium-induced dispersion or salinity-induced flocculation will have the greatest affect on the soil physical properties.

6. Soils are divided in accordance with the Principle of Emerson Aggregate Test into seven classes on the basis of their coherence in water with one further class being distinguished by the presence of calcium-rich minerals.

7. Determining Emerson Class Number of Aggregate

When immerse air-dry aggregates in water:

Slaking occurred after 2 hours and 20 hours.

Class-1 : Complete dispersion.

Class-2 : Some dispersion

Class-3 : Dispersion

Sub-classes for Type 2 and 3 Aggregates

(i) Slight milkiness

(ii) Obvious milkiness, < 50 % of aggregate affected

(iii) Obvious milkiness, > 50 % of aggregate affected

(iv) Total dispersion leaving only sand grains

Class-4 : No dispersion (with the presence of carbonate or gypsum)

Class-7   :   No dispersion but swelling, No slaking.

Class-8   :   No dispersion, No slaking, No swelling.

   (i) After the preparation of 1:5   Soil:Water suspension and shaking for 10   minutes and standing for 5 minutes

Class-5   :   Dispersion   DP≥6

Class-6   :   Complete Flocculation   DP≤ 6

   (Other classifications such as the Pinhole Test, SCS dispersion test (Double Hydrometer test) and Soil Chemical test are also used to assess soil dispersivity.

Slaking

When water is applied to most soils, the aggregates within the soil tend to 'melt' or break down. This process of slaking is common in most soils and results in problems such as crusting and hard setting, particularly in soils with loamy surfaces, such as the red brown earths.

In situations where the degree of slaking is considered important, a slaking subclass is allowed;

0 No change

1 Aggregate breaks open but remains intact

2 Aggregate breaks down into smaller aggregate

3 Aggregate breaks down completely into sand grains

Thixotropic

A term applied to certain types of solid/liquid systems which are effectively solid when stationary but become mobile liquids when subjected to shearing stresses.

c) Peat

Peat is a fibrous mass of organic matter in various stages of decomposition and dark brown and black in color and of spongy consistency.

d) Black Cotton Soil

It is inorganic clay of medium to high compressibility. Black Cotton Soils form a major soil group in middle parts of Myanmar. They are predominantly montmorillonitic in structure and black or blackish grey or greenish brown in color. They are characterized by high shrinkage and swelling properties.
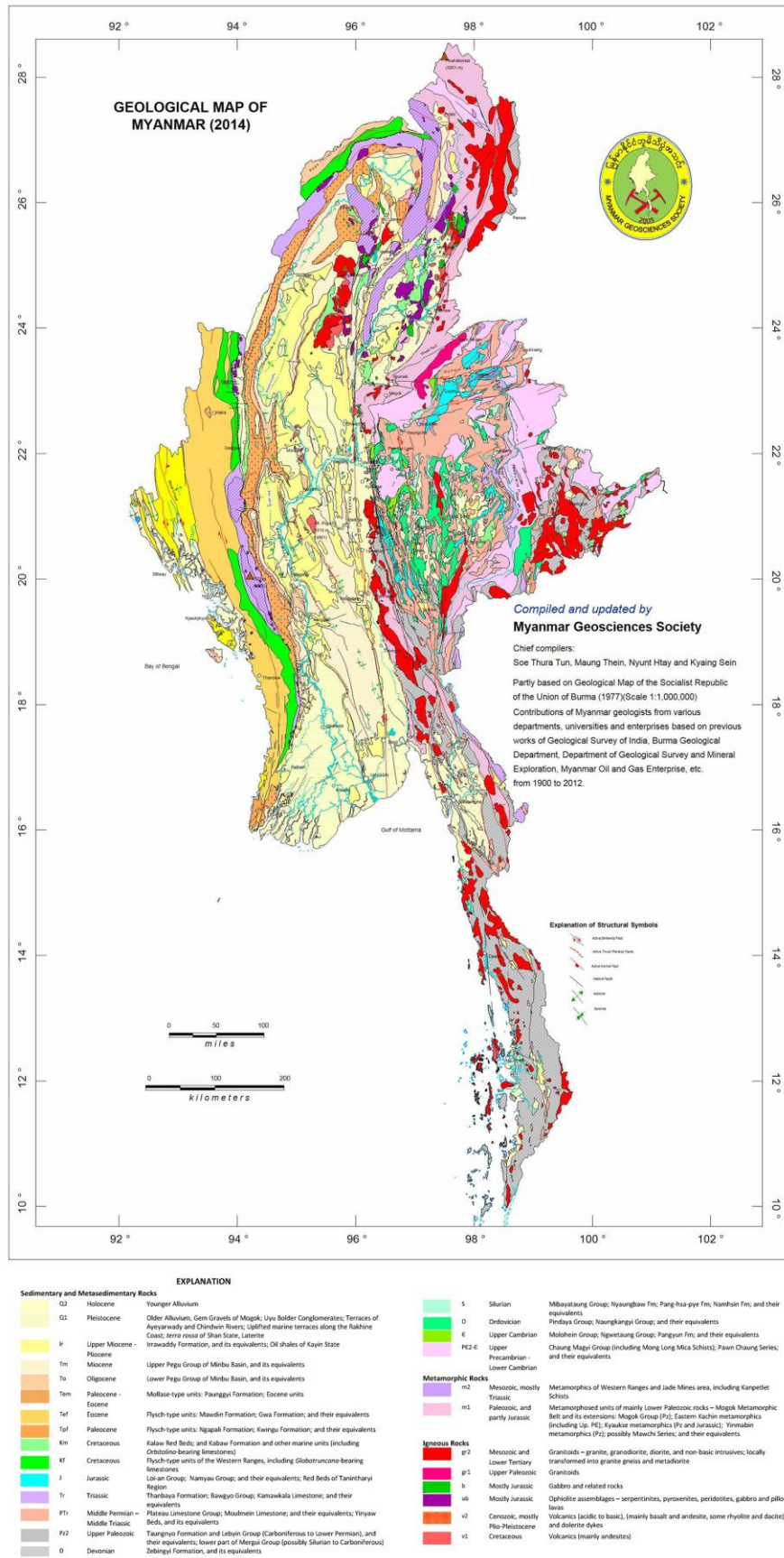
APPENDIX B
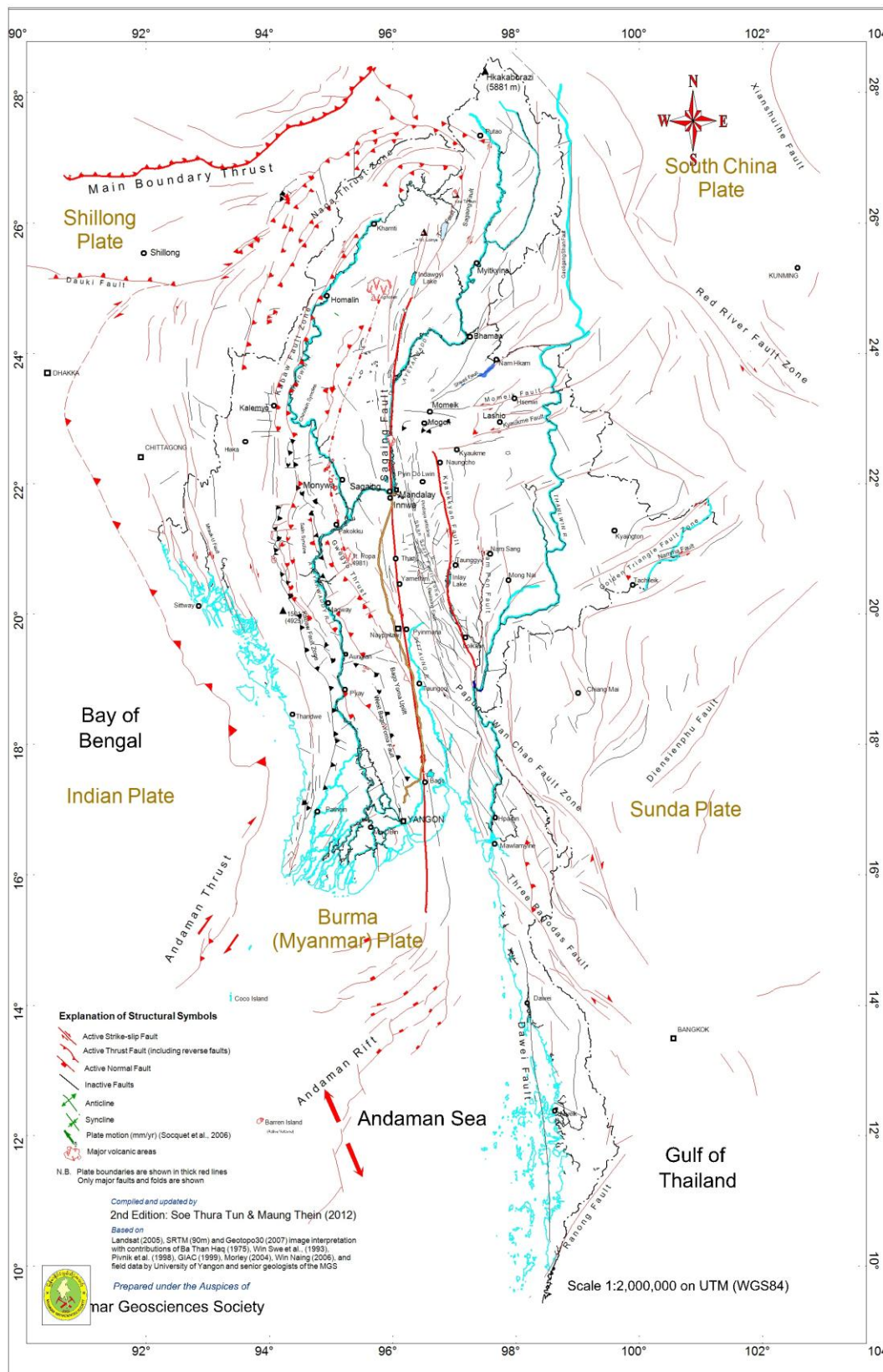

Figure B-1 Geological Map of Myanmar (MGS 2014)

Figure B-2 Tectonic Map of Myanmar and its surrounding (MGS, 2012)

APPENDIX C

Methods of Site Investigation

a) Open Trial Pits (Test Pits) Method

This method consists of excavating trial pits to expose the subsurface soil layers thereby enabling the collection of undisturbed samples from the side-walls and bottom of the pits. Unlike boring, soil can be visually observed from the walls of test pits. Both the material and mass properties of the ground within an excavation must be logged, as well as any observable lateral and vertical variations. Other information to record includes, machine type, make and model, trench or pit size, shape and orientation, bucket size and teeth type. A good photograph can also convey a substantial amount of information.

Test pitting is suitable for all types of formations, but should be used for shallow depths of investigation (up to 3 m or 10 ft.). . Safety is a major consideration in the excavation of test pits. Test pits which are excavated in soil materials or loose rock and which are more than 1.5m deep should not be entered unless the excavation is fully supported by engineer designed or specified trench shoring, mesh protection or timber support; or the sides of the excavation have been battered back to a safe angle. It is often impracticable to excavate pits or trenches in areas with groundwater levels near the surface.

Unless specifically requested by the client to do otherwise, conventional practice for backfilling of excavations is to use the machinery that dug the hole to backfill it. Care should therefore be taken to avoid excavating test pits at the exact location of future footings.

Whether test pits are used instead of shallow boreholes depends on the objectives and economics of the investigation.

Test pitting is a suitable means of investigation for low rise buildings of up to two storeys, warehouse, buildings and material surveys for road and airfield construction.

b) Auger Boring (Hand Auger Method)

Various types of hand augers can be used, depending upon the soil conditions, to obtain soil samples to a depth of approximately 30 ft. The holes are typically 0.05m to 0.2m in diameter. A hand auger system consists of an auger bit connected with a bucket type cylinder to a string of rods. .The auger may be advanced by rotating and pressing the drilling head down into the soil by means of a "T – Handle" on the upper rod. Depending on the soil characteristics there are various designs of hand augers e.g. sand augers, clay/mud augers, and augers for more typical mixed soils. .

Disturbed samples are typically collected every 2 ft interval and stored in sealed plastic bags. Undisturbed samples may also be obtained by using thin wall steel tubes of 2 inches inner diameter and 1to 2 ft in length. The recovery of soil samples by hand auger of non-cohesive materials below the water table may not be successful because of the hole's instability or loss of samples upon bit removal from the hole. The recovery of samples of dry sand material or weathered rock materials may not be possible due to the lack of cohesion. In such cases water may be added to the hole in limited amounts to provide a temporary cohesion until the samples are recovered at the surface.

Hand auger boring is a cheap method to take undisturbed and disturbed soil samples. This method may apply to shallow foundations for buildings and it is also suitable to take soil samples for highway and airfield constructions where large sample volumes are not required. This method of investigation may not be suitable in gravelly and boulder soils due to the likelihood of refusal in such soils.

c) Shell and Auger Boring

Portable power–driven helical augers (76 mm to 305 mm in diameter) are available for making deeper boreholes. The soil samples obtained from such boring are highly disturbed. In some non-cohesive soils or soils having low cohesion, the walls of boreholes will not stand unsupported. In such circumstances, a metal pipe is used as a casing to prevent the sides of the hole from caving in.

When power is available, continuous – flight augers are probably the most common method used for advancing a borehole. The power for drilling is delivered by tracked, or tractor – mounted drilling rigs. Boreholes up to 60 – 70 m in depth may easily be drilled by this method. Continuous – flight augers are available in sections of about 1 – 2 m in length with either a solid or hollow stem. Some of the commonly used solid – stem augers have outside diameters of 67 mm, 83mm, 102 mm and 114 mm. Common commercially available hollow – stem augers have dimensions of 63.5 mm ID and 158.75 mm OD, 69.85 mm ID and 177.8 OD, 76.2 mm ID and 203.2 OD, and 82.5 mm ID and 228.6 mm OD.

A cutter head (bit) is attached to the tip of the auger. Auger strings are usually fitted with one of two types of bit, the "V" bit and the tungsten carbide "TC" bit. The "V" bit usually will not penetrate competent rock and for this reason the depth to "V" bit refusal provides useful information. The "TC" bit is used for drilling in rock or to penetrate fill, concrete, boulders etc. During drilling, sections of auger can be added as the hole is extended downwards. The flight of the auger brings the loose soil from the bottom of the hole to the surface. The driller can detect changes in types of soil by noticing changes in the speed and sound of the drilling. When solid – stem augers are used, the augers must be withdrawn at regular intervals to obtain soil samples and also to conduct other operations such as standard penetration tests. Hollow – stem augers have a distinct advantage over solid – stem augers in that they do not have to be removed frequently for sampling and other tests. The outside of the hollow – stem auger acts as a casing supporting the sides of the borehole.

The hollow – stem auger system includes the following components.

> Outer component: (a) hollow auger section, (b) hollow auger cap, and (c) drive cap.
>
> Inner component: (a) pilot assembly, (b) center rod column, and (c) rod – to – cap adapter

During drilling, if soil samples are to be collected at a certain depth, the pilot assembly and the center rod are removed. The soil sampler is then inserted through the hollow stem of the auger column to the required sampling depth.

d) Wash Boring

Wash boring is another method of advancing boreholes. In this method, a casing about 6 – 10 ft long is driven into the ground at the collar of the borehole. The soil inside the casing is removed by means of a chopping bit that is attached to a drilling rod. Water is forced through the drilling rod, and it goes out at a very high velocity through the holes at the bottom of the chopping bit. The water and the chopped soil particles rise upward in the drill hole and overflow at the top of the casing through a "T" connection. The wash water is then collected in a container. The casing can be extended with additional pieces as the borehole progresses; however, such extension is not necessary if the borehole can stand without it.

e) Standard Penetration Test

Test Procedure

> 1. Drill a 2.5 to 8 inches (60-200 mm) diameter exploratory boring to the depth of the first test.

2. Insert the SPT sampler (also known as a split-spoon sampler) into the boring. It is connected via steel rods to a 140 lb (63.5 kg) hammer.

3. Using either a rope and cathead arrangement or an automatic tripping mechanism, raise the hammer a distance of 30 inches (760 mm) and allow it to fall. This energy drives the sampler into the bottom of the boring. Repeat this process until the sampler has penetrated a distance of 18 inches (450 mm), recording the number of hammer blows required for each 6 inches (150 mm) interval. Stop the test if more than 50 blows are required for any of the intervals, or if more than 100 total blows are required. Either of these events is known as refusal and is so noted on the boring log.

4. Compute the N-value by summing the blow counts for the last 12 inches (300 mm) of penetration. The blow count for the first 6 inches(150 mm) is retained for reference purpose, but not used to compute N because the bottom of the boring is likely to be disturbed by the drilling process and may be covered with loose soil that fell from the sides of the boring. Note that the N-value is the same regardless of whether the engineer is using English or SI units.

5. Withdraw the SPT sampler from the borehole; remove and save the soil sample.

Drill the boring to the depth of the next test and repeat steps 2 through 6 as required.

Remarks : N-values may be obtained at intervals no closer than 18 inches (450 mm).

The test results are sensitive to the variations of test procedure and poor workmanship and the principal variants are as follows:

1. Method of drilling

2. How well the bottom of the hole is cleaned before the test

3. Presence or lack of drilling mud

4. Diameter of the drill hole

5. Location of the hammer (surface type or down-hole type)

6. Type of hammer, especially whether it has a manual or automatic tripping mechanism

7. Number of turns of the rope around the cathead

8. Actual hammer drop height (manual types are often as much as 25 percent in error)

9. Mass of the anvil that the hammer strikes

10. Friction in rope guides and pulleys

11. Wear in the sampler drive shoe

12. Straightness of the drill rods

13. Presence or absence of liners inside the sampler (this seemingly small detail can alter the test results by 10-30%)

14. Rate at which the blows are applied

As the result of these variations, the following criteria should be met as a standard approach when carrying out SPT testing in Myanmar:

1. Use the rotary wash method to create a boring that has a diameter between 4 and 5 inches (100-125 mm). The drill bit should provide an upward deflection of the drilling mud (tricone or baffled drag bit).

2. If the sampler is made to accommodate liners, then these liners should be used so the inside diameter is 1.38 inches (35 mm).

3. Use A or AW size drill rods for depths less than 50 feet (15 m) and N or NW size for greater depths.

4. Use a hammer that has an efficiency of 60 %.

5. Apply the hammer blows at a rate of 30 to 40 per minute.

   Three types of hammer are recognized:

   (i) Donut Hammer

   (ii) Safety Hammer

   (iii) Automatic Hammer

6. SPT testing should not be carried out below the water table without the borehole being supported by casing or mud. Failure to do this may result in "blowing" on the bottom of the boreholes and a low SPT value recorded in the disturbed material.

Correction of SPT Test Data: Raw SPT N-value can be improved by applying the following equation.

$$N_{60} = \frac{E_m \cdot C_B \cdot C_S \cdot C_R \cdot N}{0.6}$$

Where,

N_{60}	=	SPT N-value corrected for field procedures
E_m	=	hammer efficiency
C_B	=	borehole diameter correction
C_S	=	sampler correction
C_R	=	rod length correction
N	=	measured SPT N-value

$$(N_1)_{60} = N_{60} \; x \; C_N$$

Where ,

$(N_1)_{60}$	=	Corrected N-value
C_N	=	Overburden correction factor

f) Cone Penetration Test

1. Three types of cones are commonly used: the mechanical cone, the electric cone (CPT) and the cone penetration test with pore water pressure measurement (CPTU) often referred to as the piezocone. For detailed information on the operation and interpretation of the cone penetration test see *"Cone Penetration Testing in Geotechnical Practice" by T Lunne, P.K. Robertson and J.J.M Powell*.

2. The test equipment consists of a 60° cone with 10cm² base area (35.7 mm diameter) and a 150cm² friction sleeve (133.7 mm long)located above the cone (15cm² cones are

also being increasingly used). With the CPTu, pore water pressure is measured at typically one, two or three positions, on the cone; behind the cone; and behind the friction sleeve.

3. A hydraulic ram pushes this assembly into the ground and instruments measure the resistance to penetration on the cone tip, friction on the sleeve of the cylinder and in the case of the CPTU, pore water pressure.

4. The mechanical cone is advanced in stages and resistance to penetration is typically measured at intervals of about 20 cm. In homogeneous soils without sharp variations in cone resistance, mechanical cone data can be adequate but the quality of the data is somewhat operator dependent. The electric cone is typically advanced at a rate of about 20mm/sec and includes built-in strain gages enabling measurements to be taken continuously with depth. Most systems are set up to convert the data to digital form at selected intervals of typically 10mm to 50mm.

5. The CPT has many advantages over the SPT, but there are at least two important disadvantages:

   (i) No soil sample is recovered, so there is no opportunity to inspect the soils.

   (ii) The test is unreliable or unusable in soils with significant gravel content.

   CPT equipment is available to be operated using standard drilling rigs but due to the limited resistance force available from standard truck mounted rigsit is common to mobilize a special rig to perform the CPT. The cost per foot of penetration is less than for boring but, depending on availability, establishment costs for the special rig may be high.

g) Percussion (or) Churn Boring

1. Percussion boring is operated by air or hydraulic-driven hammer-like pistons.

2. This type of boring method consists of breaking the soil and foundation rock by a steel chisel. The chisel is attached to a steel cable which is wound onto the winch drum of the drilling rig.

3. After lifting the chisel, it falls by its weight on the ground.

4. After each blow, the chisel is turned a little so as to bore a circular hole.

5. Previously, a chisel with rods was suspended on a brake-staff which enabled the chisel to be lifted regularly.

6. In shallow boreholes, the tool can be lifted by hand and it can be worked by four to six men.

7. In firm rocks of medium hardness, not strongly jointed, flat straight-edged chisels are generally used.

8. In hard rock, the weight of the chisel is increased by a bar which is inserted between the jar and the chisel.

9. The cuttings and slurry must be removed regularly from the borehole so that percussion blows are not damped.

10. The form of the bit depends on the hardness and character of the rock.

11. Two types of bits are in general use for percussion drilling; button bits and chisel bits.

12. Button bits have a studded face, with the individual studs consisting of cylindrical inserts of tungsten carbide.

13. Chisel bits have chisel-like tungsten carbide inserts arranged in a cross-like pattern, which typically has a waterway at the center.

14. Drive sampling, using thin wall samplers are possible by using cable drill.

15. Deep percussion holes tend to present problem for the use of packers, as the bit undergoes a significant decrease in diameter during drilling.

h) Rotary Boring

Rotary drilling refers to the method of advancing a borehole with a rotary bit and with the removal of cuttings by the circulation of a fluid. It therefore does not include such rotating equipment as bucket or plate augers or continuous flight augers where the removal of cuttings is by mechanical means.

Drilling is effected by the cutting section of the rotating bit which is kept in firm contact with the face of the hole. The bit is carried on hollow jointed drill rods which are rotated by a suitable chuck. The drilling fluid, which may be water or a specially prepared mud is pumped through the hollow rods, discharged at the bit, and returns to the surface in the annular space between the rod and the sides of the hole.

The circulating fluid serves to cool and lubricate the bit and carries the cuttings to the surface.

There are two distinct types of rotary drilling; non-core drilling and core drilling.

1. **Non-core rotary drilling** is used when high rate and output is demanded as in deep oil wells. In this system, the whole bottom of the borehole is ground by a rotating bit so that only crushed rock is obtained, which is washed out by the drilling fluid. Rotary boring offers two advantages over percussion boring, it produces smooth-walled holes of uniform diameter, facilitating the use of packers; and it produces straighter holes than does conventional percussion equipment. The equipment usually consists of a relatively small air-operated drill motor, together with bits and rods. The drill motor can be operated at any one of the three rotational speeds by use of a gear shift, may be mounted on a column. Column-mounted drills advance by a crew-feed. Two types of drills can be recognized: air-track mount and column-mounted. The air-track mount is preferred because the advance of the drill is accomplished by a chain feed, and the rate of advance can be readily controlled by the driller as necessary to accommodate the rock conditions, and enables drilling to be done continuously for the full 10 feet (3 meter) length of the rod, whereas the "stroke" of the column mounted equipment is only about 2 feet (0.61 meter). Diamond bits are used in hard rock, and drag bits faced with tungsten carbide or other relatively economic materials are used in softer rocks. Non-core rotary drilling is the most effective method for penetrating relatively soft materials such as claystones, weathered sandstones and weak shale, where the waterways of percussion bits may tend to become plugged.

2. **Core rotary drilling** is usually carried out in situations where it is important to recover intact rock cores with a high percentage of core recovery to reveal defects and discontinuities such as joint opening and fillings, shear zones and cavities. In core rotary drilling the bit is designed to cut an annular hole leaving a central core which is retained in a core barrel to which the bit is attached. Core barrels used for geotechnical site investigation should at least be of "N" size (nominal hole diameter 76mm). Where weak or fractured rocks occur it is often advantageous to use larger

diameter core barrels which can improve core recovery. Assuming that optimum equipment is used, it is probably the skill of the operator which is the most important element in minimizing core losses by adjusting the controls on the drilling rig to meet different rock conditions. The main variables are the rotation speed of the bit; the pressure exerted on the bit by the weight of the rods plus the feed pressure and the fluid circulation rate of flow which must be high enough to cool the bit and remove cuttings but not so high as to erode the core. Before commencing coring it is preferable to run casing into the upper surface of the rock to provide a seal for the cuttings return.

APPENDIX D

Groundwater Investigation

Water is generally collected and moves in interconnected voids, pore spaces, cracks, fissures, joints, bedding planes and other openings in soil and rock formations beneath the ground surface. The level of the water table is not stationary. It fluctuates according to the rainfall or seasons. During and after the rainy season, it gets raised considerably due to accession of water. This is called natural recharge and during the dry months, it falls. The zone between the maximum and minimum water level is called the zone of intermittent saturation. The zone below the minimum water level is called the zone of permanent saturation. The main types of flows are as follows:

1. The intermediate saturated flows above the near-surface impervious layers. The upper surface of these flows is sometimes described as perched water table.

2. A major saturated flow zone usually defined at the top of the water table by a discharge source and at the bottom by an impermeable layer.

3. An unsaturated flow zone between the surface and the water table through which water percolates or is held by capillary action.

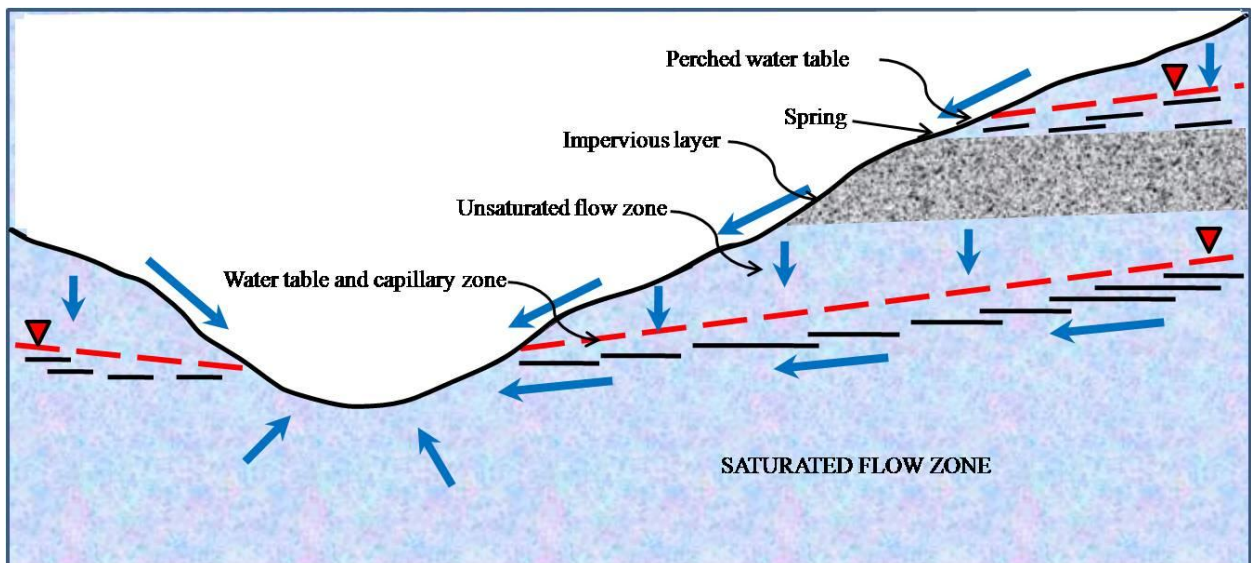A rough illustration of the flow zones is shown in Figure D-1

Figure D-1 Major zones of water saturation

APPENDIX E

Geotechnical Instrumentation

The primary requirement of any instrument is that it should be capable of determining a required parameter, such as water pressure, or displacement, without leading to a change in that parameter as a result of the presence of the instrument in the soil. In addition, since most soil instruments will be placed in an hostile environment, it is important that they should be robust and reliable. Most instrumentation cannot be recovered from the ground if it fails, and it will often be abused during installation or during construction of the works.

Pore water pressure and groundwater level measurement

This is the most common form of *in situ* measurement, and fortunately only one measurement is required at any point to define the regime. Quite simple devices are often used to determine water pressure in the ground, but these devices are unsuitable under many conditions.
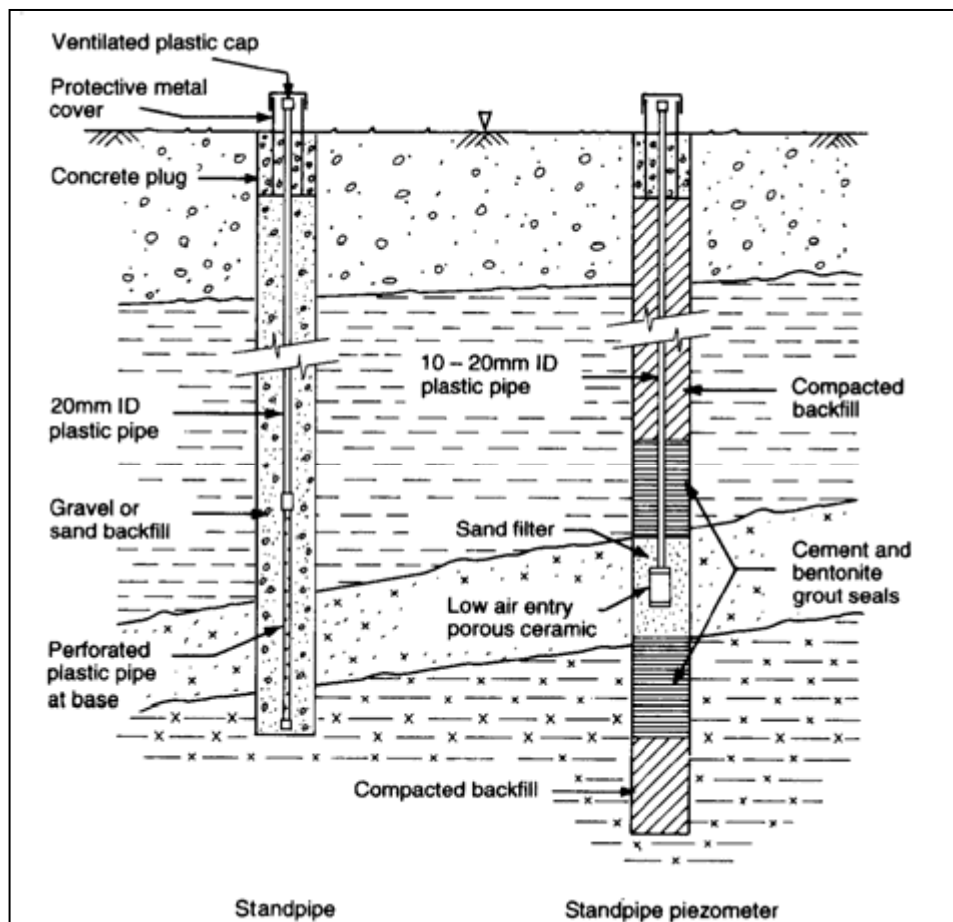

Figure E-1 Installation of standpipe and standpipe (or Casagrande) piezometer

Hanna (1973) has defined the requirements of any piezometer as:

      1. to record accurately the pore pressures in the ground;

      2. to cause as little interference to the natural soil as possible;

      3. to be able to respond quickly to changes in groundwater conditions;

      4. to be rugged and remain stable for long periods of time; and

      5. to be able to read continuously or intermittently if required.

Displacement measurement

Measurements of displacement may be made relative to time, and to some datum remote from the point of measurement. A straightforward method of monitoring absolute displacement is to use conventional surveying techniques: the type of datum required for such a scheme will depend upon ⁱired then a ⁱut in most
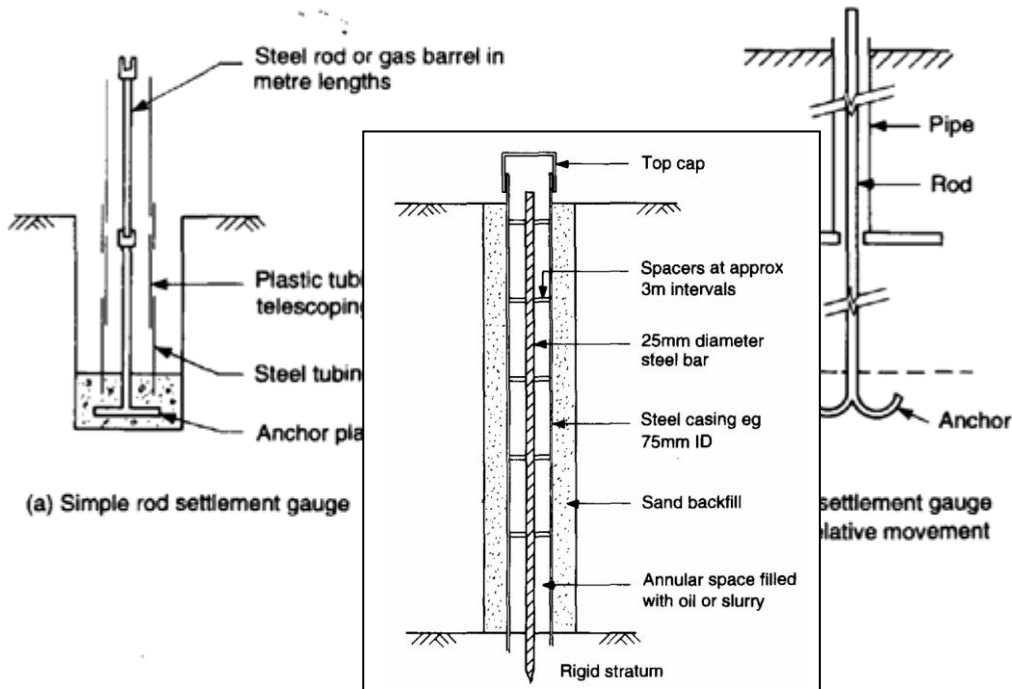

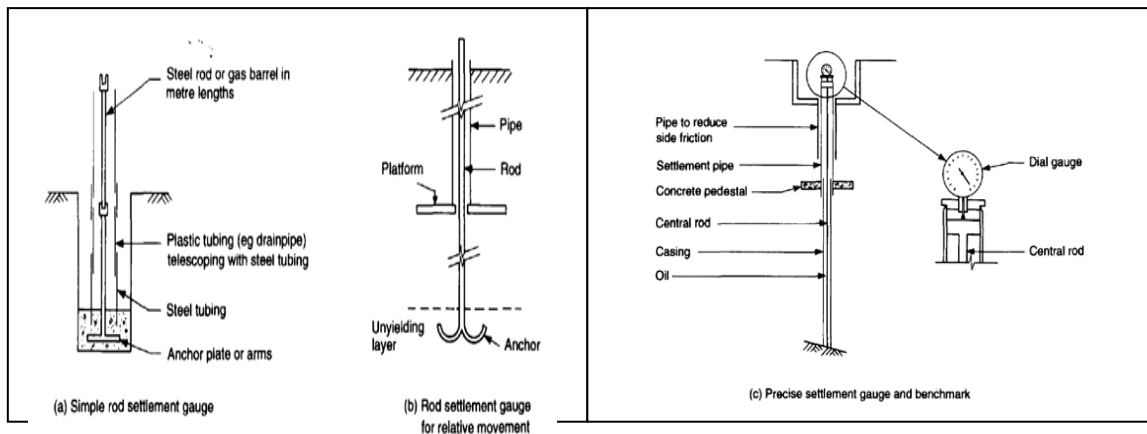Figure E-2 Bench mark driven to bedrock.

Figure E-3 Rod settlement gauges (from Bjerrum *et al.* 1965; Dunnicliff 1971; Hanna, 1973).

APPENDIX F

a) Seismic Survey

Elastic waves initiated by some energy source travel through geological media at characteristic velocities and are refracted and reflected by material changes or travel directly through the material, finally arriving at the surface where they are detected and recorded by instruments.

Seismic survey investigations are generally divided into three methods as follows:

> Refraction survey method
>
> Reflection survey method
>
> Direct survey method

Requirements

> Geophones (Vertical and Horizontal)
>
> Energy Source (Blast or Hammer)
>
> Seismograph (12 channels or 24 channels)
>
> Accessories

Interpretation

The interpretation is based on the velocity values.

Seismic refraction techniques are used to measure material velocities from which depths of changes in strata are computed. Seismic reflection methods are used to obtain a schematic representation of the subsurface in terms of time and large amounts of data can be obtained rapidly over large areas. Seismic direct methods are used to obtain data on the dynamic properties of soils and rocks.

For shallow depth investigation, the refraction methods are typically used. This method is particularly valuable for reconnaissance in areas with practically unknown subsurface geology. In engineering practice, the depth to bedrock and the detection of fracture zones in hard rocks and exploration of groundwater are generally conducted by seismic refraction survey.

Table F-1 Compressional wave velocities (V_p) in various medium

Types of medium	V_p (m/s)
Air	330
Water	1400 – 1500
Ice	3000 – 4000
Permafrost	3500 – 4000
Weathered layer	250 – 1000
Alluvium, sand (dry)	300 – 1000
Sand (water saturated)	1200 – 1900
Clay	1100 – 2500
Glacial moraine	1500 – 2600
Coal	1400 – 1600
Sandstone	2000 – 4500

Slate and Shale	2400 – 5000
Limestone and Dolomite	3400 – 6000
Anhydrite	4500 – 5800
Rocksalt	4000 – 5500
Granite and Gneiss	5000 – 6200
Basalt flow top (highly fractured)	2500 – 3800
Basalt	5500 – 6300
Gabbro	6400 – 6800
Dunite	7500 – 8400

Note: For a more extensive compilation of compression and shear wave velocity data, the reader may refer to Bonner and Schock (1981).

Application depths

Up to 60 m depth by hammering

Up to 200 m depth and above by blasting

b) Resistivity Survey

Various subsurface materials have characteristic conductance for direct currents of electricity. Electrolytic action made possible by the presence of moisture and dissolved salts within the soil and rock formation permit the passage of current between the electrodes placed in the surface soils.

An electric current is transmitted into the ground and the resulting potential differences are measured at the surface using electrodes in various configurations. The following different electrode configurations are commonly used in resistivity survey.

Wenner

Gradient

Schlumberger

Pole – Dipole

Dipole – Dipole

Requirements

Resistivity meter

SAS 300 C (ID department)

SAS 4000 (ID department)

Steel electrodes

Accessaries

Application depths

100 m to 200 m

APPENDIX G

Table G-1 Sample form of common test results

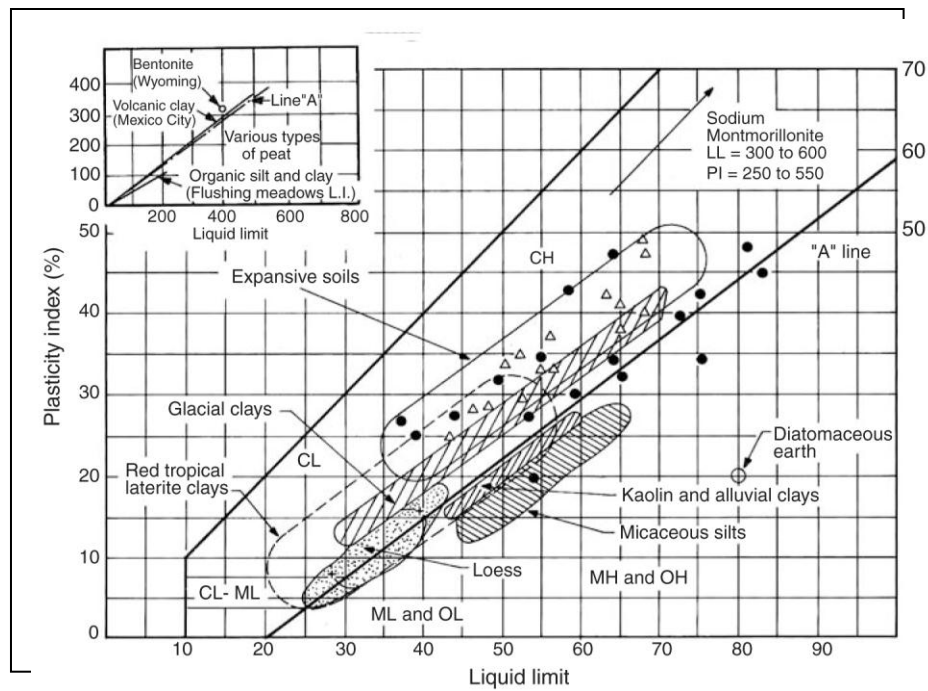| Sr. No.	SAMPLE NO.	GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION				ATTERBERG'S LIMITS			SPECIFIC GRAVITY	STANDARD PROCTOR COMPACTION		DIRECT SHEAR		PERMEA-BILITY	DISPE-RSIVE	SOIL TYPE
		Clay (%)	Silt (%)	Sand (%)	Gravel (%)	Liquid Limit (%)	Plastic Limit (%)	Plasticity Index (%)		OMC (%)	MDD lb/ft^3	Cohesion (kg.cm^2) C	Angle of internal friction, ϕ	K (cm/sec)	Crumb Test Grade	

APPENDIX H

Figure H-1 Plasticity Chart

Table H-1 Unifined soil classification system and soil symbols ASTM D-2487-00

Major Divisions (1)	(2)	Letter (3)	Symbols Hatching (4)	Color (5)	Name (6)	Value for Embankments (7)	Permeability cm per sec (8)
Coarse-Grained Soils	Gravel and Gravelly Soils	GW		Red	Well-graded gravels or gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	Very stable, pervious shells of dikes and dams	$k > 10^{-2}$
		GP		Red	Poorly graded gravels or gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	Reasonably stable, pervious shells of dikes and dams	$k > 10^{-2}$
		GM		Yellow	Silty gravels, gravel-sand-silt mixtures	Reasonably stable, not particularly suited to shells, but may be used for impervious cores or blankets	$k = 10^{-3}$ to 10^{-6}
		GC		Yellow	Clayey gravels, gravel-sand-clay mixtures	Fairly stable, may be used for impervious core	$k = 10^{-6}$ to 10^{-8}
	Sand and Sandy Soils	SW		Red	Well-graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines	Very stable, pervious sections, slope protection required	$k > 10^{-3}$
		SP		Red	Poorly graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines	Reasonably stable, may be used in dike section with flat slopes	$k > 10^{-3}$
		SM		Yellow	Silty sands, sand-silt mixtures	Fairly stable, not particularly suited to shells, but may be used for impervious cores or dikes	$k = 10^{-3}$ to 10^{-6}
		SC		Yellow	Clayey sands, sand-silt mixtures	Fairly stable, use for impervious core or flood-control structures	$k = 10^{-6}$ to 10^{-8}
Fine-Grained Soils	Silts and Clays LL < 50	ML		Green	Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands or clayey silts with slight plasticity	Poor stability, may be used for embankments with proper control	$k = 10^{-3}$ to 10^{-6}
		CL		Green	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, lean clays	Stable, impervious cores and blankets	$k = 10^{-6}$ to 10^{-8}
		OL		Green	Organic silts and organic silt-clays of low plasticity	Not suitable for embankments	$k = 10^{-4}$ to 10^{-6}
	Silts and Clays LL ≥ 50	MH		Blue	Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts	Poor stability, core of hydraulic-fill dam, not desirable in rolled-fill construction	$k = 10^{-4}$ to 10^{-6}
		CH		Blue	Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays	Fair stability with flat slopes, thin cores, blankets and dike sections	$k = 10^{-6}$ to 10^{-8}
		OH		Blue	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts	Not suitable for embankments	$k = 10^{-6}$ to 10^{-8}
Highly Organic Soils		Pt		Orange	Peat and other highly organic soils	Not used for construction	

APPENDIX I

General procedure of 1D seismic response analysis

1. Construction of subsurface soil model based on borehole data, SPT data and laboratory results.

2. Calculation of shear wave velocity structures of proposed site from SPT data or by measuring geophysical methods.

3. Generation of synthetic bedrock motion for the most suitable seismic sources of proposed site.

4. Performing 1D seismic response analysis by using input parameters from items 1 – 3

5. Final results will be Peak Ground Acceleration (PGA), Peak Ground Velocity (PGV), Peak Ground Displacement (PGD), amplification factor, predominant period and fundamental frequency of proposed site.

APPENDIX J

Basic Design Consideration for Potential Landslide Areas

Myanmar has two mountainous provinces: namely the Western Ranges and the Eastern Highland. These provinces are inherently unstable areas of the country. The steep slopes, unstable geologic conditions, and heavy monsoon rains combine to make these mountainous areas two of the most hazard-prone areas in Myanmar.

More recently there has been an increase in human settlement in hazard-prone areas as a result of rapid population growth, as well as improvement in accessibility by road and the onset of other infrastructure developments. Consequently, natural and man-made disasters are on the increase and each event affects people more than before. Even in central low land between the two mountainous provinces, landslide features occur along the banks of lower Ayeyarwady River and its tributaries.

The main causes that influence landslide hazard in Myanmar are: (i) gravity and the gradient of the slope, (ii) hydrogeological characteristics of the slope, (iii) presence of troublesome earth material, (iv) process of erosion, (v) man-made causes, (vi) geological conditions, and (vii) occurrence of a triggering event.

a) Geotechnical Data Collection and Testing

1) Measure the slope height and slope gradient

2) Collect disturbed and undisturbed samples of slope material

3) Measure field permeabilty, if possible and determine the ground water table

4) Identify the possible recharge sources of surface water near the slope

5) Collect the rainfall data of the area

6) Perform the following laboratory tests

    i) Sieve Analysis

    ii) Permeability Test

    iii) Direct Shear or Triaxial Test

    iv) Atterberg's Limit's Tests

    v) Specific gravity and unit weight of materials

b) Slope Stability Analysis

Various methods can be applied for slope stability analysis. One or two of them should be used according to the data available at the time of analysis. The slopes that should be analyzed may include natural slopes, cutting slopes and artificial embankments. The slope stability analysis is generally performed under the following two main analyses.

a) Limit Equilibrium Analysis

b) Stress Deformation Analysis

Some applicable methods for slope stability analysis are as follows:

1) Friction Circle Method

2) Bishop's Simplified Method of Slices

3) Newmark Sliding Block Analysis

4) Makdisi – Seed Analysis
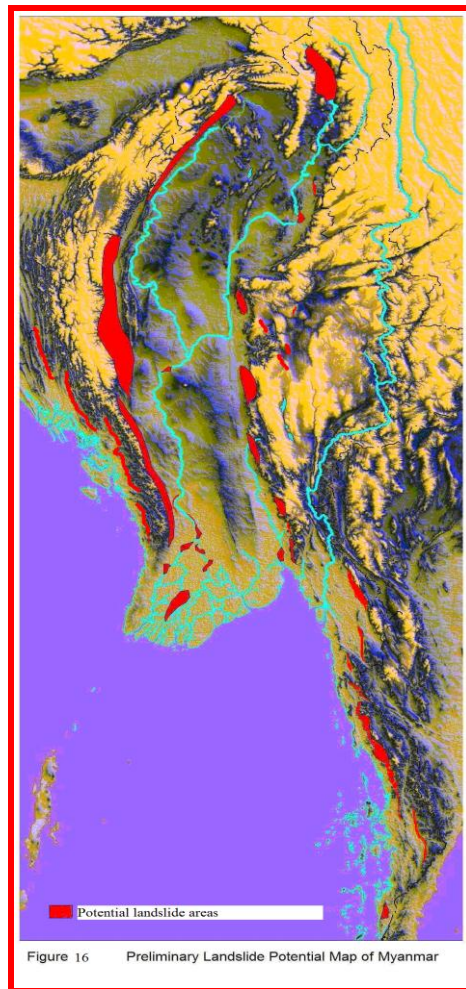
d) Potential Landslide Hazard Zone Map of Myanmar

Figure J-1 Potential Landslide Hazard Map of Myanmar (Kyaw Htun, 2011)

c) Stabilization and Prevention

Passive Preventive Intervention

> a) Choose a safe location to build your home, away from steep lopes and places where land-slides have occurred in the past

> b) Prevent deforestation and vegetation removal

> c) Avoid weakening the slope

Active Preventive Intervention

> a) **Reforestation:** Root systems bind materials together and plants do both prevent water percolation and take water up out of the slope. Natural vegetation should be retained where practicable.

> b) **Earthworks**: Retain natural contours where possible. Large scale unsupported cuts and benching should be avoided. Cut and fill heights should be minimized and should be supported by engineer designed retaining walls or battered to an appropriate slope. Vegetation and topsoil should be stripped prior to filling and fill should be keyed into the natural slope by benching.

c) **Retaining Walls**: Should be engineer designed to resist applied soil and water forces. Walls should be founded on rock where practicable and subsurface drainage should be provided within the wall backfill and surface drainage on the slope above.

d) **Footings**: Should be founded within rock where practicable. Rows of piers or strip footings should be oriented up and down the slope and should be designed for lateral creep pressure if necessary. Footing excavations should be backfilled to prevent ingress of surface water.

e) **Proper Surface Drainage** must be ensured, especially where houses and roads have disrupted the natural flow patterns. This can be achieved by providing a proper canalization network. Drains should be provided at the tops of cut and fill slopes and should discharge to street drainage or natural water courses.

f) **Subsurface Drainage**: good ground drainage is essential to prevent saturation and consequent weakening of the soil and rock structure. Filters should be provided around subsurface drains. Drainage should always be provided when any kind of civil work, like retaining walls, have been constructed. Where possible flexible pipelines should be used with access for maintenance.